

Manual for FOMA® N701i '05.8



Quick Search/Contents/
Safety Precautions

Getting Started

Making/Receiving
Phone Calls

Making/Receiving
Videophone Calls

Using the Phonebook

Tone/Display/
Lighting Settings

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode/i-motion

Mail

i-appli

i-channel

Displaying, Editing and
Organizing Files

Other Useful
Functions

Network Services

Data Communication

Entering Text

Appendix/Using the FOMA Terminal
with External Devices/Troubleshooting

Index/Quick Manual

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

- Thank you for choosing the FOMA N701i.
- Please read this Manual carefully before and during use for using the FOMA N701i effectively and correctly.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA network operates using radio waves. In a place where the reception is very poor, such as in a tunnel, in a building and under the ground, or in an out-of-service area, you cannot make a phone call. You may also have difficulty making a phone call from the upper floors of tall buildings, even if there is no obvious physical obstruction. And even if the reception is good (i.e. the signal strength indicator shows 3 bars) and you do not move during the call, you may still find that your call is cut off.
- When you use your FOMA terminal in public places, particularly where it is crowded or quiet, take care not to disturb the people around you.
- Since the FOMA terminal uses radio waves to communicate, there is always a risk that your call is wiretapped by the third party. However, the W-CDMA system automatically supports the tapping prevention for all calls. Even if a third party succeeds in intercepting your call, only incomprehensible noise will be heard.
- The FOMA terminal communicates via radio waves by converting voices into digital signals. If you move into an area where the reception is poor, the digital signals may not be accurately decoded and what you hear may differ slightly from what it actually is.
- It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as for security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any damage or loss.
Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal is available in FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

Using the Manual (This Document)

- In this manual for FOMA N701i, the FOMA N701i is described as the FOMA terminal.
- This manual describes functions that use the miniSD memory card. To use these functions, you need the miniSD memory card. miniSD memory card → P.380
- It is prohibited to reprint a part or all of the contents of this manual without permission.
- The contents of this manual may change without prior notification.

How to Refer to This Manual

In this manual, operations are described with illustrations and symbols for you to operate the FOMA terminal properly.

How to refer to this manual

In this manual, the following methods are available for you to find the descriptions of functions and services.

Index

➡ P.556

You can find keywords and functions displayed on the display of the FOMA terminal.

Quick Search

➡ P.4

You can find often-used functions and convenient functions in simple terms.

Index on the front cover

➡ Front cover

You can find the table of contents for each chapter by using the Index on the front cover.

**Details are
given on the
next page.**

Table of Contents

➡ P.6

You can find descriptions using the Table of Contents which is divided by the function.

Features

➡ P.8

You can find characteristic functions of the FOMA N701i, such as new functions and convenient functions.

Menu Function List

➡ P.520

You can find menu functions displayed on the display of the FOMA terminal.

Quick Manual

➡ P.572

You can find brief descriptions of the basic functions. You can also remove the pages to take along.

How to Refer to This Manual (continued)

For example, find the alarm clock function using “Index”, “Quick Search” and “Index on the front cover”.

Index ➔ P.556

You can find keywords and functions displayed on the display of the FOMA terminal.

AC adapter	51	Alarm	412	Automatic display	123
Access reader	198	Priority	411	Automatic replay (i-motion)	244
Accessories and options	530	Quality	129	Auto-sort (Mail)	289
A-Continuous mode (Auto)	187				
Activating a function (Multi task)	40	Alarm clock	412		
Activating a task (function)	406			Basic operations	40
Add to phonebook (String the phone number and mail address)	219	All lock setting	155	Battery	
Adding a new word (Own dictionary)	516	Answer setting	73	Attaching/removing the battery pack	48
Adding desktop icons	143	Any key answer	73	Battery life	50

Quick Search ➔ P.4

You can find often-used functions and convenient functions in simple terms.

Miscellaneous

- Easily access the functions you often use **Original menu** **P.42**
- Save battery life **Display light (Power saver mode)** **P.136**
- Use as calculator **Calculator** **P.429**
- Read QR code or bar code **Bar code reader** **P.194**
- Communicate with PC or another FOMA terminal **Infrared data exchange/OBEX** **P.394**
- Use as alarm clock **Alarm clock** **P.412**
- Use miniSD memory card **P.380**

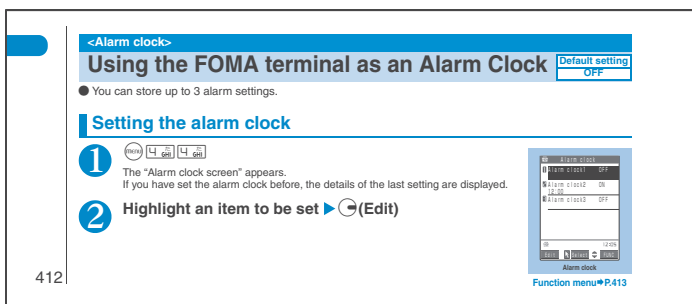
Index on the front cover ➔ Front cover

Refer to “Cover”, “Chapter title page” and “Description pages” sequentially to find the descriptions of the function you want to set. You can find the detailed table of contents on the chapter title page.



Displaying, Editing and Organizing Files
Other Useful Functions
Network Services
Data Communication

Other Useful Functions		
Multi Access.....	Multi access	406
Multi Tasking.....	Multi task	408
Using the FOMA terminal as an Alarm Clock.....	Alarm clock	412
Adding ToDo List Entries.....	ToDo	419



About the description

The description of the manual is as follows:

Shows the function name.

Describes the purpose and overview of the function.

Describes the information you need to know before use.

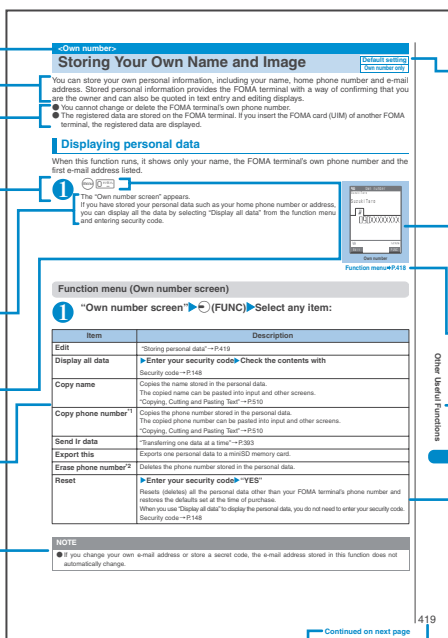
Indicates the step numbers.

Describes the supplement to the operation.

Describes the operations.

Describes the options displayed on the screen (some options may not appear in some cases).

Describes the useful information or advice about the operations.



Describes the settings at the time of purchase or contract, the monthly charge, etc. of the function or service.

Shows the screen at the time of operation.

Shows the page of the function menu.

Shows the category.

Describes each option and its operation.

Indicates the page number.

Indicates that the descriptions go on to the next page.

About the display

- The screens shown as examples in this manual are displayed when "English" is set for "バイリンガル" (Select language). Set "English" for "バイリンガル" (Select language) in advance. → P.54
- In this manual, "OFF" is set to the "Stand-by display" in order to make the screens clear. Also, the parts of the operating instruction screens that need an explanation are shown close up.
- This manual mainly explains the operations with the default settings. If you change the settings, the contents displayed on your FOMA terminal may differ from those on this manual.
- The screens inserted in this manual are only the images, which may look different from the actual screens.

*The contents above may differ from the actual ones in this manual.

Quick Search

Go to the page when you want to learn how to operate the function.

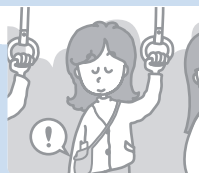
Useful functions for talking

- Do/do not notify your party of your caller ID Caller ID notification **P.66**
- Adjust the volume during a call Volume **P.77**
- Hold the current call Holding **P.60**
- Switch voice call to videophone call **P.60**



When you cannot answer incoming call

- Have your party record voice message Record message **P.82**
- Set voice mail **P.445**
- Hold incoming call On hold **P.78**



Change display or ring melody

- Mute keypad tone Keypad sound **P.129**
- Change ring melody Select ring tone **P.126**
- Set silent mode Manner mode **P.130**
- Change color or pattern of incoming call lamp Illumination **P.141**
- Set ring tone to specific party Utilities **P.119**
- Change standby screen Display setting **P.133**
- Display calendar on standby screen **P.134**
- Set clock Set time **P.55**
- Change font type and thickness Font **P.142**
- Learn what the icon means on screen **P.33**



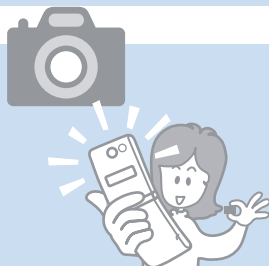
Master mail

- Send Deco-mail Deco-mail **P.259**
- Send image or melody Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion mail **P.269**
- Learn emotion-expressing mail **P.274**



Master camera

- Change the size of image to shoot **P.177**
- Change shutter sound **P.179**
- Use zoom or light **P.191**
- Save image to miniSD memory card **P.178**
- Display the shot **My picture** **P.339**



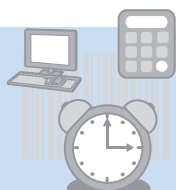
Use your phone without worries

- Prevent others from viewing the phonebook data **Secret mode/Secret only mode** **P.157**
- Prevent others from viewing still images or mail messages, etc. **Secret folder** **P.159**
- Reject unidentified call **Call setting w/o ID** **P.167**
- Reject call if the party is not stored in phonebook **Reject unknown** **P.168**
- Lock your FOMA terminal that is not in your hand **Remote all lock** **P.156**
- Lock side keys **Side keys guard** **P.162**



Miscellaneous

- Easily access the functions you often use **Original menu** **P.42**
- Save battery life **Display light (Power saver mode)** **P.136**
- Use as calculator **Calculator** **P.429**
- Read QR code or bar code **Bar code reader** **P.194**
- Communicate with PC or another FOMA terminal **Infrared data exchange/OBEX** **P.394**
- Use as alarm clock **Alarm clock** **P.412**
- Use miniSD memory card **P.380**



For more information about other operation guides, see "How to Refer to This Manual" (P.1).

Also, "Quick Manual" instructs you how to operate the functions used often.
→P.572

Contents

How to Refer to This Manual	1
Quick Search	4
Contents	6
Features of the FOMA N701i	8
Mastering the FOMA N701i!	10
Safety Precautions	12
Handling with Care	23
Intellectual Property Right	25
Main Components and Optional Equipment	27

Getting Started 29

- Component names and functions
- How to view the display
- Selecting the menu · Menu functions
- Attaching/removing the battery pack
- Charging the FOMA terminal
- Turning the FOMA terminal on/off
- Setting date and time · Caller ID notification, etc.

Making/Receiving Phone Calls.....57

- Making/receiving phone calls
- Changing voice call to videophone call
- Redial · Pause dial · WORLD CALL
- Hands-free · In-car Hands-free
- Received calls · Volume · On hold
- Driving mode · Record message, etc.

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls 87

- Making/receiving videophone calls
- Using Chara-den · Remote observation, etc.

Using the Phonebook 105

- Add to phonebook · Group setting
- Search phonebook · Copying a phonebook
- Utilities, etc.

Tone/Display/Lighting Settings 125

- Select ring tone · Vibrator · Keypad sound
- Charge sound · Mail/Msg. ring time
- Manner mode · Display settings
- Display light settings · Set menu display
- Neuropointer
- Illumination/Illumination in talk
- Desktop icon
- Style mode, etc.

Security Settings..... 151

- Security code · PIN code · All lock
- Remote all lock · Keypad dial lock
- Secret mode · PIM lock
- Secret folder
- Mail security settings · Restrictions
- Reject unknown, etc.

Camera 171

- Shooting image · Continuous shooting
- Shooting framed images · Shooting movie
- Bar code reader · Access reader, etc.

i-mode/i-motion 205

- What is i-mode? · i-mode menu
- Viewing a site · My Menu
- i-mode password · Internet connection
- Bookmark
- Phone To/Mail To/Web To function
- Message service
- What is an i-motion?
- Downloading i-motion, etc.

Mail 245

- What is i-mode mail?
- Composing and sending i-mode mail
- Deco-mail · Emotion-expressing mail
- Receive option · Check new message
- i-motion mail · Chat mail
- SMS (short message), etc.

i-αppli 317

- What is an i-αppli? · Downloading i-αppli
- i-αppli standby screen
- Upgrading i-αppli, etc.

i-channel 331

- What is i-channel
- Displaying the Channel list
- i-channel setting, etc.

Displaying, Editing and Organizing Files 337

- Displaying image · Playing movie/i-motion
- Editing image · Editing movie
- Shooting Chara-den · Playing melody
- miniSD memory card
- Infrared data exchange function, etc.

Other Useful Functions 405

- Multi access · Alarm setting · Alarm clock
- Schedule · ToDo · Own number
- Call time/Charge · Calculator · Text memo
- Auto dial setting · Reset settings
- Initialize, etc.

Network Services 443

- Voice mail service · Call waiting
- Call forwarding service
- Nuisance call barring service
- Caller ID request service
- Dual network service, etc.

Data Communication 457

- About data communication · Setting PC
- FOMA PC setting software
- Executing communication/disconnect
- Setting up dial-up network
- AT command list, etc.

Entering Text 497

- Switching text entry method
- Entering kanji/hiragana/katakana/alphabetic/numeric characters
- Copying and pasting text
- Entering kuten codes
- Entering text in 2-touch input
- Entering text in T9 input · User dictionary
- Download dictionary
- Common phrase, etc.

Appendix/Using the FOMA Terminal with External Devices/Troubleshooting..... 519

- Menu function list
- Symbols and special characters list
- Pictographs lists
- Smiley face symbols list · Kuten code list
- Styleplus
- Options and accessories
- Playing i-motion (music data) created on PC
- Malfunction checklist · Error message
- Software update · Scanning function
- Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), etc.

Index/Quick Manual..... 555

- Index
- Quick Manual

Features of the FOMA N701i

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

i-mode

i-mode is an online service that you can use to send e-mail as well as using the i-mode terminal display to look at the i-mode menu site (program) and i-mode compatible homepage.

- i-mode (charged) →P.206
- i-mode mail →P.246
- i-motion →P.241
- i-motion mail →P.269
- i-appli →P.318
- i-shot →P.250
- Chaku-motion →P.208

※i-mode is a pay service you need to apply for.

P.205

i-channel

You can receive news and weather information etc. as graphical information.

You can receive information at a set interval, display the telop of the latest information on the standby screen, and display it on the channel list screen by pressing  for the i-channel. You can also select your favorite channels on the channel list screen to receive rich, detailed information.

Also, the trial service is available for a certain period for the subscriber to the i-channel compatible terminal who is using an i-channel compatible terminal and have never been subscribed to the i-channel service.

※i-channel is a pay service you need to apply for.

P.331

Videophone

You can talk to your party imaging his/her face, let your party's voice come out of the speaker, or switch to the rear camera to show your surroundings to your party.

P.87

Chara-den

The pre-installed or downloaded characters can substitute for the image of yourself during videophone call. Press the keys to change the character's face or move its hands.

P96, 369

Deco-mail

You can compose and send expressive mail by changing the font color, size, or the background color for the message, or by inserting a Deco-mail picture or a photo shot with the built-in camera. The FOMA terminal supports templates, which means that you can compose Deco-mail easily by using the format of the received Deco-mail or the downloaded format.

P.259

Wide variety of network services

- Voice mail service
- Call waiting
- Call forwarding service
- Nuisance call barring service
- Caller ID request service
- Dual network service
- English guidance

P.443

i-αppli, i-αppli DX

You can download various i-αppli programs to use them, or to set them on the standby screen. i-αppli DX can be linked to the information such as the phonebook or mail stored in i-mode terminal.

P.317

Infrared communication/Infrared remote control

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals using infrared communication. You can also use your FOMA terminal as a remote control.

P.394, 400

Style mode

You can set the contents such as the standby screen and menu icons to "Disney" or the contents of styleplus all at once. The contents of styleplus is added in the Style mode list screen by scanning the QR code attached to styleplus using the bar code reader.

P.147

Multi-access/Multi task

By Multi access that enables the FOMA terminal to handle a voice call, packet communication and SMS at the same time, you can talk while enjoying the i-mode service or exchange mails during a call. You can also activate up to three functions at the same time using Multi task.

P.406, 408

Camera

You can use the front and rear cameras to shoot a still image, continuous images and a movie. You can shoot a large image of 1,280 x 960 (dots) with the rear camera of 1.25 million effective pixels (1.23 million recorded pixels).

"Chance capture" allows you to record movies retroactively from the point you end shooting so that you will never miss the important scene. "Picture voice" enables you to add a voice or sound to the still image you shot. The movies shot or composed using these functions can be saved to i-motion and can be attached to i-mode mail.

P.171

Flash™

The FOMA terminal supports Flash movie, which is an animation technology featuring images and sounds, so that you can enjoy various animations and expressive sites. You can also download Flash movies to set them on the standby screen.

P.219

miniSD memory card available

miniSD memory card enables you to exchange data such as phonebook, schedule, mail or image with PC or another FOMA terminal. Save a movie or music data created on an external device to the miniSD memory card, and you can play it on the FOMA terminal (some data may not be played).

P.380

2.3 inch screen

A large screen of 2.3 inch enables you to view larger fonts or images, and makes i-αppli more enjoyable.

Security settings

You can protect your privacy using a security code or password. You can also use the security function, which locks your FOMA terminal by remote access when you have lost it, and the secret folder function, which manages the secret folder to prevent others from viewing your data.

P.151

Bar code reader

You can read the bar code or QR code using the camera function and use the information to store it into the phonebook and compose i-mode mail, etc. You can also read the QR code of images and melodies.

P.194

Ring tone

The ring tone supports 50-harmony ADPCM based on FM + WaveTable and sound effects such as voice.

P.126

Mastering the FOMA N701i !

■ Various functions of the FOMA N701i

Display telops of the latest information on the standby screen or the indicator display when the information is sent.

“i-channel”

● “i-channel” → P.332

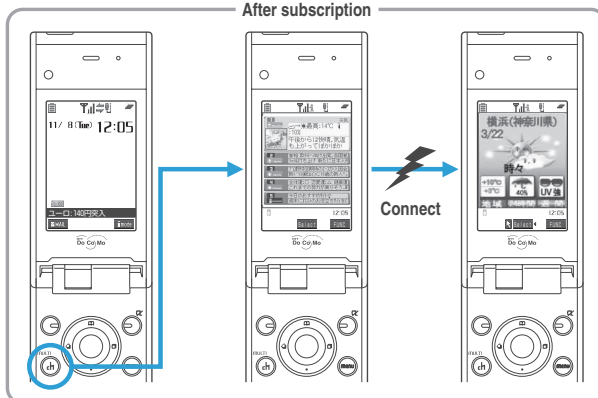
You can automatically receive various information at a set interval.

You can also display the channel list screen by pressing **ch** for the i-channel, and receive rich, detailed information.

Before subscription



After subscription



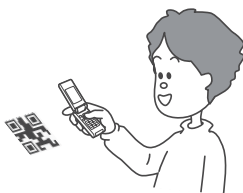
*The screens shown are intended to show the concepts and different from the actual images.

Set contents settings all at once

“Style mode”

● “Style mode” → P.147

You can set the contents settings such as the calling display, the standby screen and the main menu screen to Disney or the contents settings for styleplus all at once.



The contents for styleplus is displayed in the style mode list screen when you scan the attached QR code by the Bar code reader.

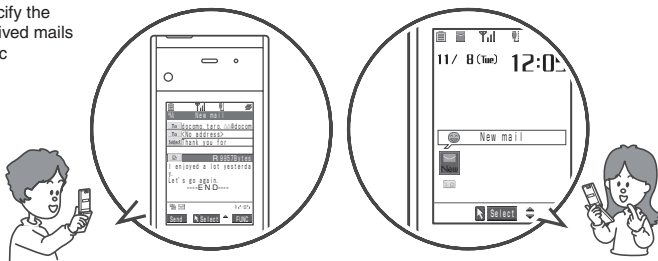
Display emotion icon for specific mail

“Emotion-expressing mail”

● “Emotion-expressing mail” → P.274

An emotion icon is displayed when you receive i-mode mail, chat mail or SMS.

You can also specify the icons for the received mails containing specific keywords.

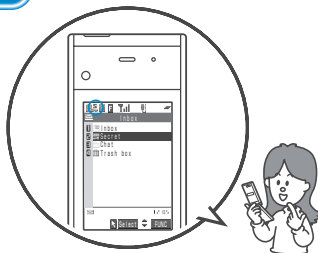


Keep images and mail messages in secret

“Secret folder”

● “Secret” folder → P.159

You can store My picture, i-motion (movies), received mail messages, sent mail messages and bookmarks into the “Secret” folder which is displayed only when the FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret only mode.

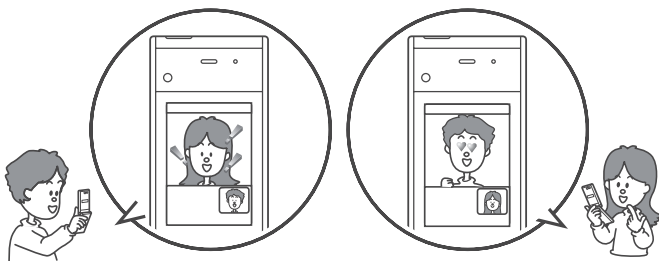


Decorate the videophone call screen

“Videophone call decoration”

● “Videophone call decoration” → P.100

You can decorate the videophone call screen by adding frames, stamps and face stamps that follow facial movements.



- To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read the Safety Precautions carefully before you use. Keep this manual after reading for future reference.
- The safety precautions must be observed at all times since they contain the information intended to prevent the bodily injuries or the damage to the property.
- The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injuries and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly.


DANGER

Indicates that the death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from the improper use.


WARNING

Indicates that the death or serious bodily injury may result from the improper use.


CAUTION

Indicates that the bodily injury and/or damage to the property may result from the improper use.

- The following symbols indicate the specific directions:

 Don't	Indicates that it is prohibited.
 No disassembly	Indicates that it must not be disassembled.
 No wet hands	Indicates that you must not touch it with your wet hand.
 No liquids	Indicates that it must not be used near the water, which means that you must not wet it.
 Do	Indicates that you must do it following the instructions.
 Unplug	Indicates that you must unplug the power cord from the outlet.

- Safety Precautions are explained in the following categories:

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (Common) 13
2. Handling the FOMA terminal 15
3. Handling the Battery Pack 17
4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger) 19
5. Handling the FOMA card 21
6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment 22

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (Common)

DANGER



Do

Use the battery pack and adapter (including the charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo Group for the FOMA terminal.

Using the devices other than those specified by NTT DoCoMo Group may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other devices to leak, overheat, explode, ignite or malfunction.

Battery Pack N10 Desktop Holder N08 FOMA AC Adapter 01

FOMA DC Adapter 01 Data Communication Adapter N01

FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01

For the information on other compatible products, contact the NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.



No liquids

Do not wet the devices.

Exposing the FOMA terminal and other devices to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc. Be careful where and how you use the devices.



No disassembly

Do not disassemble or rebuild. Also, do not solder the battery.

This may cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction.

This also may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Don't

Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near the fire or heater, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the devices to malfunction or be deformed, or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life.

Also, this may cause a part of the case to become hot and burn you.

WARNING



Don't

Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger, adapters or FOMA card in cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or in a pressure cooker.

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger) to overheat, smoke or ignite, or damage the IC.



Don't

Keep the conductive foreign matters (metal, pencil lead, etc.) away from the charge terminal or external connector. Do not insert those matters inside.

This may result in the short-circuit causing the FOMA terminal to ignite or malfunction.



Don't

Do not shock or throw the FOMA terminal.

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.



Do

If you find extraordinary happenings, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation, during the use, charge or storage, make sure to:

1. Unplug the power cord from the outlet.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use (or charge) the FOMA terminal may cause it to overheat, explode, ignite or leak of battery.



Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal at gas (petrol) station, etc. where it is possible to fire or explode.

Using the FOMA terminal in the dusty environment or near the flammable gas such as propane or gasoline may cause the explosion or fire.



CAUTION



Do

If your child uses the FOMA terminal, instruct him/her how to use it. Make sure that he/she always uses the FOMA terminal correctly as you instruct.

Improper usage could result in the bodily injury.



Don't

Do not leave the FOMA terminal on a slope or unstable surface.

This may fall the FOMA terminal and cause the injury or malfunction.



Don't

Keep the FOMA terminal away from the humid, dusty or hot places.

This may cause the FOMA terminal to malfunction.



Do

Keep the FOMA terminal out of young children's reach.

A young child may swallow it or suffer from the injury.

2. Handling the FOMA terminal



WARNING



Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.

Since November 1st, 2004, the penalty will be imposed on using a mobile phone while driving. Even if you are using a Hands-Free kit, stop the car in a safe place before using the phone. Use the Driving mode or the Voice mail service while driving.

When using a phone while walking, take great care on your surroundings or on the road conditions.



Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in a place where it is prohibited to use the mobile phone, such as in an airplane or in a hospital.

This may affect the electric or medical equipment. If the FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to disable the function before turning off the FOMA terminal.

Follow the instructions provided by the medical facility about using the mobile phone. If you use the phone in an airplane, which is prohibited, you may be punished by law.



Do

If you have a weak heart, you should take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring volume functions for incoming calls.

Your heart may be adversely affected.



Don't

Keep the display light away from your or another person's eyes. Also, do not look at the illumination lamp directly when it lights up.

This may cause the eye injury. Also, this may dazzle or surprise him/her and cause an injury.



Don't

Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards your or another person's eyes when using infrared data exchange.

This may cause the eye injury. Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards another infrared device as this may cause the device to malfunction.



Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal near the electric equipment using the high-precision control or weak signals.

This may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

*Take great care on the following electric devices:

Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemakers, implantable cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals. If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by radio waves.



Don't

If you are wearing electronic medical equipment on your body, do not put the FOMA terminal in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket.

The FOMA terminal is a folding mobile phone and uses magnets to detect that it is closed. Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.



Do

Hold the FOMA terminal off your ear and keep enough distance from it when you talk in the hands-free mode with the speaker.

It may affect your hearing or cause interference to your ears.



Do

If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn off the FOMA terminal and take shelter in a safe location.

There is a risk of being struck by the lightning and suffering an electric shock.



Don't

Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicle.

This may prevent a driver from driving safely and cause a traffic accident.



Don't

Do not put the FOMA terminal on the dashboard, etc. as a problem may occur due to air bag inflation.

The air bag inflation may cause the FOMA terminal to hit you or another person, which may lead to injury, malfunction, breakage, etc.

2. Handling the FOMA terminal (continued)



CAUTION



Do

In some types of vehicle, using the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.

Do not use the FOMA terminal if the terminal might impair the safe driving.



Do

If the display or camera lens is broken, be careful of the broken glass.

The surface of the display or camera lens is covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken display or camera lens may cause the injury.



Don't

Never swing the FOMA terminal by its strap or other parts.

The FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury, malfunction or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.



Don't

Do not leave the built-in camera lens exposed to the direct sunlight for a long time.

The light-collecting nature of the lens may cause fire or failure.



Don't

Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the miniSD memory card slot.

Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Don't

Do not use the light for the use other than shooting with the built-in cameras.

The light will be turned off if you do not operate at all for approximately 30 seconds. Using it for the purposes other than shooting with built-in cameras (such as using it as an electronic torch) may cause the light to run out suddenly, which may lead to an accident.



Do

Take care when inserting or removing the miniSD memory card.

This may injure your hands or fingers.



Do

Using the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and see a doctor.



Don't

Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the FOMA card slot inside the FOMA terminal.

Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Do

Take care not to pinch your finger in the hinge part when you open the FOMA terminal.

This may cause an injury.



Don't

Do not let the FOMA terminal come close to or sandwich magnetic cards or another magnetic recording media between the FOMA terminal.

The magnetic data stored on cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.

3.Handling the Battery Pack

■ Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack you have.

Label description	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion



DANGER



Don't

Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Don't

Do not connect metallic objects such as wires across the battery pack terminals, and do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Don't

If you are having difficulty in fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use the excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing in the correct direction before you try to attach it.

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do

If battery fluid comes into your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water and see a doctor.

Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.



Don't

Do not puncture the battery pack, hit it with a hammer or step on it.

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



WARNING



Do

If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified charging time has elapsed, stop charging.

This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do

If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off with clean water.

Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.



Do

If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, stop using it immediately and move it as far as possible away from any flame or fire. The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.

3.Handling the Battery Pack (continued)



CAUTION



Don't

Do not dispose of used battery packs with ordinary garbage.

Throwing battery packs out with ordinary garbage constitutes an environmental hazard and may cause the garbage to catch fire. Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs and return them to the NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter. Alternatively, if there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose the battery packs in accordance with your local regulations.

4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger)



WARNING



Do

Use the specified power supply and voltage.

Using the incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction. Also, using the adapters in overseas countries may cause a malfunction.

AC adapter:

100V AC (should be plugged to 100V

AC power outlet for home use in Japan only)

DC adapter:

12V/24V DC (specific to vehicle with negative ground)



Don't

Do not use the adapter in excess of the rated capacity of plug outlets and wiring accessories.

Exceeding the rated capacity by star-burst connection may cause overheating or fire.



No wet hands

Do not touch the power cords of the adapters and charger or the power outlet with wet hands.

This may cause an electric shock.



Don't

The DC adapter must be used only for vehicles with a negative ground. Do not use the adapter in positively grounded vehicles.

Use in a positively grounded vehicle may cause a fire.



Don't

Take care not to short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter or charger is plugged to the power outlet or the socket in a vehicle. Also take care for a part of your body (hand, finger, etc.) not to come into contact with the charging terminal.

Such actions could cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.



Do

If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with the specified type of fuse.

Using the incorrect fuse may cause a fire or malfunction.

Refer to the respective manuals for the information on the correct fuse specifications.



Don't

Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in humid or steamy locations such as bathroom.

This may cause an electric shock.



Don't

Never use the damaged adapter's or charger's power cord or DC power cord.

Such actions could cause electric shock, overheating or fire.



Do

Wipe off any dust on the charger plug or adapter plug.

The dust may cause a fire.



Don't

Do not remove the charger plug with excessive force even if it is difficult to remove it.

This may damage the adapters and cause an electric shock or fire.



Don't

Do not touch the FOMA terminal, adapter or charger when you hear a crash of thunder.

There is a risk of being struck by the lightning and suffering an electric shock.



Unplug

Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet when it will be left unused for a long period.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in a fire, electric shock or equipment malfunction.



Don't

Place the charger or desktop holder on a stable surface during charging. Take care also not to cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.

Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal to fall out of the charger or heat to build up, resulting in a fire or malfunction.



Unplug

If any water or other liquid gets into the adapter or charger, immediately unplug it from the power outlet or socket.

Water in the adapter or charger may cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.



Do

When plugging the AC adapter into a power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in an electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger) (continued)



CAUTION



Unplug

Always pull the plug out of the power outlet or socket before cleaning the adapter or charger.

This may cause an electric shock.



Don't

Do not put heavy objects on the power cord for the adapter or charger.

This may cause fire or electric shock.



Don't

Do not charge the wet battery pack.

This may cause the battery pack to overheat, explode or ignite.



Do

Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapter or charger from the power outlet or socket. Do not pull on the cord itself.

Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.



CAUTION



Do

Be careful when dismantling the FOMA card (IC part).
This may injure your hands or fingers.

6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

- The following safety precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding how to protect electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones:



WARNING



Do

If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.

Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.



Do

Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities:

- Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units).
- Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Turn off your FOMA terminal even if you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- If a medical facility gives specific instructions prohibiting you from carrying or using mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly.
- If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set OFF to the function before turning off the FOMA terminal.



Do

Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) that are using electronic medical equipment other than implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for the information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.

Radio waves may affect the operations of the electric or medical equipment.

General Notes

Do not water the devices.

- The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters and charger are not waterproof. Do not use them in humid or steamy locations such as bathrooms, and avoid exposing them to rain and other forms of moisture. If you carry your FOMA terminal close to your skin, sweat may cause internal components to corrode and result in a malfunction. If the problem is found to be due to moisture, it will not be covered by the warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even if it can be fixed, you will be charged since the damage is not covered by the warranty.

Clean with a soft, dry cloth.

- Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and clean it using a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses). The LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period.
- Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents as these agents may erase the printing on the FOMA terminal or cause discoloration.

Occasionally clean the connection terminals with a dry cotton bud.

- Soiled connection terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Also, as it may cause insufficient charging, clean the terminal with a dry cloth or cotton bud when it is dirty.

Do not place the FOMA terminal near an air conditioning vent.

- Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may cause internal corrosion and malfunction.

Do not leave the FOMA terminal in locations where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- Do not put the FOMA terminal in a bag filled with other objects or in the hip pocket of clothing as you sit down. This may result in faults or damage to the LCD or other internal components. Such damage is not covered by the warranty.

Read the separate manuals supplied with the battery pack, adapters and charger carefully.

Handling the FOMA Terminal

Avoid using the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.

- Use the FOMA terminal within a temperature range between 5°C and 35°C with humidity between 45% and 85%.

It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm while being used or charged. Therefore you can continue to use it.

Using the FOMA terminal close to home (landline) phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far as possible away from such devices before using the FOMA terminal.

It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA terminal.

- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your FOMA terminal.

Take care not to put the FOMA terminal in the back pocket of your pants or skirt and then sit on it. Also, do not put the FOMA terminal at the bottom of a bag where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.

- This may cause the FOMA terminal to malfunction.

Do not put a thick seal etc. on the face of the display or dial keys.

- This may cause malfunction or breakage.

Do not scabble the display with metallic objects.

- This may cause scratch.

Have the FOMA terminal in your hand wrapping the strap around your wrist.

- This prevents the FOMA terminal falling that may cause malfunction.

Do not fold the FOMA terminal with its strap caught between the folding parts.

- This may cause the FOMA terminal to malfunction or be damaged.

Always fit the earphone/microphone socket cap, external connector cap and miniSD memory card slot cover before use.

- Failing to fit these covers may cause the FOMA terminal to malfunction due to the dust or water getting in.

Do not leave the camera under the direct sunshine.

- This may discolor or burn the element.

Handling the Battery Pack

The battery pack is a consumable.

- If the battery pack does not work despite the fully charging, it is time to exchange it. Exchange it for a new battery pack with the same specifications.

Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).

Handling with Care (continued)

Make sure to charge the battery when you use the FOMA terminal for the first time or if you have not used it for a long period.

The available operating time of the battery pack depends on the conditions in which you use it and the condition of the battery pack itself.

Do not dispose of used battery packs with ordinary garbage.

- Apply insulation tape to the terminals of used battery packs and return them to the NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter. Alternatively, if there are separate battery disposal facilities in your area, dispose the battery packs in accordance with your local regulations.

Keep the battery pack in a cool and dry place away from direct sunshine.

- If you do not use the battery pack for a long period, use up the battery, remove the pack from the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger), and keep it.

Handling the Adapters and Charger

Do not charge the battery pack:

- In a place where the ambient temperature is lower than 5°C or higher than 35°C
- In a humid, dusty or shaky place
- Near your home phone, TV or radio

It is normal for the adapter or charger to become warm while being charged. Therefore you can continue to use it.

Do not use the DC adapter to charge battery packs when the car engine is not running.

- This may drain the car battery.

If you use an electrical outlet with a disconnection prevention mechanism, follow the instructions of the outlet user's manual.

Do not shock the adapter or charger. Do not deform the charging terminal.

- This may cause a malfunction.

Handling the FOMA card

When inserting or removing the FOMA card into the FOMA terminal, never apply unnecessary force.

It is normal for the FOMA card to become warm while being used or charged. Therefore you can continue to use it.

The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card into some other type of IC Card reader/writer. It is the user's responsibility.

Always keep the IC part clean.

Clean the FOMA card with a soft, dry cloth.

It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA card.

- Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your FOMA card.

To preserve the environment, take used FOMA card to the NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.

Avoid using the FOMA card in extremely high or low temperatures.

Do not scratch, touch imprudently, short circuit or damage the IC.

- Otherwise, loss of data or malfunction may result.

Be careful not to drop the FOMA card or apply an impact to it.

- Otherwise, malfunction may result.

Do not bend the FOMA card or place a heavy object on it.

- Otherwise, malfunction may result.

Handling the miniSD Memory Card

Do not remove miniSD memory card or turn off the FOMA terminal while you are using the miniSD memory card.

- This may cause the loss of data or malfunction.

Handling the Camera

If you seriously inconvenience others when using the FOMA terminal, you may be punished by respective laws or bylaws (such as Public Nuisance Laws).



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Copyright and Portrait Right

It is prohibited to duplicate, modify or publicly transmit content such as text, images, music or software that was photographed using the FOMA terminal or downloaded from Internet website and that is subject to third-party copyright without the permission of the copyright folder, except where the duplication or quoting of the content for personal use is permitted under copyright law.

It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.

Shooting a photo of someone by the FOMA terminal without his or her permission, or displaying a photo of someone shot by the FOMA terminal on the website without his or her permission is a breach of portrait right.

Trademarks and registered trademarks

The brand names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-mode", "i-channel", "i-appli", "i-appli DX", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Driving mode", "i-melody", "i-area", "QUICKCAST", "Multi access", "i-motion", "mopera", "mopera U", "i-motion mail", "Chaku-motion", "Deco-mail", "Chara-den", "i-anime", "i-appli search", "i-shot", "sigmarion", "musea", "DoPa", "Short mail", "Dual network", "FirstPass", "V-live", "visualnet", "Security Scan", "Styleplus" and "FOMA", "i-mode", "i-channel" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
 - miniSD™ is a trademark of SD Association. 
 - Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
 - LCフォント/LC FONT®, エルシーフォント® and LC logo are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation. 
 - T9 Text Input® and T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications. 
 - T9 Text Input® is patented or under patent application worldwide.
 - Dialog Clarity, WOW, SRS and the symbol  are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
 - Dialog Clarity and WOW technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc. 
 - キャッチホン (Call waiting) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
 - QRコード is registered trademark of Denso Wave, Inc.
 - Facestamps use the N-Vision Virtual Accessory engine. 
 - Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
 - Microsoft and Windows are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.
 - NetFront and **NetFront**® are registered trademarks or trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- Copyright© 1996-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- IrFront® is registered trademarks or trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- Copyright© 1996-2005 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- © Disney
 - © 2005 DEVILROBOTS
 - Gガイドモバイル, G-GUIDE Mobile and Gガイドモバイル logo are trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan, and G Guide, G-GUIDE, Gガイド logo and the Gコード, G-code are the registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in Japan.
 - Adobe and Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the US and other countries.
 - McAfee®, マカフィー® is registered trademark of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
 - Apple, Apple logo and QuickTime are the registered trademarks of Apple Computer Inc. in the United States and other countries.
 - QuickTime logo is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc.
 - ©1987-2005 ARMOR PROJECT/BIRD STUDIO/CHUNSOFT/SQUARE ENIX All Rights Reserved.
 - The other company names and brand names described in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Others

- Macromedia® Flash™ technology of Macromedia, Inc. is used for this product.
Copyright© 1995-2005 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.
- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and you are permitted to use personally and for the nonprofit purpose in the following situations:
 - To record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
 - To play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the nonprofit activities
 - To play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LAWhen you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
5,710,784 5,778,338
- This product is equipped with NetFront v3.2 for FOMA Internet Edition for the Internet.
NetFront v3.2 is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.
- This product is equipped with IrFront® for OBEX and Infrared data exchange.
IrFront® is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.
- The software in this product contains the module developed by Independent JPEG Group.
- This product contains the software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, see "readme.txt" in the "GPL · LGPL 等について" folder on the bundled CD-ROM ("readme.txt" is in Japanese only)
- This product is antibacterial-coated.
The SIAA logo indicates that this product conforms to the JIS Z 2801 standard and the quality control and information disclosure for this product follow the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles (SIAA).
Antibacterial: Phone body (excluding the display, keys/buttons and terminals), Styleplus

Description of Windows

- Windows® 98 stands for Microsoft® Windows® 98 operating system.
- Windows® 98SE stands for Microsoft® Windows® 98 Second Edition operating system.
- Windows® Me stands for Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition operating system.
- Windows® 2000 Professional stands for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP stands for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- This user's guide describes Windows 98 for Windows® 98 and Windows® 98SE.
- This user's guide describes Windows Me for Windows® Millennium Edition.
- This user's guide describes Windows 2000 for Windows® 2000 Professional.
- This user's guide describes Windows XP for Windows® XP Professional and Windows® XP Home Edition.

Main Components and Optional Equipment

<Main Components>

FOMA N701i

(Including the warranty,
Back Cover N08 and styleplus N02)



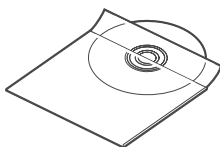
Manual for FOMA N701i

(This manual)



*The Quick Manual starts on P.572.

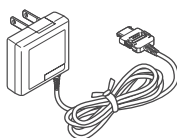
CD-ROM for FOMA N701i



<Optional Equipment>

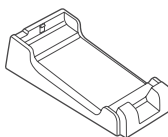
FOMA AC Adapter 01

(Including warranty and manual)



Desktop Holder N08

(Including manual)



Battery Pack N10

(Including manual)



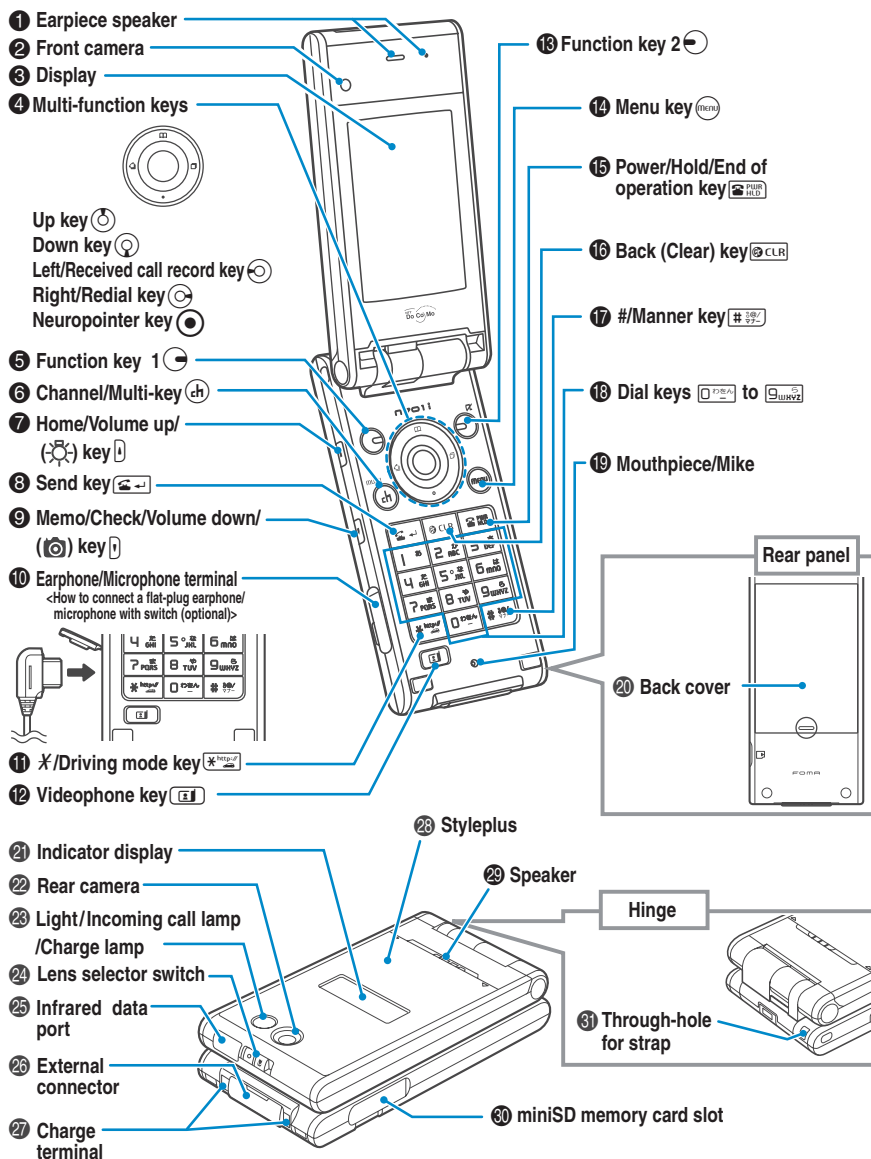
Other options and accessories → P.530

● Getting Started

Component Names and Functions	30
How to View the Display	33
How to View the Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display)	36
Selecting the Menu	38
Menu Functions	44
Setting the FOMA Card	46
Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack	48
Charging the FOMA Terminal	51
Checking the Battery Level	53
Turning the FOMA Terminal On/Off	54
Switching between Japanese and English	Select language 54
Setting the Default	Initial setting 55
Setting the Date and Time	Set time 55
Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number	Caller ID notification 56
Checking Your Own Phone Number	Own number 56

Component Names and Functions

In this manual, keys are represented as below icons.



* :The FOMA N701i terminal has a built-in antenna.

The styleplus comes with FOMA N701i. Note that the FOMA terminal with the styleplus is described in this manual.→P. 530

Size (mm)*1	Height 102 × Width 48 × Depth 23
Mass (g)*2	Approx. 112

*1 : Height and depth are for the FOMA terminal when folded.

*2 : When the battery pack is attached.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

■ Functions

1 Earpiece speaker

- Allows you to hear the other party's voice.

2 Front camera

- Used to shoot pictures (still images) and movies or send your video to the other party during a videophone call.

3 Display

4 Multi-function keys

Up key

- Moves the cursor or highlight upward (towards the reversed direction).
- Scrolls up the display. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
- Displays the phonebook menu screen.
- Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers.

Down key

- Moves the cursor or highlight downward.
- Scrolls down the display. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
- Displays the "Search phonebook" menu screen.
- Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers.

Left/Received call record key

- Moves the cursor to the left.
- Scrolls back the display to the previous screens by page.
- Displays the received call record. → P.74

Right/Redial key

- Moves the cursor to the right.
- Scrolls the display to the next screens by page.
- Displays the redial record. → P.64

Neuropointer key

- Executes an operation displayed on the software key placed on the bottom center of the display. → P.32
- How to use the Neuropointer. → P.32

5 Function key 1

- Executes an operation displayed on the software key placed on the bottom left side of the display. → P.32

6 Channel/Multi-key

- Displays the channel list screen on the standby screen. → P.334
- Displays the task menu when a task (function) is being used.

7 Home/Volume up/ key

- Connects to the site set in "Home URL" (P.231) easily using i-mode.
- Lights the display light for the indicator display when pressed with the FOMA terminal folded.
- Increases the earpiece volume during a call. → P.77
- Moves the cursor to the previous character assigned to the same key during character entry. → P.498
- Turns the light on when using a camera.
- Switches the indicator display from the telop display to the clock display.
- Scrolls back the display to the previous screens by page.

8 Send key

- Makes a voice call. → P.58
- Answers a voice call. → P.71
- Answers a videophone call with the substitute image. → P.94
- Switches the entered characters into upper or lower case. → P.507

9 Memo/Check/Volume down/ key

- Sets the "Manner mode" when a call is received and activates the "Record message". → P.84
- Plays recorded messages. → P.84
- Checks for missed calls and new mails with the FOMA terminal folded. → P.81
- Lowers the earpiece volume during a call. → P.77
- Takes pictures.
- Scrolls the display to the next screens by page. ( and ) are both referred to as side keys in this manual.)

10 Earphone/microphone terminal

- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch

(optional) is plugged in, hands-free operation is available. You can use a conventional earphone/microphone with switch by using the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 (optional).

11 /Driving mode key

- Enters "X", "http://" or other character strings. → P.500
- Enters the pause (p). → P.67

12 Videophone key

- Makes a videophone call. → P.89
- Answers a videophone call. → P.94
- Switches the substitute image/camera view while making a videophone call. → P.94

13 Function key 2

- Executes an operation displayed on the software key placed on the bottom right side of the display. → P.32

14 Menu key

- Displays the main menu. → P.38

15 Power/Hold/End of operation key

- Hold down 1 second or more to turn the power on. → P.54
- Hold down 2 seconds or more to turn the power off. → P.54
- Ends a call. → P.58
- Puts an incoming call on hold. → P.78

16 Back (clear) key

- Goes back to one step before.
- Puts a call on hold. → P.60
- Deletes the entered phone numbers or characters. → P.59

17 #/Manner key

- Enters "#" or other symbols. → P.500
- Sets the "Manner mode" when a call is received and activates the "Record message". → P.84

18 Dial key to

- Enters the phone number. → P.58
- Enters characters and numbers. → P.506

19 Mouthpiece/Mike

- Conveys your voice from here. Do not cover the mouthpiece while you are talking. This may prevent the other party from hearing your voice.
- Used as the microphone when the camera is used in the Movie mode and "Picture voice".

20 Back cover

21 Indicator display

- Tells you FOMA terminal condition by displaying messages, icons and animations.

22 Rear camera

- Used to shoot pictures (still images) and movies or send images such as scenery to the other party during a videophone call.

23 Light/Incoming call/Charge lamp

- Can be used to provide light when taking pictures.
- This flashes when a voice or videophone call comes in or when mail or Message Request/Free is received. The light turns red during charging.

24 Lens selector switch

- Switches the rear lens to  (macro lens) to scan information using Access reader or bar code reader. → P.172

25 Infrared data port

- Window used for sending and receiving infrared rays. → P.394

26 External connector

- Used to connect optional external devices to the FOMA terminal.

27 Charging terminals

28 Styleplus → P.530

29 Speaker

- Sounds such as the ring tone and voice of the other party during the hands-free mode are emitted from here.

30 miniSD memory card slot

- Slot for inserting the miniSD memory card. → P.380

31 Through-hole for strap

Functions that involve holding down keys for 1 second or more

The functions that are available by holding down each key for 1 second or more are as follows:

Key	Function	See Page	Key	Function	See Page
	Received address list display	P.297		Side keys setting (while the main menu is displayed)	P.162
	Sent address list display	P.297		Driving mode setting (while the standby screen is displayed)	P.79
	Display light on/off	P.136		Earpiece volume adjustment (while the standby screen is displayed or during a call)	P.77
	Enter "+" (standby screen, the phone numbers entering screen)	P.62		Voice memo recording (during a call)	P.424
				Photo mode screen (while the standby screen is displayed)	P.178
	Manner mode setting (while the standby screen is displayed or during a call)	P.130		Check new messages (while the standby screen is displayed)	P.235, 277
	Task menu display (while the standby screen is displayed)	P.408		i-αppli software list screen (while the standby screen is displayed)	P.322
	Standby screen (during multi task)	P.408		Change to the main screen (during videophone calls)	P.88, 91

How to use the software keys

To run a software key displayed at the bottom of the display, press the corresponding function key.

■ To run the software key ①

Press to run the software key displayed in ①.

① includes (Mode), (Edit), (Store), (Finish), (Play), (), etc.

■ To run the software key ②

Press to run the software key displayed in ②.

② includes (Select), (Set), (Play), (Change), etc.

■ To run the software key ③

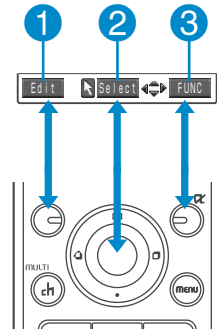
Press to run the software key displayed in ③.

③ includes (FUNC), (Exit), etc.

Press while (FUNC) is displayed to display the function menu.

→ P.42

*In this manual, operations related to the function keys are generally described with the software keys in the parenthesis, such as (Edit), (Select), and (FUNC).



How to use the Neuropointer

When is displayed at the bottom of the standby or another screen, slide the Neuropointer key to display the pointer (). Moving the pointer by sliding the Neuropointer key enables to quickly select an icon or item.

When the list screen or function menu spreads across multiple pages, you can scroll a page up and down with the Neuropointer.

● You can change the icon design () of the pointer. → P.140

● Scrolling a screen up or down with the Neuropointer

- 1 Slide  to display  ► Move the pointer to the bottom of its operating range

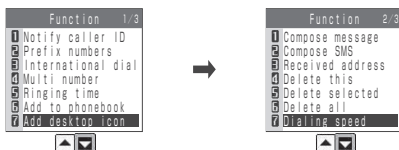
The pointer changes to .

- When the pointer is moved to the top

The pointer changes to .

- 2 Press 

The next page of the function menu appears.



- When displaying the previous page of function menu

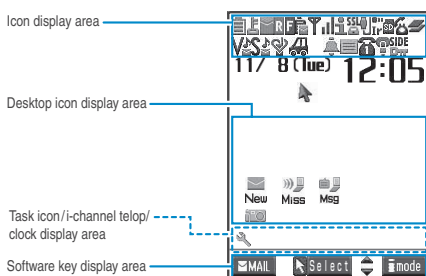
► Slide  to leftward and change  to  ► Press 

How to View the Display

The symbols (such as , , , etc.) displayed on the display and indicator display are referred to as icons.

- A calendar, etc. can be set to a display. → P.134

■ Display



Icon display area

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Displays the battery level. → P.53	 (Blue)	You have unread mail. → P.273
	Displayed while All lock is activated → P.155	 (Red)	Inbox is full. → P.273
	Displayed in Secret mode or Secret only mode → P.157		SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P.315
	Displayed while PIM lock is activated → P.161	 (Blue)	You have unread mail. SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P.315
	Displayed while Keypad dial lock is activated → P.163	 (Red)	Inbox is full. SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P.273, 315
	Displayed while Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret only mode are set at the same time → P.157, 163	 (Green)	You have unread Message Request. → P.233
	Displayed while Keypad dial lock and PIM lock are set at the same time → P.161, 163	 (Red)	Message Request is full. → P.234

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	You have unread Message Free. → P.233		In miniSD mode, connected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device → P.389
	Message Free is full. → P.234		In miniSD mode, connected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device → P.70, 390
	You have mail at the i-mode Center. → P.277		In miniSD mode, unconnected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device → P.70, 390
	Your mail storage at the i-mode Center is full. → P.277		Ir data exchange is in progress. → P.394
	Appears when you have mail stored at the i-mode Center and when the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". → P.276		Appears when you are using Ir remote control function. → P.400
	You have Message Request at the i-mode Center. → P.235		Appears when a miniSD memory card is inserted. → P.380
	Your Message Request at the i-mode Center is full. → P.235		Appears when the wrong type of miniSD memory card is inserted. → P.381
	You have Message Free at the i-mode Center. → P.235		Appears when you are using the miniSD reader/writer. → P.389
	Your Message Free at the i-mode Center is full. → P.235		Displays during a voice call. → P.58
	Signal strength → P.54		64K data communication is in progress. → P.469
	Displays when the FOMA is either out of the service area or when the radio wave is out of reach. → P.54		Displays the dialing speed of a videophone call. → P.89
	Displays in Self mode. → P.169		Changing between voice call and videophone call is in progress. → P.60, 93
	i-mode is activated. → P.212		Displays during Multi-tasking → P.409
	i-mode communication is in progress. → P.212		Displays when Vibrator is set. → P.128
	Packet communication is in progress. → P.469		Displays when Ring volume is set to "Silent". → P.77 Displays when the Mail/Msg. ring time is set to "OFF". → P.130
	Packet communication is in progress. (sending) → P.469		Displays in Manner mode. → P.130
	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving) → P.469		Displays when Remote observation is set. → P.102
	Packet communication is in progress. (sending data) → P.469		Displays in Driving mode. → P.79
	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving data) → P.469		Displays when Alarm is set. → P.410
	Displaying pages compatible with SSL. → P.215		Displays when Record message is set. → P.82
	In Communication mode, unconnected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device → P.390		Displays the number of voice mail messages. → P.446
	In Communication mode, connected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device → P.460		
	In Communication mode, connected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device → P.70, 390		Displays when Display light is set to "OFF". → P.136
	In Communication mode, unconnected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device → P.70, 390		Displays when Side keys guard is set to "ON". → P.162
	In miniSD mode, unconnected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device → P.390		

Desktop icon display area

Icon	Description
	Icons providing information → P.145
	Pasted desktop icons → P.143

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.380

Task icon/i-channel telop/clock display area

Icon	Description
	Task icon → P.146
i-channel telop	Displaying the telop for i-channel → P.333
Clock display	Displaying the date and time on the standby screen → P.143 (On other screens, time is displayed regardless of "Clock display" setting.)

Software key display area

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Displays the functions of software keys for the function key 1  . → P.32		Displays when each direction key of the Multi-function keys  is available.
	Displays when the Neuropointer is available. → P.32		Displays the functions of software keys for the function key 2  . → P.32
	Displays the functions of software keys for the Neuropointer key  . → P.32		

Neuropointer display

Icon	Description
	Pointer (Blue, white) → P.140
	Scrolls a page by pointer → P.33

* : The default pointer icons are shown.

Indicator display



Icon display area

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Displays the battery level → P.53		You have unread mail. /SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P.315
	All lock is set. → P.155		Inbox is full. /SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P.273, 315
	Secret mode is set, Secret only mode is set. → P.157		You have mail at the i-mode Center. → P.277
	PIM lock is set. → P.161		Your mail storage at the i-mode Center is full. → P.277
	Keypad dial lock is set. → P.163		You have mail stored at the i-mode Center and when the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". → P.276
	Keypad dial lock and Secret mode or Secret only mode are set at the same time. → P.157, 163		You have Message Request at the i-mode Center. → P.235
	Keypad dial lock and the PIM lock are set at the same time. → P.161, 163		Your Message Request at the i-mode Center is full. → P.235
	You have unread mail. → P.273		You have Message Free at the i-mode Center. → P.235
	Inbox is full. → P.273		Your Message Free at the i-mode Center is full. → P.235
	SMS space in FOMA card (UIM) is full. → P.315		

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Radio reception level → P.54		In Communication mode, unconnected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device → P.390
	The FOMA terminal is either out of the service area or the radio waves are out of reach. → P.54		In Communication mode, connected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device → P.460
	Self mode is set. → P.169		In Communication mode, connected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device → P.70, 390
	i-mode is activated. → P.212		In Communication mode, unconnected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device → P.70, 390
	i-mode communication is in progress. → P.212		In miniSD mode, unconnected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device → P.390
	Packet communication is in progress. → P.469		In miniSD mode, connected to USB cable and unconnected to a hands-free compatible device → P.389
	Packet communication is in progress. (sending) → P.469		In miniSD mode, connected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device → P.70, 390
	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving) → P.469		In miniSD mode, unconnected to USB cable and connected to a hands-free compatible device → P.70, 390
	Packet communication is in progress. (sending data) → P.469		Ir exchange is in progress. → P.394
	Packet communication is in progress. (receiving data) → P.469		Ir remote control function is used. → P.400
	Displays pages compatible with SSL. → P.215		During a voice call → P.58
	Side keys guard is set to "ON". → P.162		64K data communication is in progress. → P.470
	A miniSD memory card is inserted. → P.380		Displays the connection speed of a video-phone call → P.89
	Wrong type of miniSD memory card is inserted. → P.380		Changing between voice call and videophone call is in progress. → P.60, 93
	The miniSD reader/writer is used. → P.389		Manner mode is set. → P.130

NOTE

- The display for this FOMA terminal adopts state-of-the-art technology; some dots (points) may not light up while others may constantly light up due to its characteristics. Note that this phenomenon is not a failure.
- Press to check the name of the icon displayed on the screen.

How to View the Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display)

The indicator display notifies you of incoming call/mail or alarm notification in various forms such as messages, images and animations so that you can immediately check the information without opening your FOMA terminal.

- "Setting the Indicator Display Mode" → P.135
- The i-channel information can be displayed on the indicator display using "i-Channel setting" (P.335).

Display examples

■ Clock display

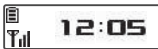
Displays the clock during standby. You can select from the following 5 types of display.



Clock1 (size big)



Clock2 (size big)



Clock3 (size middle)



Clock4 (size middle)



Clock5 (size small)

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.380

■ During an incoming call display

Displays the phone number or name of an incoming call.



When the caller sends the caller ID



When the caller's name is stored in your phonebook



When the caller does not send the caller ID



When the caller dialed from a payphone

■ During a call/During an outgoing call display

Displays the type of call during a call. Displayed when the FOMA terminal is opened.



During a voice call



During a videophone call



During remote observation



During an outgoing call

■ Alarm notification

For alarm notification of "Alarm clock", "Schedule", "ToDo" or "Notify cost limit", an alarm notification animation corresponding to the function appears.



"Alarm clock"



"Schedule"/"ToDo"



"Notify cost limit"

■ Receiving a new mail

When "Mail" is set to "ON", after "Received message" is displayed, the sent date and time, the sender and title are displayed.



■ Data communication

Displays the type of data communication.



Packet communication



64K data communication



Infrared communication



OBEX communication

■ When you are using the camera



Camera is operating



Movie is being recorded

■ When you received new i-channel information



If set to "Indicator display ON" (P.335), the i-channel information is displayed as telops twice.

Checking the caller or sender

If you press **[D]** (Home), you can check for missed calls or new mails.

- When using the tool group function (P.408), you cannot check missed calls with the indicator display.

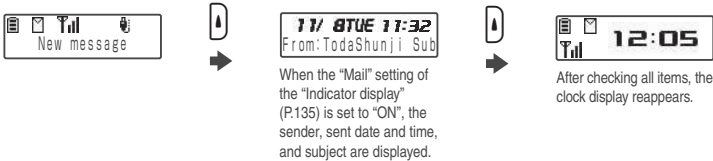
Missed call display

You can check up to three missed calls.



New mail display

When you receive two mails or more at the same time, you can check up to three new mails.



NOTE

- Press **[D]** (Home) with the FOMA terminal folded to turn the display light up. It is useful for checking the current time in the dark.
- In power saver mode, the indicator display is blank. Press **[D]** (Home) to display the indicator display again.

Selecting the Menu

You can run, set, and check the FOMA terminal's functions in a variety of ways. Mainly you can either select a function from the main menu or access the function by pressing the keys for the menu numbers. You can also add frequently used functions to the "original menu" to run them quickly.

- The frequently used menu such as Mail menu (P.252) or i-mode menu (P.212) can be displayed easily from the standby screen. In the standby screen, press **[M]** (**[MAIL]**) to display Mail menu, and press **[i]** (**[i-mode]**) to display i-mode menu.

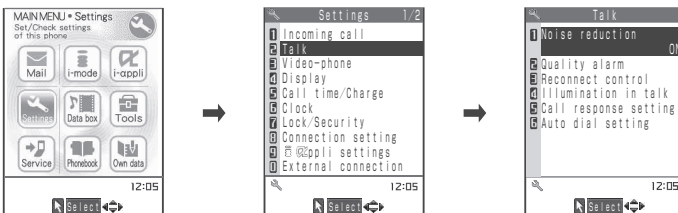
Selecting functions from the main menu

The functions of the FOMA terminal are sorted by function. → P.44

You can select these functions from the main menu displayed by pressing **[M]**.

<Example: Setting flashing color of "Illumination in talk">

- 1 Press **[M]** (Menu) ► Use **[4]** to highlight **[Settings]** (Settings) and then press **[Enter]** (Select) ► Use **[2]** to highlight "Talk" and then press **[Enter]** (Select)



● To scroll items continuously

- Press and hold down **[4]**

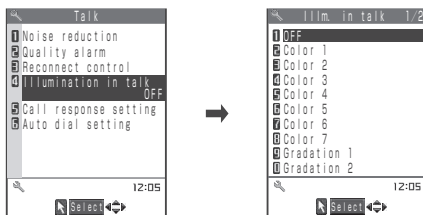
■ To use the Neuropointer key

"How to use the Neuropointer" → P.32

■ If you do not press any keys for 15 seconds while the main menu is displayed

The main menu completes and returns to the previous screen.

- 2 Use  to highlight "Illumination in talk", and then press  (Select)



NOTE

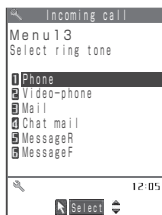
- You can set to not display the guidance of the main menu in "Menu display set". → P.137

Accessing functions by selecting menu numbers

You can access functions by pressing the keys pre-assigned to the menu numbers. → P.520

<Example: To access "Select ring tone">

- 1 Press , , and  sequentially

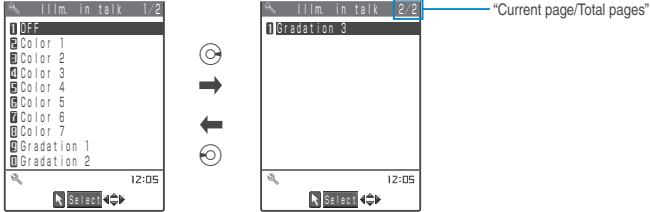


The basic operations on the screens

When items appear in multiple pages

1 Press to display other pages

To switch the page, press  (or ) for the previous page, press  (or ) for the next page.

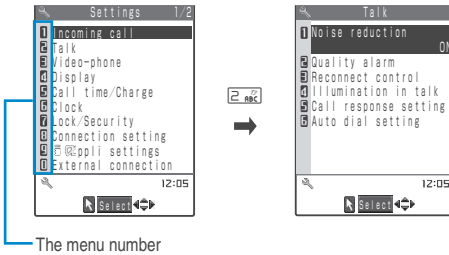


■ To display other pages using

Pressing  displays the previous page when the highlight is located at the top of the list, and pressing  displays the next page when the highlight is located at the bottom of the list.

Using the dial key to select items

1 Press to corresponding to the menu numbers



Selecting "YES/NO" or "ON/OFF"

1 Press to move the frame to the item that you want to select, and then press (Select)



To select an image on the Picture list screen

- Press  to move the frame to the image that you want to select, and then press  (Disp.)



Entering a security code

Depending upon the function, before the detail screen is displayed, a security code screen may be displayed. To display the detail screen for that function, enter a security code. → P.152

- Enter a 4 to 8 digit security code, and press  (Set)



The numbers of the entered security code is displayed as “_”.

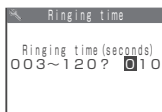
The detail screen of the function is displayed when the security code is successfully entered.

■ If the entered security code is incorrect

A message notifying that the security code is wrong is displayed. Re-enter the security code from the beginning.

Entering numbers

- Enter numbers by pressing  to 



To enter a 1-digit number or 2-digit number in a 3-digit number entry screen, press  twice or once before entering a number.

■ To enter “1”

▶   

■ To enter “12”

▶    

Marking a checkbox (selecting multiple items)

- Press  to move the frame to the item that you want to select, and press  (Select)

The checkbox changes from ☐ to ☒. This is the status of a selected checkbox. Press  (Select) to toggle ☐ and ☒.

When “Finish” appears as a software key, pressing  (Finish) selects the item selected.

When “FUNC” appears as a software key, pressing  (FUNC) allows you to use “Select all” or “Release all”.



To cancel operations, and to return to the standby screen



Press to cancel the last operation, such as when you select menu item incorrectly. Though the previous screen appears generally, the other screens may be displayed depending on the function.



Press to complete operations such as settings and to return to the standby screen. Though the function is completed and the standby screen is displayed generally, the other screens may appear depending on the current displayed screen and function. For example, the screen for the other running function would be displayed during Multi-tasking.

If you press during setting operation, the setting operation is canceled and the standby screen comes back. A confirmation message may appear depending on the setting being operated.

Calling up the function from your original menu

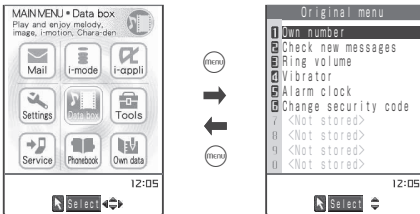
You can easily call up the functions by using the "Original menu".

- The contents of original menu is changed with "Original menu". → P.139
- The original menu is displayed in "List".

1

Press ► Press

Pressing switches between the main menu and the original menu.

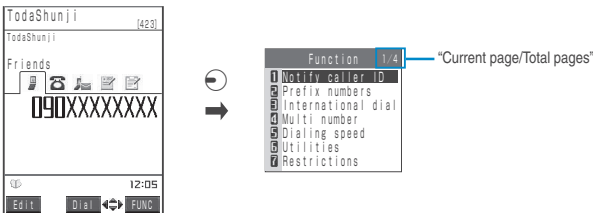


NOTE

- When you return to the standby screen from the original menu, or when you call up a function from the original menu, press to display the original menu.
- If no function is stored in the original menu, a message appears, which asks whether you store functions to the original menu or not.

Function menu

When operating a function that can store, edit or delete, " (FUNC)" appears as a software key. Press to display the function menu.



- The displayed function menu differs depending on the function in operation or settings.
- You may not be able to select some items in function menu due to settings or other conditions. Unavailable items in function menu are grayed out.

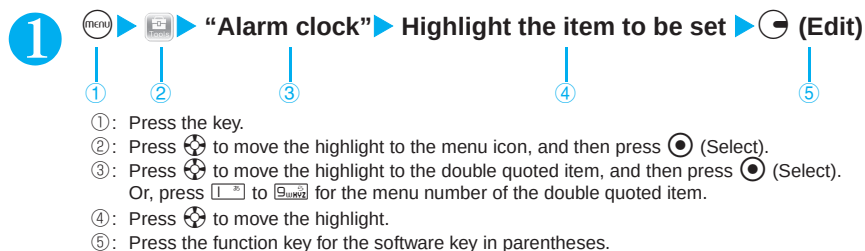
To select a function menu on the list screen

In the function menu on the list screen, either data highlighted in the list or all the data in the list is targeted by the function. For example, "Delete this" targets a highlighted data, and "Delete all" targets all the data. When you select a function menu which targets one data in the list, such as "Delete this", highlight the data, and then press (FUNC).

Instructions for menu operations

In this manual, instructions for menu operations are briefly described in almost all cases as follows:

The example of description of operations and the actual operations



Notation

■ Abbreviation of in the “Select” and “Set” operations

- When a target function is selected from icons or list, such as example ② and ③ above, (Select) is abbreviated.
- The cases described such as “Select an item” and “Enter your security code”, (Select) and (Set) are abbreviated in the same way.
- * When you are supposed to move to the next step without pressing (Select), “Highlight” is used, such as example ④ above.

■ The operations by menu number are preferred

- For some operations, you can operate the FOMA terminal in several ways. In these cases, this manual describes the operations by menu number (P.39).
“Menu Function List” → P.520
- When you select a function from the icons on the main menu, refer to “Menu Functions” (P.44).

■ Function menu on the function list screen

- In the function menu, the highlighted item in the list is targeted in many cases. The description of “target” is abbreviated in the descriptions for the function menu on the list screen.

<Example: An excerpt from the function menu of the received mail list screen>

Item	Description
Delete	Deletes one mail message.

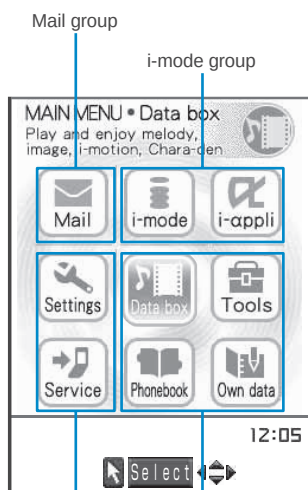
The “mail message” in this example is a received mail message highlighted on the list screen.

■ Abbreviation of the descriptions after operations are finished

- The descriptions for the operations after finishing function operations are abbreviated. press to return to the standby screen, or press to return to the previous screen.

Menu Functions

To set or check various functions with the FOMA terminal, you can call up each function from the main menu. Press  to display the main menu. The structure of the menus is as follows.



< Mail group >

● Mail

Read sent/received mails, compose and send new mail.

Mail
Inbox
Outbox
Draft
Compose message
Chat mail
Compose SMS
Check new message
Receive option
Check new SMS
Template
Mail settings

< i-mode group >

● i-mode

Use i-mode service to access site, etc.

i-mode menu
i Menu
Bookmark
Screen memo
Last URL
Go to location
i-Channel
Message
Check new message
Client certificate
i-mode settings

● i-appli

Find useful applications.

i-appli
Software list
Auto start set
i@appli info

< Tool group >

● Data box

Enjoy picture, music, etc.

Data box
My picture
i-motion
Melody
Chara-den

● Phonebook

Add data to phonebook, search data in phonebook, or change the settings.

Phonebook
Add to phonebook
Search phonebook
No. of phonebook
Utilities
Restrictions
Group setting

● Own data

Manage and check your personal data and history.

Own data
Own number
Received calls
Dialed calls
Mail member
Chat group
Common phrases
Own dictionary
DL dictionary

● Tool

Find useful functions such as camera, alarm and data exchange.

Tool
Camera
Schedule
Alarm clock
To do
Text memo
Calculator
Play/frame msg.
Record message
Voice memo
Voice announce
Receive ir data
UIM operation
Forwarding image
Access reader
Bar code reader
SD-PIM
Dictionary

●Settings

Change the settings to customize your FOMA terminal.

Settings
Incoming call
Talk
Video-phone
Display
Call time/Charge
Clock
Lock/Security
Connection setting
Personal settings
External connection
Other settings

●Network service

Specify and confirm the settings of network service.

Network service
Check messages
Caller ID notification
Voice mail
Call waiting
Call forwarding
Nuisance call barring
Caller ID request
Arrival call act
Set arrival act
Remote access
Dual network
English guidance
Additional service
Service dialing number
Multi number*

Incoming call
Ring volume
Select ring tone
SRS WOW
Vibrator
Illumination
Manner mode set
Disp. PH-book image
Answer setting
Fold setting
Mail/Msg. ring time
Hinging time
Info notice setting

Lock/Security
All lock
PIM lock
Self mode
Keypad dial lock
Reject unknown
Call setting w/o ID
Change security code
PIN setting
Secret mode
Secret only mode
Scanning function
Remote all lock

Talk
Noise reduction
Quality alarm
Reconnect control
Illumination in talk
Call response setting
Auto dial setting

Connection setting
Set connection timeout
Set check new message
Host selection
SMS center selection
Certificate
Certificate host

Video-phone
Visual preference
Camera image sending
Select image
Voice call auto switch
Remote observation
Disp. setting VP
Indicate V-phone

Mobile settings
Disp. software info
End stand-by display

External connection
USB mode setting
Earphone
Automatic answer

Display
Display setting
Display light
Display design
Indicator display
Font
Desktop icon
Select language
Original menu
Menu display set
Viewer settings
Automatic display
Icons

Other settings
Style mode
Keypad sound
Charge sound
Battery level
Side keys guard
Character input method
Record display set
Pause dial
Sub-address
Prefix setting
Int'l dial setting
PLMN setting
Neuropointer
Select icons setting
Reset
Initialize
Software update

Call time/Charge
Call data
Notify cost limit
Reset call duration
Auto reset all cost
Call time display

Clock
Set time
Clock display
Alarm setting

*: The service is not provided as of August, 2005.

"Multi Tasking"—>P.408

The FOMA terminal supports "Multi task" that enables you to use multiple functions at the same time, up to three functions from the main menu groups. While the multi task function is used, the in-use groups of the menus are enclosed with a box.



In-use groups are enclosed with a box.

Setting the FOMA Card

The FOMA card is an IC card that contains private information such as your phone number.

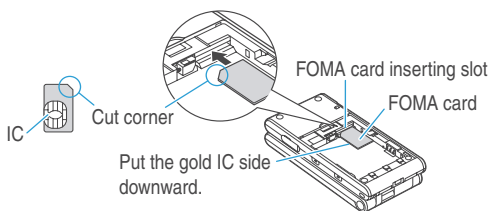
Inserting/removing the FOMA card

Before inserting or removing the FOMA card, first turn the power off and remove the battery pack.
→P.48

Note also that when you try to insert or remove the FOMA card, keep the FOMA terminal folded and held in your hand.

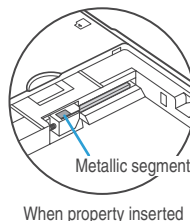
Inserting

- 1 Put the IC side downward and put the FOMA card into the card inserting slot as shown in the illustration**



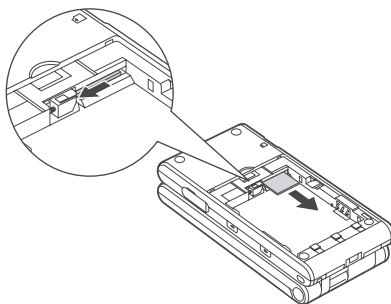
- 2 Insert the FOMA card until it is fixed**

Check that the metallic segment on the lock lever is located at the left edge as shown in the illustration.



Removing

- 1 Slide the lock which secures the FOMA card**



- 2 The FOMA card is ejected a little. Carefully pull it out straight**

NOTE

- "FOMA" and the reception level are not displayed when the FOMA card is not inserted.
- Note that using excessive force to insert or remove the FOMA card could damage the card.
- If you touch the FOMA card when you slide the lock, the FOMA card may not be ejected enough to be pulled out. In this case, insert the FOMA card and slide the lock again.
- Take care not to lose the FOMA card after removing it from the FOMA terminal.
- Take care not to touch or scratch on the IC part of the FOMA terminal.
- If you do not insert the FOMA card correctly, or if there is a problem on the FOMA card, error messages (P.538) appear.

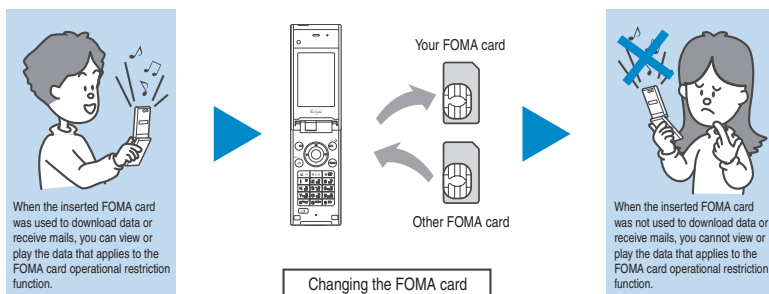
PIN codes for the FOMA card (UIM)

You can set two PIN (Personal Identification Number) codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, for the FOMA card (UIM). → P.153

FOMA card operational restriction function

The FOMA card operational restriction function is a security function to protect your data and files. When you download data from i-mode sites or websites or receive files attached to i-mode mail, the FOMA card operational restriction function is automatically set. Data and files with this function set are accessible only when the FOMA card (UIM) used for downloading such data or file is inserted. If you replace the FOMA card (UIM) with another one, the “” mark is attached with data and files with this function set.

- Target data and files for the FOMA card operational restriction function are as follows:
 - i-αpli, melody, image, Chara-den, downloaded dictionary downloaded from i-mode sites or websites
 - i-motion downloaded from i-mode sites or websites
 - Screen memo containing melody, image, i-motion, Chara-den, downloaded dictionary
 - File (melody/image) attached to or pasted in i-mode mail in Inbox
 - File (melody/image/i-motion, except for data created or shot with the FOMA terminal) attached to i-mode mail in Outbox/Draft
 - Message Request/Free with attached or pasted file (melody/image)
 - Images inserted into the message of Deco-mail.
- You can move or delete data and files with this function set even when other FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.
- Data received via the Infrared data exchange function, data transmission (OBEX) function or a miniSD memory card, edited images (no file restriction) and pictures (still images)/movies shot with the built-in camera are not targeted by this function.



NOTE

- If the FOMA card operational restriction function is set and you insert someone else's FOMA card (UIM), you will not be able to use settings such as “Display setting” or “Select ring tone” with data or files with this function set.
- After data or a file with this function set is set to “Display setting” or “Select ring tone”, if you remove your FOMA card (UIM) or replace it with another one, these settings are reset to the default settings.
- Pre-installed i-αpli can be subjected to this function when it is upgraded or re-downloaded from a site after deleted.
- If you set FOMA card operational restriction functions, you cannot select items such as highlighted text in an i-mode mail detail screen and use it to launch an i-αpli.
- The information such as news you receive with the i-channel service will be deleted if you replace the FOMA card (UIM) with another one.
- When you switch the FOMA card (UIM) to the other i-channel compatible terminal, the telop is turned off. Also, information may not be updated automatically. Press keys for i-channel and display the channel list screen to receive the latest information. In that case, the telop is turned on.

FOMA card functional differences

There are 2 versions in the FOMA card (UIM). Please note that there are the following functional differences when you use different FOMA cards (UIM) on the FOMA terminal.

Feature	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green)
Max number of digits for phone number to be stored in the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook	20 digits	26 digits
User certificate operation to use FirstPass	Not available	Available
WORLD WING	Not available	Available
Service dialing number	Not available	Available

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the FOMA international roaming service that enables you to make and receive calls in overseas countries with the same mobile phone number as you use in Japan by inserting "FOMA card (green)" in an overseas mobile phone (GSM) for the service.

A separate subscription is required to use WORLD WING. Please consult the back cover of this manual for more details regarding applying.

* Some payment plans may be unavailable.

Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack

- Be sure to turn the FOMA terminal off before replacing the battery pack.

Attaching the battery pack

1 Remove the back cover

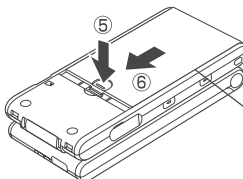
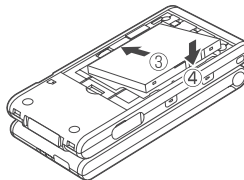
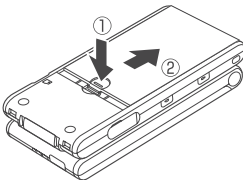
Press the catch on the back cover in direction ① and slide the back cover in direction ② to remove the cover.

2 Attach the battery pack

With the battery warnings on the battery pack facing upwards, attach the battery pack in direction ③. Make sure that the metallic contacts on the battery pack and the FOMA terminal (Phone) touch, and then press the battery down in direction ④.

3 Re-attach the back cover

Lift the back cover about 3 mm and align it to the groove in the FOMA terminal (Phone). Press the catch on the back cover in direction ⑤ and slide the back cover in direction ⑥. Then press the cover until the catch clicks shut.



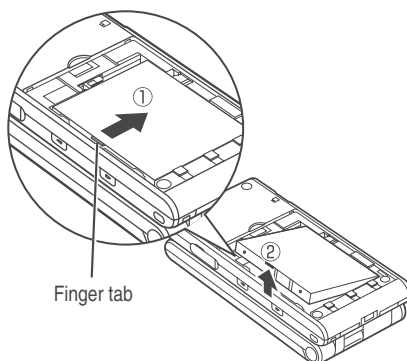
Make sure the back cover and the FOMA terminal (Phone) are securely attached.

Removing the battery pack

1 Remove the back cover

2 Remove the battery pack

Press the tab on the side of the battery pack in direction ① and then lift upwards in direction ② to remove the battery pack.



NOTE

- Note that using excessive force to load the battery pack could damage the charging terminals in the FOMA terminal that connect to the battery pack.
- Do not use excessive force when the tip of the rear cover is inserted into the FOMA terminal. The tip of the rear cover may be broken.
- For details, refer to the Battery Pack N10 instructions.

Getting the best out of your battery pack

To maintain full performance of the FOMA terminal, use the specified Battery Pack N10 for the FOMA terminal.

■ Battery life

- Batteries have a limited service life. Like all rechargeable batteries, the amount of usable time decreases every time the battery is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as it did when new, it is time to replace it with a new one.
- In general, the service life of a battery pack is about one year. Note that it may be shortened depending on the frequency of use.



To protect the environment, take used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, the agency, the recycle shop, etc.

■ Battery pack charging

- For details, refer to the manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01 (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01 (optional).
- To charge the battery pack using the AC adapter or DC adapter, the battery pack must be attached to the FOMA terminal.
- You can receive calls during charging if the FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during the call and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time will also increase if the "Display light" for "Charging" is set to "All time ON".
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply an excessive force.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with the FOMA terminal turned on.

If you charge the battery pack for a long period with the FOMA terminal turned on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short time and the low-voltage alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then set it again for recharging.

Battery usage time

(The battery duration varies depending on the charging time and the deterioration of the battery.)

Continuous talk time	Continuous standby time
Voice call: Approx. 130 min. Videophone call: Approx. 80 min.	Stationary: Approx. 430 hours Moving: Approx. 350 hours

- The continuous talk time is an estimated time you can talk while radio waves are strong enough to send and receive.
- The continuous standby time is an estimated time when radio waves are strong enough to receive properly with the FOMA terminal folded. Note that the actual continuous talk (communication)/standby time may decrease by as much as half depending on the following conditions: the battery level, the function settings, ambient environment such as temperature, the status of radio waves (out of service area or weak radio waves). Using i-mode will decrease the talk (communication) and standby times. Even when you do not talk on the phone or use i-mode, creating i-mode mail or starting up downloaded i-appli and i-appli standby screen will also decrease the talk (communication) and standby times.
- The continuous standby time in stationary is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and standing still while radio waves can be normally received.
- The continuous standby time in moving is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded under condition of "stationary", "moving", and "out of service area" within the area where radio waves can be normally received.
- Loading the miniSD memory card, performing data communication or multi access or using the camera or the light will also shorten the talk (communication) and standby times.

NOTE

● If the battery pack is out of charge or you have removed the battery pack, you may be unable to save images or movies.

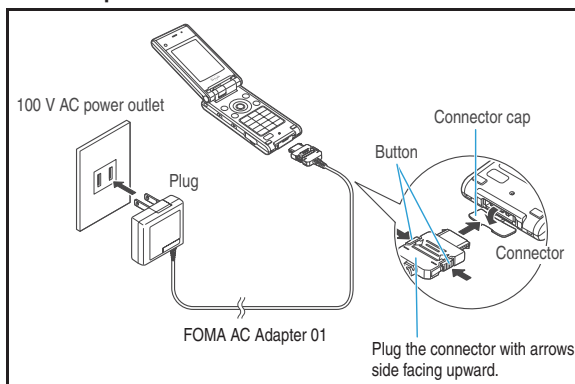
* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

Charging the FOMA Terminal

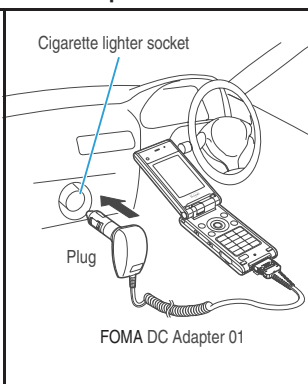
- You can charge the FOMA terminal with the AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional). You can also charge the FOMA terminal with the AC adapter and desktop holder (optional) .

Charging the battery pack with the AC/DC adapter

■ AC adapter



■ DC adapter



- 1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal
- 2 Plug the AC/DC adapter connector horizontally into the FOMA terminal's external connector
- 3 Plug the AC adapter into the outlet
Plug DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket in your car

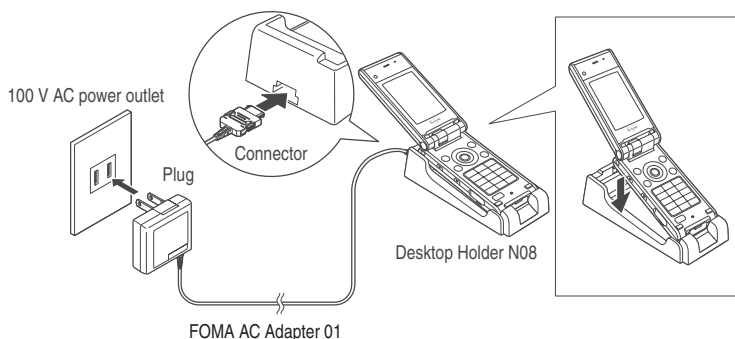
Charging starts.

Standard charging time

Approx. 120 min.

- 4 When charging is completed, remove the AC/DC adapter connector from the FOMA terminal while pressing the connector button
- 5 Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet
Unplug DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in your car
- 6 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

Charging the battery pack with the desktop holder



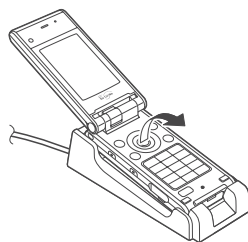
- 1** Plug the AC adapter connector into the terminal on the rear of the desktop holder in the direction as shown above
- 2** Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet
- 3** Place the FOMA terminal firmly in the desktop holder as shown above

Charging starts.

Standard charging time

Approx. 120 min.

- 4** After charging ends, hold down the desktop holder, grip both sides of the FOMA terminal and lift it up in the direction of the arrow from the holder



NOTE

- The battery pack cannot be charged separately. Always charge the battery pack while it is loaded in the FOMA terminal.
- If the battery runs out or the power is turned off with full data in the phonebook, etc., the charge lamp may not glow right away, but the battery charge has started.
- The charge lamp lights red during charging. The charge lamp turns off when charging ends. If the FOMA terminal is turned on, " " flashes during charging and " " lights when charging ends.
- Turning the FOMA terminal on allows you to receive calls even while the battery pack is charging. (This will extend the charging time longer than the standard.)
- If you turn the FOMA terminal on, the FOMA terminal sounds the "Charge sound" when charging starts or ends. Note that you cannot hear the "Charge sound" when the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode or Driving mode etc. → P.129

<AC/DC adapter>

- When the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal (Phone) and " " on the display disappears, and the message "Charge unusual Stop charge" is displayed, disconnect the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter or DC adapter and remove the battery pack. Then set them again for recharging. If the same error occurs again, there may be a problem or fault on the AC adapter or DC adapter. Contact a NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.
- The FOMA AC adapter 01 is only suitable for use with 100 V AC power supplies.
- The DC adapter is exclusively for negative-grounded vehicles. Never use it in positive-grounded vehicles.

NOTE

- The DC adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows and you need to replace it, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items and replacement fuses can be purchased at your local car accessory shop, etc.

<Desktop holder>

- Set the FOMA terminal firmly in its desktop holder. Also, take care not to trap the strap.

Checking the Battery Level

The indicated battery level is reference only.

Checking the battery level with icon

When the FOMA terminal is turned on, the icon indicating the remaining battery level is automatically displayed.



 (green): Full charge

 (green): Low charge

 (red) : Almost empty

Checking the battery level with sound and animation

The current battery level is indicated by sound and animation.

1



The check screen is displayed, and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level animation disappears in about three seconds.

"3 short beeps" : Full charge

"2 short beeps" : Low charge

"1 short beep" : Almost empty

NOTE

- The beeps do not sound when "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF" or in the Manner mode.

When the battery runs out



The screen as shown on the left flashes and the low-voltage alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about one minute. To stop this alarm, press any key other than  (Home) or  (Memo/Check).

NOTE

- During a call, the Recharge battery screen above is displayed and 3 short beeps sound. Note that the call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power turns off in about one minute.
- During setting to "Manner mode", when manner mode operation is set to "Manner mode", "Super silent", or "OFF" for "LVA tone" in "Original", no low-voltage alarm sounds.

Turning the FOMA Terminal On/Off

- When you start using the FOMA terminal for the first time (or if it has been left unused for a long period), charge the battery. Make sure that you use the specified AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) for charging.
- Date and time are not set when you purchase the FOMA terminal. Set them in "Set time". → P.55

Turning the FOMA terminal on

- Before turning the FOMA terminal on, make sure that the FOMA card is inserted correctly. → P.46
- The "FOMA" icon appears on the upper right of the screen when you turn the FOMA terminal on.

1 (1 second or longer)

The standby screen or initial settings screen appears. If you have just attached the battery pack and you turn the FOMA terminal back on immediately after turning it off, the "Wait a minute" message may be displayed for a short time.

■ When "FOMA" appears

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move to a place where the radio reception level indication such as "FOMA" appears. The reception level for the FOMA terminal is as follows:

FOMA → FOMA → FOMA

■ When the PIN1 code entry set is set to "ON"

The PIN1 code entry screen appears. → P.152

■ When "All reset all cost" is set to "ON"

The PIN2 code entry screen appears. → P.152

■ If the Initial settings screen appears

Specify the initial settings. → P.55



Turning the FOMA terminal off

1 (2 seconds or longer)

The shutdown screen appears and the power is turned off.

NOTE

- Signal strength is not stable in calls made while moving. Due to the nature of digital transmissions, calls may end suddenly. Wherever possible, you should always ensure that "FOMA" is displayed when using the FOMA terminal.
- After turning the FOMA terminal off, wait a few minutes before turning the FOMA terminal back on.

<Select language>

Switching between Japanese and English

Default setting
Japanese

You can switch between Japanese and English for displaying the function names or messages on the screen or indicator display.

- The setting for "Select language" is stored not on the FOMA terminal (Phone) but on the FOMA card (UIM).

1 "English"

■ To change from Japanese to English

▶ "English"



Japanese

■ To change from English to Japanese

▶ "日本語"



English

You can switch announcement language between Japanese and English for outgoing and incoming calls in some announcements. → P.452

<Initial setting>

Setting the Default

Turn the FOMA terminal on and you can set "Set time", "Change security code", "Keypad sound" and "Neuropointer" ("Simple" only) as initial value.

- After you set a function, that function's setting screen is no longer displayed.
- After you set all functions, the initial setting screen is no longer displayed. The initial settings screen also does not appear if you run "Reset" when the initial settings screen is not shown.
- When "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON", the PIN1 code entry screen appears when you turn the FOMA terminal on. Enter the correct PIN1 code to display the initial setting screen. → P.153

1 Initial setting screen ► "YES"

2 Set time

Setting time → P.55

3 Change security code

The default setting is "0000".

"Changing Your Security Code" → P.152

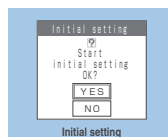
4 Set the keypad sound

Keypad sound → P.129

5 Set speed of the neuropointer

Only the basic settings for the neuropointer settings can be set.

Neuropointer → P.140



NOTE

- The initial setting screen is not displayed while All lock or Keypad dial lock is set.
- If specification of the initial settings is interrupted by you receive a call or press or , the functions for which settings have been completed remain valid.
- You can also specify separate settings for individual functions.

<Set time>

Setting the Date and Time

No date or time is set by default. After setting the date and time in "Set time", the date and time you set appears on displays such as the standby screen and indicator display.

- This function allows you to set the date and time between 00:00 on January 1, 2004 and 23:59 on December 31, 2037. The date and time will not be updated after 23:59 on December 31, 2037.
- If you set the clock time, you will be able to use functions to manage the date and time such as "Alarm clock" and "Schedule".
- Ensure that the correct date and time are set on the FOMA terminal.
- You can set the clock time in the initial setting. → P.55

<Example: Setting November 8, 2005, 12:05>

1 ► Enter the year, month, date and time (24-hour format)



Press to move the highlight, and then enter the numbers with the dial keys.
Press , , , , , , , , , , and .

NOTE

- If you enter the date and time outside the scope of this FOMA terminal, the date and time are not set. Enter the correct date and time again.
- You can set the date and time during a call.
- If you do not set the correct date and time, you cannot use functions such as the SSL communication (authentication) function, the i-appli automatic run function and i-appli DX, you cannot acquire i-motion with the replay limit and period, and you cannot use the automatic update function of the i-channel information.
- The FOMA terminal incorporates a built-in backup battery. The date and time you set are retained by the built-in backup battery, so the settings are not lost when you replace the battery pack. However, the date and time may not be held if the battery pack is removed for two weeks or more. In this case, charge the FOMA terminal, then set the date and time again. Charging the battery pack also charges the backup battery.

<Caller ID notification>

Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number

Default setting: OFF

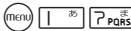
Subscription: Unnecessary

Monthly charge: Free

The FOMA terminal can send your phone number to the other party's phone when you make a call. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.

- You cannot operate the Caller ID notification service when the "📞" icon is displayed.
- This function is available only when the other party's phone is capable of displaying the caller ID.
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, hang up the phone. Then set "Activate" to "ON" and place the call again.

1



Select any item:

Item	Description	
Activate	Network security code → P.152	
	ON	▶ Enter the Network security code
	OFF	▶ Enter the Network security code
Status request	▶ Check the notify caller ID setting ▶ "OK"	

NOTE

- You can also set the notify caller ID to ON or OFF when you dial a phone number or display it from the "Phonebook", "Redial" or "Received calls". → P.59

<Own number>

Checking Your Own Phone Number

You can display and check your phone number (own number) stored in your FOMA card (UIM).

1



NOTE

- By default, you can display only own number.
- Your personal information (name, home phone number, home address and mail address, etc.) can be stored. How to store and display your data → P.422
- An i-mode mail address can be checked in the i-mode menu ▶ "Menu" ▶ "ENGLISH" ▶ "Options" ▶ "Mail Settings" ▶ "Confirm Mail Address".

● Making/Receiving Phone Calls

■ Making Phone Calls

Making a Call	58
Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call (Caller)	60
Making International Calls	WORLD CALL 61
Dialing a Previously Dialed Number	Redial/Dialed calls 64
Notifying/Withholding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls	66
Sending Push Signals Quickly	Pause dial 67
Setting Prefix Numbers	Prefix setting 68
Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls	Sub-address 69
Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection	Reconnect control 69
Blocking Out Ambient Noise	Noise reduction 69
Switching to Hands-free Operation	Hands-free 70
Making Hands-free Calls in the Car	In-car Hands-free 70

■ Receiving Phone Calls

Receiving a Call	71
Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call	72
Using the Dial Keys to Receive a Call	Answer setting 73
Ending/Holding Calls with the FOMA Terminal Folded	Fold setting 74
Using the Received Calls	Received calls 74
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume	Volume 77
Adjusting the Ring Volume	Ring volume 77

■ Settings For When You Cannot Take Calls

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately	On hold 78
Setting the Hold Tone	Call response setting 78
Blocking Calls When You Are Driving	Driving mode 79
Checking Missed Calls	Info notice setting 81
Having the Caller Leave a Message	Record message 82
Having Callers Leave a Message During an Incoming Call	Quick message 84
Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos	84

Making a Call

Use this procedure to dial a phone number and make a voice call.

1 Dial the phone number starting with the other party's area code

"Phone number input screen" appears.

Always start by entering the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code — Local code — Phone number

A number of up to 80 digits can be entered for making a call although the numbers disappear from the display one by one from the beginning if a number of more than 26 digits is input.

■ To call to a mobile phone

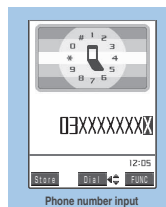
090-XXXX-XXXX

or

080-XXXX-XXXX

■ To call to a PHS phone

070-XXXX-XXXX



Function menu→P.59

2 or (Dial)

The phone number disappears briefly and then reappears from the right as it is dialed.

The "☎" icon blinks during dialing and remains lit during the call.

The "in-call screen" appears.

■ To switch to a videophone call during a voice call

"Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call (Caller)" → P.60

■ If you hear the busy tone

The line is busy. Press and call again after a while.

■ If you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached

The other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is not switched on or is out of signal range. Press , and call again after a while.

■ If you hear a message requesting your caller ID

The other party has the caller ID request service switched to "Activate". Call again with caller ID notification enabled.



Function menu→P.59

3 To end the call, press

NOTE

- You can make calls while the FOMA terminal is in i-mode or you are sending or receiving mail.
- You cannot make a voice call using multi access communication during 64K data communication or during a videophone call. However, if you are on a videophone call with a person using the FOMA terminal that supports switching to voice call, you can change to voice call by selecting "Voice phone change" from the function menu. (This function is available in communications between voice call and videophone call switchable terminals.) → P.93
- If you display a screen other than the in-call screen during a call, press to return to the in-call screen.
- You can also send photographs taken with the built-in camera to the other party during a call (Speed photo mail). → P.258
- You cannot enter phone numbers and make calls while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.
- If the name or phone number of the called party is stored in the phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the name of the called party and the icon selected while you are dialing the call. However, if you also stored a still image in the phonebook entry, the image is not displayed.
- For entries stored in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" or while PIM lock was activated, the phone number is displayed without the name.
- How to make a call using a hands-free device → P.70
- You can make a call using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). → P.434

When you make a mistake dialing a number

■ To insert a number

Press  and move the cursor to the number to the right of the position where you want to insert the number. Then enter the number.

■ To delete a number

Press  and move the cursor to the number you want to delete. Then press .

Hold down  for 1 second or longer to delete all the numbers to the right of the cursor and the number in the cursor position.

■ To delete all the numbers

Move the cursor to the beginning or end of the number and hold down  for 1 second or longer.

Function menu (phone number input screen)

1 Phone number input screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Notify caller ID	Select whether to notify the other party of your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF". ■ To cancel the "Notify caller ID" setting of "ON" or "OFF"  "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Activate" (P.56) setting is applied.
Prefix numbers	 Select the name of the prefix (P.68) you want to add.
International dial	■ When "+" is prefixed (country code is added) The subsequent operation is up to the setting performed by selecting "Int'l dial setting" → "Auto assist setting" (P.62). - When "Auto" is set "+" is replaced with the IDD prefix code set in "Auto assist setting". - When "OFF" is set  Select the IDD prefix code "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added)  Select a country code  Select the IDD prefix code The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → P.62
Multi number	This service is not provided as of August, 2005.
Add to phonebook	"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.107 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → P.108
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
Dialing speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
Select image	Selects the image used when you make a videophone call, from "Me" or "Chara-den". Select "Release" to cancel the setting.

Function menu (in-call screen)

1 In-call screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Speed photo mail	"Sending an image you shot during a call" → P.258
Disp photo mail	Displays received speed photo mail.
Check new message	Performs "Check new message". → P.235, 277

Putting the current call on hold <Holding>

Use the procedure below to put the current call on hold.

1 During a call ▶



The other party hears the on-hold tone.

■ To end the held call



■ If the held party hangs up

The call ends.

2 Press , or (Answer) to resume the call

NOTE

- Call charges still apply while a call is on hold.
- Use "Call response setting" to select the tone used for held calls.
- Provided "End the call" is not selected in "Fold setting", folding the FOMA terminal will also put a call on hold.
- If a setting other than "OFF" is selected for "Illumination in talk", the incoming call lamp also flashes for held or muted calls during a call.

Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call (Caller)

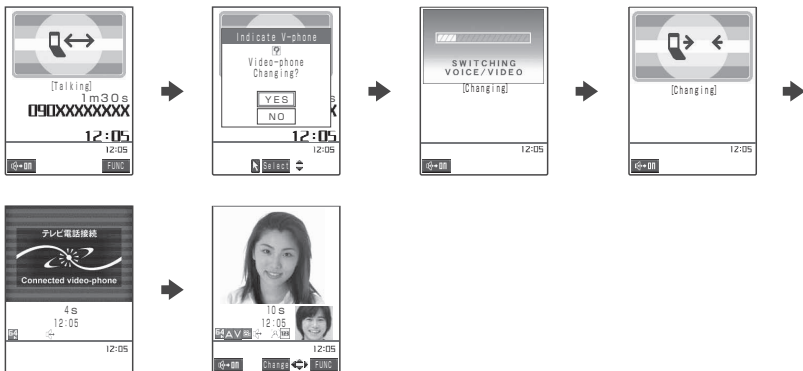
The caller can change between voice call and videophone call.

- If the handset of the other party is the FOMA terminal supporting the call change, "Vphone" is displayed during the voice call, and you can switch between the voice call and videophone call. (This function is available in communications between voice call and videophone call switchable terminals.)
- You can change the voice call only when you are the caller. When you receive a voice call, you cannot change it to the videophone call.
- To change the call, your FOMA terminal must be set to let the other party notify you "Indicate V-phone" beforehand. → P.101

1 In-call screen (P.58) ▶ or ▶ "YES"

While the voice call is changed to videophone call, the indicator is displayed, which indicates that the calls are being changed, and the voice guidance is played.

Select "NO" in the "Indicate V-phone" screen to return to the in-call screen.



NOTE

- You can change the videophone call to the voice call. → P.93
- It is possible to change repeatedly between voice call and videophone call.
- It takes about 5 seconds to change the calls. The signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- You cannot change between the videophone and voice calls while talking in the following cases:
 - You receive the call.
 - You make a call and the other party stops the call change function. → P.101
 - You make a call and the terminal of the other party does not support the call change function.
- The call time displayed is reset to 0 second each time the calls are changed. However, after the change operation, if the videophone call is finished, the call time displayed is the total of voice call and videophone call.
- If you try to change the call, the message appears on the other party's videophone screen asking to select the image to be sent, camera image or substitute image. → P.72
- If the change is operated, the first dialed call is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls records. The first received call is registered to the Received calls record.
- If the caller is using packet communication (including i-mode), the packet communication is canceled to change to videophone.
- If the other party is using packet communication (including i-mode), you receive the message "No Switch" meaning you cannot change the calls. The voice call continues.
- Depending on the other party's communication conditions such as manipulation or the signal quality, you may not be able to change the calls and the call may be canceled.
- You are not charged while the indicator showing "Changing" is displayed.
- When "Call waiting" is operated, you cannot change the calls.
- If the other party connects to the voice mail service or call forwarding service, or if the other party begins recording using "Record message", you cannot change to videophone.
- If you performed the switching operation, the amount of call charge displayed in "Call data" (P.426) may differ from the one you will pay.
- The hands-free operation continues after the change of calls. You can also activate or deactivate hands-free operation during switching to videophone call (P.70).

<WORLD CALL>

Making International Calls

Subscription: Not required
Monthly fee: Free

WORLD CALL is an international dialing service that can be used from DoCoMo mobile phones. FOMA service subscribers are also subscribed to "WORLD CALL" when they subscribe to the FOMA service. (This excludes subscribers who indicated that they did not require the service.)

- WORLD CALL can be used to call around 220 countries and regions worldwide.
- The WORLD CALL is included on the bill for your monthly call charges.
- In addition to dialing a phone number, you can make an international call by adding "+" or selecting "International dial" or "Prefix numbers" from the function menu in the phone number input screen, Redial/Dialed calls screen, Received calls screen or phonebook detail entry screen.
- Some payment plans may be unavailable.

Changes of the procedure for international dialing

Because communication from mobile devices such as mobile phones is not covered by the "MYLINE" service, this service cannot be used to access WORLD CALL. Consequently, with the introduction of the "MYLINE" service, the procedure used to make international calls from a mobile phone has changed. Note that the conventional dialing procedure (the procedure described below with "010" removed) can no longer be used.

For additional information regarding WORLD CALL, refer to the contact information provided on the back of the manual.

"International videophone calls" can be made to users of some specific overseas 3G mobile terminals by pressing  to make the call after using the dialing procedure below.

- See the DoCoMo website for information on accessible countries and carriers.
- Depending on the type of terminal used by the other party, the image of the other party shown on your FOMA terminal may be distorted during an international videophone call or the connection may fail.

Using dial key to make international calls

- 1 Dial the number in the following order: 009130→010→(country code)→(area code)→(the other party's phone number)**

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the first zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

- 2  or  (Dial)**

An international call is made.

- 3 To end the call, press **

Using "+" to make an international call

By using the "+" prefix, you can make international calls without having to dial the IDD prefix code (e.g. 009130-010).

- At the time of purchase, "Auto assist setting" in "Int'l dial setting" (P.62) is set to "Auto", so that the FOMA terminal automatically dials the IDD prefix code.

- 1 In the standby screen, dial the following; +( (for 1 second or longer))→(country code)→(area code)→(phone number called)**

If the area code begins with a zero (0), omit the first zero. However, when you call some countries or regions such as Italy, "0" may be required.

- 2  or  (Dial)▶"Dial"**

The international call is made.

- **To make a call without converting "+" into the IDD prefix code**

▶"Original phone No."

*: This function is not available for your FOMA terminal.

- **To cancel the call**

▶"Cancel"

Making an overseas phone call with easy operation <Int'l dial setting>

Default setting	Auto assist setting: Auto IDD prefix setting: "WORLD CALL" (009130010) Country code setting: "アメリカ (United States)" (Country code: 1)

You can change the settings used for dialing overseas calls and store new country codes. You can set the following settings:

Setting	Explanation
Auto assist setting	When you make an overseas call from Japan, the entered "+" is automatically replaced with the IDD prefix code set in this function.
IDD prefix setting	Stores the IDD prefix name and IDD prefix code used when you make an international call.
Country code setting	Stores the country name and country code used when you make an international call.

● Auto assist setting

Use the procedure below to set the Auto assist function for "+" when you make an international call.

- 1 ▶▶"Other settings"▶"Int'l dial setting"**

- 2 "Auto assist setting"▶"Auto"**

- **To disable Auto assist**

▶"OFF"

- 3 Select the country name**

4 Select an IDD prefix name

NOTE

- If you enter "81" (the country code for Japan) after "+" or if you enter an emergency number (110, 119 or 118), the IDD prefix code is not added.

● Storing the IDD prefix code

You can store up to 3 IDD prefix codes, each of 10 digits max.

1   "Other settings" ▶ "Int'l dial setting"

2 "IDD prefix setting"

The "IDD prefix setting screen" appears.

3 Highlight "<Not recorded>" ▶  (Edit)

■ To change the details of a previously stored setting

▶ Highlight the item to be changed ▶  (Edit)

4 Enter an IDD prefix name

"Entering Text" → P.498

5 Enter the IDD prefix code



Function menu▶P.63

Function menu (IDD prefix setting screen)

1 IDD prefix setting screen ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	Edits the item registered in IDD prefix setting. "Entering Text" → P.498
Delete this	Deletes one item registered in IDD prefix setting.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Delete all the items registered in IDD prefix setting. Security code → P.152

NOTE

- You cannot delete the IDD prefix code selected in "Auto assist setting". When "Auto" is set in "Auto assist setting", you cannot perform "Delete all".

● Storing a country code

You can store up to 3 country codes, each of 5 digits max.

1   "Other settings" ▶ "Int'l dial setting"

2 "Country code setting"

The "Country code setting screen" appears.

3 Highlight "<Not recorded>" ▶  (Edit)

■ To change the details of a previously stored setting

▶ Highlight the item to be changed ▶  (Edit)

4 Enter the Country name

"Entering Text" → P.498

5 Enter the Country code

See the DoCoMo website for information on country codes.



Function menu▶P.64

Function menu (Country code setting screen)

1 Country code setting screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	Edits the Country code. "Entering Text" → P.498
Delete this	Deletes one Country code setting.
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶"YES" Deletes all the registered Country code setting. Security code → P.152

NOTE

- You cannot delete country codes set using "Auto assist setting". When "Auto" is set in "Auto assist setting", you cannot perform "Delete all".

<Redial/Dialed calls>

Dialing a Previously Dialed Number

The information such as phone number, date and time you called is recorded as Redial/Dialed calls record.

Using the Redial and Dialed calls

- The Redial record can hold up to 30 phone numbers for voice calls and videophone calls. The Dialed calls record stores up to 30 voice call or videophone call entries and 30 packet communication and 64K data communication entries.
- Calls to the same phone number are stored in the Redial record as a single entry under the most recent call. In the Dialed calls record, data on multiple calls of the same number is recorded as independent calls.
- When the number of redial/dialed calls record entries exceeds the maximum number, existing entries are overwritten starting with the oldest entry.
- You cannot view the Redial/Dialed calls record during a videophone call.
- The date and time of a call are only stored if you have set the date and time in "Set time".
- When you make a call by retrieving a phonebook entry stored as Secret data, the name stored in the phonebook is not recorded in the Redial/Dialed calls record.
- If you change between voice call and videophone call during a call, the first dialed call is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls histories.

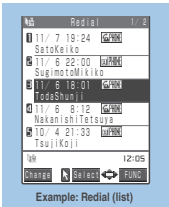
1 Standby screen

The "Redial (list)" screen appears.

■ To view the Dialed calls record

▶Standby screen▶(MENU)▶(EV)▶"Dialed calls"

The "Dialed calls (list) screen" appears.



Example: Redial (list)

Function menu▶P.65

2 Select the Redial or Dialed calls record entry

The "Redial (details)" screen or "Dialed calls (details) screen" appears. In the top right corner of the display, the "Current/Total entries" is shown. The lower the number, the more recently the phone number was called.

■ To check earlier or later Redial/Dialed call record entries

Press (LEFT) to move to the previous (more recent) number or (RIGHT) to move to the next (older) number.

■ If the phone number is stored in the phonebook

If a name is stored for the phonebook entry, the name is also displayed.



Example: Redial (details)

Function menu▶P.65

3 or (Dial)

■ To make a videophone call



4 To end the call, press

NOTE

- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not delete the entries in the Redial or Dialed calls records. To prevent others from seeing the phone numbers you have called, delete the respective records of Redial or Dialed calls, or set "Redial/Dialed calls" in "Record display set" to "OFF".
- You can make a voice call (or videophone call) to the most recent Redial record by pressing  (or ) and then  in the standby screen.
- Setting "PIM lock", "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" erases all the entries recorded as Redial or Dialed calls. However, calls made subsequently are recorded in "Dialed calls".
- While "PIM lock" is set, only phone numbers are stored when you call someone whose name is stored in the phonebook.

Function menu (Redial/Dialed calls screen)

- The function menus displayed in the Redial screen and Dialed calls screen are the same whether the list screen or detail screen is shown.

1 Redial/Dialed calls screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Notify caller ID*	Select either "OFF" or "ON" to notify the other party of your caller ID. ■ To cancel the "Notify caller ID" setting of "ON" or "OFF" ▶ "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Activate" (P.56) setting is applied.
Prefix numbers*	▶ Select the name of the prefix (P.68) you want to add.
International dial	■ When "+" is prefixed (country code is added) The subsequent operation is up to the setting performed by selecting "Int'l dial setting" → "Auto assist setting" (P.62). • When "Auto" is set "+" is replaced with the IDD prefix code set in "Auto assist setting". • When "OFF" is set ▶ Select the IDD prefix code "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added) ▶ Select a country code ▶ Select the IDD prefix code The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → P.62
Multi number*	This service is not provided as of August, 2005.
Add to phonebook	"Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records" → P.110
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
Compose SMS	"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)" → P.309
Sent address	Displays the sent address list.
Delete this	Deletes one Redial or Dialed calls record.
Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox(☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" You can delete multiple Redial or Dialed calls records.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" All the Redial and Dialed calls records are deleted. Security code → P.152
Dialing speed*	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".

Item	Description
Select image*	Selects the image used when you make a videophone call, from "Me" or "Chara-den". Select "Release" to cancel the setting.

*: This function is available only for the detail screen.

NOTE
● Selecting "Compose message" enables you to compose a mail with a mail address specified as the address when the mail address is stored in the phonebook together with the phone number. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the phonebook, the first address is specified as the address. ● "Delete all" deletes all the entries recorded in both redial and dialed calls. Note that using "Delete this" or "Delete selected" for the redial record entries does not delete the records from the dialed calls and the records remain. To delete records in the dialed calls, use the function menu in the Dialed calls screen.

■ Redial/Dialed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Indicates an outgoing voice call.		Indicates an outgoing international videophone call.
	Indicates an outgoing international call.		Indicates an outgoing packet communications.
	Indicates an outgoing videophone call.		Indicates an outgoing 64K data communications.

Notifying/Withholding Your Caller ID For Individual Calls

If the other party's phone supports caller ID display, you can provide your phone number (caller ID) for display on the other party's phone (display) when you make a voice or videophone call. Note that your caller ID is important information and care should be taken when providing it to others.

Function	Description	Ref. page
Caller ID notification	Specifies whether other parties are notified of your caller ID whenever you make a call.	P.56
184/186	Uses the 184 and 186 prefixes to specify whether your caller ID is provided or withheld each time you make a call.	P.66
Notify caller ID	Uses function menu to specify whether your caller ID is provided or withheld each time you make a call.	P.59

Adding the 186/184 prefix to the other party's phone number

To provide your caller ID each time you make a call, add the "186" prefix when you dial the phone number. To withhold your caller ID, use the "184" prefix.

■ To provide your phone number

Voice calls : 186 - (the other party's phone number) - 
Videophone calls : 186 - (the other party's phone number) - 

■ To withhold your phone number

Voice calls : 184 - (the other party's phone number) - 
Videophone calls : 184 - (the other party's phone number) - 

NOTE
● The same effect can be achieved by dialing the "X31#" prefix instead of "186" and the "#31#" prefix instead of "184". ● If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, dial the number again using the "186" or "X31#" prefix. ● If you make a call with the "186" or "184", the phone number including this prefix is recorded in the Redial or Dialed calls.

<Pause dial>

Sending Push Signals Quickly

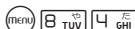
Sending push signals from your FOMA terminal enables you to send messages to QUICKCAST* and to use services such as ticket ordering and bank balance requests.

Storing dialing data as pause dial record entries

You can store dialing data to send as push signals beforehand into a pause dial record entry. Inserting a pause (p) into the dialing data allows you to send data with a separation where a pause lies.

- You can only store one dialing data entry, consisting of up to 128 characters.
- Dialing data can contain numbers from 0 to 9, the # and * symbols, and pauses (p).
- You cannot enter pauses (p) in succession or at the beginning of the dialing data.

1



The "Pause dial screen" appears.

■ If there is dialing data already stored

The stored dialing data appears.

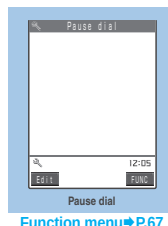
2

⬅(Edit)▶ Enter the dialing data

Press to , and to enter the dialing data

■ To enter a pause (p)

▶ (for 1 second or longer)



Function menu▶P.67

Function menu (Pause dial screen)

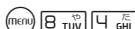
1

Pause dial screen ▶ ⬅(FUNC)▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	Edits the dialing data. "Entering Text" →P.498
Send pause dial	▶Enter the destination phone number▶⬅(Dial) Whenever you press ⬅(Send), the dialing data ending with a pause (p) is transmitted.
Delete	Deletes the stored dialing data.

Using dialing data as a pause dial for transmission

1



2

⬅(Send)▶ Dial the destination phone number

■ To enter the number by searching the phonebook using part of the phone number

▶Dial a part of the phone number▶Press to search the phonebook

■ To enter the number by searching the phonebook using a search mode other than the phone number

▶▶Choose a search mode from the search phonebook screen

■ To enter the number by searching the Received calls/Redial record

▶▶Search the number by using the Received calls, or press to search by using Redial

3

or ⬅(Dial)



The FOMA terminal calls the entered phone number and displays the dialing data up to the first pause (p) while the dialed phone is ringing. The pause (p) is not shown.

* Pocket bell (beeper) of NTT DoCoMo has been renamed to "QUICKCAST" since January, 2001.

4



or (Send)

Each time you press or (Send) , the dialing data ending with a pause (p) is transmitted. Once the FOMA terminal has finished sending the last number, the in-call screen reappears.

■ To transmit all the dialing data at once

▶ (for 1 second or longer) ▶ “Send at one time”

It may not be possible to batch send to some recipients.

NOTE

- Some phones may be unable to receive push signals.
- Switching to the Pause dial screen during a voice call allows you to transmit the dialing data to the other party.
- You cannot send pause dial data in a videophone call.

<Prefix setting>

Setting Prefix Numbers

Default setting
WORLD CALL (009130010)

Set the frequently used, specific numbers (prefix) in advance. You can then use the preset numbers as phone number prefixes when you make calls using “Dial input”, “Redial”, “Phonebook” or the “Received calls” and “Dialed calls” records. It is useful for setting numbers such as “Caller ID notification”.

- You can store up to 7 prefix numbers.
- Preset numbers can include numbers from 0 to 9 and the #, *, and + symbols.

1



“Other settings” ▶ “Prefix setting”

The “Prefix setting screen” appears.

2

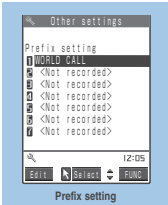
Highlight “<Not recorded>” ▶ (Edit)

■ To change the details of a previously stored prefix

▶ Highlight the item to be changed ▶ (Edit)

■ To check the details of an already stored prefix

▶ Select the item to be checked



Function menu ▶ P.68

3

Enter the name to be stored

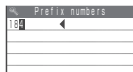


You can enter up to 8 full-pitch or 16 half-pitch characters.

“Entering Text” → P.498

4

Enter the numbers (prefix)



You can enter up to 10 digits.

Function menu (prefix setting screen)

1

Prefix setting screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	Edits the prefix number. “Entering Text” → P.498
Delete this	Deletes one prefix number.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the recorded prefix numbers. Security code → P.152

<Sub-address>

Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls

Default setting
ON

This function enables you to set “X” contained in the phone number as a separator so that the numbers following “X” are recognized as a sub-address. Sub-addresses are used in ISDN to identify calls made from specific communications devices and to select content in “V-live”.

1   ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Sub-address” ▶ “ON”

■ To cancel the setting

▶ “OFF”

NOTE

● In the following cases, “X” does not function as a sub-address separator. The entered number including “X” is recognized as an ordinary phone number.

- Where the “X” is at the beginning of a phone number.
- Where “X” immediately follows “186”, “184”, “X31#” or “#31#” at the beginning of a phone number.
- Where “X” immediately follows a number entered using “Prefix numbers”.

<Reconnect control>

Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection

Default setting
No tone

When the signal quality deteriorates during a voice call or videophone call to the extent that the call drops out, the FOMA terminal will automatically reconnect the call if the signal quality quickly improves. Using this function allows you to set the type of alarm when a call is reconnecting.

- The interval for reconnection capability varies depending on communication conditions such as manipulation or the signal quality. It is about 10 seconds.
- If the signal quality deteriorates very suddenly, the call may end without an alarm being sounded.

1    ▶ Select an alarm tone

■ To disable alarm

▶ “No tone”

NOTE

- Call charges apply in the interval (up to roughly 10 seconds) prior to reconnection.
- The other party hears no sound while the signal is lost.

<Noise reduction>

Blocking Out Ambient Noise

Default setting
ON

The noise reduction is a function that suppresses ambient noise. This makes it easier for the other party in a voice or videophone call to hear you when you are in a noisy location.

1    ▶ “ON”

■ To cancel the setting

▶ “OFF”

<Hands-free>

Switching to Hands-free Operation

Switching to hands-free operation during a call enables you to hear the other party's voice through a speaker.

1 In-call screen (P.58) ▶

" " appears and you can hear other party's voice through a speaker during a hands-free call.

While your terminal is ringing because of an incoming voice call, you can switch to hands-free operation by pressing  ( ON).



Voice call



Videophone call

■ To cancel the hands-free operation

▶ Press  ( Off) during a hands-free call

The hands-free operation ends, and " " disappears during a voice call and " " changes to " "

● Notes on using the hands-free operation

It is recommended to keep a distance of about 30 cm from a FOMA terminal during a hands-free call. If the distance is longer or shorter than 30 cm, the other party may find it difficult to listen to you or voices may sound differently.

NOTE

- Other party's voice may be heard by those around you during a hands-free call. Move to an area where your call will not disturb other people before switching to a hands-free call.
- When a call is finished, the hands-free setting is canceled.

<In-car Hands-free>

Making Hands-free Calls in the Car

You can operate (such as making or receiving voice calls) the FOMA terminal using hands-free compatible devices by connecting the FOMA terminal to hands-free compatible devices such as the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) or a car navigation system. For information on how to use the hands-free device, refer to the instructions provided with the device. The FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) is required to use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

- To operate from a hands-free device, set USB mode setting to "Communication mode". → P.390
- The display and ring tones used for incoming calls and mail are as specified in the FOMA terminal settings.
- If the FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that the sound is emitted from the hands-free device, the ring tone will still sound through the hands-free device for incoming mail or voice and videophone calls even when the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode or the ring volume is set to "Silent".
- When the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode, operation for incoming calls and messages is as specified in the "Driving mode" settings.
- When the FOMA terminal is set to record caller messages, operation for incoming calls is as specified in the "Record message" settings.
- If the FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that sound is emitted from the FOMA terminal, operation when the FOMA terminal is folded during a call is as specified in "Fold setting". If the hands-free device is set up so that sound is emitted from the hands-free device, "Fold setting" is ignored and folding the FOMA terminal makes no difference to the call status.

Receiving a Call

1 When you receive a call, press or (Answer)

When you receive a call, the FOMA terminal rings, the incoming call lamp flashes and the "Ringing screen" appears.

Unless "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal also vibrates to alert you to the call. The indicator display also notifies you of the call by displaying the caller's name. → P.36

■ To switch to a videophone call during a voice call

"Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call" → P.72

2 To end the call, press



Function menu→P.71

Function menu (ringing screen)

1 Ringing screen▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Call rejection	Terminates the receiving call without answering.
Call forwarding	Forwards the call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call forwarding" (P.448) setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate".
Voice mail	Connects the call to the voice mail service center. The caller is connected to the voice mail service center regardless of whether the "Voice mail" (P.445) setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate".

NOTE

- Besides  and , you can set up your FOMA terminal so that you can also answer a call by pressing any of , , ,  or  (Home) (Any key answer). However, pressing  (Home) while the FOMA terminal is folded will put the call on hold. The hold tone will be played according to the "Fold setting" setting, however, the hold tone will not be played if the "Fold setting" is set to "No tone" or "End the call".
You can also set up the FOMA terminal so that pressing a key only stops the ring tone (Quick silent).
- Pressing  or  (Memo/Check) while the FOMA terminal is ringing switches the FOMA terminal to "Quick record message" so that the caller can record a message. → P.84
- When you receive a call with a caller ID from someone who is listed in your phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the caller's phone number and name. If there is an image stored in the corresponding phonebook entry, the image is also displayed. However, if the caller's entry is stored as secret data, the name and image are withheld and only the phone number is displayed. If the caller does not provide a caller ID, the reason for not providing ID is displayed. → P.167
- If the same phone number is registered in the multiple phonebook entries with different names and you receive a call, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings is displayed. → P.111
- Up to 30 received calls can be stored in the "Received calls" record. If the caller provides a caller ID, the caller's phone number is displayed. If a caller who provides a phone number is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number are displayed.
- If you enable "Set arrival act" and set "Arrival Call Act" to "Answer", you will hear a short double-beep ("bibip") if someone else calls when you are already on a call. When this happens, you can then do one of the following:
 - If you have subscribed to the "Voice mail" service, you can forward the new call to the voice mail service center.
 - If you have subscribed to the "Call forwarding" service, you can forward the new call to the designated call forwarding number.
 Furthermore, if you subscribe to the "Call waiting", set "Arrival Call Act" to "Answer" and then activate Call waiting, you can put your current call on hold and answer the new call. → P.447
- The FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when "Driving mode" is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- You can reject calls from numbers that are not stored in your phonebook. → P.168
- If you receive a call from a number that is not stored in your phonebook, you can specify the period of time from receiving a call to the ring tone beginning. → P.168
- You cannot receive calls from callers that you set for "Call rejection". You cannot receive calls from callers other than those who are set for "Call acceptance". → P.165
- Using the hands-free operation → P.70

Changing Voice Call to Videophone Call

The caller can change a voice call to videophone call by performing the operation below.

- You can change the voice call only when you are the caller. When you receive a voice call, you cannot change it to the videophone call.
- To change a call on the calling phone, "Indicate V-phone" must be set to "Indication ON" on the called phone beforehand. → P.101

1 In-call screen (P.58) ▶ Caller changes the voice call to videophone call ▶ "YES"

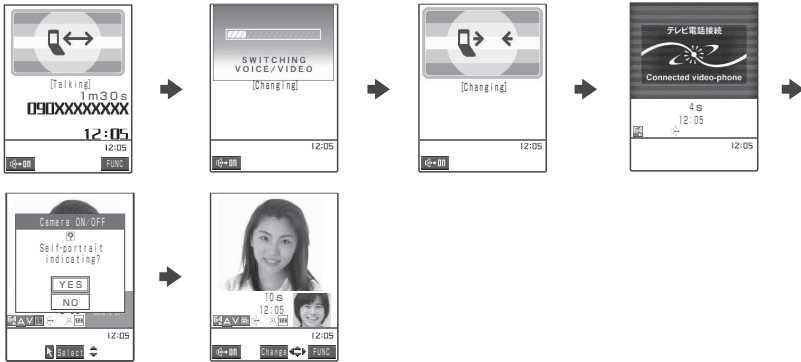
While a voice call is changed to videophone call, the indicator is displayed indicating that the calls are being changed, and the voice guidance is played.

The voice call changes to the videophone call and camera image is sent to the caller.

■ To send substitute image to the caller

▶ "NO"

The specified substitute image is sent to the caller.



NOTE

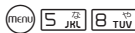
- The hands-free operation continues after the change of calls when using the hands-free function before changing. You can activate or deactivate hands-free operation during switching to videophone call (P.70).

Using the Dial Keys to Receive a Call

Default setting
Any key answer

You can use this setting to turn off the ring tone or answer the phone quickly when you receive a call. This can be very useful when you receive a call in a situation where the ring tone may disturb people around you.

1



▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Any key answer	When you receive a voice call, as well as and , pressing any of the following keys enables you to answer the call immediately: to , , , , , (When the (Change) is not displayed), or (Home). (However, pressing (Home) while the FOMA terminal is folded will put the call on hold.) Note that this does not apply for videophone calls.
Quick silent	When you receive a voice or videophone call, pressing any of the following keys or opening the FOMA terminal stops the ring tone and vibration: to , , , , , (When the (Change) is not displayed), or (Home). When you stop the ring tone in this way, the caller continues to hear the ring tone. For a voice call, you can answer the call by pressing or (Answer). For a videophone call, press to answer using the camera image or press or (Answer) to answer using the substitute image.
OFF	When you receive a voice call, only pressing the following keys enables an answer for calling: or (Answer). When you receive a videophone call, only pressing the following keys enables an answer for calling: , or (Answer). (When you press and (Answer), you answer the call using the substitute image.)

NOTE

- Even when "Quick silent" is set, the "Any key answer" function is used in "Manner mode".
- Even when "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" is set, pressing and holding for 1 second or longer makes ON/OFF switching for the display light and "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" does not function.
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, you can accept calls by pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch regardless of the "Answer setting" setting.
- If "Side keys guard" is set to "ON", "Any key answer" or "Quick silent" does not function even if you press (Home) while the FOMA terminal is folded.
- Pressing (Memo/Check) or while receiving a call allows you to start the "Quick record message" and record the messages.
→ P.84

<Fold setting>

Ending/Holding Calls with the FOMA Terminal Folded

Default setting
End the call

You can set how your FOMA terminal operates when it is folded during a voice or videophone call.

1     ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
No tone	Mutes the sound for voice calls. For videophone calls, the sound is muted and the substitute image is sent to the caller. No hold tone is used. When opened, the FOMA terminal reverts to the status prior to when folded.	
Tone on	Puts the current call on hold (Holding). You can also select whether the hold tone is played through the speaker of your own FOMA terminal. For voice calls, the other party hears the hold tone selected in "Call response setting" while the FOMA terminal is folded. For videophone calls, the other party hears the hold tone selected in "Call response setting" and sees the hold image. →P.78 When opened, the FOMA terminal reverts to the status prior to when folded. However, if you folded the FOMA terminal when the current call was on hold, re-opening the FOMA terminal resumes the call when it is a voice call. If the held call is a videophone call, it remains on hold.	
	Speaker ON	The hold tone is sent to the other party and also plays through the speaker.
	Speaker OFF (default)	The hold tone is only heard by the other party.
End the call	Ends the call. Folding the FOMA terminal has the same effect as pressing  .	

NOTE

- When Manner mode is set, no sound is played through the speaker even if "Speaker ON" is set.
- If flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and even folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call condition. However, during a videophone call using the camera image, folding the FOMA terminal switches to the substitute image.
- Even if the "Tone on" setting is selected, folding the FOMA terminal activates the "No tone" setting if "Call waiting" is switched on.

<Received calls>

Using the Received Calls

Information on received calls, including the caller's phone number and the date and time are stored in the received calls record.

- The received calls record stores up to 30 voice call or videophone call entries and 30 packet communication or 64K data communication entries.
- When the received calls record is full, entries are overwritten starting with the oldest entry.
- The received calls record cannot be displayed during a videophone call.
- The date and time of a call are only stored if you have set the date and time in "Set time".
- If you change between voice call and videophone call during a call, the first received call is registered to the received calls record.

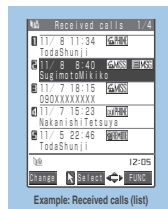
1      ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
All calls	Displays all the call record entries.
Missed calls	Displays only the record entries for missed calls.

Unknown calls: Displays the number of missed calls that you have not checked.

2 Check the list of received calls

The "Received calls (list)" screen appears.



Example: Received calls (list)

Function menu▶P.76

3 Select the received call entry

The "Received calls (detail)" screen appears. In the top right corner of the display, "Current/Total entries" is shown. The lower the number, the more recent the call from that phone number.

■ To check earlier or later received call entries

Press to move to the previous (more recent) number or to move to the next (older) number.

■ If the phone number is stored in the phonebook

If a name is stored for the phonebook entry, the name is also displayed.



Example: Received calls (details)

Function menu▶P.76

4 or (Dial)

■ To make a videophone call



5 To end the call, press

NOTE

- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not delete the records in Received calls. If you want to prevent others from seeing the received phone number, delete the records in Received calls or set "Received calls" in "Record display set" to "OFF".
- If you set a call that did not start the ringing operation not to be recorded in the missed calls history in "Ringing time", a call that is shorter than the time you set in "Set mute seconds" is not recorded in the received call history. →P.168
- You can also retrieve the Received calls by pressing in the standby screen as well.
- You can make a voice call (or videophone call) to the most recent Received calls by pressing (or) and then in the standby screen.
- Setting "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock" erases all the entries stored up to that point in the received calls record. However, calls received subsequently are stored as received call record entries.
- While "PIM lock" is set, only phone numbers are stored when you receive a call from someone whose name is stored in the phonebook.
- If the caller is using "Dial-in", a number other than the "Dial-in" number may be displayed.
- If a caller who provides a phone number is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number are displayed in the Received calls record. If the caller's phone number is not provided, the reason for the non-notification (P.167) is displayed. However, if you receive calls from someone who provides phone numbers and is not stored in "Restrict dialing" entries when "Restrict dialing" is set, only the phone numbers are stored for those calls.

■ Icons used in the received and missed call records

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Indicates incoming voice calls/missed calls/unconfirmed missed calls.		Indicates incoming international videophone calls/missed calls/unconfirmed missed calls.
	Indicates incoming international voice calls/missed calls/unconfirmed missed calls.		Indicates incoming packet communication/missed calls/unconfirmed missed calls.
	Indicates incoming videophone calls/missed calls/unconfirmed missed calls.		Indicates incoming 64K data communication/missed calls/unconfirmed missed calls.
	Indicates some messages recorded.		Indicates incoming packet communication or 64K data communication that is received without external device connected
	Indicates incoming remote observation calls.		

Function menu (Received calls screen)

- The function menu displayed in the Received calls screen is the same whether the list screen or detail screen is shown.

1 Received calls screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Notify caller ID*	Select either "OFF" or "ON" to notify the other party of your caller ID. ■ To cancel the "Notify caller ID" setting of "ON" or "OFF"  "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Activate" (P.56) setting is applied.
Prefix numbers*	 Select the name of the prefix (P.68) you want to add.
International dial	■ When "+" is prefixed (country code is added) The subsequent operation is up to the setting performed by selecting "Int'l dial setting" → "Auto assist setting" (P.62). • When "Auto" is set "+" is replaced with the IDD prefix code set in "Auto assist setting". • When "OFF" is set  Select the IDD prefix code "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added)  Select a country code  Select the IDD prefix code The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → P.62
Multi number*	This service is not provided as of August, 2005.
Ringing time	Displays the missed call record entries with the ringing times. This setting is available only when the Received calls list screen appears.
Add to phonebook	"Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records" → P.110
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
Compose SMS	"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)" → P.309
Received address	Displays the received address list.
Delete this	Deletes one received call.
Delete selected	 Use  to select a checkbox (☐)  (Finish)  "YES" You can delete multiple Received calls records.
Delete all	 Enter your security code  "YES" Deletes all the received calls records. Security code → P.152
Dialing speed*	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
Select image*	Selects the image used when you make a videophone call, from "Me" or "Chara-den". Select "Release" to cancel the setting.

* : This function is available only for the detail screen.

NOTE

- Selecting "Compose message" enables you to compose a mail with a mail address specified as the address when the mail address is stored in the phonebook together with the phone number. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the phonebook, the first address is specified as the address.
- Received calls through packet and 64K data communications cannot be added to the phonebook or used to compose a new mail.

<Volume>

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

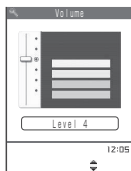
Default setting
Level 4

You can adjust the earpiece volume to a setting between “Level 1” (quietest) and “Level 6” (loudest) during a call.

- If you adjust the volume during a call or while the FOMA terminal is in standby mode, the adjusted setting is retained after you end the call.

<Example: During a voice call>

1 During a call ▶ Use (Home) or (Memo/Check) to adjust the volume



You can adjust the volume in the same way by holding down  or  for 1 second or longer. You can adjust the volume in succession by pressing  (Home) or  (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer during earpiece volume adjustment.

If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer when the earpiece adjustment screen is displayed, the FOMA terminal ends the volume adjustment and returns to the in-call screen.

■ To adjust the earpiece volume in standby mode

▶ On standby screen ▶  or  (for 1 second or longer) ▶  or 

You can adjust the volume in succession by holding down  or  for 1 second or longer.

If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer when the earpiece adjustment screen is displayed, the FOMA terminal ends the volume adjustment and returns to the in-call screen.

NOTE

- You can also adjust the earpiece volume when talking on videophone or in hands-free mode.
- Adjust the volume by pressing  or  during a videophone call. You cannot adjust the earpiece volume in succession, even if you press and hold  (Home) or  (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer during earpiece volume adjustment.

<Ring volume>

Adjusting the Ring Volume

Default setting
Level 4

You can adjust the volume of the ring tones the FOMA terminal uses when you receive a voice call, videophone call, mail, chat mail, Message Request or Message Free. There are six volume settings for each type of call. You can also set a silent ring tone or set it to gradually get louder (step).

- You cannot adjust the ring tone volume while receiving an incoming voice or videophone call. Perform adjustment when the standby screen appears.
- The ring volume setting specified for “Phone” in this function is also applied to the “Melody”, the “Select ring tone” setting for a voice call, the alarm tones for “Schedule” and “ToDo” events and the playback volume for melodies downloaded from sites.
- The volume is retained after setting with this function.

1 ▶ Select the item of which you want to adjust the ring volume

Select “Phone” to adjust the ring tone volume for voice calls and 64K data communication.
Select “Mail” to adjust the ring tone volume for i-mode mail, SMS or packet communication.

2 Use to adjust the ring volume

■ To set step tones (gradually louder ring tones)

▶ In the “Level 6” setting, press 

When you receive a call with “Step” setting, there is no ring tone, then the ring tone becomes gradually louder, starting at “Level 1” and increasing to “Level 6” every 3 seconds.

■ To set a silent ring tone

▶ In the “Level 1” setting, press 

When the ring tone is set to “Silent”, the FOMA terminal emits no ring tone.
An icon appears in the standby screen to confirm that a “Silent” ring tone is set.

S_{ring}: “Silent” is set for “Phone” and/or “Video-phone” calls.

S_{mail}: “Silent” is set for more than one of “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR” or “MessageF”.

S_{all}: “Silent” is set for both “S_{ring}” and “S_{mail}”.

<On hold>

Putting Calls on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately

When the FOMA terminal rings and you cannot answer it right away, you can put the unanswered call on hold and have the caller wait briefly.

- Call charges apply to the caller while he or she is waiting for you to answer.

1 During an incoming call▶



The FOMA terminal makes three rapid beeps and puts the caller on hold.

The caller hears a message saying that you cannot answer at the moment and holds the call without hanging up.

You can set the message played while the call is held in "Call response setting".

■ To hang up while a call is on hold



■ If the caller hangs up while on hold

The call ends.

2 When you are ready to take the call, press or (Answer)

You can also answer the call by pressing .

When you set "Answer setting" to "Any key answer", you can answer a call by pressing any of the following keys:  to , , , ,  or  (Memo/Check),  or .

For a videophone call → P.94

NOTE

- If "Phone" or "Video-phone" in "Ring volume" is set to "Silent" or the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal does not make the three short beeps when you apply answer hold. However, the beeps do sound if you are using an "Original" manner mode in which the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent".
- If you are contracted to receive "Voice mail service" or "Call forwarding service", selecting "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" from the function menu when you receive a call either forwards the call to the voice mail service or forwarding number.
- If you fold the FOMA terminal while a call is on answer hold, the FOMA terminal displays the held call in the indicator display while the call is on answer hold.

<Call response setting>

Setting the Hold Tone

Default setting	On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody

When you put a voice or videophone call on answer hold or put a call that is already in progress on hold, you can set the message heard by the other party.

1 ▶ ▶ "Talk"▶ "Call response setting"▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
On hold tone	Sets the message played when a call is put on hold.	
	Tone 1	The following message is played in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please wait for a few minutes or call again later."
	Tone 2	The following message is played in Japanese: "I can't answer the phone just now. Please call again later."
	Voice announce 1*	The message recorded using "Voice announce" is played.
	Voice announce 2*	"Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → P.425
Holding tone	Sets the hold tone in talk.	
	Melody	"Fur Elise" is played.
	Voice announce 1*	The message recorded using "Voice announce" is played.
	Voice announce 2*	"Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → P.425

*: Not displayed if no Voice announce message has been recorded.

NOTE

- You can check the highlighted message by pressing  (Play) in the message selection screen.
- Even if you select "English" in the setting of "バイリンガル" (Select language), the messages of "Tone 1" and "Tone 2" remain in Japanese.

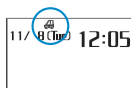
<Driving mode>

Blocking Calls When You Are Driving

Driving mode (the in-car messaging function) is an automatic answering service specifically provided to ensure safe driving. When the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode, it sends a message to callers saying that you cannot answer the phone because you are driving, and then ends the call.

- Driving mode can only be set or cancelled from the standby screen. It can also be set or cancelled when the  icon is displayed.
- You can still make calls when the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode.

1 On standby screen (for 1 second or longer)



A message appears notifying you that Driving mode has been set and  appears on the standby screen.

■ To cancel Driving mode

▶ Standby screen (set to Driving mode)  (for 1 second or longer)

A message appears notifying you that Driving mode has been cancelled and  disappears from the standby screen.

NOTE

- If "Record message" is set to "ON", Driving mode takes priority and the "Record message" setting is ignored.
- When the FOMA terminal is set to "Manner mode", Driving mode takes priority and "Manner mode" is disabled.
- If you make a voice call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) while the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode, the FOMA terminal cancels Driving mode.
- The following tones do not sound in Driving mode:
 - Ring tone for Voice/videophone calls
 - Ring tone for Message Request/Free
 - Alarm clock tone
 - ToDo alarm tone
 - Low-voltage alarm tone
 - Software tone for i-appli
 - Mail ring tone
 - Notification tone for chat mail
 - Schedule alarm tone
 - Alarm tone for Notify cost limit
 - Charge sound
 - 64K data communication ring tone
- Remote all lock can also be set when the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode.

● When set to Driving mode

In Driving mode, your FOMA terminal does not ring when you receive a voice call or videophone call. Calls are logged in the "Received calls" record or "Missed calls" record and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

A caller making a voice call hears a message saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving and the call then ends. A caller making a videophone call sees a message on his or her display saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving and the call then ends. However, if the power is off or  is displayed on the screen, calls are not notified and the same guidance as  is displayed is played.

There is also no ring tone when you receive a mail or 64K data communication. The "New mail" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Driving mode are set

If the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode while network services are activated, voice calls and videophone calls are handled as shown in the table below.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice mail service	Transfers the call to Voice mail after the in-car guidance message is announced to the caller. *1	Voice mail cannot be used for videophone calls. A call ends without the message notifying the caller of driving.

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Call forwarding service	Transfers the call to the forwarding number after the in-car guidance message is announced to the caller.*2	Call forwarding can be used for videophone calls. Call forwarding takes priority and the received videophone call is immediately forwarded to the designated number.*3
Call waiting	Ends the call after the in-car guidance is announced to the caller.	Ends the call after the message notifying that you are driving.
Nuisance call barring service	· Callers from barred numbers hear a message saying that the call has been rejected and the call then ends. · Callers from other numbers hear a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.	The Nuisance call barring service can be used for videophone calls. · When the call is from a barred number, the Nuisance call barring service takes priority so that the call ends without the guidance message notifying that the call has been rejected. · Callers from other numbers see the message notifying that you are driving and the call then ends.
Caller ID request service	· Callers who have not provided a caller ID hear a message requesting a caller ID and the call then ends. · Callers who have provided a caller ID hear a message saying that you are driving and the call then ends.	The Caller ID request service can also be used for videophone calls. · If the caller does not provide a caller ID, the FOMA terminal ends the call without the guidance message asking the caller to provide a caller ID. · If the caller provides a caller ID, the caller sees the message notifying that you are driving and the call then ends.

*1 : If the ring time for voice mail is set to 0 seconds, no Driving mode message is played.

*2 : If the ring time for call forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Driving mode message is played.

*3 : Forwarded videophone calls are only connected if the designated number is a 3G-324M-compatible videophone.

<Info notice setting>

Checking Missed Calls

Default setting
ON

With the FOMA terminal folded, you can have the FOMA terminal use tones, vibration or the incoming call lamp to notify you when you have any missed calls or new mail.

- This function alerts you using a "YES" indication when the "Missed call", "New mail" or "Chat mail" desktop icon is displayed on the standby screen. →P.145
- You cannot use this function to check for missed calls or new mail in the following situations:
 - When All lock is set.
 - When Side keys guard is set to "ON".
 - When PIM lock is set.
 - When the Info notice setting is set to "OFF".

Setting the notification method for the Info notice function

- 1**  **"ON"**
Select "OFF" to disable tones.

Checking for missed calls, new mail or new chat mail

This function allows you to check for missed calls, new mail or new chat mail by pressing  (Memo/Check) when the FOMA terminal is folded.

Checking operates as shown below.

Info notice setting	When you have missed calls, new mail or new chat mail		When you do not have missed calls, new mail or new chat mail	
	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color
ON	"Bibip, bibip" tone and approx. 1-second vibration.*1	Lights for approx. 5 seconds in the respective colors set in "Phone", "Mail" and "Chat mail" in the "Illumination" settings. When you have missed calls, new mail or new chat mail, the lamp flashes for 1 second in the respective color.*2	"Bibibip" tone and approx. 0.2-second vibration.*1	The incoming call lamp flashes for approx. 5 seconds in "Color 12".

*1 : FOMA terminal vibrates when "Phone" in "Vibrator" is set to other than "OFF".

*2 : If the flashing color is set to "Gradation" in the "Illumination" settings, the incoming call lamp flashes in "Color 5" for missed calls, "Color 1" for new mail and "Color 3" for new chat mail.

NOTE

- In Manner mode, the FOMA terminal emits no tones and notifies you using vibration. However, the FOMA terminal does emit tones if the "Phone vol." setting or the "Mail vol." setting is not "Silent" in the "Original" manner mode. If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- You cannot use this function to check new mail held at the i-mode Center.
- Opening the FOMA terminal during the notification stops the notification.
- You cannot use this function to check missed calls while the FOMA terminal is open. Pressing  (Memo/Check) while the FOMA terminal is open switches to "Play/Erase msg.".
- If you select "日本語" (Japanese) in the setting of "Select language", you can select "電子音" (electronic sound), "ボイス" (voice) or "OFF".

<Record message>

Having the Caller Leave a Message

Default setting

Record message: OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ringing time: 8 sec.

When you cannot answer a voice or videophone call, this function allows you to record a message from the caller on your FOMA terminal.

- You can record up to 5 messages lasting about 20 seconds each.
- The difference between Record message and Voice mail is as follows.

Item	Record message	Voice Mail Service
Recording time and No. of messages	Up to 20 seconds each, 5 messages	Up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages
Retention period	No limit	Up to 72 hours
Where to store	FOMA terminal	Voice Mail Service Center
Condition for playback	Inside or outside the service area	Only inside the service area
Condition for recording	· A message can be recorded if the receiving phone is turned on inside the service area. · Setting "Record message" to "ON" (P.82)	· A message can be recorded even if the receiving phone is turned off inside/outside the service area. · Activating the Voice Mail Service (P.445)

Setting Record message

1



▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
ON	Select the desired type of answer message.
Japanese 1	Plays the following Japanese message: "ただいま電話に出ることができません。ピーツという発信音の後に20秒以内でお名前とご用件をお話ください。なお、テレビ電話の場合でも音声メッセージのみのお預かりとなります。" ("I cannot answer the phone at the moment. Please leave your name and a short message within 20 seconds after the beep. If this is a video-phone call, please leave a voice message.")
Japanese 2	Plays the following Japanese message: "せっかく電話をもらったけど、いま出られません。ピーツという発信音の後にメッセージを入れてね。テレビ電話のときも声しか入らないの。ごめんね。" ("Sorry, but I can't take your call just now. Please leave a message after the beep. If it's a video-phone call, just leave a voice message, OK? Thanks.")
English	Plays the following English message: "I can't take your call now. Please leave the message. When you call by video-phone, you can leave a voice message."
Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using "Voice announce".
Voice announce 2*	"Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" → P.425
OFF	Cancels the "Record message" setting.

* : Not displayed if no Voice announce message has been recorded.

2

Enter a number between 000 and 120 seconds as the ringing time

Entering a 3-digit time automatically sets the record message and "📞" appears on the standby screen.
Press (Set) to set the displayed time as shown.

NOTE

- You can check the highlighted answer message by pressing (Play) in the answer message selection screen.
- You cannot set the same ringing time for "Record message" and "Remote observation" or "Automatic answer".
- To give priority to the "Record message" function when "Voice mail" and "Call forwarding" are set at the same time, set a shorter ringing time than the time set for Voice mail and Call forwarding.
- The Record message function is disabled when the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode.
- If the ringing start time set in "Ringing time" is longer than the ringing time set for the Record message function, the FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing first. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it records a message, make sure that the ringing time for Record message is longer than the ringing start time.
- You can use "Utilities" to set an answer message for each phone number and group "Utilities" to set an answer message for each group. → P.119

When you receive a call with “Record message” set to “ON”

Once the set time has elapsed, the Record message function starts up and plays the preset answer message to the caller. For a videophone call, the “Preparing” image is sent and the answer message is played. The “Recording Voice only” image is then sent and recording begins.

When message recording begins

- The recording screen will be displayed. The caller's voice can be heard through the FOMA terminal earpiece during message recording.
- Regardless of the duration of the recording, the recordings is counted in terms of the number of recordings when recording begins.



To answer a voice call

▶ or (Answer)

To answer a videophone call

▶ To answer using the camera image, press . To answer using the substitute image, press or (Answer).

When message recording ends

- The original screen reappears and the “Missed call” desktop icon and “Record message” desktop icon appear on the standby screen. You can check the contents by selecting the one of the desktop icons.

→ P.145

Selecting desktop icons → P.144

- When one message is recorded, “” changes to “”. “” appears for two messages, “” for three messages, and corresponding icons for the subsequent numbers of messages.



NOTE

- Even when a videophone call is received, the call is recorded as the Record message without images.
- While “” is displayed, you cannot use the Record message function to record a message.
- While PIM lock is set, this function is set to “OFF” and the desktop icon is not displayed.
- Once 5 messages are recorded, the FOMA terminal cannot use the Record message function to record a message for the next caller.
- Even when “Record message” is not set to “ON”, you can record messages from callers by setting an “Original” manner mode in which “Record message” is set to “ON”. However, if there are already 5 record messages, the FOMA terminal works according to the other setting for “Manner mode set” (P.131) without activating the “Record message”.
- If your FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode, you cannot hear the caller's voice during a voice recording.
- If “Voice mail” is set, and when the FOMA terminal is turned off, “” appears or 5 messages have been recorded on the terminal, you can have additional messages recorded by the Voice mail service center. For a videophone call, however, the call is not connected to the Voice mail service center and is ended after the ring time set for the Voice mail service elapses.
- You cannot receive another call while a message is being recorded. The other caller hears the busy tone.

Important

Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<Quick message>

Having Callers Leave a Message During an Incoming Call

Even when the "Record message" function is not set to "ON", this function allows you to begin message recording during an incoming call simply by pressing one key.

- During an incoming call** ▶ or (Memo/Check)
Message recording starts and the Manner mode is set at the same time.

NOTE

- This function records a message each time you receive a call. This operation can be valid only once. You cannot set "Record message" to "ON".
- The Record message function starts up even when Manner mode operation is set to use an "Original" manner mode and "Record message" is set to "OFF" in that mode.
- If you receive a call when there are already 5 record messages, the FOMA terminal works according to the other setting for "Manner mode set" (P.131) without activating the "Record message".
- Manner mode still remains in setting when the call ends. To cancel Manner mode, hold down for 1 second or longer.
- While "PIM lock" is set, the record message is not activated even if the manner mode is set.

Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos

You can play back and erase voice and messages recorded using "Record message" and "Voice memo".

- is displayed on the standby screen when a record message is recorded.
- If there is a message recorded and it is a record message from a voice call, appears on the "Play/ Erase msg." screen. appears for a record message from a videophone call, and "★" for a voice memo.
- When a recorded message is from a caller who provided a caller ID, the caller's phone number is displayed during playback.
If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name is also displayed.
- You cannot play recorded messages when "Received calls" (P.163) record display is set to "OFF".

- ▶ ▶ **"Play/Erase msg."**
The "Play/Erase msg. screen" appears.

- Select the item you want to play**
The FOMA terminal beeps and playback begins. When the playback ends, the FOMA terminal gives 2 short beeps and the playback display disappears.

■ To play the next message

- ▶ (Memo/Check)

Each time you press (Memo/Check), the next most recent message is played. Voice memos are played last.

■ To stop the playback

- ▶ (Stop) or (CLR)

■ To call the phone number displayed during playback

- ▶ (Phone)

■ To make a videophone call to the phone number displayed during playback

- ▶ (VPH)

■ To erase the message during playback

- ▶ (Erase) ▶ "YES"



Function menu ▶ P.85

NOTE

- You can also play back messages by pressing (Memo/Check) in the standby screen.

Function menu (Play/Erase msg. screen)

1 Play/Erase msg. screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Play	Plays the message.
Delete this	Erases one message.
Delete rec. msg.	Erases all the recorded messages.
Delete all	Erases all the recorded messages and voice memos.

■ Important

Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

● Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

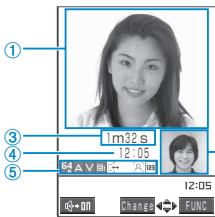
What is the Videophone?.....	88
Making a Videophone Call.....	89
Receiving a Videophone Call.....	94
Using Chara-den.....	96
Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party	97
Setting the Image Displayed During Videophone Calls	100
Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call	101
..... Indicate V-phone	101
Setting Remote Observation..... Remote observation	102

What is the Videophone?

You can use the videophone call function between the terminals that support the DoCoMo videophone system.

- The videophone function can be used between any two phones that support DoCoMo videophoning, even different types of phone.
- DoCoMo videophone conforms to the 3G-324M*1 standard set down in the international 3GPP*2 standards. Your FOMA terminal cannot connect to a videophone terminal that uses a different system from DoCoMo videophones.
 - *1: 3G-324M
An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile videophones.
 - *2: 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
A regional standardization body established to develop commonly applied technical specifications for 3rd-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).
- Videophone calls are conducted at connection speeds of 64K or 32K.
 - 64K: Data is communicated at a rate of 64kbps.
 - 32K: Data is communicated at a rate of 32kbps.

Viewing the videophone screen



- ① Main screen (by default, this shows the camera image from the other party's phone).
- ② Sub-screen (by default, this shows the camera image from your phone).
- ③ Call duration.
- ④ Current time.
- ⑤ Settings.

64 :64K videophone call in progress

32 :32K videophone call in progress

A :Sending/receiving voice

A :Voice transmission error

V :Sending/receiving video

V :Video transmission error

CAM :Sending camera image

CLR :Sending substitute image selected in "Select image"

HF OFF :Hands-free OFF

HF ON :Hands-free ON

Portrait :Photo mode (Portrait)

Scenery :Photo mode (Scenery)

Close-up :Photo mode (Close-up)

DTMF :Key operation/DTMF mode*

*: DTMF → P.91

Whole action mode :Key operation/Whole action mode

Parts action mode :Key operation/Parts action mode

Chara-den :Sending Chara-den

Face follow :State where the motion of a face can be followed

Face no follow :State where the motion of a face cannot be followed

Visual check :Visual check in progress

Control keys	Videophone operation
(Change)	Switches between front and rear cameras
(1 second or longer)	Switches main screen → P.91
(H) (Home) or (M) (Memo/Check))	Adjusts the volume
(Z)	Adjusts zoom ratio
(H)	Switches on/off hands-free
(M)	Displays function menu
(M) (Memo/Check) (1 second or longer)	Recording other party's voice during a call
CLR	On hold

Making a Videophone Call

Use this procedure to dial a phone number and make a videophone call.

1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code

"Videophone number input screen" appears.

Always start by entering the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code — Local code — Phone number

■ To call a mobile phone

090-XXXX-XXXX

or

080-XXXX-XXXX

■ To call a PHS phone

070-XXXX-XXXX



Function menu▶P.90

2 If a videophone call is connected, press to switch to hands-free mode

"Videophone in-call screen" appears.

"Using the hands-free operation"→P.70

■ To switch to a voice call during a videophone call

"Changing a Videophone Call to a Voice Call"→P.93

■ To switch between camera image and substitute image



■ To send video from the rear camera



Each time you press , the video switches between the front and rear cameras (Change camera).

■ To put the current videophone call on hold



The other party hears the hold tone and the "Holding" image appears on his or her videophone display.

To release a held videophone call, press  (answers the held videophone call using the camera image) or  (answers the held videophone call using the substitute image).

■ When using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

You do not need to switch to hands-free mode. You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

■ "If a videophone call is not connected"→P.92



The change of digital communications starts from this screen.



Function menu▶P.90

3 To end the call, press

NOTE

- The  icon flashes while you are dialing a videophone call and is displayed continuously during the call. If the call is connected at the "32K" dialing speed, the  flashes and is displayed continuously during the call.
- You cannot enter phone numbers and make videophone calls during "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing".
- Videophone calls can also be made using the DoCoMo "WORLD CALL" international dialing service.→P.61
- It may take a few seconds to switch from a camera image to a substitute image (Chara-den) depending on the Chara-den.

Function menu (videophone number input screen)

1 Videophone number input screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Notify caller ID	Select whether to notify the other party of your caller ID, from "ON" or "OFF". ■ To cancel the "Notify caller ID" setting of "ON" or "OFF" ▶ "Cancel prefix" When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID notification" (P.56) setting is applied.
Prefix numbers	▶ Select the name of the prefix (P.68) you want to add
International dial	■ When "+" is prefixed (country code is added) The subsequent operation is up to the setting performed by selecting "Int'l dial setting" → "Auto assist setting" (P.62). - When "Auto" is set "+" is replaced with the IDD prefix code set in "Auto assist setting". - When "OFF" is set ▶ Select the IDD prefix code "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added) ▶ Select a country code ▶ Select the IDD prefix code The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → P.62
Multi number	This service is not provided as of August, 2005.
Add to phonebook	"Adding Information to the FOMA terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.107 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → P.108
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
Dialing speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
Select image	Selects the image used when you make a videophone call, from "Me" or "Chara-den". Select "Release" to cancel the setting.

NOTE

- The Dialing speed setting only applies to one (dialed) call and is not stored in the Redial or Dialed calls records. Also, if you make a voice call after specifying "Dialing speed" setting, the setting is ignored.

Function menu (videophone in-call screen)

1 Videophone in-call screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description						
V-phone settings	Sets the screen for videophone call.						
Visual preference	Sets the image sent to and received from the other party. This setting is only retained during the call. <table> <tr> <td>Normal (default)</td><td>Standard setting for both quality and movement.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Prefer img qual</td><td>Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Prefer motion spd</td><td>Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.</td></tr> </table>	Normal (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.	Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.	Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
Normal (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.						
Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.						
Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.						
Brightness	▶ Adjust the brightness using  Five brightness levels (−2 to ± 0 to +2) are available.						

Item	Description	
V-phone settings	White balance	Sets image color tones. The settings are also applied to the equivalent camera functions. → P.193
		Auto (default) Select this option for automatic color tone adjustment.
		Fine Select this option when outdoors in sunny weather.
		Cloudy Select this option when outdoors in cloudy weather or in shade.
		Light bulb Select this option when indoors under incandescent lighting.
		Fluorescent light Select this option when indoors under fluorescent lighting.
	Color mode set	Sets image effects. This setting is only retained during the call.
		Normal (default) Sets a normal image.
		Sepia Sets a sepia-tone image.
		Monochrome Sets a monochrome (black & white) image.
	Photo mode	Sets modes suited to the scene being shot. This option cannot be set for the front camera.
		Portrait (default) The best mode for shooting people
		Scenery The best mode for shooting scenery
		Close-up The best mode for close-up shooting
Chara-den setup	"Setting Chara-den" → P.92 This option cannot be set for the camera images.	
Display light	Sets lighting of display light.	
	All time ON (default)	Turns the display light on all the time.
	15 seconds ON	Turns the display light on for 15 seconds only.
Disp. screen size	Sets the screen size.	
	Normal	Displays the image at actual size.
	Large (default)	Resizes the image to fit the display size.
Rear camera *1	Switches between the front and rear cameras. This setting is only retained during the call.	
Change main disp.	Changes the main display. The screen changes in the order of "Displaying the image from the other party's camera on your main screen." → "Displaying the image from your own camera on your main screen." → "Displaying only the image from the other party's camera." → "Displaying only the image from your own camera."	
Voice phone change	"Changing a Videophone Call to a Voice Call" → P.93	
Send DTMF tone *2	Sets/cancels push signal transmission mode during Chara-den. Except for Chara-den, videophone calls are always in push signal transmission mode.	
Own number	Displays your phone number during a videophone call.	
Petit message	"Sending messages during videophone calls (sending of camera image)" → P.101	
Decoration	"Using face decorations to increase the range of expressions in videophone calls" → P.100	
Off decoration	Erases the currently displayed message or stamp.	
Visual check *3	"Checking your appearance during a videophone call" → P.99	
Call time disp. (default : ON)	Sets whether to display the call time during a call.	

*1: If you have selected the rear camera, "Front camera" is displayed.

*2: If you have selected "Send DTMF tone", "DTMF tone OFF" is displayed.

*3: If you have selected "Visual check", "Visual check off" is displayed.

● Setting Chara-den

You can perform the Chara-den settings below during a videophone call using Chara-den.

1 Videophone in-call screen (P.89) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Chara-den setup” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Switch Chara-den	Selects the character to be displayed.
Action list	Checks the available actions and the corresponding keys. You can also view the action list by pressing  .
Change action	Changes the Action mode.
Switch image	Displays your own custom image on the other party's display. → P.98

● If a videophone call is not connected

If a videophone call was not connected, a message giving the reason for the connection failure appears. However, in some circumstances, the explanatory message may not be displayed. Also, depending on the type of phone used by the called party and the possible lack of a network service subscription, the reason given may not accurately reflect the other party's actual status.

- If a message is displayed informing you that you cannot connect when you are making a videophone call, set “Caller ID notification” to “ON” and make a call again.

Message	Reason
Check the number and retry	You dialed the number incorrectly.
Busy	The called party is on another call or using i-mode or packet communication.
Out of service area/power off	The called party is out of service area or his/her phone is turned off.
Select on for Call ID Notification	Displayed when you connected without notifying your caller ID (when dialing into V-live or visualnet).
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded.*
Please redial phone call	The called party sets the Voice mail service or a terminal to which call is forwarded does not support videophone call.
Failed to connect	Set “Caller ID notification” to “ON” and then try again. · This message may also be displayed in other situations.

*: If the phone used by the forwarding party is videophone call compatible, the videophone call will be forwarded.

NOTE

- If you make a videophone call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) from the FOMA terminal, the call is automatically changed to a voice call.
- If you make a videophone call to a phone that does not support videophone calls, or if the called party's phone supports videophone calls but is out of signal range or switched off, no connection can be established. If you called a phone that does not support videophone calls and “Voice call auto switch” is set to “ON”, the call is cut off by the called party before the videophone connection is established and is then automatically redialed as a voice call. However, this operation is not carried out if you dial the wrong number or if you call an ISDN synchronous 64K or PIAFS access point or an ISDN videophone that does not conform to the 3G-324M standard (as of August 2005). Note that call charge may apply in some cases.
- The “32K” dialing speed allows you to use videophones or other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at “64K” due to network conditions. If you make a videophone call at “64K” and the called party is in a “32K” area or similar situation, the call is automatically redialed at 32kbps. However, note that “32K” videophone calls attract the same digital communication charges as “64K” videophone calls.

NOTE

- If you cannot make a videophone call at "64K" communication speed, the communication speed is automatically changed to "32K". If the video call is still not connected, your call is automatically changed to a voice call when you set "Voice call auto switch" to "ON".

The relations between the switching of dialing speed and "Voice call auto switch" setting are listed below.

	Dialing speed set to "64K"	Dialing speed set to "32K"
"Voice call auto switch" set to ON	The connection speed automatically changes to "32K". If the videophone call still fails to connect, it switches to voice call mode.	Switches to voice call mode.
"Voice call auto switch" set to OFF	The connection speed automatically changes to "32K". If the videophone call still fails to connect, the videophone call ends.	Ends the videophone call.

- You cannot receive i-mode mail or a Message Request/Free during a videophone call. Received mail is held at the i-mode Center and can be retrieved using "Check new message" once the videophone is completed.
- You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- If the "Recharge battery" low-voltage alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the "Camera Off" message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging battery before the call is terminated, the videophone call continues with the image that had been displayed before low-voltage alarm was given.
- Digital communication charges still apply when the substitute image is displayed during a videophone call.

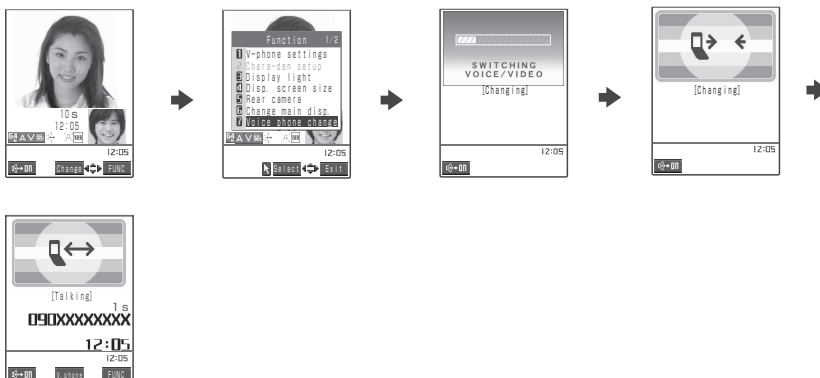
Changing a videophone call to a voice call (Caller)

The caller can change to voice call during videophone call.

- If the handset of your party is the FOMA terminal supporting the call change, "Voice phone change" can be selected from the function menu during the videophone call and you can switch between a videophone and voice calls. (This function is available in communications between voice call and videophone call switchable terminals.)
- You can change only when you are the caller for the videophone. When you receive the call, you cannot change the calls.
- To change the call, your FOMA terminal must be set to let the caller notify you "Indicate V-phone" beforehand. → P.101

1 Videophone in-call screen (P.89) ► (FUNC) ► "Voice phone change"

While the videophone call is changed to voice call, the indicator is displayed, which indicates that the calls are being changed, and the voice guidance is played.



NOTE

- The caller can also change a voice call to a videophone call. → P.60
- It is possible to change repeatedly between videophone call and voice call.
- It takes about 5 seconds to change the calls. Note that the signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- You cannot change the calls in the following cases:
 - You receive the call.
 - You make a call and the other party stops the call change function. → P.101
 - You make a call and the terminal of your party does not support the call change function.
- The call time displayed is reset to 0 second each time the calls are changed. However, after the change operation, if the videophone call is finished, the call time displayed is the total of voice call and videophone call.
- The call may be canceled because of the failure of the switch from a videophone call to a voice call due to the signal quality or the circumstances of the other party.
- You are not charged while the indicator that shows "Changing" is displayed.
- If the change is operated, the first dialed number is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls records. The first received number is registered to the Received calls record.
- If you performed the switching operation, the amount of call charge displayed in "Call data" (P.426) may differ from the one you will pay.
- Changing to voice call during hands-free operation cancels the hands-free setting. You can also set hands-free setting (ON/OFF) during changing (P.70).

Receiving a Videophone Call

Use this procedure to accept an incoming videophone call. If you cannot answer a videophone call immediately, you can still receive the call without showing the caller the image from your camera by displaying a substitute image.

1 When a videophone call comes in, press

■ To answer using the substitute image

- ▶  or  (Answer)

The substitute image appears on the caller's display.

After sending the substitute image, you can still change to the camera image by pressing .

■ When using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)

- ▶ Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch
- You can also answer using the substitute image. If "Automatic answer" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal automatically answers the call using the substitute image once the specified ringing time has elapsed.

■ To put a videophone call on answer hold while the FOMA terminal is ringing

- ▶ 

The "On hold" image and message appear on the caller's videophone display. To answer the held call using the camera image, press . To answer using the substitute image, press  or  (Answer).



Function menu▶P.95

2 When the videophone call is connected, press (ON) to switch to hands-free mode

"Videophone in-call screen" appears.

"Using the hands-free operation" → P.70

■ To switch to a voice call during a videophone call

- ▶ "Changing videophone call to voice call" → P.95

■ To send video from the rear camera

- ▶  (Change)

Each time you press , the video switches between the front and rear cameras (Change camera).

■ To switch between camera image and substitute image

- ▶ 

■ To put the current videophone call on hold

- ▶ 

The other party hears the hold tone and the "Holding" image appears on his or her videophone display.

To release a held videophone call, press  (answers the held videophone call using the camera image), or  or  (answers the held videophone call using the substitute image).

■ **When using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional)**
You do not need to switch to hands-free mode. You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

**3 To end the call, press **

Function menu (videophone call reception screen)

1 Videophone call reception screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Call rejection	Rejects the call without answering.
Call forwarding	Forwards the call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the "Call forwarding" (P.448) setting is "Activate" or "Deactivate".

NOTE

- Digital communication charges still apply to the caller when the substitute image is displayed during a videophone call.
- Even if "Voice mail" is set to "Activate", incoming videophone calls are not connected to the Voice mail service center. After elapse of the time set in Ringing time, this call is disconnected.
- Even if "Call forwarding" is set to "Activate", a received videophone call can only be forwarded if the designated number is a 3G-324M-compatible (P.88) videophone. Check if a terminal to which a call will be forwarded supports 3G-324M before setting.
- If you receive a videophone call from a caller who is barred in the Nuisance call barring service, the call ends without the guidance message notifying that the call has been rejected.
- You cannot receive i-mode mail or a Message Request/Free during a videophone call. Received mail is held at the i-mode Center and can be retrieved using "Check new message" once the videophone is completed.
- You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- If the "Recharge battery" low-voltage alarm appears on the display during a videophone call, the other party sees the "Camera Off" message and the call is disconnected roughly 20 seconds later. If you start charging the battery before the call is terminated, the call continues with the image that was displayed before the low-voltage alarm.
- The FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when "Driving mode" is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
- Depending on the settings used by the caller, you may receive a substitute image instead of video images.
- When switching from the camera image to the substitute image (Chara-den), it may take a few seconds depending on the Chara-den.

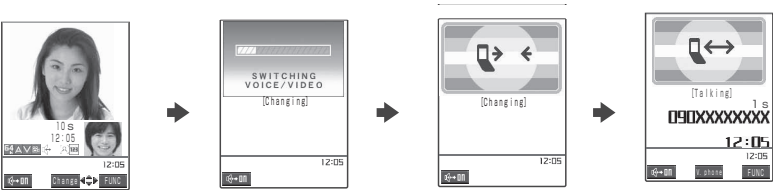
Changing a videophone call to a voice call

The caller can change a videophone call to voice call by performing the operation below.

- You can change only when you are the caller for the videophone. When you receive the call, you cannot change the calls.
- To change the call on the dialing phone, "Indicate V-phone" must be set to "Indication ON" on the receiving phone beforehand. → P.101

1 Videophone in-call screen (P.89) The caller change videophone call to voice call

While the videophone call is changed to voice call, a message and sound that indicate the change is being carried out.



NOTE

- If the hands-free is used before the call change, the hands-free setting is canceled after the change.

Using Chara-den

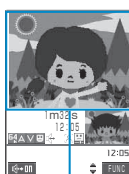
This function sends a cartoon character instead of your own image when you make a videophone call. With Chara-den, you can make your cartoon character move in response to sound, and you can also move its hands and feet or change its facial expression by pressing keys. “What is Chara-den?”

→ P.369

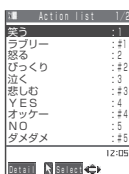
- To use Chara-den, you must first select the following functions. You can also use Chara-den by specifying Chara-den in the phonebook or in the Utilities.
 - Setting Chara-den by selecting “OFF” in “Camera image sending” → P.97
 - Setting Chara-den by selecting “Substitutive image” in “Select image”. → P.98
- To switch from the camera image to Chara-den, press **[F1]**. It may take a few seconds to switch depending on the Chara-den.

<Example: When you receive a videophone call from a caller who is not stored in the phonebook>

- 1 When you receive a videophone call, press **[F1]****
- 2 Control your character by pressing the dial keys**



Chara-den



Pressing a dial key makes the character perform the action assigned to that key.

■ To change the Action mode

You can switch between “Whole” and “Parts” in the function menu. → P.92

“Whole” action mode gives you full control over the character’s movements and expressions of emotion, etc. Control the character by pressing the **[F1]** to **[F12]** or **[F13]** to **[F24]** keys.

“Parts” action mode gives you partial control over the character’s movements (face, hands and feet, etc.) Control the character by pressing the **[F25]** to **[F36]** keys.

■ To check an action

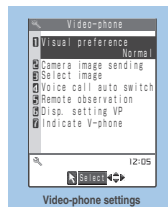
Press **[*F1]** to view the list of actions.

You can also press **[F1]** to select an action and then perform that action.

Selecting the Image Sent to the Other Party

- 1**   ▶ “Video-phone”
“Video-phone settings screen” appears.

- 2** Select any item:



Item	Description	
Visual preference	Sets the visual preference for videophone call.	
	Normal (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
	Prefer img qual	Sends more finely detailed video images. Best for motionless subjects.
	Prefer motion spd	Sends video images with smooth movement. Best for fast-moving subjects.
Camera image sending	“Setting the substitute image sent to the other party in a videophone call” → P.97	
Select image	“Setting the image sent during videophone calls” → P.98	
Voice call auto switch	Sets the operation performed when a videophone call fails to connect.	
	ON	If a videophone call cannot be connected, it is automatically switched to a voice call.
	OFF (default)	A message is displayed notifying that you could not connect to a videophone call, and the display returns to the standby screen.
Remote observation	“Setting Remote Observation” → P.102	
Disp. setting VP	“Setting the Image Displayed During Videophone Calls” → P.100	
Indicate V-phone	“Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call” → P.101	

● Setting the substitute image sent to the other party in a videophone call

You can select the image sent in place of the camera image.

- The image that can be set using this function is the JPEG or GIF image that is VGA size (640 dots wide × 480 dots high) or smaller. However, if the selected image is larger than Mail (L) (176 dots wide × 144 dots high), it is trimmed to the same aspect ratio as Mail (L) and reduced to Mail (L).
- The setting in this function is still retained after the videophone call ends.

- 1** **Video-phone settings screen (P.97) ▶ “Camera image sending” ▶**
Select any item:

Item	Description	
ON (default)	Sends the camera image.	
OFF	Pre-installed	Only “Camera Off” message is sent.
	Original	An image and “Camera Off” message are sent. ■ To change the setting ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Change setting” ▶ Select an image
	Chara-den	Sends the Chara-den character selected in the “Substitutive image”. “Function menu (Chara-den list screen)” → P.371 Priority order for Chara-den setting → P.108 ■ To change the setting ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Change setting” ▶ Select an image

● Setting the image sent during videophone calls

Default setting	On hold, Holding: Pre-installed Substitute image: Chara-den (フンブン (Dimo)) Record message, Preparing, Voice memo: Pre-installed

You can select the image sent in place of the camera image.

- The images that can be set using this function is the JPEG or GIF image that is VGA size (640 dots wide × 480 dots high) or smaller. However, if the selected image is larger than Mail (L) (176 dots wide x 144 dots high), it is trimmed to the same aspect ratio as Mail (L) and reduced to Mail (L).
- The setting in this function is still retained after the videophone call ends.

1 Video-phone settings screen (P.97) ▶ “Select image” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
On hold	Sets the image sent for a call on answer hold.
Holding	Sets the image sent for a call on hold.
Substitute image	Sets the image sent as a substitute image.
Record message	Sets the image sent during recording of the record message.
Preparing	Sets the image sent during preparation for the record message.
Voice memo	Sets the image sent during recording of the voice memo.

2 Select the image to be sent

Item	Description
Pre-installed	Sends only a message.
Original	Sends an image and a message. ■ To change the setting ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Change setting” ▶ Select an image
Chara-den	This option appears only when “Substitute image” is selected. Sends the image selected in “Substitute image”. “Function menu (Chara-den list screen)” → P.371 Priority order for Chara-den setting → P.108 ■ To change the setting ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Change setting” ▶ Select an image

■ Messages to be sent

The messages sent are as follows:

- For answer hold : “On Hold”
- For holding : “Holding”
- For sending the substitute image : “Camera Off”
- For recording message : “Recording Voice only”
- For preparing : “Preparing”
- For voice calls : “Recording Voice only”

NOTE

<Visual preference>

- This can also be set from the function menu during a videophone call. However, when the videophone call ends, the settings revert to the values set using this function.
- If the signal quality deteriorates during a videophone call, the image may become grainy or patchy regardless of the settings in "Visual preference".

<Camera image sending><Select image>

- Some GIF images may not be set in "Original".
- Regardless of the "Camera image sending" settings, you can switch between the camera image and substitute image during a videophone call.
- To check an image, highlight the item you want to check and press  (Play).
- Changing the setting from "Original" to "Pre-installed" or "Chara-den" does not delete the stored image.
- The set still image is displayed both on your FOMA terminal and the other party's phone. However, the answering message for a recorded message is only sent to the other party's phone.
- You cannot delete the "Original" still image. To change the image, use "Set as display" in "My picture" to store a new image in place of the old image. Even if you delete the original image used as the source for the pasted image, the image is still displayed on (sent to) the other party's phone.
- A "Pre-installed" substitutive image is sent when PIM lock is set.
- When the Chara-den character set as the substitute image is deleted and the "Chara-den" substitute image cannot be displayed, the pre-installed "Dimo" is sent. If you delete the pre-installed "Dimo", the "Pre-installed" substitute still image is sent.
- The substitute image setting specified after "Camera image sending" is set to "OFF" is mutually dependent with the substitute image setting for "Substitutive image" in "Select image".

<Voice call auto switch>

- When a videophone call is switched and redialed as a voice call, the call is charged as a voice call and digital communication charges do not apply.
- When a call is redialed, only the voice call records are logged in the "Dialed calls" record.
- Even if "Voice call auto switch" is set to "ON", it may not be possible to redial due to the circumstances of the network or the other party, such as busy.

Checking your appearance during a videophone call <Visual check>

1 Videophone in-call screen (P.89) (FUNC) "Visual check"

You can use the image from the front camera to check your appearance.

 is displayed during a visual check.

A substitute image is sent to the other party.

2



Visual check ends. The camera image is sent to the other party after the visual check.

You can also select "Visual check off" from the function menu to end the visual check. Then the screen returns to the state before the visual check.

Enlarging the image to be sent

During a videophone call, you can enlarge the image of yourself that is sent to the other party.

- If you are sending the image captured by the rear camera, you can enlarge the image by up to 4 (in 16 steps). The image shot using the front camera can be enlarged by up to 2 (in 2 steps).
- If you switch between the front and rear cameras during a videophone call, the respective zoom settings are retained. When a videophone call ends, the image reverts to normal scale.
- You cannot enlarge the image when you are sending a substitute image.
- You cannot enlarge the other party's image.

1

During a videophone call Zoom in or out

Setting the Image Displayed During Videophone Calls

Setting the image in the main screen and the image size <Disp. setting VP>

Default setting Main screen: Other image Display screen size: Large

1 Video-phone settings screen (P.97) ▶ “Disp. setting VP” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Main display	Sets the main image for videophone calls.	
	Other image	Displays the image from the other party's camera on your main screen.
	Camera image	Displays the image from your own camera on your main screen.
	Only other image	Displays only the image from the other party's camera on your display.
	Only camera image	Displays only the image from your own camera on your display.
Display screen size	Sets the screen size for videophone call.	
	Large	Resizes the image to fit the display size.
	Normal	Displays the image at actual size.

Using face decorations to increase the range of expressions in videophone calls <Decoration>

You can decorate the videophone call screen (image from your own camera) by adding frames or stamps. You can even paste in stamps that follow facial movements.

- The FOMA terminal comes with pre-installed stamps that trace facial movements, but you can also download additional stamps of the same type from the “みんな N らんど” site. “みんなNらんど” → P.213

1 Videophone in-call screen (P.89) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Decoration” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Frame/stamp	Pastes fixed (static) decorations into the videophone screen.	
	Frame	Selects a frame placed around the videophone screen.
	Stamp	▶ Select a stamp ▶ Decide the location using  ▶  (Put) Places a stamp in the videophone screen.
Facestamp	Selects a stamp that follows facial movements in the videophone screen. If a stamp can follows facial movements, displays “  ”. If not, displays “  ”.	

■ To remove a frame or stamp

“Off decoration” in the function menu in videophone in-call screen → P.91

NOTE

- You can check the framed frame, stamp or facestamp by pressing  (Play) in each selection screen.
- Because the camera image of yourself is a mirror image, text stamps pasted in the image appear reversed and cannot be read correctly.

Sending messages during videophone calls (sending of camera image) <Petit message>

1 Videophone in-call screen (P.89) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Petit message” ▶ Enter a message

The message appears. The message automatically disappears after 15 seconds.

You can enter up to 16 full-pitch characters.

“Entering Text” → P.498

■ To cancel message entry

▶ Erase the entire message ▶ 

■ To erase the message manually

▶  (1 second or longer)

You can also erase the message by selecting “Off decoration” from the function menu.

NOTE

- Because the camera image of yourself is a mirror image, text appears reversed and cannot be read correctly.

<Indicate V-phone>

Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call

Default setting
Indication ON

You can notify the other party that your FOMA terminal supports the change between voice call and videophone call.

- Switching this function to “Indication ON” enables the switching operation at the caller side after notifying the caller that switching is available when you receive a call.
- You cannot set this function during a call or while “ ” appears.

1 Video-phone settings screen (P.97) ▶ “Indicate V-phone” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Indication ON	Notifies your the other party that your FOMA terminal supports the change between voice call and videophone call.
Indication OFF	Does not notify the other party that your FOMA terminal supports the change between voice call and videophone call.
Check indication	Displays the settings of “Indicate V-phone”.

<Remote observation>

Setting Remote Observation

Default setting	Other ID: Not recorded Ringing time: 5 sec. Set: OFF

Remote observation is only available between FOMA terminals or between a FOMA terminal and a phone equipped with a 3G-324M-compatible videophone function. Your FOMA terminal can be used as either the dialing or receiving phone for remote observation.

- Remote observation can only be carried out when phone number of the observing (dialing) phone is stored beforehand in the phone receiving the remote observations and "Remote observation" is set to "ON".

Preparing the receiving phone

Set the phone number of the dialing phone (Other ID) and the delay until remote observation begins (Ringing time) on the phone performing the remote observation (receiving phone).

- Up to 5 IDs can be stored.
- Remote observation cannot be performed when the receiving FOMA terminal is in "Manner mode" or "Driving mode".

1 Video-phone settings screen (P.97) ▶ "Remote observation" ▶ Enter the security code ▶ "Other ID"

"Other ID screen" appears.
Security code → P.152



Function menu ▶ P.103

2 "<Not recorded>" ▶ Enter the phone number of the other phone

- To change a previously recorded ID
▶ Select an ID you want to change

3 Press to return to the remote observation screen

4 "Ringing time" ▶ Enter the ring time (003-120 seconds)

Enter the time as a 3-digit number. Entering a 3-digit number sets the ringing time.
Press  (Set) to set the displayed time as shown.

5 "Set" ▶ "ON"

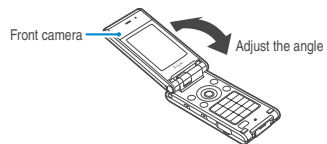
When you set remote observation,  appears in the standby screen.



- To turn remote observation off
▶ "OFF"

6 Position the FOMA terminal

In remote observation, the image from the front camera is sent to the dialing phone.
Put the receiving FOMA terminal in the observation position, ensuring that it is switched on and unfolded.
If the FOMA terminal is left folded, the FOMA terminal receives incoming signals for the ringing time and then rejects the signals.



NOTE

- The ringing time set for Remote observation cannot be the same as that set for "Record message" or "Automatic answer".
- If the ringing time set for "Call forwarding" on the receiver side is shorter than the ringing time set for remote observation, "Call forwarding" takes priority. To give priority to remote observation, set a shorter ringing time than the "Call forwarding" setting.
- To receive remote observation with "Call forwarding" service, set a phone that supports 3G-324M-compatible videophone as a terminal to forward calls and store the sender's phone number as the other ID.

Function menu (Other ID screen)

1 Other ID screen▶⌂(FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description	
Look-up address	Sets the number of other party.	
	Phonebook	Stores a number stored in the phonebook. "Search phonebook" → P.111
	Dialed calls	Stores a number stored as the Dialed calls record. "Dialing a Previously Dialed Number" → P.64
	Received calls	Stores a number stored as the Received calls record. "Using the Received Calls" → P.74
Delete this	Deletes one record.	
Delete all	Deletes all IDs. The "Set" setting is turned "OFF" if all IDs are deleted.	

NOTE

- When "Restrict dialing" is set, you can only call the phone numbers specified in the "Restrict dialing" settings.
- When "OFF" is selected for "Redial/Dialed calls" and "Received calls" in "Record display set", you cannot access the "Received calls" or "Dialed calls" records.

Performing remote observation

- To perform remote observation, you should always make a videophone call with caller ID (phone number) notification provided from the FOMA terminal registered as the other ID on the receiving phone.
- When your FOMA terminal is used to receive the remote observation, images and sound from the dialing phone are both played.

1 Make a videophone call to the receiving phone



Receiving phone

After the ringing time set on the receiving phone has elapsed, remote observation begins. Video images and sound from the receiving phone are played through the dialing phone. If you press to switch to hands-free mode, sound from the receiving phone is played through the speaker. By using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), you can listen to the sound from the receiving phone through the earphone without switching to hands-free mode.

■ To answer a videophone call (with camera image) on the receiving phone without triggering remote observation

- ▶ Answer by pressing before the ringing time has elapsed
- To answer with a substitute image, press .

NOTE

- Calls from the phone number stored in the Remote observation settings can be received as a remote observation call even when "All lock" is set.
- If caller ID notification is not provided, the call is received as a normal videophone call and not as remote observation.
- If "Call acceptance" is set in a phone number other than the "Other ID" number, or if "Call rejection" is set for the "Other ID" phone number on the receiving phone, the incoming call is rejected and remote observation cannot be performed.
- If the called party sets "Reject unknown", calls from the numbers that are not registered in its Phonebook are rejected so remote observation is not available.
- If Remote observation and Record message are set at the same time, Remote observation takes priority even when the ringing time set for Record message is shorter than the one set for Remote observation.
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected to the FOMA terminal, received sound is played through the earphone and the speaker regardless of the "Earphone" setting.
- Ring tone is specifically for Remote observation and cannot be modified.
- Ring tone is played at the volume set in "Video-phone" in "Ring volume". However, if the ring volume set to "Silent", "Level 1" or "Step", the remote observation volume is set to "Level 2".
- When remote observation is being received, the flashing color is set to "Gradation" and the flashing pattern is "Standard", regardless of the "Illumination" settings.
- Answer hold cannot be used while remote observation is being received. Press to end the call.
- If Remote observation is set to "ON" on the receiving phone, a videophone call received from the phone number stored as the "Other ID" is logged in the Received calls record as a remote observation call. If remote observation was not triggered by the call, it is logged as a missed call record for videophone in the Received calls record.
- You cannot receive a voice call or videophone call on the receiver side during remote observation. Voice calls or videophone calls not received during remote observation are logged as missed calls and stored in the Received calls record, and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- When the FOMA terminal is folded during remote observation, the terminal operates as specified in "Fold setting". However, when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected to the FOMA terminal, the "Fold setting" specification is ignored and the FOMA terminal sends a substitute image to the other party when it is folded.
- You cannot switch cameras during remote observation.

Ending remote observation



The call duration is displayed and remote observation ends.
You can also end remote observation by pressing on the receiving phone.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones. Improper use of the FOMA terminal in ways that constitute a serious public nuisance may be punishable under laws or ordinances intended to prevent such behavior (privacy protection laws, etc.).

● Using the Phonebook

Phonebooks Available With the FOMA Terminal	106
Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone)	
Phonebook.....	Add to phonebook 107
Adding Information to the UIM	
Phonebook.....	Add to UIM Phonebook 108
Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records	
Renaming Groups.....	Group setting 110
Making a Call From the Phonebook	Search phonebook 111
Editing the Phonebook.....	Edit Phonebook 115
Deleting a Phonebook Entry.....	Delete data 116
Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card	UIM operation 116
Checking the Phonebook Storage Status	119
Setting Up Phonebook Utilities.....	Utilities/Group utilities 119
Using Dialing Shortcuts	Two-touch dialing 123
Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites.....	Automatic display 123

Phonebooks Available With the FOMA Terminal

Your FOMA terminal contains two phonebooks. One is the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (Phone) itself, for which you can set a range of functions, and the other is the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, which can also be used in other FOMA terminals. The two phonebooks can each be used differently, as needed.

Differences between the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook

■ Data stored

The table below shows the different data storage capabilities of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook.

Stored data	FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	UIM phonebook
No. of entries *1	Holds up to 700 entries.	Holds up to 50 entries.
Groups *2	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 19.	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 10.
Phone number storage *3	The phonebook will hold up to 700 phone numbers in total with up to 4 numbers per entry. This allows information such as the contact's mobile phone number and work number to be included in the same entry.	Only one number can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 24 icons "  " "  ", etc. for stored entries, allowing for quick identification of the contact's mobile phone number or work number.	Icons cannot be selected. The "  " icon is automatically assigned.
E-mail address storage	The phonebook will hold up to 700 e-mail addresses in total with up to 3 addresses per entry. This allows the contact's home and work addresses to be included in one entry.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 5 icons "  ", "  ", etc. for stored entries, allowing for quick identification of the contact's home or work address.	Icons cannot be selected. The "  " icon is automatically assigned.
Image storage	One still image and one "Chara-den" character can be stored per entry, up to a total of 100 of each for the whole phonebook.	—
Other data storage	Each phonebook entry can include the contact's name, reading, postal code, street address, birthday and memo. This information, together with the contact's phone numbers and e-mail addresses are stored as a single phonebook entry.	The contact's name and reading can be stored.

*1: Depending on the amount of data stored in each entry, the number of entries that can actually be stored may decrease.

*2: You can rename "Group 01" to "Group 19" ("Group 01" to "Group 10" in the UIM phonebook). It is often useful to select your preferred group names beforehand. → P.110

*3: You can enter 0-9, #, +, *, p (pause) in the phonebook. If you use a sub-address (P.69), enter *.

■ Features of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook

The following utility functions can be used with entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook:

- Specifying memory numbers (001 to 009) allows you to use two-touch dialing to make phone calls by pressing just 2 keys. → P.123
- You can use the "Utilities" functions to specify the settings used for dialing and receiving calls by group or by phone number or e-mail address. → P.119
- You can use "Restrictions" to place restrictions on incoming and outgoing calls for individual phone numbers. → P.165
- You can use "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" to store phonebook entries that you want to keep private as secret data. → P.157
- "Setting your secret code" → P.115

■ Features of the UIM phonebook

Because UIM phonebook entries are stored on the FOMA card (UIM), you can transfer your phonebook entries to another FOMA terminal simply by switching the FOMA card (UIM). This makes the UIM phonebook very useful when you use multiple FOMA terminals in different locations.

Displaying names

Voice and videophone calls



When you receive a call with caller ID notification from someone who is stored in the phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the caller's name and phone number.



If there is a still image stored in the phonebook entry and "Disp. PH-book image" is set to "ON", the FOMA terminal also displays the image. However, depending on the size and amount of data of the registered image, it may take time for the image to be displayed.

The caller's name is also displayed in the "Received calls", "Dialled calls" and "Redial" records.

i-mode mail and SMS (short message)

When you receive i-mode mail from someone whose i-mode mail address is stored in the phonebook or you receive an SMS from someone whose phone number is stored in the phonebook, the FOMA terminal displays the sender's name in the Inbox list screen and details screen. When you send i-mode mail or SMS to that person, his or her name is also shown in the Outbox list screen and details screen. The person's name also appears in the "Sent address" or "Received address" list.

<Add to phonebook>

Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook

- Always enter a name in the "Name" field. The entry will not be stored in the phonebook unless a name is entered.

1 On the standby screen ► ► "Add to phonebook" ► "Phone" ► Enter the name



The name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.

You can store up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters.

"Entering Text" → P.498

2 Check the reading ► (Set)

■ If the reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.

Up to 32 half-pitch characters can be used.

"Reading search" in "Search phonebook" uses the reading stored here.

3 Select any item:

Item	Description
Group	Selects a group number between "00" and "19". If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group 00.
Phone number	Enters the phone number and select the icon. You can enter up to 26 digits for the phone number. Once you have stored the first phone number, the <Not stored> option appears in the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number. When storing the number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.

Item	Description
 Mail address	Enters the e-mail address and select an icon. You can enter up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the "  <Not stored>" option appears in the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.
 Address	Enters the postal code and street address. Postal codes can consist of up to 7 half-pitch numbers. You can enter up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.
 Birthday	Enters the contact's birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
 Memorandums	Enters a memo (short note). You can enter up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.
 Set image	Select the image displayed when you receive a call from the contact.
 Chara-den	Select the "Chara-den" character displayed during a videophone call. The character is displayed when making and receiving a videophone call.
 Memory No	Memory numbers are automatically assigned when an entry is stored in the phonebook, but can be changed to any number between 000 and 699, as desired.

4 Set the respective items▶ (Finish)

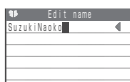
NOTE

- If you enter the "わ, っ" character (full-pitch, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as "ワ" (half-pitch, upper case). Symbols and pictographs are not represented in the reading.
 - Phonebook entries stored using symbols or pictographs may not be displayed correctly e.g. when data are transferred.
 - Include the correct domain name when storing e-mail addresses. The domain name is the part of the address that follows the "@" symbol.
(E.g.) docomo.taro△△@docomo.ne.jp
 - If the contact's e-mail address is in the "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format, store just the phone number as the e-mail address.
 - If you store an image or "Chara-den" character in a phonebook entry and then modify or delete the original image or "Chara-den" character, the image or "Chara-den" character in the phonebook entry is also modified or deleted.
 - To have a stored image displayed when you receive a call, set "Disp. phonebook image" to "ON". → P.135
 - When you receive a call and the phone number and still image are stored in the phonebook, if the size of the still image is larger than the displayed area set in "Calling" under "Display setting", the width and length of the image is reduced at the same ratio. If it is smaller than the image screen area, it is centered on the screen.
- <Chara-den settings priority sequence>**
- The priority order for "Chara-den" settings is as follows (① has the highest priority):
 - ① Select image in the videophone setting → P.90
 - ② Chara-den set in the phonebook utilities → P.120
 - ③ Chara-den set in the group utilities → P.121
 - ④ Chara-den stored in the phonebook entry
 - ⑤ Camera image sending → P.97 / "Substitutive image" in "Select image" → P.97

<Add to UIM Phonebook>

Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook

1 "Add to phonebook" ▶ "UIM" ▶ Enter the name



The name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.
You can store up to 10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch alphanumeric characters (including some half-pitch symbols).
"Entering Text" → P.498

2 Check the reading▶ (Set)

■ If the reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using full-pitch katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.

Up to 12 full-pitch or 25 half-pitch alphanumeric characters (including some half-pitch symbols) can be used.

"Reading search" in "Search phonebook" uses the reading stored here.

3 Select any item:

Item	Description
 Group	Selects a group number between "00" and "10". If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group 00.
 Phone number	Enters the phone number. Phone numbers up to 20 digits long can be stored on a blue FOMA card (UIM) or up to 26 digits long on a green FOMA card (UIM). When storing the number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
 Mail address	Enters the e-mail address. The e-mail address can contain up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.

4 Set the respective items ► (Finish)

NOTE

- If you enter the “わ, っ” character (full-pitch, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as “ワ” (full-pitch, upper case). However, you can also enter the “ワ” character (full-pitch, lower case) using reading input. Symbols are not represented in the reading.
- Include the correct domain name when storing e-mail addresses. The domain name is the part of the address that follows the “@” symbol.
(E.g.) docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
- If the contact's e-mail address is in the “[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp” format, store just the phone number as the e-mail address.

When phonebook editing is interrupted

1 On the standby screen ► (Clock icon) ► “Add to phonebook” ► “Phone” or “UIM” ► “Recall”



If a low-voltage alarm sounds during editing or you started up a new Tools group task using Multi tasking, editing of the interrupted phonebook entry can be restarted. When you are re-editing an entry, if you cancel editing without storing the changes, the data being edited is erased.

■ To store a new entry

► “New”

NOTE

- When data being edited is stored temporarily, only the most recent entry is stored.
- If you receive a voice or videophone call while editing the phonebook, you can leave the phonebook entry being edited and answer the call.
In the case of a voice call, you can return to phonebook edit screen by pressing (Ⓜ) to display the task menu and then selecting the item that was being edited. In both voice calls and videophone calls, the original editing screen reappears when the call ends.

■ Important

- You should back up the information stored in the phonebook onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P.531) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to back up the phonebook data onto your PC.
- Stored information can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. If you wish to copy the data for each phonebook entry onto a new model at an authorized NTT DoCoMo facility such as a DoCoMo shop, it may not be possible to copy the data stored on the FOMA terminal depending on the specifications of the new model.

Note that NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever for the loss of data such as stored phonebook entries. Users should back up phonebook data onto a PC using the Data Link Software.

Adding Phonebook Entries From the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records

You can add information to the phonebook from the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address", "Sent address", "Access reader" and "Sites" records. You can also add phonebook entries after dialing a phone number.

- To add information to the existing phonebook entry, select "Add", search the phonebook and retrieve the entry before storing the new information.

<Example: Adding information from the "Received calls" record to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook>

- 1 Received calls screen (P.75)  (FUNC)  "Add to phonebook"  "Phone"**
 - To add information to the UIM phonebook
 - ▶ "UIM"
- 2 "Add"  Locate the phonebook entry to which the information is to be added**

Searching the phonebook → P.111

 - To store a new phonebook entry
 - ▶ "New"
 - To add information to the UIM
 - ▶ "New" or "Overwrite"
- 3 Display the phonebook detail screen**

Phone number is automatically entered and the phonebook editing screen appears.
Editing the phonebook → P.115
- 4 After completing the changes, press  (Finish)**
 - If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data
 - ▶ "YES"

NOTE

- The "Notify caller ID" setting ("Notify" or "Not notify") displayed in the "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records is not stored in the phonebook.
- Received addresses to which replies cannot be sent cannot be added to the phonebook.
- Text that exceeds the limit on the number of characters that can be added to the phonebook is deleted. Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces.

<Group setting>

Renaming Groups

Default setting	FOMA terminal (Phone): Groups 01-19	UIM: Groups 01-10

You can assign your stored phonebook entries to groups according to the contact's role ("Work", "Friends", etc.) or by hobby ("Baseball", "Arts", etc.). This allows you to use the phonebook as if it were divided into different volumes according to purpose. The table below shows the groups that you can rename and the number of characters that can be stored.

	Renamable groups	Max. no. of characters
FOMA terminal (Phone)	Groups 01-19	10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch
UIM	Groups 01-10	10 full-pitch or 21 half-pitch

- Group 00 cannot be renamed.

1



"Group setting screen" appears.

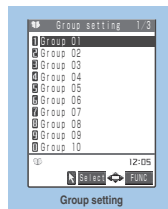
2

Select a group ▶ Enter the new group name

The "ABC" icon appears next to UIM groups.

If the same name is used for groups on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM, they are displayed as separate groups.

"Entering Text" → P.498



Function menu ▶ P.111

Function menu (Group setting screen)

1

Group setting screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit group name	Edits the group name. "Entering Text" → P.498
Utilities	"Setting Group utility functions for the phonebook" → P.121
Reset group name	The changed group name is reset to the default name assigned at the time of purchase.

NOTE

- Resetting the group name does not clear the "Utilities" settings specified for that group.
- When the group names are unchanged or have been deleted (reset), "Group 01" to "Group 19" is displayed for the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook while "Group 01" to "Group 10" is displayed for the UIM phonebook.

<Search phonebook>

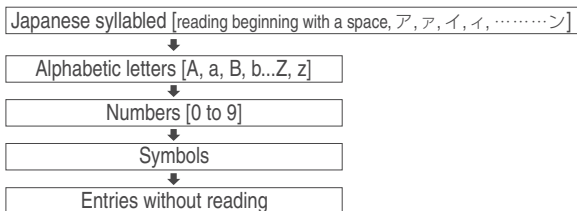
Making a Call From the Phonebook

You can make a call by searching for a phonebook entry using any of 7 search criteria, reading, name, phone number, e-mail address, memory number, group or "column" in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.).

- Phonebook entries stored as secret data can only be retrieved when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

■ Viewing the search results

Except for memory number searches, search results are displayed in the sequence shown below based on the reading entered when the entry was stored.



1

On the standby screen ▶ (P) ▶ Select the search method



■ To display your preferred search method first

- ▶ Highlight the search method that you want to have displayed first ▶ (P) (Prefer)

A star "★" appears next to the preferred search method.

The next time you search the phonebook, pressing (P) on the standby screen will display the search method selection screen with your preferred method shown first.

■ To cancel your preferred search method setting

- ▶ On the standby screen ▶ (P) ▶ "Search phonebook" ▶ Highlight the search method with the star "★" ▶ (OFF)

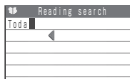
2 Search the phonebook

When the search ends, The “Phonebook list screen” that meets the searching conditions appears. “” is displayed for the UIM phonebook entries on the search result list screen.

If no phonebook entry that satisfies the search conditions is stored, a message notifying you that there is no data is displayed.



Function menu▶P.113



■ Reading search

- ▶Enter some of the reading▶ or 

Enter the reading from the first in the order of the family and first name. You do not need to enter the entire reading you are searching for.

“Entering Text”→P.498



■ Name search

- ▶Enter part of the person's name▶ or 

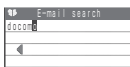
Start with the person's surname followed by the given name. You do not need to enter the entire name.



■ Phone No. search

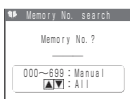
- ▶Enter part of the person's phone number▶ or 

You can search by entering either the first digits in the phone number or any part of the number.



■ E-mail search

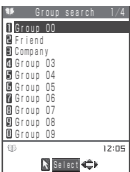
- ▶Enter part of the person's e-mail address▶ or 



■ Memory No. search

- ▶Enter the 3-digit memory number

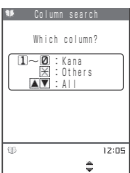
You cannot search the UIM phonebook by memory number.



■ Group search

- ▶Select the desired group

Note that the UIM phonebook uses different groups from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.



■ Column search in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.)

- ▶Press the key for the “column” you want to search

- 1 a : Displays only entries that begin with “a” column reading.
- 2 ka : Displays only entries that begin with “ka” column reading.
- 3 sa : Displays only entries that begin with “sa” column reading.
- 4 ta : Displays only entries that begin with “ta” column reading.
- 5 na : Displays only entries that begin with “na” column reading.
- 6 ma : Displays only entries that begin with “ma” column reading.
- 7 ya : Displays only entries that begin with “ya” column reading.
- 8 ra : Displays only entries that begin with “ra” column reading.
- 9 wa : Displays only entries that begin with “wa”, “wo” or “n” column reading.
- * : Displays other entries.

■ To list all the entries stored in the phonebook

- ▶Press  or  without entering any search criteria

Note that you cannot list all the phonebook entries when “Group search” is selected as the search method.

■ To make a call from the list screen

- ▶Highlight the phonebook entry you want to call▶ or 

Press  to make a voice call and  to make a videophone call. If the phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

3 Select the desired phonebook entry

"Phonebook entry detail screen" appears.

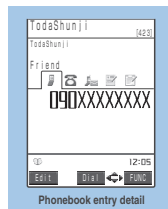
■ **If multiple phone numbers are stored for the same entry**

Use  to display a different phone number.

■ **To make a call from the phonebook entry detail screen**

▶ Display the phone number you want to call and press ,  (Dial) or .

Press  or  to make a voice call and  to make a videophone call.



Function menu▶P.113

NOTE

- If you have not set a preferred phonebook search method, pressing  displays the phonebook search screen with the last selected search method highlighted.
- The preferred phonebook search method is valid in the following functions:
 - Composing an i-mode mail message
 - Searching a mail by its mail address
 - Composing SMS message
 - Mail member
 - Auto-sort by address
 - Chat member

Function menu (phonebook list screen)

1 Phonebook list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Sort	Sorts the phonebook list screen.	
	-reading order (default)	By reading.
	Name order	By name.
	Memory No. order	By memory number.
	Descending*	Switches the sorting sequence (Ascending/Descending).
Export this	Exports one phonebook entry to a miniSD memory card.	
Send 1r data	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.397	
Send all 1r data	"Transferring multiple data at the same time" → P.398	
Delete data	Delete phonebook entries.	
	Delete this	Deletes one phonebook.
	Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" You can delete multiple phonebook entries.
	Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" ▶ "YES" Delete all the phonebook entries. Security code → P.152

*: If you have selected the Descending, "Ascending" is displayed. The default setting is "Ascending".

NOTE

- Deleting all the phonebook entries also deletes the UIM phonebook entries.
- You cannot delete phonebook data while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.

Function menu (phonebook detail screen)

1 Phonebook detail screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description						
Notify caller ID	Specifies whether to notify your caller ID of your party by selecting "Don't notify" or "Notify caller". ■ To cancel "Don't notify"/"Notify caller" in "Notify caller ID" ▶ "Cancel prefix" Selecting "Cancel prefix" activates the settings of "Caller ID notification" (P.56).						
Prefix numbers	▶ Select the name of the prefix (P.68) you want to add.						
International dial	■ When "+" is prefixed (country code is added) The subsequent operation is up to the setting performed by selecting "Int'l dial setting" → "Auto assist setting" (P.62). - When "Auto" is set "+" is replaced with the IDD prefix code set in "Auto assist setting". - When "OFF" is set ▶ Select the IDD prefix code "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■ When "+" is not prefixed (no country code is added) ▶ Select a country code ▶ Select the IDD prefix code The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls → P.62						
Multi number	This service is not provided as of August, 2005.						
Dialing speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".						
Utilities	"Setting up utilities for phone numbers and e-mail addresses" → P.120						
Restrictions	"Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers" → P.165						
Edit data	"Editing the Phonebook" → P.115						
Delete data	"Deleting a Phonebook Entry" → P.116						
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143						
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253						
Compose SMS	"Composing and Sending SMS (short message)" → P.309						
Send 1r data	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.397						
Send all 1r data	"Transferring multiple data at the same time" → P.398						
Automatic disp.	"Specifying the automatically displayed phone number" → P.123						
Export this	Exports a phonebook entry to a miniSD memory card.						
Copy name	Copies a name stored in the phonebook. The copied name can be pasted into input and other screens. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.514						
Copy phone number^{*1}	Copies phone numbers stored in the phonebook. The copied phone number can be pasted into input and other screens. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.514						
Secret code	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item: "Setting your secret code" → P.115 Security code → P.152						
	<table> <tr> <td>Set code</td><td> ▶ Enter a 4-digit secret code ▶ "YES" Sets your secret code. </td></tr> <tr> <td>Check code</td><td>Confirms the set secret code.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Release code</td><td>Cancels the set secret code.</td></tr> </table>	Set code	▶ Enter a 4-digit secret code ▶ "YES" Sets your secret code.	Check code	Confirms the set secret code.	Release code	Cancels the set secret code.
Set code	▶ Enter a 4-digit secret code ▶ "YES" Sets your secret code.						
Check code	Confirms the set secret code.						
Release code	Cancels the set secret code.						
Release secret	"Changing secret data back to normal data" → P.159						
Copy to UIM^{*2}	Copies phonebook data. "Copying a Phonebook Entry to the UIM" → P.116						
Select image	Selects the image used when you make a videophone call, from "Me" or "Chara-den". Select "Release" to cancel the setting.						

^{*1} : Depending upon what you have selected, the following is applicable.

- If you have selected a mail address, "Copy mail add." is displayed.
- If you have selected an address, "Copy address" is displayed.
- If you have selected a birthday, "Copy birthday" is displayed.
- If you have selected a memo, "Copy memorandums" is displayed.

^{*2} : If you have selected the UIM phonebook, "Copy from UIM" is displayed.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.380

● Setting a secret code

To send i-mode mail to someone who has a stored secret code, you must add his or her secret code to the e-mail address. Setting a secret code for an e-mail address automatically adds that secret code when you send e-mail to that address.

- You can only add a secret code when the destination e-mail address is in the "phone number" or "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format. You cannot add secret codes to e-mail address with other formats.
- You can send from the secret code specified phone number not as a mail address.
- You cannot set secret codes for the UIM phonebook.
- You cannot set "0000" as a secret code.

NOTE

- If a phone number or e-mail address is stored in the phonebook with a secret code assigned, and if you additionally add a secret code to the phone number or e-mail address in this function, your mail cannot be sent to the recipient. In order to avoid that situation, delete the secret code assigned in the phonebook and then add a secret code in this function, or do not use this function to add another code.

<Edit Phonebook>

Editing the Phonebook

Use the procedure below to edit phonebook entries. You can also store an edited phonebook entry as a new entry.

- The readings cannot be edited automatically when you edit the names.

1 Phonebook entry detail screen (P.113) ► (Edit) ► Edit the respective items

Edit the required items using the procedure used in "Add to phonebook".

Adding information to the phonebook → P.107

■ To store a new memory number

- Select  ► Enter a memory number (000 to 699) that has not already been stored.

The original phonebook entry is left in its pre-edited state and the edited entry is stored as a new phonebook entry with a different memory number.

2 After editing, press (Finish) ► "YES"

■ To add information to the UIM

-  (Finish) ► "Overwrite" or "Add"

Selecting "Overwrite" stores the edited information.

Selecting "Add" leaves the original phonebook entry unchanged and stores the edited entry as a new phonebook entry.

NOTE

- You cannot edit the phonebook while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.

<Delete data>

Deleting a Phonebook Entry

Use this procedure to delete information in the phonebook. You can select and delete a phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday, memo, image or "Chara-den" character.

- 1** Phonebook entry detail screen (P.113)  (FUNC)  "Delete data"
▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Erase phone number*	Deletes the selected phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday, memo, image or "Chara-den" character.
This phonebook	Deletes the phonebook entry.

- * : Depending upon what you have selected, the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a mail address, "Erase mail add." is displayed.
 - If you have selected an address, "Erase address" is displayed.
 - If you have selected a birthday, "Erase birthday" is displayed.
 - If you have selected a memo, "Erase memorandums" is displayed.
 - If you have selected an image, "Delete image" is displayed.
 - If you have selected a Chara-den, "Delete chara-den" is displayed.

NOTE

- You cannot delete phonebook data while "Keypad dial lock" or "Restrict dialing" is set.
- You can delete phonebook data on the phonebook list screen. However, an item of the phonebook detail cannot be deleted.
- If you delete the first phone number or mail address when multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are stored, the next phone number or mail address appears.

<UIM operation>

Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card

You can transfer phonebook and SMS data back and forth between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM). You can also delete SMS data and phonebook entries stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or FOMA card (UIM).

- You cannot call/receive voice calls or videophone calls, or send/receive mail while copying or deleting data. In addition, you cannot activate other functions.
- You cannot copy items that cannot be stored in the UIM phonebook.

For information on the items and the number of stored entries that can be copied → P.106

Copying data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM)

Use this procedure to copy phonebook entries and SMS data between your FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM).

- Copying data does not delete or modify the original source data on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or FOMA card (UIM).
- You cannot use this function unless your FOMA terminal (Phone) is fitted with a FOMA card (UIM).

- 1**   **"UIM operation" ▶ Enter your security code**

Once you enter your security code,  is displayed and you can no longer receive communication such as incoming calls. If you receive a call or similar communication before entering your security code, the UIM operation procedure ends.

Security code → P.152

- 2** **"Copy" ▶ "Phone → UIM" or "UIM → Phone"**

- 3** **Select any item:**

Item	Description
Phonebook	Searches and displays the phonebook list screen. Searching the phonebook → P.111

Item	Description	
SMS	Select the SMS data.	
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

4 Use to select a checkbox (☐) ► (Finish) ► “YES”



Function menu ► P.117

NOTE

- You cannot exchange data with the FOMA card (UIM) when an error occurs on the FOMA card (UIM).
- If the maximum number of entries that can be stored (saved) at the destination is reached during copying, a message appears notifying you that the memory used for data storage is full. Delete some unwanted entries from the stored (saved) data and then copy the uncopied data again.
- Copying the phonebook from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM) converts “katakana” included in name and reading to full-pitch. Copied are up to 10 full-pitch or up to 21 half-pitch characters for name and up to 12 full-pitch or up to 25 half-pitch characters for reading.
- Because the number of phone numbers and e-mail addresses that can be stored in a single phonebook entry on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM) is different, the second and subsequent phone numbers/e-mail addresses stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) cannot be copied to the FOMA card (UIM).
- Because the types of characters that can be used on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM) are different, some characters may be converted to spaces or other characters.
- You can also copy individual phonebook entries by displaying the phonebook detail screen and selecting “Copy to UIM” (or “Copy from UIM” when using the FOMA card (UIM)) from the function menu.
- Phonebook entries cannot be copied by group.
- Phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied using this function even when the FOMA terminal is set to “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”.
- If the same group names are set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), the phonebook group settings are retained. If the same group names are not set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), the entries are stored in group 00.
- You cannot copy just the SMS report. However, if you receive an SMS report for a sent SMS, copying the sent SMS will also copy the SMS report saved for the sent messages SMS.
- You cannot copy SMS by box or by folder.
- You cannot protect SMS copied to the FOMA card (UIM). If you copy protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the messages on the FOMA card (UIM). “Replied to” or “Transferred” icons are also changed to “Read”.
- If you copied SMS in added folders, i-appli mail folders, the “Chat” folder or the “Trash box” folder from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), those messages can be viewed in the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.
- Entries copied from the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone) are copied to the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.

Function menu (UIM operation (copy) screen)

1 UIM operation (copy) screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Start copy	Starts copy operation.
Select this	Selects the data.
Select all	Selects all the data.
Release this	Deselects the selected data.
Release all	Deselects all the data.
Detail	Displays the data details.

Deleting phonebook or SMS (short message) data

- 1   ► **“UIM operation”** ► **Enter your security code**
Security code → P.152
- 2 **“Delete”** ► **“Phone”** or **“UIM”**
- 3 **Select any item:**

Item	Description	
Phonebook	Searches and displays the phonebook list screen.	
	Searching the phonebook → P.111	
	Select the SMS data.	
SMS	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

- 4 Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ►  (Finish) ► **“YES”**



Function menu ► P.118

Function menu (UIM operation (delete) screen)

- 1 **UIM operation (delete) screen** ►  (FUNC) ► **Select any item:**

Item	Description
Start deletion	Starts deletion operation.
Select this	Selects the data.
Select all	Selects all the data.
Release this	Deselects the selected data.
Release all	Deselects all the data.
Detail	Displays the data details.

Checking the Phonebook Storage Status

You can check the number of entries stored in the phonebook and the number of entries that can still be added to the phonebook.

1



Phone (the phonebook stored on the FOMA terminal)

- Phonebook** : Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/700 (storage limit)
- Secret** : Shows the number of entries stored as secret data. This can only be displayed in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
- Image** : Shows the number of images stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored images/100 (storage limit)
- Chara-den** : Shows the number of "Chara-den" characters stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored characters/100 (storage limit)
- Rest**  : Shows the number phone numbers that can still be added.
-  : Shows the number e-mail addresses that can still be added.

UIM (the phonebook stored on the FOMA card (UIM))

- Phonebook** : Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/50 (storage limit)

<Utilities/Group utilities>

Setting up Phonebook Utilities

Default setting
All OFF

The utilities allow you to specify settings such as which answer message is used by the Record message function and which ring tones are used for each group or for each phone number or e-mail address in the phonebook. You can distinguish callers only by the ring tone.

You can set the following Utilities functions:

Purpose			Function	Page
Receiving	To identify calls from specific callers using tones, vibration, etc.	Identify using ring tones ^{*1}	Ring tone	P.126
		Identify using vibration	Vibrator	P.128
		Identify using incoming call lamp color ^{*1}	Illumination	P.141
		Identify using image or movie	Image	P.133
	To change the answer message used when Record message starts up based on who is calling ^{*2}		Answer message	P.82
	To identify mail from specific senders using tones, vibration, etc.	Identify using ring tones	Mail ring tone	P.126
		Identify using vibration	Mail vibrator	P.128
		Identify using incoming call lamp color	Mail illumination	P.141
Sending	To set the connection speed used for videophone calls based on who you are calling		Dialing speed	P.90
Receiving/ Sending	To set the “Chara-den” character used for videophone calls based on who the other party is		Chara-den setting	P.92

*1: Identification is also possible for received 64K data communication.

*2: "Record message" must be set to "ON" beforehand.

- Cannot be set to "Group 00" on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or the phonebook or groups on the FOMA card (UIM).
- Cannot be set to the phonebook stored as the secret data.
- The "Utilities" functions will only work if the caller provides a caller ID (phone number). You should always use the "Caller ID request" service. → P.451

Setting up utilities for phone numbers and e-mail addresses

When you receive a voice call, videophone call or SMS from the specified phone number, or when you receive i-mode mail from the specified e-mail address, the selected utility notifies you of the received call or mail.

- The FOMA terminal uses the "Mail ring tone", "Mail illumination" or "Mail vibrator" set for a phone number when you receive an SMS or when the sender's e-mail address is "[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp". When you receive a mail from other address, the FOMA terminal operates according to the setting for the mail address in phonebook.

1 Phonebook entry detail screen (P.113) ➤ (FUNC) ➤ "Utilities"

"Phonebook utilities setting screen" appears.
A star "★" appears next to the selected function.

■ **To deselect a selected function**

- ▶ Select the function indicated by the star "★"
The function is deselected and the star "★" disappears.



2 Select any item:

Item	Description
Ring tone	"Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone" → P.126
Vibrator	"Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" → P.128
Illumination	"Setting the Incoming Call Lamp Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls" → P.141
Image	"Changing the Display" → P.133
Answer message	"Having the Caller Leave a Message" → P.82
Mail ring tone	"Changing the FOMA Terminal Ring Tone" → P.126
Mail vibrator	"Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" → P.128
Mail illumination	"Setting the Incoming Call Lamp Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls" → P.141
Dialing speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".
Chara-den setting	"Setting Chara-den" → P.92

■ **When you set a utility...**

An icon appears in the phonebook detail screen indicating the utility that has been set.



: "Ring tone" is set.



: "Vibrator" is set.



: "Illumination" is set.



: "Image" is set.



: "Answer message" is set.



: "Mail ring tone" is set.



: "Mail vibrator" is set.



: "Mail illumination" is set.



64k : "Dialing speed" is set to "64K".

32k : "Dialing speed" is set to "32K".



: "Chara-den setting" is set.

Setting Group utility functions for the phonebook

1 Group setting screen (P.111) ► (FUNC) ► “Utilities”

“Group utilities setting” screen appears.

A star “★” appears next to the selected function.

■ To deselect a selected function

► Select the function indicated by the star “★”

The function is deselected and the star “★” disappears.



2 Select any item:

Item	Description
Ring tone	“Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone” → P.126
Vibrator	“Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls” → P.128
Illumination	“Setting the Incoming Call Lamp Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls” → P.141
Image	“Changing the Display” → P.133
Answer message	“Having the Caller Leave a Message” → P.82
Mail ring tone	“Changing the FOMA Terminal's Ring Tone” → P.126
Mail vibrator	“Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls” → P.128
Mail illumination	“Setting the Incoming Call Lamp Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls” → P.141
Dialing speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from “64K” or “32K”.
Chara-den setting	“Setting Chara-den” → P.92

NOTE

- These functions can also be set for groups that contain only phonebook entries stored as secret data and for groups that contain both entries stored as secret data and entries stored as ordinary data. However, group utility settings are disabled for mail or calls received from contacts stored as secret data.
- When Utilities settings duplicate the settings specified for other functions, and mail and Message Request/Free with differing respective settings are received at the same time, they are handled as outlined below.
- When multiple e-mails or Message Request/Free are received simultaneously

	Operations of ring tone and illumination
Multiple mails are received.	The settings for the last mail are applied to the operations. If the mails include a chat mail, the ring tone set for chat mail is used.
Message Request and Message Free are received simultaneously.	The settings for Message Request are applied to the operations.
Mail, Message Request and Message Free are received simultaneously.	The settings for the last mail are applied to the operations. If the mail and messages include a chat mail, the ring tone set for chat mail is used.

<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>

- Priority is assigned as follows for incoming call lamp operation when call/mail settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):

- ① Illumination for phonebook utilities
- ② Illumination for group utilities
- ③ Illumination → P.141

<Ring tone priority sequence>

- Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone operation when call settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):

- ① Ring tone for phonebook utilities
 - ② Ring tone for group utilities
 - ③ Ring tone for Select ring tone → P.126/Ring tone for Style mode → P.147
- The phonebook or group utilities priority order is as follows (① has the highest priority):
- ① i-motion for Ring tone
 - ② i-motion for Image
 - ③ i-motion for Ring tone (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice), melody

- Priority when mail settings are duplicated → P.274,312

NOTE

<Image display priority sequence>

- Priority is assigned as follows for image screen when call/mail settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):
- ① Phonebook utilities image ② Group utilities image ③ Add to phonebook image → P.106
 - ④ i-motion for Select ring tone → P.126 ⑤ Image for Display setting → P.133/Image for Style mode → P.147
- The phonebook or group utilities priority order is as follows (① has the highest priority):
- ① i-motion for Ring tone ② i-motion for the Image, image

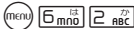
<Dialing speed priority sequence>

- Priority is assigned as follows when dialing speed settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):
- ① Dialing speed → P.90, 114 ② Dialing speed set in Phonebook utilities
 - ③ Dialing speed set in Group utilities

Checking the Utilities settings

You can check the settings for each of the phonebook and group functions specified in “Utilities”.

1



“Phonebook utilities screen” appears.

A star “★” is used to indicate items for which the functions are set.



Function menu ▶ P.122

Function menu (Phonebook utilities screen)

Select a function or setting marked with a star “★”.

1

Phonebook utilities screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Check settings	▶ Select a function or setting marked with a star “★” ▶ Check the phonebook entry or group to which the setting applies Checks the utilities settings.
Release	Cancels all the function settings marked with a star “★”.

*: The number of the selected items (the number of times (●) is pressed) varies depending on the function or setting specified.

<Two-touch dialing>

Using Dialing Shortcuts

By assigning memory numbers "000" to "009" to phone numbers, you can quickly call those phone numbers simply by pressing one of the number keys  to  and then pressing  or  (Dial) () to make a videophone call).

1  to    or  (Dial)

■ To make a videophone call

▶ 

NOTE

- If the phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.
- If a phonebook entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between "000" and "009", two-touch dialing can only be used to call that number when the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret only mode.
- When "Restrict dialing" is set, and the first phone number in the phonebook with memory number 000 to 009 is not nominated in the "Restrict dialing" settings, two-touch dialing cannot be used. In this situation, you must either cancel Restrict dialing restrictions or nominate the first phone number in the phonebook with memory number 000 to 009 in the Restrict dialing settings.

<Automatic display>

Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites

Default setting
OFF

This function allows you to set up your FOMA terminal so that when you fold the FOMA terminal with the standby screen on the screen and then open it again, it automatically displays a preset phone number. You can then make a voice or videophone call to that number simply by pressing  or .

- You can only set automatic display for one phone number. You cannot set automatic display for mail address.
- You cannot set automatic display for the UIM phonebook.
- You cannot set automatic display for a phone number stored in "Secret" or "Secret only" mode.
- The phonebook set in the automatic display function does not appear if you fold and then reopen the FOMA terminal while using another function or entering text, or while the FOMA terminal is in Secret only mode.

Enabling the automatic display function

1    ▶ "ON"

■ To disable the automatic display function

▶ "OFF"

Specifying the automatically displayed phone number

1 Phonebook entry detail screen (P.113) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Automatic disp."

A star "★" appears next to "Automatic disp."

■ When the phonebook contains two phone numbers or more

▶ Use  to select a phone number to display automatically

■ To cancel the automatic display setting

▶ Repeat step 1

The setting is cancelled and the star "★" disappears.

NOTE

- Press , , , or  (Home) while the automatic display phone number is shown to return to the standby screen.
Press  to display the Mail menu or  to display the i-mode menu.
- The setting for this function is disabled in the following situations:
 - When PIM lock is set
 - When All lock is set
 - When the FOMA terminal is in Secret only mode
 - When Restrict dialing is set for other phonebook entries but not for the entry for which automatic display is set

● Tone/Display/Lighting Settings

■ Tone Settings

Changing the Ring Tone	Select ring tone	126
Adding Sound Effects to i-motion Playback		
Sound	SRS wow setting	128
Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls.....	Vibrator	128
Setting the Keypad Tone	Keypad sound	129
Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging	Charge sound	129
Having the FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out	Quality alarm	129
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mail.....	Mail/Msg. ring time	130
Enabling the Tone to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker.....	Earphone	130
Switching Off the FOMA Terminal's Tone	Manner mode	130
Modifying Manner mode	Manner mode set	131

■ Display/Lighting Settings

Changing the Display	Display setting	133
Displaying Phonebook Images		
When You Receive Calls.....	Disp. PH-book image	135
Setting the Indicator Display Mode.....	Indicator display	135
Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting	Display light	136
Changing the Display Design	Display design	137
Changing the Menu Display.....		137
Setting the Neuropointer	Neuropointer	140
Setting the Incoming Call Lamp Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls	Illumination	141
Setting the In-call Flashing Mode for the Incoming Call Lamp	Illumination in talk	142
Having the FOMA terminal Display the Call Time During Calls	Call time display	142
Changing the Font	Font	142
Setting the Clock Display	Clock display	143
Using Desktop Icons.....	Desktop icon	143
Selecting the Icons to Display on the Standby Screen	Select icons setting	146
Setting Style Mode.....	Style mode	147

<Select ring tone>

Changing the Ring Tone

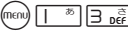
Default setting

Phone: Pattern 1 Video-phone: Pattern 1 Mail: Pattern 2 Chat mail: Pattern 2
MessageR: Pattern 3 MessageF: Pattern 3

You can set the FOMA terminal to use different ring tones for voice calls, videophone calls, e-mail, chat mail and Message Request/Free. You can also set specific ring tones for particular phone numbers, e-mail addresses and phonebook groups. → P.119

- You can set i-motion animations downloaded from i-mode sites or websites as ring tones.
- If you set an i-motion that includes both video and voice as the ring tone and receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set as the ring tone.
- If you set something other than an i-motion that includes both video and voice as the ring tone and then set an i-motion that includes both video and voice as the receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set as the receiving display.
- Melody list screen → P.376
- An image only i-motion cannot be specified as the ring tone.
- Some i-motion cannot be specified.

1



▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Phone	Sets the ring tone and display for incoming voice calls and 64K data communication. ("Changing the Display" → P.133)
Video-phone	Sets the ring tone and display for incoming videophone calls. ("Changing the Display" → P.133)
Mail	Sets the ring tone and display for incoming i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication. ("Changing the Display" → P.133)
Chat mail	Sets the ring tone and display for incoming chat mails. ("Changing the Display" → P.133)
MessageR	Sets the ring tone and display for incoming Message Request. ("Changing the Display" → P.133)
MessageF	Sets the ring tone and display for Message Free. ("Changing the Display" → P.133)

2

"Select ring tone" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Melody	Chooses a previously stored ring tone or melody from the "Pre-installed" folder or a melody that was downloaded from an i-mode site or website and stored in the "Inbox" or in a folder you have created.
i-motion	Selects an i-motion that was downloaded to the FOMA terminal or a video clip (i-motion) that was shot using the built-in camera from "Inbox", "Camera" or a folder you have created. Selects one of the pre-installed i-motion from "Pre-installed". When you receive a call, the FOMA terminal plays the video and sound for the selected i-motion (Chaku-motion).
Voice announce	Chooses between "Voice announce 1" and "Voice announce 2".
Random melody	Selects a folder containing stored melodies. When you receive a call or message, the FOMA terminal chooses one of the melodies stored in the folder at random and plays it as the ring tone.
OFF	The FOMA terminal plays no ring tone.

3

Select ring tone or i-motion

When you select a melody, the FOMA terminal plays the melody. Press to stop the melody.

After setting the ring tone, set the display if necessary.

■ To check the settings

▶ (Play)

Pre-installed ring tones and melodies

Display
Pattern 1
Pattern 2
Pattern 3
Melody 1
Melody 2
Melody 3
Melody 4
Melody 5
Melody 6
Melody 7
Melody 8
Melody 9
Melody 10
Alarm 1
Alarm 2
Alarm 3
Alarm 4
Alarm 5
Alarm 6
Alarm 7
Alarm 8

Recording patent No.: T-0570040 

Pre-installed Chaku-motion

“ Kaleidoscope ” (kaleidoscope) is stored in the “Pre-installed” folder in “i-motion”.

NOTE

- Even if the i-motion can be set as a ring tone, you can no longer set it once you transfer/import it from PCs, other FOMA terminals or miniSD memory card (including i-motion you have exported).
- The volume at which the melody is played back during ring tone selection is determined by the setting in “Ring volume”. If “Silent” is set, the melody is not played back.
- Melodies with “” or “” before the title are restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played. When such melodies are set as a ring tone, only the designated part can be played. → P.376
- Setting the ring tone in “Set as ring tone” in “Melody” of Data box changes the settings of this function. → P.377
- Setting the ring tone in “Set as ring tone” in “i-motion” of Data box changes the settings of this function. → P.358
- Depending on the combination of receiving screen, ring tone and precedence setting, either the receiving screen or the ring tone may revert to the default set at the time of purchase.
- You can use “Call setting w/o ID” to set a ring tone for voice calls where the caller does not provide a caller ID. The ring tone used for videophone calls where the caller does not provide a caller ID is determined by the “Video-phone” setting in this function.
- When the Ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. → P.121
- If you have activated “Call Waiting” when an i-motion is set as the ring tone, the ring tone used when you finish the current voice call is “Pattern 1” and not the i-motion.
- If i-motion is specified as the ring tone for incoming mail, the one for the packet communication is “Pattern 2”. The special screen appears for the packet communication regardless of the incoming screen settings.

<SRS_WOW setting>

Adding Sound Effects to i-motion Playback Sound

Default setting
OFF

When you play an i-motion that uses sound effects, the sound effects simultaneously enhance the sound played through the speaker and through earphones. Sound played through the speaker is enhanced by effects that provide clearly defined voice and music instrumental sound, and stereo playback sound played through earphones is enhanced by effects that give a natural-sounding 3D sound field and rich low tones as well as clearly defined voice and music instrumental sound.

● Icons in the Movie list screen show which i-motion uses sound effects. → P.341

- 1     **"ON"**
 ■ To cancel the setting
 **"OFF"**

<Vibrator>

Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls

Default setting
All OFF

You can set the FOMA terminal to use different vibration patterns to notify you when you receive a voice call, videophone call, e-mail, Chat mail or Message Request/Free.

- 1      **Select the item to which you want to set vibration**
 Select "Phone" to set vibration for voice calls and 64K data communication.
 Select "Mail" to set vibration for i-mode mail, SMS and packet communication.

- 2 **Select the vibration pattern**

Item	Description
Pattern 1-3	Vibrates in each pattern.
Melody linkage	The FOMA terminal vibrates in a pattern matched to the melody set as the ring tone. However, if no vibration pattern is set for the melody, or if an i-motion is set as the ring tone, pattern 2 is used.
OFF	The FOMA terminal does not vibrate.

When you select a vibration pattern, the FOMA terminal vibrates in that pattern.

An icon on the standby screen shows which function the FOMA terminal vibrates for.

: The vibration starts when receiving either voice calls or videophone calls.

: The vibration starts when receiving either of mail, chat mail, and Message Request/Free.

: Both  and  are available.

NOTE

● Regardless of the settings for "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF" in "Vibrator", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate if the settings of "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P.130) are not "ON".

● When the FOMA terminal is set to other than "OFF" for the vibration pattern, take care that the ring tone vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a space heater) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.

● When "Ring volume" is not set to "Silent" and the vibrator is set, the FOMA terminal uses a ring tone and vibration to notify you of received calls. When "Ring volume" is set to "Silent", the FOMA terminal uses vibration only.

● The vibrator vibrates at a set strength regardless of the ring volume setting.

<Priority sequence for Vibrator>

● If the vibrator settings are duplicated for the phonebook utilities and group utilities, the priority is as follows (where ① has the highest priority):

①The vibrator setting for phonebook utilities ②The vibrator setting for group utilities ③The vibrator setting

<Keypad sound>

Setting the Keypad Tone

Default setting
ON

- Setting this function to "OFF" also disables the following tones:
 - Warning tones
 - Battery level tone
 - The tone emitted when you start adjusting the volume
 - Alarm clock snooze release tone
- You can set the keypad tone from the "Initial setting" (P.55).

1





▶ "ON"

■ To disable keypad sound

▶ "OFF"

NOTE

- The keypad sound is played at the level set in "Volume" during a call, and fixed at the same level while not talking on the phone.
- The confirmation tone sounds regardless of the settings when:
 - You press  (Memo/Check) with the FOMA terminal folded.
 - You shoot a picture (shutter sound)
 - You start/finish memo playback (the sound emanates from the receiver)
 - You start/finish voice memo and voice announce recording (the sound emanates from the receiver)

<Charge sound>

Setting the Confirmation Tone for FOMA Terminal Charging

Default setting
ON

This function allows you to set the FOMA terminal so that it emits a short double-beep ("bibip") when charging starts and ends so that you do not leave the FOMA terminal charging indefinitely.

- The confirmation tone does not sound regardless of the setting specified in this function when:

- The screen is not standby
- You are dialing
- You receive a call
- During a voice call
- The FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode
- The FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode
- Standby voice memo is recorded
- Voice announce is recorded
- Data is sent and received
- The FOMA terminal is turned off

1


▶  ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Charge sound" ▶ "ON"

■ To disable charge sound

▶ "OFF"

<Quality alarm>

Having the FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out

Default setting
High tone

The FOMA terminal uses this function to sound an alarm tone during a voice call or videophone call warning you that the signal quality is deteriorating and the call is likely to drop out.

- The call may drop out without a warning tone if the signal quality worsens very quickly.

1


▶ 
▶  ▶ Select an alarm tone

■ To disable alarm

▶ "No tone"

<Mail/Msg. ring time>

Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mail

Default setting
5 seconds all

Use this function to specify whether the FOMA terminal sounds a ring tone when you receive mail, chat mail or a Message Request/Free, and if so, the duration of the ring tone.

1



Select the item of which you want to set the ring time

Select "Mail" to set the ring duration for i-mode mail and SMS.

2

"ON" or "OFF"

Item	Description
ON	▶ Enter the ring time (01-30 seconds) The FOMA terminal rings for the specified time. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, press (Set).
OFF	The FOMA terminal does not ring.

NOTE

- When "OFF" is selected for "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" or "MessageF", " S" appears on the standby screen.

<Earphone>

Enabling the Tone to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker

Default setting
Earphone

Use this procedure to enable the tone to ring both through the earphone and through the speaker when you use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).

1



"Earphone+Speaker" or "Earphone"

NOTE

- When "Earphone" is set to this function, tones still sound through the FOMA terminal's speaker if no earphone/microphone is connected.
- Even when "Earphone" is set, the ring tone sounds when a call arrives, and in roughly 20 seconds the ring tone is played through both the earphone and the speaker. However, when the ring tone sounds for procedures other than an alarm notification or incoming voice call, videophone call or mail message, the ring tone is not played through the speaker in 20 seconds and is only played through the earphone.
- Do not wrap the cord for the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around the FOMA terminal. Note also that leaving the cord for the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch near the FOMA terminal during a call may cause interference (noise).

<Manner mode>

Switching Off the FOMA Terminal's Tone

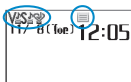
When you want to avoid disturbing people around you, this function allows you to stop the FOMA terminal playing ring tones and keypad tones through the speaker with a single touch.

- When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the following tones are replaced by vibrations:
 - Ring tone^{*1}
 - Alarm clock, schedule, ToDo and Notify cost limit alarm tones^{*2}
 - Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when the FOMA terminal is folded

^{*1}: The FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in "Vibrator". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal vibrates in "Pattern 2".

^{*2}: The FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in "Phone" in "Vibrator". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal vibrates in "Pattern 2".
- In "Manner mode set", you can choose "Manner mode", "Super silent" or "Original" as the FOMA terminal operation mode when Manner mode is set. → P.131

1 When the screen is standby or while you are talking▶ (One second or longer)



The FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode and "" appears on the screen.

During a call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message appears notifying you that Manner mode is now set.

As well as "", the information specified in "Manner mode set" is displayed when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode.

 : The FOMA terminal will warn you using "Vibrator".

 : "Ring volume" is set to "Silent".

 ~  : "Record msg." is set to record messages. The number indicates how many messages there are.

■ To cancel Manner mode

Hold down  for one second or longer when the screen is standby or while you are talking.

Manner mode is cancelled and "" disappears.

During a call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message appears notifying you that Manner mode is no longer set.

NOTE

- When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal still plays the shutter sound when you take a picture with the FOMA terminal's camera.
- If you attempt to play melodies or i-motion including sound, a message asking whether to play the sounds or not appears. If you play the i-motion, the sounds are emitted at the set volume. If you play melodies or sound, the sounds are played at the volume set in the "Phone" in the "Ring volume" setting. (If "Phone" is set to "Silent" or "Step", the volume is set to "Level 2".)

<Manner mode set>

Modifying Manner mode

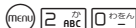
Default setting
Manner mode

This feature allows you to select the FOMA terminal operations used in Manner mode.

- The following are the default settings of the "Original" manner mode:

- Record msg.: OFF
- Vibrator: ON
- Phone vol.: Silent
- Mail vol.: Silent
- Alarm vol.: Silent
- VM tone: ON
- Keypad sound: OFF
- Mic sensitiv.: Up
- LVA tone: OFF

1



The manner mode set screen appears.

2

Select any item:



Item	Description
Manner mode	Mutes all tones played through the speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc. However, confirmation tones played through the earpiece speaker (the confirmation tones sounded when  (Memo/Check) is pressed to play/erase a memo or voice memo) are not muted.
Super silent	Mutes all tones played through the speaker and confirmation tones played through the earpiece speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc.
Original	This option allows you to tailor the Manner mode settings to your own preferences. You can specify in advance what volume is set for alarm clock alarm tones and how the FOMA terminal deals with incoming calls when Manner mode is set. "Original manner" → P.132

1 Manner mode set screen (P.131) ▶ “Original” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Record msg.	Sets the Record msg. "Having the Caller Leave a Message" → P.82
Vibrator	Sets the vibrator. "Having the FOMA Terminal Vibrate to Notify You of Incoming Calls" → P.128
Phone vol.	Sets the ring tone volume for voice/videophone calls and 64K data communication. "Adjusting the Ring Volume" → P.77
Mail vol.	Sets the ring tone volume for mail, chat mail, packet communication and Message Request/Free. "Adjusting the Ring Volume" → P.77
Alarm vol.	Sets the alarm tone volume for the alarm clock. "Using the FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock" → P.412
VM tone	Sets confirmation tones such as "Record msg." and "Voice memo".
Keypad sound	Sets the keypad tone. "Setting the Keypad Tone" → P.129
Mic sensitiv.	Chooses between "Normal" and "Up" for the microphone sensitivity during calls.
LVA tone	Sets the low-voltage alarm. "When the battery runs out" → P.53

2 Press (Finish) after setting the respective items

■ When you set Manner mode

The table below lists the settings for each type of Manner mode:

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (shows the Original manner mode settings)
Record msg. activation	OFF		"Record msg." settings
Vibrator	ON		"Vibrator" settings
Ring volume for voice/videophone calls and 64K data communication	Silent		"Phone vol." settings
Ring volume for mail, chat mail, packet communication and Message Request/Free	Silent		"Mail vol." settings
Alarm clock alarm volume	Silent		"Alarm vol." settings
Schedule/ToDo/Cost limit alarm volume	Silent		"Phone vol." settings
Activation and completion tones for recorded messages, voice memos, etc.	ON	OFF	"VM tone" settings
Keypad tones	OFF		"Keypad sound" settings
Microphone sensitivity during calls*	Up		"Mic sensitiv." settings
In-call hold tone	Silent		"Phone vol." settings Off when "Silent" is set. Sounds at "Level 1" for the settings other than "Silent".
Answer hold tone	Silent		"Phone vol." settings Sounds at "Level 2" when "Step" is set.
Low-voltage alarm	OFF		"LVA tone" settings Even when set to "ON", the low-voltage alarm sounds at "Level 1" if "Phone vol." is set to "Silent" in this function.
Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when the FOMA terminal is folded	Silent		"Phone vol." settings Sounds at "Level 2" when "Step" is set.

* : If the microphone sensitivity during calls is set to "Up", the volume of the voice heard by the other party is increased even when you speak quietly during the call. However, the "Normal" microphone sensitivity is used for shooting movies in "Camera" mode.

NOTE

- When "Record msg." is "ON" in "Original", the FOMA terminal starts recording message after the ringing time elapses, which is set in "ON" of "Record message" (P.82). However, if "Record msg." is OFF, the recording starts in eight seconds.
- If the FOMA terminal is set to use vibration to notify you of calls and alarms when Manner mode is set, take care that the ring tone vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a space heater) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.

<Display setting>

Changing the Display

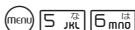
Default setting

Stand-by display: Stripe Wake-up display: Modern Furniture
Dialing: Standard Calling: Standard VP Dialing: Standard
VP Calling: Standard Mail sending: Standard Mail receiving: Standard
Check new message: Standard

You can display your favorite images, such as photographed or downloaded images, on the FOMA terminal display.

- If you set an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the ring tone and receiving call display, the FOMA terminal plays the video and sound of the i-motion set as the ring tone.
- If you set something other than an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the ring tone and then set an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the receiving call display, the FOMA terminal plays the video and sound of the i-motion set as the receiving display.
- A sound only i-motion (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice) cannot be specified as the receiving call display.
- Some i-motion data cannot be specified.

1



The "Display setting screen" appears.

If an option other than i-motion is set in the calling screen, set the ring tone as required.

2

Select any item:



Item	Description	
Stand-by display	"Changing the Standby screen image" → P.134	
Wake-up display	OFF	No images are displayed.
	Message	Enters a message. You can enter up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
	My picture	For the image to be displayed, selects one from My picture. → P.338, 339
Dialing	For the image displayed when you make a voice call, selects one from My picture. → P.338, 339	
Calling	Sets the ring tone and screen for incoming voice calls.	
	Select ring tone	"Changing the Ring Tone" → P.126
	Select calling disp.	For the image for incoming voice calls, selects one from My picture or i-motion. → P.338, 339, 357
VP Dialing	For the image displayed when you make a videophone call, selects one from My picture. → P.338, 339	
VP Calling	Sets the ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls.	
	Select ring tone	"Changing the Ring Tone" → P.126
	Select calling disp.	For the image for incoming videophone calls, selects one from My picture or i-motion. → P.338, 339, 357
Mail sending	For the image displayed when you send i-mode mail or SMS, selects one from My picture. → P.338, 339	

Item	Description
Mail receiving	Sets the ring tone and display for incoming i-mode mail and SMS.
	Select ring tone "Changing the Ring Tone" → P.126
	Select receiving disp. For the image for incoming i-mode mail and SMS, selects one from My picture. → P.338, 339
Check new message	For the image displayed when you use "Check messages" and "Check new message", selects one from My picture. → P.338, 339

NOTE

- Flash movies can be set in the "Select calling disp." or "Select receiving disp.", but the ring tone used is the tone set in "Select ring tone".
 - Even if the i-motion can be set as a ring tone or calling display, you can no longer set it once you transfer/import it from PCs, other FOMA terminals or miniSD memory card (including i-motion you have exported).
 - When the display settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned for displaying the image. → P.122
- <Priority sequence for screen>**
- Priority is assigned as follows when standby display settings are duplicated (① has the highest priority):
 - ① Auto display
 - ② i-appli standby
 - ③ Display setting/Style mode

Changing the Standby screen image

- "Calendar" can be selected only if you have set the date and time in "Set time".
- The following are 9 pre-installed images.



Stripe



Mickey&Minnie 1



Mickey&Minnie 2



Circle



Plant



Modern Furniture



Penguin



Happy Birds ★



BunBun (Dimo)

©BVIG

*The image changes according to the time.

1

Display setting screen (P.133) ▶ "Stand-by display" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
OFF	No images are displayed.
Calendar	Selects a calendar.
	Background For the background image for the calendar, select one from My picture. → P.338, 339
	No background Displays the calendar only.
My picture	Selects the standby screen image. → P.338, 339
i-motion	Selects the i-motion to be displayed on the standby screen. → P.338, 357
i-appli display	Sets the i-appli standby screen. When the i-appli standby screen is set, a star (★) is displayed. "Setting the i-appli Standby Screen" → P.328

■ When you set the calendar for the standby screen

The calendar appears on the standby screen. You can quickly and easily refer to previous calendar dates and activate the schedule.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.380

■ To check the adjacent months on the calendar

Press on the standby screen and use to focus on the calendar. Or slide your finger over to place the pointer over the calendar, and the calendar is focused. Press (Select) again and then press to display the previous month, or to display the next month.

If a "desktop icon" other than "Desktop icons that provide information" (P.145) is set to the standby screen, pressing selects the desktop icon or calendar month selected previously. If a desktop icon was selected, select the calendar. Press (Select) again or highlight the calendar by the pointer. Pressing displays the previous month, and pressing displays the next month.

■ To activate the schedule function

With the calendar selected, press (Select) to launch the schedule function and store a scheduled event for the displayed month.

NOTE

- If there is a movie or i-motion set in the standby screen, the movie or i-motion is played when you open the FOMA terminal. Press (CLIP), (STOP), (Left), (Right), (Up) or (OK) to stop playback. When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, only the image is played (no sound). When the playback ends, the first frame of the video clip or i-motion is displayed on the standby screen.
- If a Flash movie is set to the standby screen, opening the FOMA terminal plays the Flash movie (melody is not played). Pressing (CLIP) or (STOP) stops the playback, and the frame at the time of stop is displayed on the standby screen. When the playback ends, the last frame of the Flash movie is displayed on the standby screen.
- When the "i-appli display" is set, "Calendar", "My picture" and "i-motion" are not displayed even if they are set. To set these, cancel the "i-appli display" setting. → P.328
- Deleting the image, movie or i-motion that was set to the standby screen restores the standby screen to the default settings.

<Disp. PH-book image>

Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls

Default setting
ON

You can specify whether an image is displayed or not when you receive a voice or videophone call from a phone number that is stored in the phonebook and a still image is also stored in that phonebook entry.

1 **"Incoming call"** **"Disp. PH-book image"** **"ON"**

- To disable display
 "OFF"

NOTE

- When the display settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned. → P.122
- Depending on the priority as well as the combination of receiving screen and ring tone, either the receiving screen or the ring tone may revert to the default set at the time of purchase.
- If the caller does not notify the caller ID, the image is not displayed.
- Regardless of this setting, images stored in the phonebook as secret data are not displayed.

<Indicator display>

Setting the Indicator Display Mode

Default setting

Setting: Display information
Clock type: Clock3 (size middle) Phone number: ON Mail: OFF
Connection: ON (Display light: OFF)

You can set the type of clock or message displayed in the indicator display.

1 Press (Clock) (DEF) **Select any item:**

Item	Description	
Display information	Displays text and information.	
	Clock type	Selects the clock type.
	Phone number	Specifies whether to display the caller's phone number when you receive a voice call.
	Mail	Specifies whether to display the sender's e-mail address, subject and the arrival date and time when you receive mail.
	Connection	Specifies whether to display an image showing the connection status while you are dialing a voice or video-phone call, during the call itself, and during infrared or data communication.
	ON	Specifies whether to flash the display light.
	OFF	Does not display any image or animation.
Display clock only	Displays the clock only.	
	Clock type	Selects the clock type.
OFF	No text or clock is displayed.	

NOTE

- When the indicator display is set to "OFF", nothing will be displayed, except for the camera-in-operation condition and some of the alarm notices.
- Even if you set "Mail" display to "ON", the mail sorted into a folder to which mail security has been set is not displayed.
- You can check up to 3 mail messages when you received multiple mail messages.

<Display light>

Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting

Default setting	Lighting: ON (lit) + Saver (5-minute wait) Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys (Normal) Brightness: Level 2

You can specify the lighting settings for the display and keypad backlight.

1**Select any item:**

Item	Description	
Lighting	▶ "ON" or "OFF" ▶ "ON" or "OFF"	
	Selects the normal lighting settings for the display light (ON/OFF) and selects the Power saver mode options (ON/OFF). Enter the waiting time for the Power saver mode (02 to 20 minutes) when you set the Power saver mode to "ON".	
	· Setting the normal lighting settings for the display light to "OFF" displays the "💡" icon on the standby screen. · If you set the Power saver mode to "ON", the standby screen and indicator display turn off when the specified waiting time has elapsed (Power saver mode).	
Charging	▶ "Standard" or "All time ON"	
	Selects the lighting settings for the display light during charging.	
Area	Selects the backlit area.	
	LCD+Keys (Auto)	Sets backlighting for the LCD panel and keypad. The sensor below the light automatically senses the ambient brightness. The display is lit when it is dark.
	LCD+Keys (Normal)	Sets backlighting for the LCD panel and keypad.
	LCD	Sets backlighting for the LCD panel only.
Brightness	Selects the brightness from Level 3 to Level 1.	

NOTE

- You can also turn the display light on or off by holding down  for 1 second or longer.
- When "Lighting" is set to "ON", the display light turns on when a call is received and lights for roughly 15 seconds when you turn the FOMA terminal on, press one of the FOMA terminal keys, or unfold the FOMA terminal. The display light also stays on while you are using the camera or playing a movie or i-motion. If you select "OFF", the display light does not turn on. However, the display light turns on during movie shooting regardless of the "Lighting" setting.
- Even if the "Charging" setting is set to "All time ON" during charging, if no operations are performed for about 15 seconds, the brightness of the display light is set to "Level 1" to increase charging efficiency.
- When the body of a mail or a Message Request/Free is displayed, the time for which the display light stays on varies depending on the length of the message.
- If the FOMA terminal switches to Power saver mode while it is unfolded,  and  flash at roughly 5 second intervals. Press any of the FOMA terminal's keys to cancel Power saver mode.
- If you select "Display clock only" in "Indicator display" and then fold the FOMA terminal, the FOMA terminal does not switch to Power saver mode when the specified waiting time has elapsed.

<Display design>

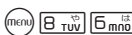
Changing the Display Design

Default setting

Color pattern: Pattern 1 Background 1: OFF Background 2: Pattern 1

You can change the design of the text, background, the upper and lower sections of the display, and the software keys.

1



▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Color pattern	Selects the color pattern from Pattern 1 to Pattern 5. The selected color pattern appears on the display during the selection.
Background 1	Selects the Background1 (a 25-dot background pattern for the upper and lower sections of the display) among "OFF" (not displayed) and "Pattern 1 to 8". Select this option to give precedence to displaying the icons on the upper part of the screen.
Background 2	Selects the pattern used for background 2 (the background pattern for the software keys) from "Pattern 1 to Pattern 3". The selected pattern appears on the display during the selection.

NOTE

- If you select an image of 240 dots wide × 345 dots high (Screen) for the standby screen and set Background 1 to OFF, the whole image is displayed.
- If you select an image of 240 dots wide × 320 dots high (QVGA Vert.) for the standby screen and set Background 1 to:
 - OFF, no background is displayed on the upper part of the screen, and the whole image is displayed.
 - Other than OFF, the selected background appears on the upper part of the screen and overlaps the top 25 dots of the image.
- Changing the settings of this function does not change the colors of icons and images. There are some screens or functions that are not affected by the changes made to the settings of this function, such as i-mode sites.

Changing the Menu Display

Setting the menu display mode <Menu display set>

Default setting

Guidance: Picture & Text Menu display: List Theme: Plain

This feature allows you to change the guidance display of the main settings icons selected on the main function selection screen, or to specify whether the branch settings in the "Settings" menu are displayed as a list or in detail. You can also use this procedure to set the background and icons to the main settings selection screen.

- Original menus are displayed as a list, regardless of the settings of this function.

Guidance displays



"Picture & Text"

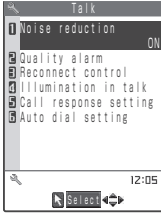


"Text"

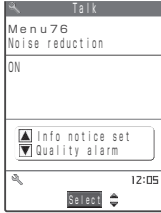


"OFF"

Menu displays

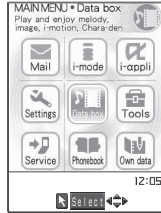


"List"



"Detail"

Themes

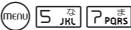


"Plain"



"Disney"

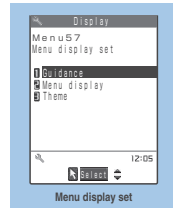
1



The "Menu display set screen" appears.

2

Select any item:



Item	Description	
Guidance	Sets the guidance display for the main settings selecting among "Picture & Text", "Text" and "OFF" (not displayed).	
Menu display	Chooses the display mode for the branch settings between "Detail" and "List".	
Theme	Sets the background and icons used in the main settings selection screen.	
	Plain	Sets Plain.
	Disney	Sets Disney.
	Original theme	"Changing the main menu screen" → P.138

Changing the main menu screen

You can change the icons and background image used on the main setting selection screen (main menu). You can also set the Multi Task (P.408) group frame.

1

Menu display set screen (P.138) ▶ "Theme" ▶ "Original theme"

The "Original theme screen" appears.

2

Select any item:



Function menu ▶ P.139

Item	Description
Mail/i-mode/i-αppli/Settings/ Data box/Tool/Network service/ Phonebook/Own data	Selects the icon images for the main menu from My picture. → P.338, 339 Select "Pre-installed" to display the default icon images.
Background image	Selects the background image from My picture. → P.338, 339 Select "Pre-installed" to display the default background image.

■ To set the multitask group frame

▶ Highlight "Background image" ▶ (Play) ▶ (Frame) ▶ Use to select a color from the color palette

When you are selecting the color, pressing (Change) switches the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors.

NOTE

- You can check the image for the highlighted item by pressing (Play) on the selection screen.
- If at least one image subject to FOMA card operational restriction function is set as a menu icon or background image, the original theme will revert to the default theme if you change or remove the FOMA card (UIM).
- You can set a JPEG, GIF or animated GIF image with a file size of 100 K bytes or less and an image size of up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high. If the image is larger than the display area, the size is reduced without changing the aspect ratio. If it is smaller, it is centered.
- An animated GIF image set as a menu icon will run only once, regardless of the specified number of repetitions. Also, an animated GIF image set as the background image will not run as an animation.

Function menu (Original theme screen)

1 Original theme screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Reset	Restores the changed main settings icon or background image to the default settings.
All reset	Restores all the main menu icons and background images to the default settings.

Creating an original menu <Create original menu>

Default setting	Own number, Check new messages, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm clock, Change security code

- You can easily call up functions by using the "Original menu".
- You can store up to 10 original menu entries.
- The functions that can be included in the original menu are the main settings for "Mail", "i-mode" and "i-αppli", and the medium and branch settings (functions) for "Settings", "Data box", "Tool", "Network service", "Phonebook" and "Own data".
- You cannot store the same function twice.

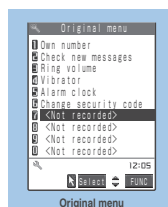


The "Original menu screen" appears.

2 "<Not recorded>" ▶ Use to select the function

■ To change the already stored function

▶ Select an item of the stored item



Function menu ▶ P.140

NOTE

- Trying to register to the item where some function is already stored displays a message asking whether to overwrite the function.

Function menu (Original menu screen)

1 Original menu screen▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Add to org. menu	Creates an original menu.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" →P.143
Reset org. menu	Restores to the default settings.
Release	Removes one function from the original menu.
Release all	Removes all the functions from the original menu.

<Neuropointer>

Setting the Neuropointer

Default setting Pointer: ON Pointer icon setting : Simple Shape Simple: Normal

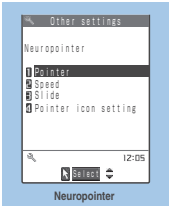
For the better use of the pointer ( : Blue/ : White) controlled by the neuropointer key () , specify whether to turn the pointer on/off, the speed, etc. You can also change the pointer icon.

- When setting the neuropointer speed from the "Initial setting" (P.55), choose between "Normal" and "High" in "Simple" (P.140).
- The pointer can be used when " " appears on the screen.
- There are two colors of pointer icons depending on the moving style of cursor. When the pointer is blue (), the pointer automatically moves the cursor and selects the item. When the pointer is white (), the pointer does not automatically move the cursor or select the item (in the case of Simple Shape).

1 ▶"Other settings"▶"Neuropointer"

The "Neuropointer screen" appears.

2 Select any item:



Item	Description	
Pointer	Specifies whether to display the pointer (whether to use the neuropointer).	
Speed	"Changing the pointer speed" → P.140	
Slide	Adjust	▶"YES"▶Slide your finger over the neuropointer key following the instructions Sets the limits of the neuropointer key sliding to move the pointer as you like.
	Reset	Restores the slide adjustment to the default settings.
Pointer icon setting	Changes the icon design of the pointer. Select this option to change  ,  ,  ,  at a time. Press  (Play) before selecting option to check the details of the icon design. You can switch the list display mode of the selection screen between Title name list screen and Picture list screen.	

Changing the pointer speed

1 Neuropointer screen (P.140)▶"Speed"▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Simple	Chooses between "Normal" and "High".

Item	Description
Detail	Sets the speed for each screen.
	Standard *1 ▶ Use to select "I", "L" or "H" ▶ Use to change the speed
	MainMenu
	T9/Prediction
	The speed can be adjusted from level 0 (left end) to level 11 (right end). Move the key to the right to increase the speed and to the left to decrease the speed.
	Software *2
Reset	Restores the pointer speed to the default settings.

*1 : Adjusts the pointer speed for typical screens such as list and icon selection.

*2 : The settings may be not applicable depending on the i-appli.

<Illumination>

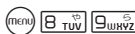
Setting the Incoming Call Lamp Flashing Mode for Incoming Calls

Default setting	Phone: Color 5 Video-phone: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1 Set pattern: Standard Color name: Color 1-12

You can set the color and pattern (flashing pattern) in which the incoming call lamp flashes when you receive voice or videophone calls, mail, chat mail and Message Request/Free.

- You can set different flashing colors respectively for incoming calls and messages from specific phone numbers, e-mail addresses and groups. → P.119
- The flashing pattern for and is the same as for the incoming call lamp, but they flash orange.

1



▶ **Select any item:**

Item	Description
Set color	Selects the flash color of the incoming call lamp for "Phone" (voice phone), "Video-phone", "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF". The incoming call lamp is turned on with the selected color during the selection.
	Color 1 to 12: The lamp flashes by the selected color. Gradation: The lamp flashes by the colors 1 to 12 in numeric order.
Set pattern	Selects the incoming call lamp flashing pattern between from "Standard" and "Melody linkage".
Adjust color	Sets the color.
	Edit color name ▶ Select the color ▶ Enter the color name You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
	Adjust color tone ▶ Select the color ▶ Use to adjust the color tone

NOTE

- If "Pattern 1-3" is selected in the Ring tone settings, the incoming call lamp flashes to the melody regardless of the settings of this function.
- When the illumination settings are overlapped, the priority sequence will be assigned for the incoming call lamp. → P.121
- If "Melody linkage" is set and there is no vibration pattern stored for melody linkage in the ring tones, the "Standard" pattern is used. The "Standard" pattern is also used for Chaku-motion.
- While the FOMA terminal is exchanging data with the miniSD memory card, the incoming call lamp flashes green by "Color 5" regardless of the settings of this function.

<Illumination in talk>

Setting the In-call Flashing Mode for the Incoming Call Lamp

Default setting
OFF

This function allows you to set the color in which the incoming call lamp flashes during a voice or videophone call.

1



▶ “Talk” ▶ “Illumination in talk” ▶ Select a color

- OFF : The incoming call lamp does not flash.
- Color 1 to 7 : The lamp flashes by the selected color.
- Gradation 1 : The lamp flashes and the colors change.
- Gradation 2 : The lamp lights and the colors change.
- Gradation 3 : The colors quickly change.

NOTE

- While recording message, playing the Answer message or holding the line, the incoming call lamp flashes in the same pattern as while you are talking.

<Call time display>

Having the FOMA terminal Display the Call Time During Calls

Default setting
ON

You can specify whether the FOMA terminal displays the call time or not during voice and videophone calls.

- If the call time exceeds “19 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds”, the count restarts from “0 seconds”.
- The displayed call time is intended solely as a guide and should not be used as an accurate figure.
- Call time is not counted during i-mode or packet communication.

1



▶ “ON”

- To disable display
▶ “OFF”

NOTE

- The call time displayed is reset to 0 seconds each time you switch between voice call and videophone call. However, after switching the calls, if you finish the call with videophone, the call time displayed is the sum of voice and videophone calls.

Changing the Font

Default setting

Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium

You can change the characters displayed on the screen or the indicator display to your favorite font (typeface).

1



▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Type	Selects the font type between “Font 1” and “Font 2”. A text sample of the selected font appears on the bottom of the screen.
Thickness	Selects the thickness among “Thin”, “Medium” and “Bold”. A text sample of the selected thickness appears on the bottom of the screen.

NOTE

- You can only change to “Font 2” for alphabetic letters (full-pitch or half-pitch), numbers (full-pitch or half-pitch), hiragana and katakana (full-pitch or half-pitch), some symbols, Greek letters and Russian letters. All other characters such as kanji are displayed by “Font 1”. The text used for phone number input and clock display also cannot be changed to “Font 2”.
- Changing the settings of this function does not change the fonts displayed on the indicator display.

<Clock display>

Setting the Clock Display

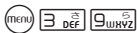
Default setting

Display: ON Size: Big

You can change the size or type of clock or specify not to display date/clock.

- If the screen is not Standby, the small clock is displayed in the task icon/clock display area on the bottom of the screen regardless of the settings. → P.33

1



Select any item:

Item	Description	
Display	Chooses between ON and OFF.	
Size	Big	Displays the date and big clock.
	Small	Displays the date and small clock.
	Down Small	Displays the small clock on the bottom.

NOTE

- Selecting “日本語” (Japanese) for “Select language” gives you three options “日本語”, “英語” and “OFF” for “Display”.
- If “Size” is set to “Down Small” and “Telop display setting” for i-channel is set to “ON” or “Receiving”, the clock is not displayed while telop is displayed.

<Desktop icon>

Using Desktop Icons

Adding frequently called phone numbers and frequently used functions to the standby screen as desktop icons provides a quick and simple way of accessing those numbers and functions.

- The following can be added to the standby screen as desktop icons:
 - Phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, melodies, images, movies, i-motion, “Chara-den” characters, i-appli programs
 - Camera, the list of ToDo, i-channel, Access reader, Bar code reader, Receive Ir data, Dictionary, Original menu
- You can add up to 15 desktop icons into the standby screen. However, a desktop icon for a function such as camera cannot be added twice.
- The pre-installed i-motion, melodies and images, and original animations cannot be added as desktop icons.

Adding desktop icons

Select “Add desktop icon” from the function menu on the screen of the function you want to add, the data list screen, or the details screen.

<Example: Adding a phone number from the phonebook>

“Add desktop icon” in the “Function menu (Phonebook detail screen)” → P.114



■ Titles of added desktop icons

Displayed icon	Type	Title
	Phone number	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
	Mail address	Name stored in the phonebook (Mail address if no name is stored)
	SMS address	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
	URL	Page title (URL excluding “http://” or “https://” if no title is stored)
	Melody	Melody title (“Melody” if no title is stored)

Continued on next page

Displayed icon	Type	Title
	Image	Image title ("Image" if no title is stored)
	Movie or i-motion	Movie or i-motion title ("i-motion" if no title is stored)
	Chara-den	Chara-den title ("Chara-den" if no title is stored)
	i-appli software	Software name
	Camera	The respective function name
	ToDo	
	i-channel	
	Access reader	
	Bar code reader	
	Receive Ir data	
	Dictionary	
	Original menu	

When a desktop icon is selected, only the first 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters of the title are displayed.

Using desktop icons to retrieve data or functions

1 When the screen is standby▶●

The "Desktop icon screen" appears so that you can select a desktop icon. The title in the balloon is displayed for the highlighted icon.

2 Use ● to select the desktop icon

■ If there are 6 or more desktop icons stored

The ◀▶ icon is shown on the left or right of the screen. You can use ● to scroll through the icons.



Function menu▶P.144

NOTE

- After pasting desktop icon for an image or i-motion and moving the original data into the "Secret" folder, the data is not displayed even if you select the desktop icon.
- Even if you paste desktop icon for a bookmark and move the original data into the "Secret" folder, the behavior of the desktop icon remains the same.

Function menu (Desktop icon screen/Desktop screen)

1 Desktop icon screen/Desktop screen▶●(FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit title	Edits the title of desktop icons. You can enter up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Reset desktop	Restores to the default settings ("Camera" only).
Icon info setting*	Displays the icon information.
Delete this	Deletes one desktop icon.
Delete all	Deletes all the desktop icons.
Move	▶"YES"▶ Use ● to move▶●(Put) Moves the icon.

*: Displayed only for the Desktop icon screen.

Checking desktop icon information

1



"Desktop icon screen" appears.

2

Select a title



NOTE

- On the desktop icon information display for URLs, you can use to scroll the display and check all the URLs.

Desktop icons that provide information

Icon	Information provided	Subsequent display/activation details
New	Notifies you that you received mail, including mail received while you were out of service area or while the FOMA terminal was turned off. Selecting the icon pops up an emotion-expressing mail icon. → P.274	Shows the list display for the Inbox folder containing your latest mail.
CHAT	Notifies you that you received chat mail. Selecting the icon pops up an emotion-expressing mail icon. → P.274	Shows the Chat screen.
Miss	Notifies you of missed calls. Selecting the icon shows you the number of missed calls.	Displays the "Missed calls" record.
Msg	Notifies you of recorded messages.	Launches "Play/Erase msg.".
VM	Notifies you that some messages have been recorded to Voice Mail Service Center.	Launches "Voice mail".
Miss	Notifies you that the FOMA terminal was unable to post an alarm clock, scheduled event or ToDo alarm.	Displays the information about the most recent alarm that could not be posted.
Not run	Notifies you that the FOMA terminal was unable to automatically launch an i-appli.	Shows the "Auto start info" screen.
APPLI	Notifies you that the i-appli standby screen shut down due to an error.	Displays the security error history.
UPDATE	Notifies you that software updating has been completed.	Shows the update results screen after you enter your security code.
Premium	Notifies you that contents such as standby screens and templates are added.	Displays the Style mode list.
MAX	Notifies you that the cumulative charge exceeds the limit you specified.	Shows the Notify cost limit screen.

NOTE

- If you call the function from the desktop icon that provides information or from the menu, the desktop icon is erased. However, the "Record message" desktop icon is not erased until you play or delete the recorded message.
- To erase all the desktop icons that provide information, hold down for one second or longer (erasing the icons does not mean erasing the contents).
- If you select "Not display" for "Missed calls display" in the "Ringing time" settings, calls that you missed during the time set in "Set mute seconds" do not appear as "Missed calls" desktop icon. However, this setting excludes calls from phone numbers stored in the phonebook.
- If you receive new mails or chat mails when the destination Inbox is protected for the security, selecting the desktop icon does not pop up the emotion-expressing mail icon.

Selecting the Icons to Display on the Standby Screen

 Default setting
ON

You can select the display icons, date or time on the standby screen using the neuropointer.

1



“Other settings” ▶ “Select icons setting” ▶ “ON”

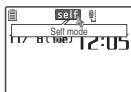
■ To make icons not selectable
▶ “OFF”

Selecting a display icon with the neuropointer

1

On the standby screen ▶ Slide your finger over to display

▶ Point the icon ▶ (Select)



The icon title appears.

You can also select the date or time.

You can also use to select an icon after selecting by neuropointer.

Icon/display	After being selected
	Displays the screen for releasing "PIM lock".
	Displays the screen for releasing "Keypad dial lock".
	Displays the screen for releasing "Keypad dial lock" and "PIM lock".
(Blue)/ (Red)/ (Blue)/ (Red)	Displays the Inbox folder list screen.
(Green)/ (Red)	Displays "Message R".
(Purple)/ (Red)	Displays "Message F".
(Blue)/ (Red)/ (Green)/ (Red)/ (Purple)/ (Red)	Performs "Check new message".
	Displays the screen for releasing "Self mode".
	Displays the "task menu".
	Displays the "Vibrator" and "Mail/Msg. ring time" selection screens.
	- Normal mode (when not in manner mode) "Ring volume" and "Mail/Msg. ring time" selection screens are displayed. - Manner mode, Super silent mode Displays a message that it cannot be set. - Original manner mode "Original" and "Mail/Msg. ring time" selection screens are displayed.
	Displays "Manner mode set".
	Displays "Remote observation".
	Displays "Alarm".
	Displays a message that nothing is recorded.
	Displays "Play/Erase msg.".
	Displays "Voice mail". If there are already 11 or more recorded voice mail messages, the "10 Voice mail" message appears.
	Displays "Display light".
	Displays "Side keys guard".

Icon/display	After being selected
Date	Displays "Schedule". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.
Clock	Displays "Alarm clock". When the time is not set, "Set time" appears.
	Switches and displays the task in operation.
	Displays "USB mode setting".

<Style mode>

Setting Style mode

You can set the "Select ring tone" setting (P.126), the "Display setting" (P.133), the theme of the "Menu display set" (P.137), and the Pointer icon setting of "Neuropointer" (P.140) all at once. You can also store the current settings as "My favorite", and restore the settings after you change the settings all at once.

- Only "Disney" is stored at the time of purchase. (Note that "Disney" does not change the Pointer icon setting.)
- The contents of styleplus is added in the Style mode list screen by scanning the QR code attached to styleplus using the Bar code reader. You can set the contents of styleplus all at once using this function. Note that no ring tone is included in the contents of styleplus, and "Ring tone" is not set. → P.195
- The following 3 contents of styleplus are available and can be displayed in the Style mode list screen. (As of August 2005)

The contents of the styleplus is determined by the color of the styleplus as shown below.

The color of the styleplus	Contents
White*, Brown, Lime green	Leaf
Light blue*, Pink	Flower
Black*, Orange*, Red	Beni

*These colors are same as the FOMA terminal

<Examples of the standby screen of each content>



Leaf
(White, Brown, Lime green)



Flower
(Light blue, Pink)



Beni
(Black, Orange, Red)

*These contents are supplied by NEC Corporation.

For inquiries about the contents for styleplus

NEC (NEC NTT DoCoMo Terminals Marketing and Sales Division)

■ From an ordinary(landline) phone:

 **0120-102-001** (Japanese only)

Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm

(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)

* Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phone or PHSSs.

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Setting Style mode contents all at once

You can select an item displayed in the Style mode list screen and set the settings all at once.

- You can restore the settings to the previous settings by storing the current settings as "My favorite" before setting all at once. → P.148

<Example: Setting Style mode to Disney>

- 1   **"Other settings"**  **"Style mode"**
"Style mode list screen" appears.



- 2 **"Disney"**



The settings of Disney is displayed.

- **To check the settings**
▶ Highlight an item  (Play)

- 3  **(Finish)**  **"YES"**

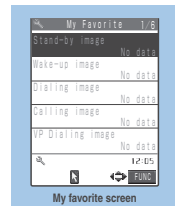
NOTE

- When an i-appli standby screen is set, the i-appli standby screen takes priority as the standby screen setting. → P.134
- When "Utilities" is set, or images are set in the Phonebook, those images take priority to the image set in this function.
→ P.119
- If you change any of the "Select ring tone" setting, "Display setting", the theme of the "Menu display set" and the Pointer Icon setting of "Neuropointer" after setting the Style mode, those settings take priority.
- You cannot change the settings on "My favorite" screen.

Store the current settings in My favorite

- 1 **"Style mode list screen" (P.148)**  **"My favorite"**
"My favorite screen" appears. "No data" is displayed at the time of purchase.

- 2  **(FUNC)**  **"Take setting info"**  **"YES"**



Function menu  P.149

NOTE

- The images, i-motion or melodies downloaded from sites or attached to mail may not be stored as "My favorite" or set all at once.
- If "i-appli standby screen" is set as a "Standby screen", it is not stored as the "Standby screen" of "My favorite".
- If any image, i-motion or melody etc, that has been stored as "My favorite" are deleted, the corresponding item is deleted from "My favorite" and "No data" will be displayed.
- You cannot store the current settings as "My favorite" during PIM lock function is activated.

Function menu (My favorite screen)

1 “My favorite screen”▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Finish	Sets the style mode to My favorite. → P.148
Take setting info	Saves the current settings to My favorite.
Initialize	Initializes the settings in My favorite.

● Security Settings

■ About Your Security Codes

Security Codes Used on the FOMA terminal.....	152
Changing Your Security Code.....	Change security code 152
Setting Your PIN Codes.....	PIN setting 153
Release PIN lock	154

■ Restricting the Phone Controls and Functions

Lock Functions.....	154
Preventing Others From Using Your Terminal	All lock/Remote all lock 155
Preventing Others From Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule.....	Secret mode/Secret only mode 157
Preventing others from viewing data.....	Secret folder 159
Hiding Your Personal Information	PIM lock 161
Disabling the Side Keys	Side keys guard 162

■ Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls and Transmissions

Locking the Keypad	Keypad dial lock 163
Setting the Redial and Received Calls Displays.....	Record display set 163
Preventing Unwanted Mail Display	Mail security 164
Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers	Restrictions 165
Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers	Call setting w/o ID 167
Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook	Ringing time 168
Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook.....	Reject unknown 168
Disabling Making/Receiving Calls, etc.	Self mode 169

■ Other Security Settings

Other Security Settings.....	170

Security Codes Used on the FOMA terminal

To make the FOMA terminal more convenient and secure, some functions require a security code. In addition to this security code for the various FOMA terminal operations, you also have an i-mode password and a Network security code that is used for accessing network services. Take care to use the appropriate access code when using your FOMA terminal.

■ Security Code

At the time of purchase, your security code is set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your security code at any time. → P.152

- If you forget your FOMA terminal security code, you must take the FOMA terminal*, your current FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification proving that you are the subscriber (such as a drivers license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it reset.

* The subscriber must take the FOMA terminal to the DoCoMo shop in person otherwise service may be denied.

■ Network security code

The security code is a 4 digit number that you specify when you apply to use DoCoMo e-site or use various network services.

- If you forget your Network security code, contact Inquiries on the back cover of this manual. Alternatively, take the FOMA terminal and a form of identification proving that you are the subscriber (such as a drivers license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it reset. You can also apply for e-site from your PC if you have a user ID and password.

* See the back cover of this manual for detail regarding DoCoMo e-site.

■ PIN1 code, PIN2 code

Two pin numbers, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, can be set to FOMA card (UIM).

When you first subscribe, these security codes are set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your security codes at any time.

The PIN1 code is a 4-to-8-digit number (code) that you enter when you insert the FOMA card (UIM) into your FOMA terminal or when you turn the FOMA terminal on. This code identifies you as the user and is designed to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM) by others. If the PIN1 code entry set is set to "ON", entering the PIN1 code enables you to make and receive calls and to use the functions.

The PIN2 code is a 4-to-8-digit security code that is used when you use or request user certificates or perform tasks such as resetting the total call charges.

■ i-mode password

You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to register or unregister My Menu entries and to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or paid i-mode sites.

When you first subscribe, i-mode password is set to "0000" (4 zeros). You can change your passwords at any time.

(You may also have other passwords set independently by your Information service providers.)

- If you forget your i-mode password, you will need to take the FOMA terminal and a form of identification to show that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it reset.

NOTE

- To prevent improper use of your FOMA terminal, you should change your FOMA terminal security code, PIN1 code, PIN2 code and i-mode password to a number of your choice after subscribing.
Take care to make a note of the security codes you have set in case you forget them.
- Avoid using readily predictable numbers (e.g. the last 4 digits of your phone number) and take great care not to disclose your security codes to others.

<Change security code>

Changing Your Security Code

Default setting
0000 (4 zeros)

- You can also change your security code from the "Initial setting" (P.55).

1

Enter the current security code

Enter new 4-8 digit i-mode security code

NOTE

- The setting in this function changes the security code used for the FOMA terminal functions.

<PIN setting>

Setting Your PIN Codes

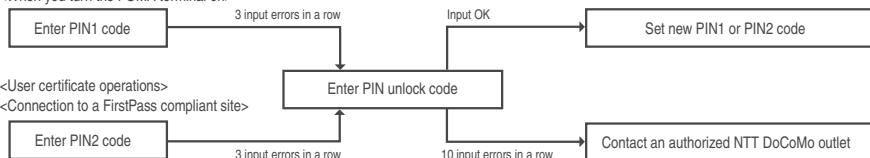
Default setting	PIN1 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN1 code entry set: OFF	PIN2 code: 0000 (4 zeros)

You can set PIN1 code and PIN2 code for your FOMA card (UIM).

Item	Description
PIN1 code	A 4-to-8-digit number that you enter when you turn the FOMA terminal on. This code is designed to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM).
PIN2 code	A 4-to-8-digit number that is required as personal authentication for "Reset charge duration" or for access to online services such as Internet connection and site access. It is used when using Client certificate (issue of user certificate to use FirstPass) or connecting to FirstPass supporting site.

- PIN1 code, PIN2 code and PIN1 code entry set are recorded to FOMA card (UIM). When you purchase a new FOMA terminal and insert your current FOMA card (UIM), use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set to the current card.
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in a row, your PIN is automatically locked and you can no longer use your PIN codes. Make a note of your codes in case you forget them.
- Your FOMA contract (customer copy) gives your PIN unlock code. The PIN unlock code is an 8-digit number that will unlock a locked PIN1 or PIN2 code.
- If you enter your PIN unlock code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is then completely locked. Keep your FOMA contract (customer copy) in a safe place to ensure that you do not lose it.
- If you forget your PIN unlock code and your FOMA terminal is completely locked, you will need to take your FOMA terminal, current FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification to show that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have it unlocked.

<When you turn the FOMA terminal on>



<User certificate operations>

<Connection to a FirstPass compliant site>

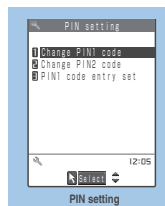
Changing your PIN1 or PIN2 code number

- To change your PIN1 code, select "ON" in "PIN1 code entry set".

1 ► "Lock/Security" ► "PIN setting" ► Enter your security code

The "PIN setting screen" appears.
Security code → P.152

2 Select any item:



Item	Description
Change PIN1 code	►Enter 4 to 8-digit PIN1 code currently set►Enter new 4 to 8-digit PIN1 code►Enter new 4 to 8-digit PIN1 code again
Change PIN2 code	►Enter 4 to 8-digit PIN2 code currently set►Enter new 4 to 8-digit PIN2 code►Enter new 4 to 8-digit PIN2 code again
PIN1 code entry set	You can set whether PIN1 code to be input when you turn the FOMA terminal on or not (ON/OFF).

Entering your PIN1 code when the FOMA terminal is turned on

When "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON", the PIN1 code entry screen appears when you turn the FOMA terminal on. Enter your PIN1 code to proceed.

1 Turn the FOMA terminal on

2 Enter 4 - 8-digit PIN1 code



If the PIN1 code is correct, the standby screen appears.

Release PIN lock

If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in a row when you need to enter PIN1 or PIN2 code, a message appears notifying you that the respective PIN1 or PIN2 code has been locked and the PUK code entry screen then appears. If this occurs, you must unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code and then set a new PIN1 or PIN2 code.

- For more information on your PIN unlock code (PUK code), refer to the FOMA terminal contract (customer copy) that you received when you subscribed to the FOMA terminal.

<Example: To unlock your PIN1 code>

1 Enter 8-digit PUK code



2 Enter a new 4 - 8-digit PIN1 code

3 Enter the new PIN1 code again

Lock Functions

Purpose	Function	Ref. page
To prevent others from using your FOMA terminal	All lock/Remote all lock	P.155
To prevent others from viewing data in your "Phonebook" or "Schedule"	Secret mode/Secret only mode	P.157
To prevent others from viewing images and mail	Secret folder	P.159
To prevent others from viewing or altering your personal information	PIM lock	P.161
To prevent inadvertent use of the side keys	Side keys guard	P.162
To prevent private calls	Keypad dial lock	P.163
To prevent others from viewing records of your incoming and outgoing calls	Record display set	P.163
To use the FOMA terminal without having to worry about incoming voice or videophone calls	Self mode	P.169

Preventing Others From Using Your Terminal

Default setting
Release

You can set All lock either using the FOMA terminal or remotely.

- When All lock is applied, none of the functions can be used except for the following:
 - Turning the FOMA on/off
 - Calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118).
 - Canceling All lock
 - Receiving remote observation calls
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not cancel All lock.
- You cannot answer a call while All lock is on.

Using the FOMA terminal to set All lock

- 1   ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “All lock” ▶ Enter your security code



All lock is set and “All lock” and “” appear on the screen.
Security code → P.152

Setting Remote all lock

Default setting

Remote all lock: OFF Monitoring (minutes): 3 Recv. calls (times): 5

Use this procedure to set the All lock function on your FOMA terminal from a pay phone or other phone.

- Remote all lock allows you to set the All lock function on your FOMA terminal when it receives the number of missed calls set in “Received calls (times)” from the phone number set in “Accept phone No.” or from public phone within the time set in “Monitoring (minutes)”.
- Remote all lock can be set with voice or videophone calls.
- You need to notify the caller ID if you call from the number set in “Accept phone number”.
- Calls received during another call (including calls received during a call when “Call waiting” is activated) do not trigger the start of the monitoring time and are not counted as received calls.

- 1    ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “ON” ▶ “Accept phone No.”

“Store accept phone No. screen” appears.
Security code → P.152

- 2 “<Not recorded>” ▶ Enter phone number ▶  (Finish)

- To change the currently stored accept phone number
 - ▶ Choose the Accept phone No. stored setting
- You can store up to 3 accept phone numbers.



Function menu ▶ P.156

- 3 “Monitoring” ▶ Enter the monitoring time (01-10 minutes)

Sets the monitoring period during which Remote all lock can be set once a call from the accept phone number has been missed.

Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To use the time already displayed, just press  (Set).

- 4 “Received calls” ▶ Enter the Received calls (03-10 times)

Sets the number of missed calls from the accept phone number that will set the remote all lock function.

Enter a 2-digit number as the number of calls. To set the number currently shown, just press  (Set).

- 5  (Finish)

Function menu (store accept phone No. screen)

1 “Store accept phone No. screen”▶⏮️(FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description	
Look-up address	Makes inputs by referring to “Phonebook”, “Dialed calls”, and “Received calls”.	
	Phonebook	Searching Phonebook → P.111
	Dialed calls	“Dialing a Previously Dialed Number”→ P.64
	Received calls	“Using the Received Calls”→ P.74
Pay phone	Sets calls from a pay phone as the accept phone number. “Pay phone” is displayed as the accept phone number.	
Delete this	Deletes one Accept phone No. If there are no accept phone numbers stored, the Remote all lock function is set to “OFF”.	
Delete all	Deletes all the accept phone numbers. The Remote all lock function is set to “OFF”.	

Setting All lock remotely

Use this procedure to set the All lock function on your FOMA terminal by calling the FOMA terminal by using a voice call or videophone call from a phone set as a “Accept phone No.”

- Set “Remote all lock” to “ON” beforehand.
- All lock that has been set remotely can be released as described in “Releasing All lock”. → P.157
- Releasing All lock does not release Remote all lock setting.
- When there are received calls from more than one registered Accept phone No., calls from the first received registered Accept phone No. are counted as Received calls.

1 **Call the FOMA terminal from a phone number set as an “Accept phone No.”**

2 **Confirm the call tone and then hang up (missed call)**

Repeat steps 1 and 2 within the time set in “Monitoring (minutes)” until you have logged the total number of missed calls set in “Recv. calls (times)”.

3 **Listen to the answer message and then hang up**

All lock is set on the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

- When the phone number set as an “Accept phone No.” or a pay phone is set in “Call rejection”, calls from that number are still counted as calls in Remote all lock.
- If you manually reject a call from the accept phone number or forward the call to the Voice Mail Service Center or the call forwarding number, it is still counted as a call in Remote all lock.
- If the FOMA terminal is turned off or a call from the accept phone number is answered on the FOMA terminal, the received call count is reset.
- Remote all lock can also be set when the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode.
- All lock cannot be released remotely.

When All lock is set

- While All lock is set, you cannot make/receive a voice or videophone call.
- While All lock is set, the FOMA terminal does not ring when you receive voice or videophone calls. Once you release All lock, the “Missed calls” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- While All lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” is reached. Once you release All lock, the “Missed alarm” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- While All lock is set, you can still use automatic reception for Message Request/Free, i-mode mail, SMS or chat mail, but a screen does not appear for receiving or reception results. Once you release All lock, the icon for the received message/mail type appears on the standby screen.
- If there are desktop icons pasted into the screen, setting All lock removes the icons from the display. When you release All lock, the icons reappear.

Releasing All lock

- If you fail to release All lock 5 times in a row, the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, it can still be turned on again.

1 Enter your security code on All lock setting screen

All lock is released, and “” disappears from the screen by entering your security code and pressing .

Security code → P.152



NOTE

- Even if an incorrect security code is input while releasing All lock, no error message appears. Press  and input a correct security code again.

<Secret mode/Secret only mode>

Preventing Others From Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule

Default setting

Secret mode: OFF Secret only mode: OFF

This function allows you to prevent others from accessing “Phonebook” and “Schedule” entries by storing them as secret data that can only be accessed by entering your security code. To store information as secret data, store it in your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” while the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret only mode.

In Secret mode, you can retrieve all the data stored in your “Phonebook” or “Schedule”, including secret data. Secret only mode allows you to retrieve only those “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries that are stored as secret data.

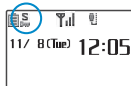
- You can also keep the data in your “My picture”, “i-motion”, “Received mail”, “Sent mail” and “Bookmark” into the “Secret” folder to prevent others from viewing the data. → P.159
- If you make/receive a voice or videophone call in Secret or Secret only mode, the current mode is cancelled.
- You cannot store entries in the UIM phonebook as secret data.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off cancels Secret or Secret only mode.

Storing phonebook or schedule entries as secret data

- The procedures for using the “Phonebook” and “Schedule” in Secret or Secret only mode are the same as when the secret modes are not set.

<Example: Storing an entry in Secret mode>

1 Enter your security code



Secret mode is set and “” appears on the screen. If “Keypad dial lock” is set at the same time, “” appears.

Security code → P.152

■ To cancel Secret mode



Secret mode is cancelled and “” disappears from the screen.

2 Store the information in the “Phonebook” or “Schedule”

The entry is stored as secret data.

Adding information to the phonebook → P.107

Adding information to your schedule → P.415

Viewing just secret data <Secret only mode>

1



▶ Enter your security code



Secret only mode is set, "S" flashes on the screen and the number of entries stored as secret data is displayed. If "Keypad dial lock" is set at the same time, "D/S" blinks. The standby screen reappears in about 2 seconds.

Security code → P.152

■ To cancel Secret only mode



Secret only mode is cancelled and "S" disappears from the screen.

2

Search the phonebook or check your schedule

Searching the phonebook → P.111

Checking your schedule → P.418

NOTE

- The lighted "S" icon begins to flash if you display "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entries stored as secret data in Secret mode.
- "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entries stored as secret data can only be retrieved, modified, deleted or referred in Secret or Secret only mode. When the FOMA terminal is in normal mode, you will be notified of schedule events stored as secret data by an alarm, but no alarm message is displayed.
- If a "Phonebook" entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between "000" and "009", "Two-touch dialing" can only be used to call that number when the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret only mode.
- If the caller of the incoming call is stored as secret data and notifies the caller ID, the phone number is displayed. Even if the Secret mode or Secret only mode is released, the phone number is stored in "Received calls", but the name is not displayed. Setting Secret mode or Secret only mode displays the name.
- If the Secret mode or Secret only mode is released when you receive mail, not the name but the mail address is displayed. The mail address is not stored in "Received address".
- The following functions cannot be set for "Phonebook" entries stored as secret data:
 - Automatic display → P.123
 - Restrictions → P.165
 - Utilities → P.119
- If you modify your "Phonebook" or "Schedule" in Secret mode, the modified data becomes secret. Even if you only modify 1 phone number or e-mail address in Secret mode, all the items stored under the modified memory number become secret data.
- Secret mode or Secret only mode is canceled when you make a voice call or videophone call, or when you receive a voice call or videophone call even if you don't answer the call. The setting is also canceled when you press or .
- If "All lock" is set at the same time as "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode", releasing "All lock" also cancels "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
- If you press or in Secret mode or Secret only mode, and the FOMA terminal reverts to the standby screen without dialing a call, Secret mode or Secret only mode is cancelled.
- If you receive a call while editing the phonebook or schedule, while viewing the schedule or while viewing the results of a phonebook search in Secret mode or Secret only mode, Secret mode or Secret only mode is cancelled. When you return to the phonebook or schedule display and resume the procedure you were using, the security code entry display appears. When you enter your security code, Secret mode or Secret only mode is set and you can then continue the procedure.
- When you make a call by retrieving secret data, it is not recorded in the "Dialed calls" or "Redial".

Changing secret data back to normal data

In Secret or Secret only mode, retrieve the phonebook entry or scheduled event that you want to make non-secret.

Searching the phonebook → P.111

Checking your schedule → P.418

<Example: Removing secrecy from a phonebook entry>

1 “Phonebook entry detail screen” (P.113) ► (FUNC) ► “Release secret”

The secrecy is removed. In Secret mode, the flashing “” icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

■ Scheduled events

► “Schedule list screen” (P.418) ►  (FUNC) ► “Release secret”

In Secret mode, the flashing “” icon stops flashing and remains on screen.

<Secret folder>

Preventing others from viewing data

You can store images, movies, i-motion, received mail, sent mail, and bookmarks, and prevent others from viewing the data, using “Secret” folder which is displayed only when the FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret only mode.

● The table below shows the maximum number of data records that can be stored in the “Secret” folder.

My picture	i-motion	Received mail	Sent mail	Bookmark
Approx. 100 (Approx. 1 MB)	Approx. 10 (Approx. 1 MB)	Approx. 100 (Approx. 150 KB)	Approx. 100 (Approx. 150 KB)	Approx. 10 (Approx. 3 KB)

* : The limit on the number of data records that can be held differs depending on the file sizes.

<Example: To store an image in My picture into the “Secret” folder>

1 Switch the FOMA terminal to “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”

“Preventing Others From Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule” → P.157

2 Image list screen (P.339) ► Select an image ► (FUNC) ► “Keep in secret”

The item “Keep in secret” is displayed only when the FOMA terminal is set to “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”.

NOTE

- If you display the data in the “Secret” folder when the FOMA terminal is set to the Secret mode, the lighted “” icon begins to flash.
- The “Secret” folder is already prepared for the FOMA terminal. You cannot make another “Secret” folder, or delete or rename the existing “Secret” folder.
- You cannot store the images and i-motion stored in the “Pre-installed”, unread mail, SMS stored on the FOMA card (UIM), and SMS reports, in the “Secret” folder.
- Secret mode or Secret only mode is canceled when you make a voice call or videophone call, or when you receive a voice call or videophone call even if you do not answer the call. The setting is also canceled when you press   or  . If you display the data in the “Secret” folder when you make or receive a call, the screen returns to the list screen of each folder.

<My picture><i-motion>

- If an image in My picture or i-motion pasted on the standby screen, phonebook, chat or desktop icon etc. is stored in the secret folder, the image is released.

- You cannot use Web To/Phone To/Mail To functions from i-motion.

<Received><sent mail>

- The mail messages stored in the “Secret” folder are not deleted automatically even if you send or receive a mail when the folder is full.
- For the mail message attached with large still images, movies or i-motion, only the body of the message is stored and the attached files are not stored. The “” “” “” “” icon which indicates that the attached files cannot be displayed or played, is displayed in the list screen and details screen. You cannot display or play the attached file even if you move the mail message from the “Secret” folder.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- You cannot use Web To/Phone To/Mail To/i-appli To function. Also, the "α" icon which indicates that you can launch an i-appli from the body of the mail message, turns to the "α*" icon.
 - Even when the FOMA terminal is set to Secret mode or Secret only mode, the chat mail messages stored in the "Secret" folder are not displayed in the chat screen, but displayed as an i-mode mail message.
 - When you receive the SMS report for the SMS stored in the "Secret" folder, you cannot select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu of the list screen or the SMS detail screen even if the "SMS" icon is displayed on the screen. You can display the SMS report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu after putting out the message from the "Secret" folder.
 - You cannot use the "Display image" function in the "Secret" folder even if the sender's mail address and image are stored in the Phonebook (The "Image" icon is not displayed in the list screen). You can check the image after moving the message from the "Secret" folder.
- <Bookmark>**
- If you view a site using a bookmark in the "Secret" folder, the URL is not stored in last URL.
- <Desktop icon>**
- After pasting desktop icon for an image or i-motion and moving the original data into the "Secret" folder, the data is not displayed even if you select the desktop icon.
 - Even if you paste desktop icon for a bookmark and move the original data into the "Secret" folder, the behavior of the desktop icon remains the same.

Function menu of the secret folder

Some functions for the folder or for the data in the folder are restricted in the "Secret" folder. The table below shows the available functions on the folder list screen, the data list screen, and the data details screen. For information on "Put out", refer to "Changing a secret data to normal data" (P.161).

Function menu when the secret folder is highlighted on the folder list screen

My picture (P.391)	i-motion (P.391)	Received and sent mail (P.288)	Bookmark (P.222)
Add folder Delete all image*1	Add folder	Add folder Memory info*1 Open folder Send all Ir data*1 Delete read *1,2 Delete all *1	Add folder No. of bookmarks*1 Send all Ir data*1 Delete all*1

*1 : The data in the "Secret" folder are not included.

*2 : Only displayed in the Inbox folder list screen.

Function menu (Data list screen)

My picture (P.343)	i-motion (P.358)	Received and sent mail (P.288, 294)	Bookmark (P.223)
Display image Image info Delete this Delete all Multiple-choice Memory info Title name *1 Put out	i-motion info Delete this Delete all Multiple-choice Memory info Listing Put out	List setting Protect ON/OFF Unprotect all Mail info *2 No. of messages Delete Delete selected Delete all Put out	No. of bookmarks Delete Delete selected Delete all Put out

*1 : If you selected the Title name, "Picture" is displayed. By default, Picture is displayed.

*2 : Only displayed in the Inbox folder list screen.

■ Function menu (Data details screen)

My picture (P.345)	i-motion (P.362)	Received and sent mail (P.295, 296)
Image info Set image disp. Delete this Retry	Normal play Slow Fast Stop i-motion info Set image disp.	Protect ON/OFF Scroll Character size Delete Put out

Changing a secret data to normal data

To change the secret data back to normal data, move the data from the “Secret” folder to another folder.

<Example: To move an image from the “Secret” folder of My picture>

- 1 Switch the FOMA terminal to “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”
“Preventing Others From Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule” → P.157
- 2 Folder list screen (P.339) ▶ “Secret” ▶ Move the frame to an image
▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Put out”
- 3 Select a folder

NOTE

- If you put out a mail message from the “Secret” folder, the mail turns into a normal mail message, therefore, it may be deleted when other mail messages are sent or received depending on its received date. It is recommended to protect the mail and then put out the message from the “Secret” folder.
- If the destination folder is full, you cannot put out from the “Secret” folder. Delete unnecessary data and then put out from the “Secret” folder.

<PIM lock>

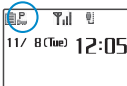
Hiding Your Personal Information

Default setting
Release

Set this function to lock access to FOMA terminal features such as the phonebook, schedule, mail, camera and i-motion so as to prevent other people from viewing, altering or adding new personal information and from changing the FOMA terminal's settings. Once PIM lock is set, all FOMA terminal operations are disabled except for procedures such as viewing pre-installed data, menu operations and incoming and outgoing calls that do not affect stored data.

- Turning off the power does not cancel the PIM lock.
- Setting the PIM lock deletes all the data from “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address” and “Sent address”. However, the phone numbers in “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” and “Redial” or the mail addresses in “Received address” that are stored after setting the PIM lock remain undeleted.

- 1   ▶ “Lock/Security” ▶ “PIM lock” ▶ Enter your security code



PIM lock is set and “” appears on the screen. If “Keypad dial lock” is set at the same time, “” appears.

Security code → P.152

■ Releasing PIM lock

- ▶ Repeat step 1

PIM lock is released and “” disappears from the screen.

NOTE

- You cannot delete the desktop icons when PIM lock is set. In addition, some desktop icons such as "New mail", "Missed alarm", "Phone number", "URL" and "Mail address" are not displayed. They reappear when the PIM lock is released.
- When PIM lock is set, you cannot play or view i-motion, Chara-den characters or My picture files or melodies that were not pre-installed. If you set data of this sort that cannot be played or viewed as a ring tone or as the standby screen, the PIM lock uses the default settings while PIM lock is set. If you have set the calendar in the standby screen, the calendar is displayed, but the schedule function is not activated. Also, if you have selected "Background" and set an image that cannot be displayed, the FOMA terminal uses the "No background" screen.
- When PIM lock is set, you cannot play or display the i-motion, Chara-den, melody other than the pre-installed melody, and the data in My Picture. If you set these data, the default settings are used while PIM lock is set. If you display a calendar on the standby screen, the calendar is displayed, however, schedule function cannot be activated. Also, when set to "Background" and the image that cannot be displayed is selected, the screen changes to the screen for "No background".
- While PIM lock is set, the substitute image sent to the other party during a videophone call is the "Pre-installed" substitute image.
- While PIM lock is set, you cannot check for "Missed calls" or "New mail" by pressing  (Memo/Check) when the FOMA terminal is folded.
- If you set "All lock" while PIM lock is set,  is replaced by .
- While PIM lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" is reached. Also, no alarm notification is given even if the upper limit specified at "Notify cost limit" is exceeded. Once you release PIM lock, the "Missed alarm" and "Call billing" desktop icons appear on the standby screen.
- While PIM lock is set, you can still use automatic reception for Message Request/Free, i-mode mail, SMS or chat mail, but a screen does not appear for receiving or reception results. Once you release PIM lock, the icon for the received message/mail type appears on the standby screen.

<Side keys guard>

Disabling the Side Keys

Default setting
OFF

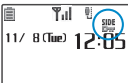
This function allows you to disable the FOMA terminal's side keys to prevent the keys from being accidentally pressed when the FOMA terminal is folded and put in a bag, etc.

- In the situations listed below, the side keys are enabled regardless of the setting specified here.
 - When the FOMA terminal is unfolded
 - When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal
 - When a PC or similar external device is connected to the external connection port and  or  is shown on the display

1



(1 second or longer)



The side keys are disabled (when the FOMA terminal is folded) and **"SIDE KEY"** appears on the screen.

■ To enable the side keys when the FOMA terminal is folded

▶ Repeat step 1

The **"SIDE KEY"** icon disappears.

<Keypad dial lock>

Locking the Keypad

Default setting
Release

This function prohibits anyone from making voice or videophone calls by dialing a phone number or sending i-mode mail and SMS by entering an address using dial keys. This means that calls can only be made using "Phonebook" entries stored before the keypad is locked or using the "Dialed calls", "Redial" or "Sent address" entries logged after the keypad was locked.

In situations where the FOMA terminal is being used for business purposes for example, you can prevent private calls or mail by storing the required work numbers and mail addresses in the "Phonebook" beforehand and then setting this function.

- While the keypad is locked, you cannot use the following functions or procedures to make voice or videophone calls, compose i-mode mail or SMS:
 - Keypad entry · Received calls · Received address · Mail member
 - Desktop icons · Access reader · Bar code reader · Recorded message playback
- The following are not possible while the keypad is locked:
 - Adding, editing or deleting phonebook entries
 - Using the "Phone To/AV Phone To" and "Mail To" functions
 - Sending and receiving phonebook data using infrared data communication
 - Copying and deleting phonebook entries using "UIM operation"
 - Importing phonebook entries from a miniSD memory card
 - Sending the AT command
- Locking the keypad deletes all pre-existing entries in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address". However, all entries logged in those records after the keypad is locked are retained. If there is a draft mail with the address, subject and message, the address is deleted and the message and subject are retained. If there is a draft mail with only the address, the mail is deleted.
- Setting this function deletes chat members.

1




▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Keypad dial lock" ▶ Enter your security code



Keypad dial lock is set and "D" appears on the screen. If "Secret" or "Secret only" mode is set at the same time, "D/S" appears. If "PM lock" is set at the same time, "D/P" appears.

Security code → P.152

■ Releasing Keypad dial lock

▶ Repeat step 1

The "D" disappears from the screen.

NOTE

- You can still directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the keypad is locked.

<Record display set>

Setting the Redial and Received Calls Displays

Default setting	Received calls: ON Redial/Dialed calls: ON

You can use this function to prevent the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" and "Sent address" from being displayed. This is useful for preventing other people from viewing your records of incoming and outgoing calls.

1




▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Record display set" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item:

Security code → P.152

Item	Description
Received calls	Specifies the display setting for the Received calls. Select "OFF" to disable record display.
Redial/Dialed calls	Specifies the display setting for the Redial or Dialed calls. Select "OFF" to disable record display.

NOTE

- Even when "Received calls" is set to "OFF", the "Missed calls" or "New mail" desktop icon still appears on the standby screen when you have missed a call or mail. However, when you try to view the "Received calls" record from the "Missed call" desktop icon on the standby screen, a message appears notifying you that record display is set to "OFF". In this case, the desktop icon remains on the screen. Pressing (Home) with the FOMA terminal folded does not display "Missed call" (P.38) but "New mail" (P.38). To erase the "Missed call" and "New mail" desktop icons, hold down (CLR) for one second or longer.
- The calls recorded while "Received calls" or "Redial/Dialed calls" is set to "OFF" will be displayed when you set those settings to "ON".
- You cannot play recorded messages when "Received calls" record display is set to "OFF".

<Mail security>

Preventing Unwanted Mail Display

Default setting
No security

This function allows you to apply security measures to your Inbox, Outbox, Draft mailboxes or other folders so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your approval. Boxes or folders with security set cannot be opened without entering a security code.

- The icon appears next to mailboxes with security set.
- For folders with security set, icons such as or appear before the folder name on the folder list screen.
- If you set security for the Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address list or Received address list.

Setting security for individual mailboxes

- 1 ▶ "Mail settings" ▶ "Mail security" ▶ Enter your security code
Security code → P.152

- 2 Use to select a checkbox (☐)



The selected mailbox is ticked.
To deselect the ticked mailbox, select it again.

- 3 Press (Finish)

Setting security for individual folders

You can also set security for specific folders. Folders with security set cannot be opened without entering a security code.

- 1 "Inbox folder list screen" (P.283) or "Outbox folder list screen" (P.284) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Mail security" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES"

Security code → P.152

- To cancel the setting
▶ Repeat step 1.

<Restrictions>

Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers

Default setting
All OFF

You can restrict incoming and outgoing calls for each phone number stored in the Phonebook to prevent personal phone calls or nuisance calls.

- You can apply the following functions:

Item	Descriptions
Restrict dialing	Restricts outgoing calls to the phone numbers that are not specified.
Call rejection	Restricts incoming calls from the specified phone number.
Call acceptance	Restricts incoming calls from the phone numbers that are not specified.
Call forwarding	Forwards incoming calls from the specified phone number regardless of the Call forwarding service setting (Activate/Deactivate).
Voice mail	Transfers incoming calls from the specified phone number to the Voice mail service center regardless of the Voice mail service setting (Activate/Deactivate).

- You can specify restrictions for up to 20 phone numbers in each directory.
- You cannot set Restrictions for the UIM phonebook.
- Restrictions are only effective when the caller provides the caller ID. Restrictions should be set in conjunction with "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID".
- In Restrictions you cannot concurrently set Call rejection and Call acceptance for the same phone number, or Call forwarding and Voice mail for the same number.
- These settings cannot be used for phonebook entries stored in "Secret" or "Secret only" mode.
- If you set restrictions for the phone number and then modify or delete that phone number, the restrictions on the selected functions are released. However, setting the "Restrict dialing" restricts the phonebook editing itself, which prevents you from changing the phone number to release the restrict dialing.

Setting restrictions on dialing and receiving for phone numbers

The same method is used to set restrictions on both dialing and receiving for phone numbers stored in the phonebook.

1

"Phonebook entry detail screen" (P.113) ► (FUNC) ► "Restrictions"
► Enter your security code ► Select the function



A star (★) appears next to the selected function.
Security code → P.152

■ To deselect a selected function

- Select the function with the star (★)

The function is deselected and the star (★) disappears.

■ To set restrictions on both dialing and receiving for multiple phone numbers

- Press **CL** to return to the phonebook detail screen ► Use **⬅** to display the desired phone number ► Repeat step 1

Once you press **END** to return to the standby screen after setting restrictions, you can no longer add further restrictions. To add more restrictions, lift the restrictions that have already been set for the phone number and then set the restrictions again including the unrestricted phone number.

NOTE

<Restrict dialing>

- You can still make calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the Restrict dialing is set.
- Setting Restrict dialing prevents you from dialing including the specified phone numbers, and dialing using the received call records. Also, you cannot call numbers other than the specified ones, add to or edit phonebook, exchange data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), or operate phonebook by "UIM operation".
- Setting Restrict dialing prevents you from dialing using all the histories of dialed calls or received calls including the specified phone numbers. Also, you cannot call numbers other than the specified ones, add to or edit phonebook, exchange data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), or operate phonebook by "UIM operation".
- Setting Restrict dialing deletes histories of Redial/Dialed calls and Sent address list that have been stored before setting. However, you can dial or send mails using histories of Redial/Dialed calls or Sent address list that have been stored after setting.
- To use "Automatic display" at the same time as Restrict dialing, set this function for phonebook entries for which "Automatic display" has already been set.
- Only numbers specified on "Restrict dialing" is displayed in the phonebook.

NOTE

<Call rejection><Call acceptance>

- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of the settings of these functions.
- Setting "PIM lock" disables the Call rejection and Call acceptance functions.
- If you receive a call from a number that is specified on Call rejection or from a number that is not specified on Call acceptance, the number is recorded as "Missed calls" in the received calls records and the "Missed call" desktop icon is displayed on the standby screen.
- If you receive a call from a phone number for which Call rejection is set or from a phone number other than the number for which Call acceptance is set, the call is rejected even when the "Voice mail" and "Call forwarding" services are "Activate". However, if the ring time for the "Voice mail" and "Call forwarding" services is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if the FOMA terminal is turned off or out of signal range, the call is handled by the "Voice mail service" or "Call forwarding service". When this happens, the phone number for the received call is not logged in the "Received calls" and is not displayed on the standby screen as a "Missed call" desktop icon.
- You can still make calls when Call rejection or Call acceptance is set.

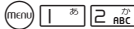
<Call forwarding><Voice mail>

- Setting "PIM lock" disables Call forwarding and Voice mail.
- If you receive a call from the specified phone number, the FOMA terminal rings for roughly 1 second and the call is then either forwarded to the designated call forwarding number or connected to the Voice mail service center.
- If no call forwarding number is designated or if you have not subscribed to the "Call forwarding service" or "Voice mail service", calls from the specified phone number are handled as missed calls.

Checking the restriction settings

You can check the settings for a phone number for which "Restrictions" is set. You can also lift the restrictions while checking them.

1



▶ Enter your security code

The "Restrictions screen" appears.
Security code → P.152



Phonebook restrictions
Function menu ▶ P.166

Function menu (Restrictions screen)

1

"Restrictions screen" ▶ Highlight an item with a star (★) ▶ (FUNC) ▶
Select any item:

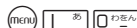
Item	Description
Check settings	Shows a list of the phonebook entries for which the function with a star (★) is set.
Release	Cancels all the function with a star (★) settings.

Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers

Default setting
Accept all/Same as ring tone

This function allows you to accept or reject voice calls and videophone calls from callers who do not provide the caller ID based on the reason given.

1



Security code → P.152

Enter your security code ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Not supported	Specifies whether to accept calls from callers who are unable to provide the caller ID, such as calls from overseas or calls from general phones sent via a call forwarding service. Relaying phone companies may also provide caller IDs in some cases.	
	Accept	Accepts received calls. For the ring tone for a receiving call in Not supported, selects one from "Same as ring tone", "Melody", "i-motion", "Voice announce", "Random melody", and "OFF". → P.126 When selecting "Same as ring tone", the ring tone that is set for "Phone" in "Select ring tone" is used.
	Reject	Rejects received calls.
Payphone	Specifies whether to accept calls dialed from pay phones.	
	Accept	Accepts received calls. For the ring tone for a receiving call from a pay phone, selects one from "Same as ring tone", "Melody", "i-motion", "Voice announce", "Random melody", and "OFF". → P.126 When selecting "Same as ring tone", the ring tone that is set for "Phone" in "Select ring tone" is used.
	Reject	Rejects received calls.
User unset	Specifies whether to accept calls made by callers who withhold their caller IDs.	
	Accept	Accepts received calls. For the ring tone for a receiving call in User unset, selects one from "Same as ring tone", "Melody", "i-motion", "Voice announce", "Random melody", and "OFF". → P.126 When selecting "Same as ring tone", the ring tone that is set for "Phone" in "Select ring tone" is used.
	Reject	Rejects received calls.

NOTE

- The ring tone you select with this function is the ring tone for a no caller ID voice phone call. If you receive a video-phone call with no caller ID, the ring tone is the same as that specified in "Video-phone" for "Select ring tone".
- If you select "Reject", the FOMA terminal displays the "Missed call" icon when you receive a call without playing the ring tone. (The caller hears the busy tone.)
- Even if you have activated "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding", calls with the reason of no caller ID that is set to "Reject" are not connected to the respective services. However, if the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the service area or if the ringing time set for "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" is 0 (zero) seconds, "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" is enabled.
- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of this function.

<Ringing time>

Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

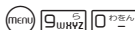
Default setting

Set mute seconds: 0 Missed calls display: Display

Use this function to set the mute period for the ring tone for a voice or videophone call of which the caller is not stored in the phonebook (Set mute seconds). You can prevent accidentally dialing numbers, such as nuisance calls that only ring for a short period from Received calls record.

- "Set mute seconds" also works at time of incoming voice or videophone call without caller ID or when there is another incoming call during a voice or videophone.
- You cannot set "Set mute seconds" when "Reject unknown" is set to "Reject". → P.168

1



▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Set mute seconds	▶ Enter a mute time (00 to 99 seconds) Sets the time for which the ring tone is muted before starting up. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the time currently shown, just press (Set).
Missed calls display	Specifies whether to show received calls for which no ring tone sounded in the missed calls record.

NOTE

- Ringing operations include playing the ring tone, vibrating, lighting/flashing the incoming call lamp or displaying the incoming on the indicator display.
- When you receive a call from someone who is stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, the FOMA terminal operates as specified in this function.
- If the mute time is longer than the ringing time for the Record message function, the FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing first. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it records a message, make sure that the ringing time for Record message is longer than the mute time. The same applies to the ringing times for Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and Automatic answer.
- During PIM lock, no ring tone sounds until the seconds set in "Set mute seconds" elapse even if the incoming call is one from a caller registered in the phonebook.

<Reject unknown>

Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting
Accept

You can specify whether the FOMA terminal accepts or rejects calls from phone numbers that are not stored in FOMA terminal (Phone) or UIM phonebook.

- "Reject unknown" is only effective when the caller provides the caller ID. "Reject unknown" should be set in conjunction with "Caller ID request" and "Call setting w/o ID".
- You cannot set "Reject unknown" when "Set mute seconds" of "Ringing time" is set to other than 0 seconds. → P.168

1



▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Reject unknown" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "Reject"

Security code → P.152

- To receive a call from a caller who is not stored in the phonebook
▶ "Accept"

NOTE

- Even when you set this function to "Reject", you can receive calls according to the "Call setting w/o ID" settings if you set any of the "Call setting w/o ID" settings to "Accept".
- When you receive a call from someone who is stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, the call is not rejected, regardless of this setting.
- If another number is set to "Call acceptance" in "Restrictions", you cannot receive a call even if "Reject unknown" is set to "Accept".
- When "Reject" is selected in this function and you receive a call from a phone number that is not stored in the phonebook, the call is logged as a "Missed call" in the "Received calls" and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. Even if you have activated "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding", the caller hears the busy tone. However, if the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the service area or if the ringing time set for "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" is 0 (zero) seconds, the caller does not hear the busy tone and is connected to the "Voice mail service center" or the forwarding number. When this happens, the phone number for the received call is not logged in the "Received calls" and is not displayed on the standby screen as a "Missed call" desktop icon.
- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of this function.
- During PIM lock, you cannot reject a call from the caller who is not stored in the phonebook.

<Self mode>

Disabling Making/Receiving Calls, etc.

Default setting
Release

Use this function so that the FOMA terminal cannot make or receive voice or videophone calls, use i-mode, or send or receive mail. This is useful when you want to use the FOMA terminal without having to worry about interruptions such as incoming voice or videophone calls.

- If you receive a voice or videophone call when the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, the caller hears a message that the FOMA terminal is out of signal range or is turned off. If you are using the "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" services, calls are handled in the same way as if the FOMA terminal is turned off.
- While in Self mode, the FOMA terminal does not use desktop icons such as "Missed call" to notify you of calls.
- Data communication using external equipment or infrared communication is not possible in Self mode.
- You can still make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the FOMA terminal is in Self mode. Note that making a voice call at an emergency number cancels Self mode.

1



▶ "Lock/Security" ▶ "Self mode" ▶ "YES" ▶ "OK"

Self mode is set and "**self**" appears on the screen.

■ To cancel Self mode

▶ Repeat step 1

Self mode is canceled and "**self**" disappears from the screen.

NOTE

- Message Request/Free and i-mode mail received in Self mode are kept at the i-mode Center, and SMS are kept at the SMS Center.

Other Security Settings

Apart from those explained in this chapter, there are functions/services relating to security settings as shown below.

Purpose	Function/Services	Ref. page
To avoid "nuisance phone calls" such as prank phone calls or unsolicited sales phone calls	Nuisance call barring	P.450
To ignore calls that has no caller ID	Caller ID request	P.451
To send data securely by using the user certificate service *Only available on sites that support FirstPass	FirstPass	P.239
To update FOMA terminal software when necessary	Software update	P.547
To protect the FOMA terminal against malicious data	Scanning function	P.551
To accept only necessary i-mode mail	Receive option	P.276
To leave/hear the information about the safety using i-mode at the time of disaster	"i-mode Disaster Message Board" service	See "i-mode User's Manual"
To change your mail address	Change Mail Address	
To check your mail address if you forget it	Confirm Mail Address	
To accept mail from specified domain only	Receive Mail from Selected Domains	
To accept/reject mail only from the specified sender	Receive Selected Mail Reject Selected Mail	
To accept/reject i-mode mail only	Receive only i-mode mail Reject only i-mode mail	
To reject any further incoming i-mode mail sent from an i-mode mobile phone once you have received 200 messages a day from that phone	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject advertisements	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To reject SMS	Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings	
To check the status of the mail function settings	Confirm Settings	
To restrict the size of received mail	Limit Mail Size	
To temporarily stop the mail function	Suspend Mail	

NOTE

- Be careful when returning calls from numbers you do not know. In particular sending your caller ID to the other unknown party may cause unnecessary problems.

<Nuisance call barring priority sequence>

- Priority is assigned when nuisance call barring function is set at the same time. ① has the highest priority.
 - ① Nuisance call barring service
 - ② Reject unknown or Ringing time/Call setting w/o ID/Call rejection

● Camera

Before Using the Camera		172
Shooting Still Images	Still Images	178
Shooting Movies	Movie mode	186
Capturing Important Scenes	Chance capture	189
Adding Voice-over to a Still Image	Picture voice	189
Using Voice Mode	Voice mode	190
Changing the Shooting Settings		191
Using the Bar Code Reader	Bar code reader	194
Scanning Text	Access reader	198

Before Using the Camera

You can use the FOMA terminal's built-in camera to shoot photos (still images) and movies.

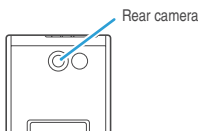
- You cannot activate the camera function or shoot when the FOMA terminal is folded.
- The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electrical appliance store. → P.380
- You can use the following functions in shooting:
 - "Using the zoom" → P.191
 - "Using the auto timer" → P.192
 - "Turning on the light" → P.192
- You can use the still images or movies you shot as follows:
 - "Displaying the Stored Images" → P.339
 - "Editing Images" → P.352
 - "Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card" → P.384
 - "Playing Movies/i-motion" → P.357
 - "Attaching Files" (i-mode mail) → P.269

Using the camera

To switch between the front and rear cameras, press  (FUNC) when the screen is the shooting, select "Front camera" or "Rear camera" from the function menu.

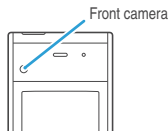
Rear camera

This camera is useful for taking pictures of other people, animals or scenery. What you see is what you get on the screen (Normal display: photographed as it is displayed on the screen). The outside camera can be used to take pictures of nearby subjects by utilizing the lens selector switch and the close-up function → P.172, 177, 193



Front camera

Use this camera to take a picture of yourself. The image is displayed as if you were looking in the mirror (Mirror display: photographed as the mirror images).



- The camera of your FOMA terminal is made with the extremely high-precision technology. However, it may include lines or spots that appear dark or bright. Noises such as white lines may also appear on the photographed images particularly when you shot in very poorly lit locations.
- Before shooting, wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth. Fingerprints or grease spots on the lens could prevent the camera from focusing properly and cause blurred images.
- Take care not to press on the lens when folding the FOMA terminal as this could damage the lens.
- Image quality may be adversely affected if the FOMA terminal is left in a hot location for a long time.
- Do not leave the camera under the direct sunlight for a long time or shoot directly the sun or a powerful lamp. This could lead to the discoloration of the photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.

Lens selector switch

- To take a close-up photo, move the lens selector switch to  (macro lens). When you move the lens selector switch to , the camera is focused on an object approx. 6 to 8 cm away from the rear camera.
- To use Access reader or Bar code reader, move the lens selector switch to  (macro lens).
- Make sure that your fingers do not cover the lens, when you move the lens selector switch. Also, move the switch to the  (standard lens) position or the  (macro lens) position. Do not leave the switch in the wrong position.

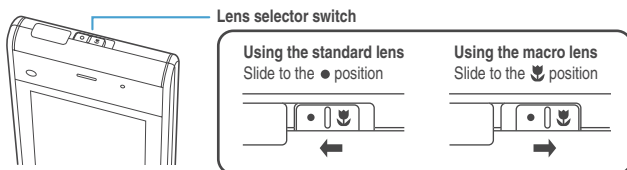
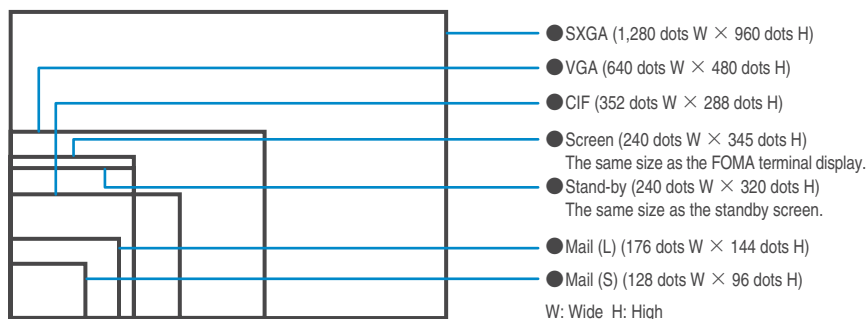


Image size

- The following shows the sizes of images that the FOMA terminal can shoot. Choose the size suiting the purpose:



* : The image sizes framed above are not the actual sizes.

Shooting still images

- Up to 360 still images can be saved. This may vary by the image size settings or the number of the downloaded images.
- The following table shows the image sizes and the approximate numbers of images that can be stored: (A: Available, U: Unavailable)

Image size	Camera		Storage setting	Maximum number of images		
	Rear camera	Front camera		FOMA terminal (Phone)	miniSD memory card	
					16M bytes	32M bytes
SXGA (1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 3	Approx. 23	Approx. 49
			Fine	Approx. 3	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
			Normal	Approx. 5	Approx. 44	Approx. 94
VGA (640 dots wide × 480 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 3	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
			Fine	Approx. 18	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Normal	Approx. 32	Approx. 222	Approx. 472
CIF (352 dots wide × 288 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 3	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
			Fine	Approx. 32	Approx. 222	Approx. 472
			Normal	Approx. 45	Approx. 296	Approx. 630
Screen (240 dots wide × 345 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 18	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 32	Approx. 222	Approx. 472
			Normal	Approx. 45	Approx. 296	Approx. 630
Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high)	A	U	Super Fine	Approx. 18	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 32	Approx. 222	Approx. 472
			Normal	Approx. 45	Approx. 296	Approx. 630
Mail (L) (176 dots wide × 144 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 18	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 90	Approx. 445	Approx. 945
			Normal	Approx. 130	Approx. 890	Approx. 1890
Mail (S) (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	A	A	Super Fine	Approx. 18	Approx. 127	Approx. 270
			Fine	Approx. 90	Approx. 445	Approx. 945
			Normal	Approx. 130	Approx. 890	Approx. 1890

Shooting movies

- Up to 100 movies can be saved. This may vary by the image size settings or the number of the downloaded i-motion.
- The default length of movie shooting is roughly 45 seconds. However, the shooting time per movie varies by the factors such as the types of objects.
- The maximum number of movies that can be stored varies by the shooting lengths.
- The following table shows the movie sizes and the approximate numbers of movies that can be stored:

Image size	File size setting	Movie type set	Maximum number of movies		
			FOMA terminal (Phone)	miniSD memory card	
				16M bytes	32M bytes
Large (176 dots wide × 144 dots high)	Restricted(Short)	Normal	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Video	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Voice	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
	Restricted(Long)	Normal	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Video	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Voice	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
	Local playback	Normal	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Video	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Voice	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
	Long time*	Normal	-	Approx. 1	Approx. 1
		Video	-	Approx. 1	Approx. 2
		Voice	-	Approx. 2	Approx. 5
Small (128 dots wide × 96 dots high)	Restricted(Short)	Normal	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Video	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
		Voice	Approx. 10	Approx. 46	Approx. 99
	Restricted(Long)	Normal	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Video	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
		Voice	Approx. 6	Approx. 27	Approx. 59
	Local playback	Normal	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Video	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
		Voice	Approx. 3	Approx. 17	Approx. 37
	Long time*	Normal	-	Approx. 1	Approx. 2
		Video	-	Approx. 1	Approx. 2
		Voice	-	Approx. 2	Approx. 5

* : The maximum shooting time is defined as 60 minutes.

Notes on using the camera

Notes on shooting

- If no operations are performed for about 3 minutes, the camera function is turned off automatically.
- The color tones and brightness levels in still images and movies shot by the built-in camera may differ from those of the actual object.
- If you try to shoot directly the sun or a lamp, the image may appear dark or distorted.
- Take care that your fingers, hair, or the strap do not cover the lens when you shoot.
- The shooting uses a large amount of the battery. It is recommended that you turn off the camera immediately after you finish shooting. The screen may look dark or blurred if you shoot when the battery is low.
- If any of the events listed below occurs while you are shooting a movie or taking consecutive photos, your FOMA terminal stops shooting and shows the respective screen. Once you exit the screen, the camera screen reappears so that you can save the images or movies shot before you received the call or alarm, etc. If one of these events occurs while you are adjusting the camera zoom or brightness, the adjusted settings are fixed and the camera menu reappears. If the auto timer is running when the event occurs, the auto timer is canceled:
 - Incoming voice/video phone call or 64K data incoming
 - Alarm clock, scheduled event or ToDo alarm posted
 - Another function called

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

- Note the following:
 - If you receive mail or a Message Request/Free while using the camera (including while the shooting screen is displayed), the FOMA terminal continues shooting and does not display the Receiving results screen, regardless of the settings of "Receiving display" (P.299).
 - Select "Operation preferred" from "Alarm setting" (P.410) to ensure that the FOMA terminal continues operating and does not stop shooting, changing the camera settings or operating the auto timer when it is time to post a scheduled alarm.
- Even if the FOMA terminal is in "Manner mode" or in "Driving mode", the FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound and Auto Timer tone. Even if "Earphone" is selected in the "Earphone" settings and an earphone is attached to the terminal, these sounds come out of the speaker.
- Moving the FOMA terminal while you are shooting could blur the image. Hold the FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not move until you hear the shutter sound and the FOMA terminal finishes capturing the image, or use the Auto Timer while you are shooting.
- When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. It is recommended to change the "Image tuning" setting beforehand to suppress the flickering. However, note that the flickering may not be entirely eliminated due to the conditions (dim light, excessive luminous, etc.) and the coloration of the object.
- After you display the shooting screen, switch the Camera modes or change the camera settings, it may take long for the brightness or color tone to become its best.
- To save still images or movies you shot to the miniSD memory card, select "miniSD" in "Select to save" (P.180, 187). Furthermore, specify the destination folder on the miniSD memory card in "Select storage" (P.393).
- Setting "Auto save set" (P.179, 187) to "ON" enables you to automatically save the shots to the destination folder specified in "Select to save" without displaying the shooting check screen.
- You cannot run the Camera while "PIM lock" is set.

■ Copyright Information

- Take care not to infringe on the copyrights when you duplicate or edit the images you shot or recorded using the FOMA terminal. Also take care not to infringe on the portrait rights by using or altering another person's portrait without his or her permission. It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Guide to the shooting screen

The shooting screens display the icons of the Camera settings.



Function	Icon	Description	Reference page
① Shooting menu		Shows the settings of the shooting. You can call the functions to specify the settings by pressing or .	P.176
② Zoom		Shows the zoom settings. When the zoom arrows (,) are displayed, you can zoom in or out by pressing or .	P.191
③ Auto timer		Shows that the auto timer is set.	P.192
④ Storage setting		Shoots movies in "Normal" as the image quality.	P.187
		Shoots movies in "Fine mode".	
		Shoots movies in "Long dur. mode".	
		Shoots movies in "Move mode".	
⑤ Movie type set		Shoots movies with video and voice.	P.187
		Shoots movies with video only.	
		Shoots movies with voice only.	
⑥ Shooting status		Shows that the movie is being shot.	P.186
		Shows that the movie shooting is in standby mode.	
⑦ Remaining photography time		Shows the time left (minutes:seconds).	

Guide to the shooting menu

You can change the settings of the following useful functions by using the shooting menu.

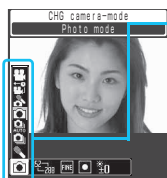
- Pressing or displays the shooting menu.
- Press and select "Help", or press , and you can check the keys assigned to the shooting menu or the shooting operations.
- The settings that can be changed from the shooting menu can also be changed from the function menu.

*Some menus are not displayed due to the conditions when the shooting screens are activated from the other functions such as mail function or when the front camera is used, etc.

1 Shooting screen Use to highlight an icon (Select)

Neuropointer is also available for selecting items.

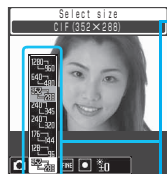
Items that can be selected in the shooting menu vary according to camera mode.



CHG camera-mode

- Movie mode Shoots a movie.
- Chance capture Records a movie retroactively from the point you end shooting.
- Picture voice Records a voice to add to a still image you shot.
- Photo mode Shoots a still image.
- A-Continuous mode Shoots still images continuously at the same time.
- M-Continuous mode Shoots still images continuously, one image at a time.
- Voice mode Records voice only.

(When the camera launches: Photo mode)



Select size
(Ex. "Photo mode")

- SXGA Shoots in SXGA (1,280 × 960).
- VGA Shoots in VGA (640 × 480).
- CIF Shoots in CIF (352 × 288).
- Screen Shoots in Screen (240 × 345).
- Stand-by Shoots in Stand-by (240 × 320).
- JAVA* Shoots in JAVA (240 × 240).
- Mail (L) Shoots in Mail (L) (176 × 144).
- Mail (S) Shoots in Mail (S) (128 × 96).

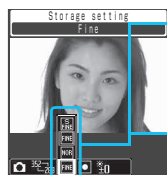
*: Can be selected only when the camera is run from i-appli.

(Default: CIF)

Select size
(Ex. "Movie mode")

- Large Shoots in Large size (176 × 144).
- Small Shoots in Small size (128 × 96).

(Default: Large)



Storage setting
(Ex. "Photo mode")

- Super Fine Saves the shot as a large-sized file.
- Fine Saves the shot as a medium-sized file.
- Normal Saves the shot as a small-sized file.

(Default: Fine)

File size setting
(Ex. "Movie mode")

- Restricted(Short) Shoots up to 290K bytes as the file size.
- Restricted(Long) Shoots up to 490K bytes as the file size.
- Local playback Shoots up to 800K bytes as the file size.
- Long time Shoots for a long time.

(Default: Restricted(Short))

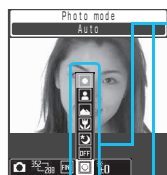


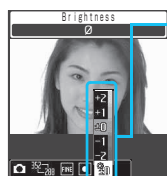
Photo mode
(Photo mode)

- Auto Is the automatic shooting mode.
- Portrait Is the shooting mode for people.
- Scenery Is the shooting mode for scenery.
- Close-up Is the shooting mode for close-up.
- Night mode Is the shooting mode for night view.
- OFF Does not use any effects for shooting.

(Default: Auto)

Photo mode
(Movie mode)

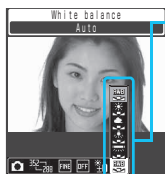
- Portrait Is the shooting mode for people.
- Scenery Is the shooting mode for scenery.
- Close-up Is the shooting mode for close-up.



Brightness

- Sets the Brightness of the shot (+2/+1/± 0/-1/-2).

(When the camera launches: ± 0)



White balance

- Auto Automatically compensates the tone.
- Fine Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
- Cloudy Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
- Light bulb Is the mode suitable for shooting under the incandescence.
- Fluorescent Is the mode suitable for shooting under the fluorescence.

(Default: Auto)

<Still image>

Shooting Still Images

You can use the built-in camera to shoot any images.

- You can save the shots directly to the miniSD memory card.
- You can automatically save the shots to the folder specified in advance.

1 When the screen is standby ▶ Select () (Camera)

The "Photo mode screen" appears.

You can also run the "Photo mode screen" by holding down for one second or longer when the screen is Standby.



Function menu ▶ P.179

2 Point the camera at the object ▶ (Record) or (Photo)

The "Image checking screen" appears.

■ To shoot again

▶ CLR ▶ "YES"



Function menu ▶ P.180

3 (Save)

The shot is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.180).

NOTE

● The Photo mode screen can be displayed by following the steps below:

· ▶ ▶ "Camera" ▶ "Photo mode"

- Some images may go grainy, depending on the sizes. When you set the Display size to "Fit in display" and shoot an image in Mail (L) (176 x 144) or in Mail (S) (128 x 96), the image may look grainy because the image is zoomed in on the Image checking screen.
- Do not remove miniSD memory card while you are saving to the miniSD memory card. This may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- If the battery is low, you may not be able to save the shots.
- If the FOMA terminal was turned off or the battery pack was removed during the file saving, incomplete files may be saved.
- If you select "miniSD" from "Select to save" (P.179), turning off the FOMA terminal, removing/inserting/formatting/ checking miniSD memory card, or using as miniSD reader/writer cancels the settings for the destination folder. The destination will be the newest folder created on the FOMA terminal. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.392).
- Creating or editing miniSD memory card folders on PC may change the destination folder. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.393).
- During the shooting, the incoming call lamp lights red. It flashes green while the data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.

Function menu (Photo mode screen/continuous shooting screen)

1 Photo mode screen/continuous shooting screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description	
Front camera/Rear camera	Switches between Front camera and Rear camera.	
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.	
Select size	Changes the settings in the same way as on the Shooting menu (P.176).	
Storage setting		
Light	Turns on/off the light. Cannot be changed when using Front camera.	
Interval/Number*1	Sets the shooting interval and the number of shots you want to take on the continuous mode. → P.182	
Image quality	Photo mode	"Selecting the mode suitable for shooting" → P.193
	Brightness	 Use  to adjust the Brightness  (Set) Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from -2 to ±0 to +2. The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. ±0 is the default settings when you run the camera.
	White balance	"Setting the white balance" → P.193
	Color mode set	"Setting the effects on the photographed images" → P.193
	Image tuning	"Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images" → P.194
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. ("Shutter 1" is selected at the time of purchase.)	
Auto timer	Sets the auto timer. → P.192	
Select frame*2	Sets the frames for images. → P.184	
Auto save set	ON	Does not display the Image checking screen when you shoot an image. The image shot is automatically saved to the destination specified in "Select to save".
	OFF (default)	Displays the Image checking screen when you shoot an image.
Select to save	Specifies the destination where the shot is saved.	
	Phone (default)	 Select a folder (The "Camera" folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.)
	miniSD	Saves the image to the destination folder specified in the "Select storage" (P.393).
File restriction	File unrestricted (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
	File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). Cannot be specified if the image size is neither Mail (L) (176 × 144) nor Mail (S) (128 × 96).	
	Actual size (default)	Displays the image in the actual size.
	Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal or on miniSD memory card.	
Help	Shows the guide to the shooting.	

*1 : Cannot be set in Photo mode.

*2 : Cannot be set in Continuous mode.

NOTE

<Shutter sound>

- When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal does not play the shutter sound for checking. However, if "ON" is selected for "VM tone" in "Original" (P.132), the sound is played.

<File restriction>

- You can change the settings of the File restriction after you save the image.

● Setting the file size for saving

1 Photo mode screen (P.178)/continuous shooting screen (P.181) ► (FUNC) ► "Storage setting" ► Select any item:

Image size Storage setting	SXGA (1,280 × 960)	VGA (640 × 480)	CIF (352 × 288)	Screen (240 × 345) Stand-by (240 × 320)	Mail (L) (176 × 144) Mail (S) (128 × 96) QCIF (176 × 144)* Small (117 × 96)*
Super Fine	ca 600 KB max.	ca 500 KB max.	ca 500 KB max.	ca 95 KB max.	ca 95 KB max.
Fine (default)	ca 500 KB max.	ca 95 KB max.	ca 50 KB max.	ca 50 KB max.	ca 15 KB max.
Normal	ca 300 KB max.	ca 50 KB max.	ca 35 KB max.	ca 35 KB max.	9,000 bytes max.

* : Can be set for saving Chara-den as a still image. (P.373)

Function menu (image checking screen)

1 Image checking screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description				
Save	The shot is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.179).				
Mirror save	Saves the mirrored image (inverted left-right) to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.179).				
Compose message	"Composing an i-mode mail message or Deco-mail message using the still image" → P.185				
Edit image	Adds a frame or effect to the image. "Editing Images" → P.352 You cannot edit an image larger than CIF (352 × 288).				
Set as display	■ To specify for screens such as standby, dialing or incoming call ► Select a screen ■ To specify for videophone-related screens (except VP Dialing or VP Calling) ► Select a screen ► Check the image ►  (Set) ► "YES" Sets the still image to the Standby screen, etc. You cannot set an image of SXGA (1,280 × 960), or VGA (640 × 480) image which file size exceeds 100K bytes.				
Change frame	"Changing the frame" → P.185				
Mirror display	Changes the checking display to the Mirror display. If the Mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" is displayed.				
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). Cannot be specified if the image size is neither Mail (L) (176 × 144) nor Mail (S) (128 × 96).				
	<table> <tr> <td>Actual size (default)</td><td>Displays the image in the actual size.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Fit in display</td><td>Enlarges the image to the display size.</td></tr> </table>	Actual size (default)	Displays the image in the actual size.	Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
Actual size (default)	Displays the image in the actual size.				
Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.				
Select to save	Specifies the destination where the shot is saved.				
	<table> <tr> <td>Phone (default)</td><td>► Select a folder (The "Camera" folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.)</td></tr> <tr> <td>miniSD</td><td>Saves the image to the destination folder specified in the "Select storage" (P.393).</td></tr> </table>	Phone (default)	► Select a folder (The "Camera" folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.)	miniSD	Saves the image to the destination folder specified in the "Select storage" (P.393).
Phone (default)	► Select a folder (The "Camera" folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.)				
miniSD	Saves the image to the destination folder specified in the "Select storage" (P.393).				
File restriction	<table> <tr> <td>File unrestricted (default)</td><td>Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.</td></tr> <tr> <td>File restricted</td><td>Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.</td></tr> </table>	File unrestricted (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.	File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
File unrestricted (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.				
File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.				
Cancel	Deletes the photographed image to retake the shot.				

NOTE

<Compose message>

- Pressing when the screen is the image checking screen also enables you to compose i-mode mail with the still image attached/inserted.

<Edit image>

- Selecting "Edit image" changes the display to the Normal display.

<Mirror display>

- Images shot by the Front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

<File restriction>

- You can change the settings of the File restriction after you save the image.

Shooting continuously <Continuous mode>

Default setting	Size: CIF (352 × 288) Shot interval: 0.5 seconds Shot number: 4

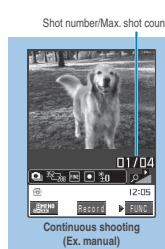
Continuous mode enables you to shoot a series of up to 20 consecutive still images. There are two types of Continuous mode: A-Continuous mode (Auto) and M-Continuous mode (Manual).

- A-Continuous mode enables you to specify the number of shots and the interval. Once you release the shutter, the FOMA terminal automatically shoots at the specified interval.
- M-Continuous mode enables you to shoot by the specified number, one shot each time you release the shutter.
- CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), Mail (L) (176 × 144) and Mail (S) (128 × 96) are available as the image size.
- You can enjoy the continuous image shots as an animation after putting into the Original animation.
- Folding the FOMA terminal terminates the continuous shooting.

1

Photo mode screen (P.178) or or

The "Continuous shooting screen" appears.



Function menu▶P.179

2

Point the camera at the object (Cont. /Record) or

■ To stop the continuous shooting

- A-Continuous mode : ▶"NO"
- M-Continuous mode : ▶

The shooting is finished and the continuous shooting checking screen appears.

■ To select the image to save

- ▶Use to move the frame to the image that you want to store▶ (Select)

The icon is attached to the selected image.

Repeat the step to select images.

To deselect, select the image to cancel. The icon disappears.

■ To check the images in detail

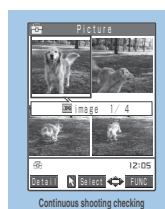
- ▶Use to move the frame to the image that you want to check▶ (Detail)

Use to change the image to check.

To return to the list, press .

To save the image displayed in detail, press (Save).

Saves the image to the destination folder specified in the "Select to save" (P.179).



Function menu▶P.182



Function menu▶P.183

3 Select the saving method

"Function menu (continuous shooting checking screen)" → P.182

Saves the image to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.179).

If you select "Select to save", the "continuous shooting checking screen" appears with the saved image removed after saving the image.

NOTE

- If CIF (352 × 288) is set as the image size, the number of shots is automatically fixed at four, which cannot be changed.
- If you receive a call during the continuous shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the Continuous shooting checking screen appears containing the images you shot up to interruption.
- Do not remove miniSD memory card while you are saving to the miniSD memory card. This may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- If the battery is low, you may not be able to save the shots.
- If the FOMA terminal was turned off or the battery pack was removed during the file saving, incomplete files may be saved.
- If you select "miniSD" from "Select to save" (P.179), turning off the FOMA terminal, removing/inserting/formatting/checking miniSD memory card, or using as miniSD reader/writer cancels the settings for the destination folder. The destination will be the newest folder created on the FOMA terminal. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.393).
- Creating or editing miniSD memory card folders on PC may change the destination folder. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.393).
- During the M-Continuous mode, the incoming call lamp lights red each time you shoot. The lamp lights red during the A-Continuous mode. It flashes green while the data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.
- If you shoot strong light or moving object in A-Continuous mode, the interval may become longer than the specified one.

● Setting the shooting interval and number of shots

1 Continuous shooting screen (P.181) ► (FUNC) ► "Interval/Number" ► Select any item:

"Shot interval 0.5 seconds and Shot number 5" are the default settings for Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), Mail (L) (176 × 144) and Mail (S) (128 × 96).

Item	Description
Shot interval	Selects the shot interval among 0.5, 1.0 and 2.0 (seconds). Cannot be set for M-Continuous mode.
Shot number	Sets the number of shots between 05 and 20 (5 to 20 shots). The maximum number of shots varies by the image size. Entering the 2-digit number automatically sets the number of shots. To set the currently displayed number, press (Set).

2 Set the respective items ► (CLR) ► (CLR)

Function menu (Continuous shooting checking screen)

1 Continuous shooting checking screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Store selection	Saves the still image marked with a checkbox (☒). ► "Save" or "Mirror save" Saves the image to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.179).
Store all	Saves all the still images. ► "Save" or "Mirror save" Saves the image to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.179).
Store all & anime	Saves all the still images you shot, and stores as the Original animation. ► "Save" or "Mirror save" ► Select the number of Original animation Saves the images to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.179). However, you cannot save the images to the miniSD memory card.
Select this	Selects the still image indicated by the frame and marks the checkbox of the image (☒).
Select all	Selects all the still images you shot and marks the checkboxes of the images (☒).
Release this	Releases the still image indicated by the frame and unchecks the checkbox of the image (☒).

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.380

Item	Description	
Release all	Releases all the still images and unchecks the checkboxes of the images (☒).	
Mirror display*	Changes the display to the Mirror display. If the Mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" is displayed.	
Select to save	Phone (default)	▶ Select a folder (The "Camera" folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.)
	miniSD	Saves the image to the destination folder specified in the "Select storage" (P.393).
File restriction	File unrestricted (default)	Allows the still image marked with a checkbox (☒) to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
	File restricted	Prevents the still image marked with a checkbox (☒) from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
Restriction all	File unrestricted (default)	Allows all the still images to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
	File restricted	Prevents all the still images from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
Cancel	Deletes all the photographed images to retake the shots.	

* : If the Mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" is displayed.

NOTE

<Store all & anime>

- You cannot select "Store all & anime" if only one image has been shot or if one or more of the photographed images have already been saved.

- You cannot save the shots to the miniSD memory card.

<Mirror display>

- Images shot by the Front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

<File restriction>

- You can change the settings of the File restriction after you save the image.

Function menu (Detail checking screen)

1 Detail checking screen (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Save	Saves the still image.	
Mirror save	Inverts the left and right of the displayed image to save to the folder specified in the "Select to save" (P.180) setting.	
Compose message	"Composing an i-mode mail message or Deco-mail message using the still image" → P.185	
Mirror display*	Changes the display to the Mirror display. If the Mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" is displayed.	
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). Cannot be specified if the image size is neither Mail (L) (176 × 144) nor Mail (S) (128 × 96).	
	Actual size (default)	Displays the image in the actual size.
	Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.	
	File unrestricted (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
	File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.

* : If the Mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" is displayed.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- Pressing  (MAIL) when the screen is the detail checking also enables you to compose i-mode mail with the still image attached/inserted.

<Mirror display>

- Images shot by the Front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

Shooting framed images <Framed photography>

You can add a frame to the shot when the image size is CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), Mail (L) (176 × 144) or Mail (S) (128 × 96).

- You can use the downloaded frames in addition to the pre-installed ones.
- The following are the three pre-installed frames:



Mickey&Minnie



Fancy



Mt.Fuji

1 Photo mode screen (P.178) (FUNC) "Select frame" Select a frame

- To cancel the framed photography
 "OFF"

2 Point the camera at the object (Record) or (Camera)

3 Check and save the shot in the same operation as described in "Shooting Still Images" (P.178)

You can change the frame before saving the still image. → P.185

NOTE

- You can check the highlighted frame by pressing  (Play) on the Select frame screen.
- Framed images shot by the Front camera are displayed mirrored (inverted left-right). They are automatically saved in the Normal display. When the images are converted from mirrored to normal, the frames are also inverted left-right.
- The frame of which size differs from that of the image cannot be selected.
- Exiting the camera removes the frame.

● Changing the frame

You can change the frame before saving the still image. Note that you cannot delete the frame from the still image after shooting.

1 Frame shooting check screen ► (FUNC) ► “Change frame” ► Select a frame



Frame shooting check

2 Check the framed image ► (Set)

The screen turns to the frame shooting check.

■ To cancel the selected frame

►  (Cancel)

NOTE

● Pressing  (FUNC) on the checking screen to select “Set” or “Cancel!” also sets or cancels the frame.

Composing an i-mode mail message or Deco-mail message using the still image

You can compose an i-mode mail message with the still image you shot attached or insert the still image into the Deco-mail message body.

1 Image checking screen (P.178) ► (FUNC) ► “Compose message” ► Select any item:

Item	Description	
Attach image	Attaches the image that is smaller than Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high) to an i-mode mail message. Select any of the following item to attach an image that is larger than Screen (240 dots wide × 345 dots high).	
	Attach mail	Attaches image by reducing its file size to 500 KB or less without changing the image size.
	QVGA scale down	Attaches image by reducing its file size to 240 dots wide x 320 dots high, or 320 dots wide x 240 dots high or smaller without changing its aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if its file size is larger than the maximum.
Insert image	Inserts the image that is smaller than Mail (S) (128 dots wide × 96 dots high) into the Deco-mail message body. Select any of the following item to attach the image that is larger than Mail (L) (176 dots wide × 144 dots high).	
	Insert mail	Inserts image by reducing its file size to 9,000 bytes or less without changing the image size.
	Sub-QCIF scaledown	Inserts image by reducing its file size to 128 dots wide x 96 dots high, or 96 dots wide x 128 dots high or smaller without changing its aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if its file size is larger than the maximum.

2 Compose the message

Composing and sending i-mode mail → P.253

Composing and sending Deco-mail → P.259

NOTE

- If you attach an image of which size is 10,001 to 500K bytes to an i-mode mail message, the image to send is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.179) of the terminal. When "Select to save" is set to "miniSD", a message appears asking whether to save the image into the FOMA terminal (Phone). Selecting "YES" saves the image into the "Camera" folder. Selecting "NO" breaks the mail message being composed.
- The attached still image of which size exceeds 10,000 bytes is called large image. If you send a large image to the i-mode terminal, the image is converted to the size in the i-shot Center so that it can be received by i-mode terminals.
- You cannot compose mail message when there are already 20 draft mails stored.

<Movie mode>

Shooting Movies

Use the built-in camera to shoot a movie with voice and sound.

- If you set "Long time" to the "File size setting" and shoot a movie, the movie checking screen does not appear, but the movie is saved directly to the miniSD memory card and then the shooting is finished.
- The shooting time varies by the conditions such as the object.
- You cannot shoot a video clip while you are talking on the phone.
- Folding the FOMA terminal terminates the movie shooting.

1 Photo mode screen (P.178) ▶ (MENU) or ▶

2 Point the camera at the object ▶ (Record) or



Starts shooting.

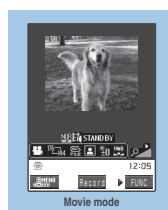
You can zoom in/out during the shooting.

You can check the approximate time left to shoot on the screen.

■ If the file size reaches the limit specified in File size setting

▶ "OK"

The movie checking screen appears.



Function menu ▶ P.187

3 (Stop) or

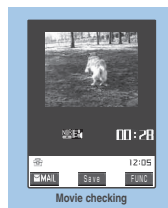
The shooting terminates and the "Movie checking screen" appears.

■ To play the movie you shot

▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Play"

■ To retake the shot

▶ (CLR) ▶ "YES"



Function menu ▶ P.188

4 (Save)

Saves the movie to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.187).

NOTE

- You can display the movie shooting screen by the following procedure.
 - ▶ ▶ "Camera" ▶ ▶ "Movie mode"
- Do not remove miniSD memory card while you are saving to the miniSD memory card. This may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- If you receive a call during the movie shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the movie shooting checking screen appears.
- If the battery is low, you may not be able to save the shots.
- If the FOMA terminal was turned off or the battery pack was removed during the file saving, incomplete files may be saved.
- If you select "miniSD" from "Select to save" (P.187), turning off the FOMA terminal, removing/inserting/formatting/checking miniSD memory card, or using as miniSD reader/writer cancels the settings for the destination folder in the miniSD memory card. The destination will be the newest folder in the miniSD memory card created on the FOMA terminal. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.393).

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.380

NOTE

- Creating or editing miniSD memory card folders on PC may change the destination folder. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.393).
- During the shooting, the incoming call lamp flashes red (it turns green when the "File size setting" is set to "Long time"). It flashes green while the data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.
- If you press any keys to perform a function such as zoom in/out during the shooting, the sound may be recorded.

Function menu (Movie mode screen)

1 Movie mode screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description	
Front camera/Rear camera	Switches between Front camera and Rear camera.	
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.	
Select size	Changes the settings in the same way as on the Shooting menu (P.176).	
File size setting		
Storage setting	Sets the image quality and duration for the movie shooting.	
	Normal (default)	Shoots a movie in the standard image quality and duration.
	Fine mode	Shoots a movie in the higher image quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
	Long dur. mode	Shoots a long movie. The image quality is not as high as for Normal.
	Move mode	Shoots a movie with smoother motion. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
Light	Turns on/off the light. Cannot be changed when using Front camera.	
Image quality	Photo mode	"Selecting the mode suitable for shooting" → P.193
	Brightness	 Use  to adjust the brightness  (Set) Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from " - 2 to ± 0 to + 2". The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. " ± 0" is the default settings when you launch the camera.
	White balance	"Setting the white balance" → P.193
	Color mode set	"Setting the effects on the photographed images" → P.193
	Image tuning	"Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images" → P.194
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. (The default setting is "Shutter 1".)	
Auto timer	Sets the auto timer. → P.192	
Movie type set	Normal (when the camera launches)	Records video and voice.
	Video	Shoots a movie without any voices.
	Voice	Records a voice without movies.
Auto save set	ON	Does not display the Movie checking screen when you shoot a movie. Saves the movie automatically to the folder specified in "Select to save".
	OFF (default)	Displays the Movie checking screen when you shoot a movie.
Select to save	Specifies the destination where the shot is saved.	
	Phone (default)	 Select a folder (The "Camera" folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.)
	miniSD	Saves the movie to the destination folder specified in the "Select storage" (P.393).

Item	Description	
File restriction	File unrestricted (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
	File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
Display size	Actual size (default)	Displays the image in the actual size.
	Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal or on miniSD memory card.	
Help	Shows the guide to the shooting.	

NOTE

<Shutter sound>

- When the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, the FOMA terminal does not play the shutter sound for checking. However, if "ON" is selected for "VM tone" in "Original," the sound is played.

<Movie type set>

- Cannot be set in Voice mode.

<Auto save set><Select to save><File restriction>

- Cannot be changed if "Long time" is set to the File size setting.

<File restriction>

- You can change the settings of the File restriction after you save the image.

Function menu (movie checking screen)

1 Movie checking screen▶ (FUNC)▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Play	Plays the movie you shot.	
Save	Saves the movie to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.187).	
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the shot movie attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253 You cannot attach a movie of which file size exceeds 500K bytes. "Attaching files" → P.269	
Set as stand-by	Sets the shot movie to the standby screen.	
Display size	Sets the display mode for the movies.	
	Actual size (default)	Displays the movie in the actual size.
	Fit in display	Enlarges the movie to the display size.
Edit title	Edits the movie title.	
Select to save	Specifies the destination where the shot is saved.	
	Phone (default)	▶ Select the destination folder (The "Camera" folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.)
	miniSD	Saves the image to the destination folder specified in the "Select storage" (P.393).
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.	
	File unrestricted (default)	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
	File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it has been sent.
Cancel	Deletes the movie to retake the shot.	

NOTE

<Play>

- If you try to play a movie when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a confirmation message appears asking whether to play the movie. Selecting "YES" plays the movie with sound. Selecting "NO" plays the movie without any sound.

<Compose message>

- The movie to send is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.187). The movie cannot be saved in the miniSD memory card.
- Pressing   when the screen is the Movie checking also enables you to compose i-mode mail with the movie attached.

<Set as stand-by>

- Cannot be set if the movie is voice only.

<Chance capture>

Capturing Important Scenes

Use the chance capture function if you do not want to miss important moments in shooting a movie.

- The start point of the movie will be the available shooting time (the default is roughly 45 seconds) before the end of the movie, and the movie is saved. The part shot before the start point is not saved.
- The shot finished before exceeding the available shooting time is saved from the beginning to the end as well as the Movie mode.

1 Photo mode screen (P.178)   or  

2 Point the camera at the object   (Record) or 



Starts shooting.

You can zoom in/out during the shooting.

After the available shooting time runs out, the remaining time display turns to the "00:00" flash.

3  (Stop) or 
Finishes shooting.

4 Check and save in the same steps as "Shooting Movies" (P.186)

NOTE

- You can activate the Chance capture function by pressing  (FUNC)  "CHG camera-mode"  "Chance capture" when the screen is "Photo mode".

<Picture voice>

Adding Voice-over to a Still Image

Add the voice-over to a still image of Mail (L) (176 × 144) or Mail (S) (128 × 96) to make a movie.

<Example: Shoot a still image and add the voice-over>

1 Photo mode screen (P.178) /Movie mode screen (P.186)   or  

2 Point the camera at the object▶ (Record) or

Shoots a still image.

Shooting still images→P.178

The "recording start screen" appears.

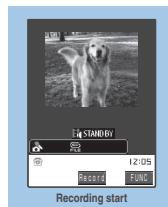
You can set the file size by selecting "File size setting" before recording the voice.

3 (Record) or



Starts recording.

You can check the approximate seconds left to record on the screen.



Function menu▶P.190

4 (Stop) or

Finishes recording.

5 Check and save the Picture voice in the same steps as "Shooting Movies" (P.186)

NOTE

- You can also create the Picture voice by selecting  (FUNC)▶"CHG camera-mode"▶"Picture voice" when the screen is the Photo mode.
- If you want to create Picture voice using the existing still image, follow Step 3 and later after following the steps below when the screen is Photo mode:
 (FUNC)▶"CHG camera-mode"▶"Picture voice"▶"My picture"▶Select a folder▶Select a still image

Function menu (recording start screen)

1 Recording start screen▶ (FUNC)▶Set the following:

Item	Description
File size setting	Sets the file size for recording.
	Restricted(Short) (When the camera launches) You can record up to 290K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to i-mode mail as a typical movie.
	Restricted(Long) You can record up to 490K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to i-mode mail as a large-sized movie.

<Voice mode>

Using Voice Mode

Records your voice without movies.

- If you set "Long time" to the "File size setting" and record the voices, the movie checking screen does not appear, but the recorded voices are saved directly to the miniSD memory card and the recording is finished.

1 Photo mode screen (P.178) /Movie mode screen (P.186)▶ (MENU) or

The "recording start screen" appears.

Function menu→P.187

2 (Record) or

Starts recording.

You can check the approximate seconds left to record on the screen.

3 (Stop) or (Camera)

Finishes recording.
The "recording check screen" appears.
Function menu → P.188

4 (Save)

Saves the movie to the folder specified in "Select to save" (P.187).

NOTE

- You can also record in Voice mode by selecting (FUNC) ▶ "Movie type set" ▶ "Voice" on the "Movie mode screen".
- Voice recorded in Voice mode is MP4 (Mobile MP4) format.

Changing the Shooting Settings

Changes the camera settings such as the zoom, Auto timer or image quality.

Using the zoom

Using the zoom enables you to adjust the image being shot to your desired size.

- You can choose the zoom between 1× and approx. 10× among 16 steps for shooting by the rear camera in Photo mode, continuous shooting and Movie mode. However, you cannot choose the zoom when the image size is SXGA (1280 × 960).
- You can choose the zoom between 1× and approx. 2× for shooting by the front camera, which cannot be chosen when the image size is CIF (352 × 288) or JAVA (240 × 240).
- You can zoom in/out while shooting a movie.
- The zoom is digital.

1 Photo mode screen (P.178)/continuous shooting screen (P.181)/ Movie mode screen (P.186) ▶ Use (Zoom In) to adjust the zoom

(Zoom In): Zooms in by one step each time you press the key.

(Zoom Out): Zooms out by one step to 1× (default) each time you press the key.

Hold down (Zoom In) or (Zoom Out) to zoom in/out continuously.

Rear/front	Size	Zoom	Maximum
Rear camera	VGA (640 × 480)	16 steps	Approx. 2×
	CIF (352 × 288)		Approx. 3.3×
	Screen (240 × 345)		Approx. 2.7×
	Stand-by (240 × 320)		Approx. 3×
	JAVA (240 × 240)*		Approx. 4×
	Mail (L)/Large (176 × 144)		Approx. 6.7×
	Mail (S)/Small (128 × 96)		Approx. 10×
Front camera	Mail (L)/Large (176 × 144)	2 steps	Approx. 2×
	Mail (S)/Small (128 × 96)		

* : Can be selected only when the camera is run from i-appli.

NOTE

- "1×" is the default settings when you run the camera. Changing the image size or camera mode also changes the zoom to "1×".
- Changing the zoom may slightly change the image quality.

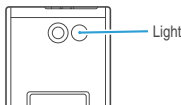
Turning on the light

When it is not so bright (e.g. in a room), turning on the light of the FOMA terminal brightens the object.

- If you do not shoot for about 30 seconds after turning on the light, it is automatically turned off.

1 Photo mode screen (P.178)/continuous shooting screen (P.181)/ Movie mode screen (P.186) ▶ ()

To turn off the light, press  ().



NOTE

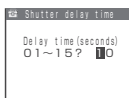
- You cannot turn on the light when recording a video with sound only.

Using the auto timer

Setting the Auto timer enables you to shoot an image without holding the FOMA terminal (e.g. to shoot people including yourself or to avoid the camera shake).

- The auto timer is available for Photo mode, continuous shooting and Movie mode.
- The Auto timer is reset to "OFF" each time you finish shooting.

1 Photo mode screen (P.178)/continuous shooting screen (P.181)/ Movie mode screen (P.186) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Auto timer" ▶ "ON" ▶ Enter the time for the Auto timer (2-digit)



Enter a 2-digit number between 01 and 15 for the Auto timer.

Entering the 2-digit number automatically sets the Auto timer. To set the currently displayed time, press  (Set).

"10 seconds" is the default settings.

● If you set the Auto timer

The  icon appears on the screen to show that the Auto timer is set.



Pressing  (Record) or  makes the Auto timer tone and it starts running.

The incoming call lamp,  and "  " flash.

The countdown tone sounds roughly five seconds before the shooting. The incoming call lamp,  and  flash rapidly.

During the Auto timer countdown, you can shoot manually by pressing  (Record) or  ().

■ To cancel the Auto timer settings

▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Auto timer" ▶ "OFF"

■ To stop the timer while it is running

▶  (Quit) or  (CLR)

NOTE

- The Auto timer cannot be used in M-Continuous mode.
- The Auto timer is set to "OFF" when you finish the camera function.

Setting the white balance

Default setting

Auto

- 1** Photo mode screen (P.178)/continuous shooting screen (P.181)/
Movie mode screen (P.186)   or  **Select any item:**

Item	Description
Auto	Automatically corrects the color balance in the entire image under the normal shooting conditions. The color intensity may be slightly reduced if the colors in the image are distorted.
Fine	Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
Cloudy	Is the mode suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
Light bulb	Is the mode suitable for shooting under the incandescence.
Fluorescent	Is the mode suitable for shooting under the fluorescence.

NOTE

- If the camera is set to the Photo mode, A-Continuous mode, M-Continuous mode or Picture voice and the Photo mode is not "OFF", the White balance is automatically set to "Auto".
- Selecting "Fine", "Cloudy", "Light bulb" or "Fluorescent" does not correct the colors, which means that the image would be more vivid under the specified conditions than Auto.
- The settings are retained after the shooting is finished, and applied to the image for videophone calls. → P.91

Setting the effects on the photographed images

- 1** Photo mode screen (P.178)/continuous shooting screen (P.181)/
Movie mode screen (P.186)  (FUNC)  "Image quality"  **Select any item:**

Item	Description
Normal (When the camera launches)	Shoots in the normal color settings.
Sepia	Shoots a sepia-tone image.
Monochrome	Shoots a black-and-white (monochrome) image.

Selecting the mode suitable for shooting

Default setting

Auto (Photo mode/Continuous shooting), Portrait (Movie mode)

- 1** Photo mode screen (P.178)/continuous shooting screen (P.181)/
Movie mode screen (P.186)   or  **Select any item:**

Item	Description
Auto ^{*1}	Selects the shooting mode automatically.
Portrait	Is the shooting mode for people.
Scenery	Is the shooting mode for scenery.
Close-up	Is the shooting mode for close-up.
Night mode ^{*1, *2}	Is the shooting mode for night view.
OFF ^{*1}	Does not use any effects for shooting.

^{*1} : Cannot be set in Movie mode.

^{*2} : Cannot be set in Continuous shooting.

NOTE

- Only the "Portrait", "Night mode" and "OFF" can be used by the front camera in shooting a still image. "Portrait" is only available for shooting in Continuous shooting or in Movie mode by the front camera.
- If the camera shakes when you shoot in the "Night mode", select another mode.
- The Photo mode is automatically set to "Portrait" when the camera is switched to the front camera while the Photo mode is set to "Auto", "Scenery", or "Close-up".
- The Photo mode is automatically set to "Portrait" when the camera is switched to the Movie mode or Chance capture while the Photo mode or A-/M- Continuous mode is set to "Auto", "Night mode" (only for still image shooting) or "OFF".
- The "Night mode" is restored to "Auto" when the Photo mode is switched to A-/M- Continuous mode.

Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images

Default setting

Auto

1

**Photo mode screen (P.178)/continuous shooting screen (P.181)/
Movie mode screen (P.186) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Image quality" ▶ "Image
tuning" ▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description
Auto	Avoids the flicker automatically.
Mode 1 (50Hz)	Is the mode for shooting in the 50Hz-frequency area.
Mode 2 (60Hz)	Is the mode for shooting in the 60Hz-frequency area.

<Bar code reader>

Using the Bar Code Reader

The FOMA terminal can scan JAN codes and QR codes by using the built-in camera. The scanned data can be used for displaying/copying the text, using the functions of Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, i-appli To, or adding to bookmark/phonebook especially in QR code. The FOMA terminal can also scan the image or melody data to play or save, and scan Style mode settings for styleplus.

- The FOMA terminal can save up to five scanned bar codes.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to ensure that it does not shake during the scanning. You can avoid the camera shake by setting your hand to the bottom of the FOMA terminal or by placing the FOMA terminal on a magazine.
- When scanning bar codes, use the rear camera and hold the FOMA terminal about 6 to 8 cm away from the scanned code.
- For the quicker and easier access to the bar code reader, add its desktop icon to the standby screen.

■ JAN codes and QR codes

- JAN codes



4942857113068

A bar code consisting of vertical lines (bars) of various widths and spaces to represent numbers. The FOMA terminal can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13).

* If the FOMA terminal scans the JAN code on the left, it is displayed as "4942857113068".

- QR codes



A type of two-dimensional codes consisting of the horizontal and vertical patterns to represent numbers, alphabets, kanji, kana or pictographs. Some QR codes express images or melodies. Some data are divided into several QR codes.

* If the FOMA terminal scans the QR code on the left, it is displayed as "株式会社NTTドコモ" (NTT DoCoMo, Inc.).

■ Contents for styleplus

- By scanning QR codes attached to styleplus, you can add contents (Display setting, theme of Menu display set, Pointer icon setting of Neuropointer), frame for My picture, and template for mail and  (styleplus information notification icon) is displayed on the standby screen. Selecting this icon on the standby screen displays the style mode list screen so that you can set the style mode all at once. → P.147



- Added contents will be stored in each folder, such as "Pre-installed", "Frame" in My picture, "Template" in Mail, "Neuropointer" in "Settings" etc.

Scanning codes

1 "Bar code reader"

The "Bar code reader screen" appears.

2 "New" Switch the lens to (macro lens)

Lens selector switch → P.172

3 Position the JAN code or QR code inside the recognition field



The recognition field is expressed using "┐", "┌", "└", "┘" at the corners of the screen.

Focus the JAN code or QR code so that the entire code is displayed as big as possible inside the recognition field.

■ To change the zoom

- : Zooms in.
- : Zooms out.

■ To turn on the light

-  (ON) or  (☀)

To turn off the light, press  (OFF) or  (☀).



Function menu  P.196

4 (Read) Check the scanned data

It may take long to scan the data.

■ To cancel the scanning

-  (Quit)  "OK"

■ To scan the data consisting of several QR codes

-  "OK"  Repeat steps 3 to 4

The FOMA terminal can scan up to 16 QR codes expressing one data.

■ To discard the scanned data

-  CLR  "YES"

5 (FUNC) "Save" "YES" "OK"

NOTE

- The FOMA terminal cannot scan a code if it is not a JAN code or QR code. You may be unable to scan some bar code, depending on the size.
- The FOMA terminal may fail to scan the code, depending on the scratch, stain, damage, print quality or the reflection of light.
- If there are already five data stored when you select "New", a message appears asking whether to overwrite the oldest entry. Selecting "YES" overwrites the oldest entry with the scanned data.
- If a voice call or videophone call is received, a data for 64K data communication is received, the alarm notification for the Alarm clock function, Schedule function or ToDo function is executed, or other operations are made while you are scanning the divided multiple QR codes, the scanned data is stored temporarily and the screen switches to the corresponding screen. When you terminate those functions, a confirmation message appears whether to continue the scan or not. Select "YES" to continue the scan. Note that the alarm function is not executed when the Alarm setting (P.410) is set to "Operation preferred".
- You can also run the bar code reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered in the screen. However, you cannot display the already stored data or save the scanned data here. The FOMA terminal cannot correctly scan the image or melody data. A character that cannot be entered on the text editing screen is replaced with a space character.
- You cannot save a JPEG image of which size exceeds 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high or a GIF image of which size exceeds 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
- You cannot save a progressive JPEG image of which size exceeds 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high. Progressive JPEG image → P.226
- You cannot save the scanned data to the miniSD memory card.

Function menu (Bar code reader screen)

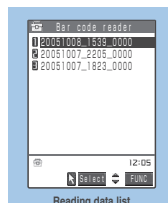
1 Bar code reader screen (FUNC) ▶ Set the following:

Item	Description
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143

Using the scanned data

1 (MENU) ▶ (Scan) ▶ "Bar code reader" ▶ "Reading data list"

The "Reading data list screen" appears.



Function menu ▶ P.197

2 Select a data

The "Reading data detail screen" appears.

3 Select any of the displayed items

- "Add to phonebook" : Adds the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday and memo to the phonebook. → P.107, 108
- "Compose message": Composes an i-mode mail message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered → P.253
- "Add bookmark" : Adds the URL and title to the Bookmark → P.221
- "Start i-appli" : Runs the specified i-appli → P.328
- Melody icon : Plays the melody → P.375
- Phone number : Calls the number using the Phone To (AV Phone To) function → P.229
- Mail address : Composes an i-mode mail message using the Mail To function → P.230
- URL : Accesses the site using the Web To function → P.230



Function menu ▶ P.197

NOTE

- The title of the scanned data would be:
If the date and time have been specified
· Title: yyyyymmdd_hhmm_xxxx (Year/month/day_time_4-digit number)
If the same date and time are set more than once, the 4-digit numbers up to "9999" are assigned to the data in numerical order.
If the date and time have not been specified
· Title: 00000000_0000_xxxx (xxxx: 4-digit number)
The 4-digit numbers up to "9999" are assigned to the data in numerical order. If the number reaches "9999", it returns to "0000".

Function menu (Reading data list screen)

1 Reading data list screen ➡ (FUNC) ➡ Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit title	Edits the title of the data. You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Result	Displays the Reading data details screen.
Delete this	Deletes one data.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all the Reading data. Security code → P.152

Function menu (Reading data details screen)

1 Reading data details screen ➡ (FUNC) ➡ Select any item:

Item	Description
Save	Saves the scanned data.
Display list	Displays the Reading data list screen. If the displayed data is not recorded yet, a message appears asking whether to delete the data.
Internet	Accesses the site if the URL is selected. "Web To function" → P.230
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the recipient address, subject and message in the scanned data if the "Compose message" is selected. Composes an i-mode mail message with the mail address entered if the mail address is selected. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
Dialing	Calls the phone number if it is selected. "Phone To function" → P.229
Add to phonebook	Adds the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday and memo in the scanned data to the phonebook if "Add to phonebook" is selected. Adds the phone number to the phonebook if it is selected. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is selected. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.107 "Adding to the UIM phonebook" → P.108
Add bookmark	Adds the URL and title in the scanned data to Bookmark if "Add bookmark" is selected. Adds the URL to Bookmark if it is selected. "Adding bookmarks" → P.221
Save image	▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" ▶ Select an item Saves the image to My picture of Data box. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Save melody	▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" ▶ Select an item Saves the melody to Melody of Data box. If you do not set the melody to the incoming call tone, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Start i-appli	Runs the i-appli specified in the scanned data if the "Start i-appli" is selected. "Launching i-appli from the bar code reader" → P.328
Copy	Copies the text included in the scanned data. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.514

NOTE

- If the data you want to scan contains characters that cannot be read by the bar code reader, those characters are converted to spaces (blanks).
- While the Keypad dial lock or the Self mode is set, you cannot make a call or send the i-mode mail using the scanned data. You cannot make a call while the Restrict dialing is set. Also you cannot connect to the internet while the Self mode is set.

<Internet><Add bookmark>

- You cannot use the Web To function or add a bookmark if there are unusable characters in the URL.

<Compose message>

- The address cannot be entered if it includes characters that cannot be entered.

<Dialing>

- Full-pitch/half-pitch numbers and symbols (# * +) are the characters that can be included in the phone number. You cannot make a call if any other characters are included.
- The image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.

<Start i-appli>

- You cannot run the i-appli from the scanned data if "Bar code "i-appli To" in "Set i-appli To" (P.327) is not selected.
- You cannot run i-appli if no application is specified.

<Access reader>

Scanning Text

Using its built-in camera, the FOMA terminal can scan the printed text and then add the scanned text data as the Phonebook entry or bookmark, or use the data to compose mail. You can also make a call or display the website.

- The FOMA terminal can save up to eight scanned data.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to ensure that it does not shake during the scanning. You can avoid the camera shake by setting your hand to the bottom of the FOMA terminal or by placing the FOMA terminal on a magazine.
- When scanning text, use the rear camera and hold the FOMA terminal about 6 to 8 cm away from the text to scan.
- Vertically written Japanese text can also be scanned.

■ Reading mode

The following are the reading modes. Select the mode suitable for the data to scan:

Card read	Scans the name, phone number, mail address and memo printed on the business card to add to the phonebook.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the scanned recipient address, subject and message entered.
URL	Scans URL, and accesses the site or adds the URL to the Bookmark.
Mail address	Scans the mail address and composes an i-mode mail message.
Phone number	Scans the phone number and makes a call.
Free memo	Scans the Japanese or English text to save to the Text memo.

■ The number of characters that can be read

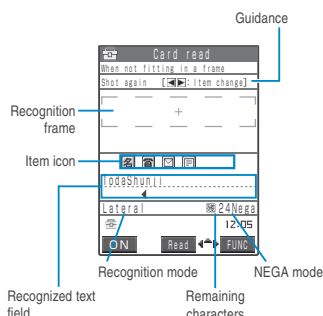
The following table shows the maximum number of characters that can be read for each item:

Item		Maximum number of characters that can be read
Card read	Name	16 in full-pitch, 32 in half-pitch
	TEL	26 in half-pitch numbers and additional #, *, +, p (pause)
	E-mail	50 in half-pitch alphabets, numbers or symbols
	Memo	100 in full-pitch, 200 in half-pitch
Compose message	Receiver	50 in half-pitch alphabets, numbers or symbols
	Subject	15 in full-pitch, 30 in half-pitch
	Message	128 in full-pitch, 256 in half-pitch
URL		256 in half-pitch alphabets, numbers or symbols
Mail address		256 in half-pitch alphabets, numbers or symbols
Phone number		256 in half-pitch numbers

Item		Maximum number of characters that can be read
Free memo		128 in full-pitch, 256 in half-pitch
Dictionary	Japanese	32 in full-pitch, 64 in half-pitch
	English	64 in half-pitch

■ Guide to the scanner screen

Taking Card read for example, the following describes the Scanner screen:



- Guidance : Shows the operation.
- Recognition frame : Shows the recognition field.
- Item icon : Shows the item to scan.
Card read mode:
"Name/phone number/mail address/memo"
Compose message mode:
"Recipient/subject/message"
- Recognized text field : Shows the scanned text. (The guidance appears on some screens.)
- Recognition mode : Shows the recognition mode used for scanning "Lateral/Vertical/Phone/Mail/URL".
- Remaining characters : Shows the number of half-pitch characters left that can be scanned.
- NEGA mode : Appears if the Negative fix is set to the NEGA/POSI mode.

Scanning text

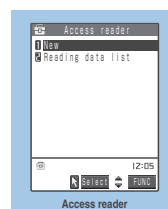
<Example: Scan text in Card read mode>

1 (menu) (Access reader) ▶ "Access reader"

The "Access reader screen" appears.

2 "New"

The "Reading mode selection screen" appears.
"Reading mode" → P.198



Function menu ▶ P.201

3 "Card read" ▶ Switch the lens to (macro lens)

The "Access reader scanning screen" appears.

Lens selector switch → P.172

4 Use (Focus) to select the icon for the item to store ▶ Display the text in the recognition field

Focus the text so that the entire text is displayed as big as possible inside the recognition field.

If the recognition field cannot display the whole text, the text can be scanned several times.

■ To adjust the zoom

(Zoom In): Changes from "Standard" to "Large".

(Zoom Out): Changes from "Large" to "Standard".

■ To turn on the light

▶ (Flash ON) or (Flash Off)

To turn off the light, press (Flash Off) or (Flash Off).



Function menu ▶ P.201

5 (Read)

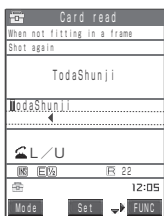
The FOMA terminal scans the text, and the recognized text is displayed in red. If the screen does not display the whole text, press (Home) or (Memo/check) to check the hidden text.

Pressing (Store) stores the scanned text, and then the text data details screen appears.

The following are the two methods to edit the scanned text:



Candidates



■ To select the string to edit

▶ Use to highlight the string to edit ▶ Press the number of the candidate

Use to change the cases between upper and lower if it can be changed.

■ To rescan the text

▶ ▶ “YES”

■ To edit in the text editing

▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Edit” ▶ Edit the text

Edits the text in the typical text editing.

To return to the candidate selection, press (FUNC) and select “Select recog. data”.

Go on to Step 6 when you finish editing.

6 (Set)

Fixes as the text.

■ To scan the remaining text

▶ Repeat steps 4 to 6

Ensure that the last two characters of the last text scanned are included in the recognition field.

■ To scan another item

▶ Use to select the item to scan ▶ Repeat steps 4 to 6

In Card read mode, you can scan up to 4 phone numbers and up to 3 mail addresses.

7 (FUNC) ▶ “Store”

The Reading data detail screen appears. Press to return to the Reading data list screen.

NOTE

- Do not move the FOMA terminal while the “Processing” message is displayed on the screen.
- The FOMA terminal can scan kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets (upper case and lower case), numbers and symbols. Some of the JIS level 2 kanji characters cannot be scanned.
- The FOMA terminal cannot recognize handwritten characters. If the text is faxed or copied, if the fonts are decorated, if the character spaces are not fixed, or if the fonts and background cannot be easily distinguished, the FOMA terminal may fail to recognize the text. Whether the FOMA terminal can recognize the text correctly may depend on the ambient lighting.
- If there are already eight data stored when you select “New”, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the oldest entry. Selecting “YES” enables you to overwrite the existing data.
- You can also run the access reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered in the screen.
- When you run the Access reader from the Dictionary, choose the reading mode between “Dic. (Japanese)” and “Dic. (English)”.
- If you do not press any keys for three minutes or so before scanning the text, the Access reader scanning screen exits and the screen returns to the Access reader.
- If you scan some text and then receive a voice or videophone call or 64K data communication, or you are notified of an alarm clock, schedule or ToDo alarm, or you use another FOMA terminal function before saving the scanned text data, the scanned text is briefly saved while you change to the respective screen. Finishing the operation afterwards that occurred during the saving returns the screen to the Reading data detail. However, if the Alarm setting (P.410) is set to “Operation preferred”, the alarm does not sound.

Function menu (Access reader screen)

1 Access reader screen (FUNC) Set the following:

Item	Description
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143

Function menu (Access reader scanning screen)

1 Access reader scanning screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	Edits the scanned text. "Entering Text" → P.498
Store	Saves the scanned data.
Internet	Accesses the site in URL mode. "Web To function" → P.230
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the data entered in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the message entered in Free memo mode. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
Dialing	Calls the phone number in Phone number mode.
Add to phonebook	Adds the data all at once to the phonebook in Card read mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook in Mail address mode. Adds the phone number to the phonebook in Phone number mode. Adds the data to the memo of the phonebook in Free memo mode. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.107 "Adding to the UIM phonebook" → P.108
Add bookmark	Adds the URL to Bookmark in URL mode. "Adding bookmarks" → P.221
Search phonebook	Searches the data in the phonebook using the scanned data. "Searching in the Phonebook" → P.111 You cannot search in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
Add to memo	Adds the URL to the Text memo in URL mode. Adds the mail address to the Text memo in Mail address mode. Adds the phone number to the Text memo in Phone number mode. Adds the data to the Text memo in Free memo mode. "Composing Text memo" → P.430
Reading mode set	Selects the scanning mode among "Card read", "Compose message", "URL", "Mail address", "Phone number" and "Free memo".
NEGA/POSI mode	Sets the type of printing.
	Auto setting Automatically sets the positive or negative.
	Positive fix Is suitable for printing the dark text on the light background.
	Negative fix Is suitable for printing the light text on the dark background.
Guidance OFF^{*1}	Displays or hides the guidance.
Vertical writing^{*2}	Selects the lateral writing or vertical writing for the Japanese to scan.

*1 : "Guidance ON" is displayed if the guidance is not displayed.

*2 : "Lateral writing" is displayed if you have selected the "Vertical writing".

NOTE

- In URL mode, "http://" or "https://" is added to the scanned string following the conditions below:
 - "http://" is added to the beginning of the string if it does not contain "://". However, if the beginning of the string is "/" or "/I/", "r" or "/I/" is replaced with "http://".
 - The part before "://" is replaced with "http://" including "://" if the string contains "://". However, if the part "://" is "s://" or "S://", it is replaced with "https://".
- When you run the Access reader from the Dictionary, choose the reading mode between "Dic. (Japanese)" and "Dic. (English)".

Using the text data

1



“Access reader” ▶ “Reading data list”

The “Reading data list screen” appears.



Function menu ▶ P.202

2

Select the text data

The “Reading data detail screen” appears.

3

Select any of the displayed items

“Add to phonebook”: Adds the name, phone number, mail address, and memo to the phonebook → P.107, 108

“Compose message”: Composes an i-mode mail message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered → P.253

* Select any displayed item such as TEL or E-mail to edit the data.



Function menu ▶ P.203

Function menu (Reading data list screen)

1

Reading data list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	You cannot edit on the list screen.
Internet	Accesses the site in URL mode. “Web To function” → P.230
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with all the data entered at once in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the message entered in Free memo mode. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → P.253
Dialing	Calls the phone number in Phone number mode.
Add to phonebook	Adds the data all at once to the phonebook in Card read mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook in mail address mode. Adds the phone number to the phonebook in Phone number mode. Adds the data to the memo of the phonebook in Free memo mode. “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook” → P.107 “Adding to the UIM phonebook” → P.108
Add bookmark	Adds the URL to the Bookmark in URL mode. “Adding bookmarks” → P.221
Search phonebook	Searches the phonebook using the data. “Searching in the Phonebook” → P.111 Searches using the displayed contents in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
Add to memo	Adds the data to the Text memo. “Composing Text memo” → P.430 You cannot add the data in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
Display detail	Displays the Reading data details screen.
Copy	Copies the text included in the scanned data. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → P.514
Delete this	Deletes one data.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the data. Security code → P.152

Function menu (Reading data details screen)

1 Reading data detail screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	Edits the text of the item. "Entering Text" → P.498 You cannot edit the text when you select "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
Internet	Accesses the site in URL mode. "Web To function" → P.230
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the mail address entered if the mail address is selected in Card read mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with all the data entered at once if "Compose message" is selected in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the data entered if the recipient address, subject or message is selected in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode mail message with the message entered in Free memo mode. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
Dialing	Calls the phone number if it is selected in Card read mode. Calls the phone number in Phone number mode.
Add to phonebook	Adds the data all at once to the phonebook if "Add to phonebook" is selected in Card read mode. Adds the data to the phonebook if the name, phone number, mail address or memo is selected in Card read mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is selected in Compose message mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook in Mail address mode. Adds the phone number to the phonebook in Phone number mode. Adds the data to the memo of the phonebook in Free memo mode. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.107 "Adding to the UIM phonebook" → P.108
Add bookmark	Adds the URL to the Bookmark in URL mode. "Adding bookmarks" → P.221
Search phonebook	Searches the phonebook using the Reading data. "Searching in the Phonebook" → P.111 You cannot search when you select "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
Add to memo	Adds the data to the Text memo. "Composing Text memo" → P.430 You cannot add the data when you select "Add to phonebook" or "Compose message".
Display list	Displays the Reading data list screen.
Copy	Copies the data input in the Reading data. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.514
Delete this	Deletes the Reading data.
Delete all	 Enter your security code  "YES" Deletes all the data. Security code → P.152

NOTE

- When the Keypad dial lock or Self mode is set, it is not possible to originate a call or send an i-mode mail by utilizing the read-out data. Also, no telephone call can be originated when the Restrict dialing is set, and the Internet connection cannot be performed when the Self mode is set.

<Dialing>

- Half-pitch numbers and symbols (# * +) are the characters that can be included in the phone number. Only the numbers and symbols are dialed as the phone number if any other characters are included.
- The image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.

● i-mode/i-motion

What is i-mode?	206
Displaying i-mode Menu	i-mode menu 212
■ Viewing sites	
Viewing a Site	213
Viewing and Using Sites	217
Registering My Menu Entries	My Menu 219
Changing Your i-mode Password	Change i-mode password 220
Viewing Websites	Internet connection 220
Accessing Websites and Sites Quickly	Bookmarks 221
Saving Site Content	Save screen memo 224
■ Downloading images and melodies from sites	
Downloading Images from Sites and Messages	Save image 226
Downloading Melodies from Sites	i-melody 227
Downloading "Chara-den" Characters from Sites	228
Downloading Data Files from Sites	228
■ i-mode utility functions	
Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions	Phone To, Mail To, Web To functions 229
■ Specifying Your i-mode Settings	
Specifying Your i-mode Settings	231
■ Using the message services	
When You Receive a Message	Receive message 233
Checking for Messages	Check new message 235
Viewing Messages in the Message Box	MessageR/MessageF 236
■ Using certificates	
Using SSL Certificates	238
Setting FirstPass	239
Changing the Certificate Host	241
■ Using i-motion	
What is an i-motion?	241
Downloading i-motion	Download i-motion 242
Setting whether to play an i-motion automatically	i-motion auto replay 244

What is i-mode?

The i-mode service enables you to use an i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) display to access online services such as i-mode mail, connecting to the Internet and sites (programs) etc.

■ Site (program) connection

This service allows you to access a range of online services provided by your IP (information service provider), such as weather reports and news bulletins, simply by selecting them from the i-mode menu list. You can also download and enjoy games and standby screen images.

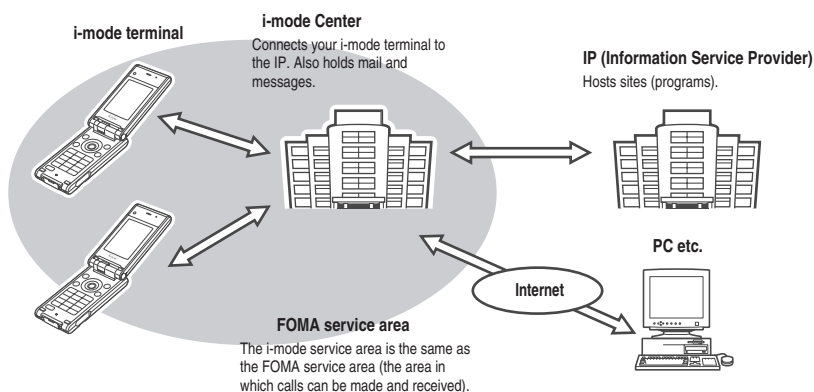
■ Internet connection

This service allows you to access a wide range of i-mode-compatible websites by directly entering the URL of the website on your i-mode terminal.

■ i-mode mail

This service allows you to exchange e-mail messages up to 5,000 full-pitch characters long not only with other i-mode terminals but with anyone who has an internet e-mail address. You can also use other exciting e-mail functions such as exchanging Deco-mail, still images and movies.

Service Configuration



i-mode is a charged service to which you must subscribe. For information on subscribing to i-mode, refer to the back cover of the manual.

NOTE

- New subscribers to FOMA services can access all the services as of the day of their subscription.
- If you have updated your mova service (i-mode) subscription to a FOMA service subscription, you can continue to use the "My Menu" information used under the mova service. Some sites may not retain your "My Menu" data under the FOMA service. In this event, you will need to re-register. For information on which sites will maintain your "My Menu" data, refer to "お知らせ&ヘルプ (News & Help)" in the iMenu.
- The i-mode service charges are based on the amount of information (the number of packets) you send and receive. This Instruction Manual does not provide any specific information on the charges. For information on usage charges etc., refer to the "i-mode User's Manual" provided when you subscribed to i-mode.
- The i-mode service details are subject to change. Refer to the latest "i-mode User's Manual" for details.

Site (program) connection

You can use simple key operations to connect to sites provided by IPs (information service provider) to use their various online services.

For instance, you can check your bank account balance, transfer money, reserve concert tickets, read news, use online dictionaries, or download ring tones.

● Displaying sites

When you connect to the i-mode Center, the iMenu screen appears first. From this screen, you can access a variety of other sites (Program) or the “週刊iガイド(What's New)”, etc.

Viewing a site → P.213



The above is a screen image.

The actual screen may be displayed differently depending on your settings.

Item	Description
① マイメニュー (① My Menu)	By registering a frequently visited site to My Menu, you can make it easier and quicker to visit the site again next time (P.219). The URLs of charged sites in iMenu are automatically registered. Up to a maximum of 45 sites can be registered.
② 週刊iガイド (② What's New)	This site provides information on coming new or recommended sites and is daily updated on Monday through Friday.
③ メニューリスト (③ Menu List)	Lists all the sites by category and area for your convenience. Select an interesting site and connect to it from here.
④ とくするメニュー (tokusuru menu)	Interesting sales campaign information, giveaways, discount coupons, and other information are featured here. This information is updated weekly (Provided by: D2 Communications).
⑤ iエリア (i-area)	Provides quick access to information on the area you are currently in and its surroundings, including weather reports, maps and local facilities.
⑥ かんたん検索 (Simple search) Provides an easy way to locate sites using keyword-based searches from categories such as "Games" and "i-appli".	・ i-appli search Provides a menu giving a targeted overview of sites offering free information on i-appli and gaming sites. ・ Useful site search Provides a menu that categorizes and briefly introduces useful sites on the menu list that you can access on a routine basis.
⑦ マイボックス (My Box)	A service aimed at members that provides quick access to pre-registered sites or stores that provide services.
⑧ オプション設定 (⑧ Options)	Set your i-mode mail preferences or i-mode password here.
⑨ お知らせヘルプ (News & Help)	Announcements from DoCoMo, help on how to use i-mode, and rules for using i-mode are available here.
■ 料金とお申し込み (Fee & application)	Go here to check and pay your i-mode charges and to change or upgrade your subscription.
ENGLISH	Displays the iMenu in English.

NOTE

- Some sites require you to pay information fee to use the site (i-mode charged site).
- You may have to subscribe separately to use some of the services provided by IPs (information service provider).
- Even if the i-mode icon is flashing, no packet communication charges apply if you are not exchanging data with the i-mode Center.
- If you subscribe the "Dual Network Service", part of the iMenu screen changes.

● Other useful features

■ i-channel

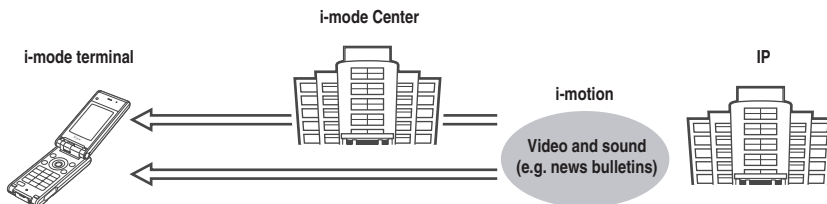
i-channel is a service that DoCoMo and IPs (information service provider) send graphical information such as news and weather information to i-mode terminal.

You can receive information at a set interval, display the telop of the latest information on the standby screen, and display it on the channel list screen by pressing (ch) for the i-channel. You can also select favorite channels on the channel list screen to receive rich, detailed information.

■ i-motion

This service allows you to download videos and sounds to an i-mode terminal from i-mode sites and then view the video or set it in your standby screen. → P.241

- ・ To download an i-motion → P.242
- ・ To play an i-motion → P.242
- ・ To set an i-motion for automatic playback → P.244



■ Chaku-motion/Chaku-Uta®*

This allows you to download an i-motion to your i-mode terminal from an i-mode site and then set that i-motion as the ring tone played and image shown when you receive a call. You can use this to set not just a melody, but a song sung by your favorite artist, as your ring tone. (You cannot set some incompatible i-motion for Chaku-motion.)

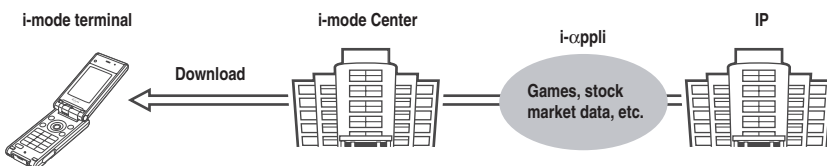
- To set a Chaku-motion → P.126

* : "Chaku-Uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

■ i-αpli

By downloading i-αpli from sites, you can make your i-mode terminal even easier to use. For example, you can download a range of games to your i-mode terminal or download an i-αpli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There are also mapping i-αpli that allow you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth.

- To download an i-αpli → P.320
- To run an i-αpli → P.322
- To launch an i-αpli automatically → P.326



■ i-αpli standby screen

This function allows you to set an i-αpli as your standby screen, making it possible to receive mail and make calls directly from the standby screen. This expands the range of uses for your standby screen to include showing the news or weather information or having your favorite cartoon characters let you know when you receive mail or when there is an alarm.

- To set an i-αpli standby screen → P.134, 328

■ i-αpli DX

i-αpli DX links up with the information on your i-mode terminal (such as mail, the Dialed/Received calls record and phonebook data) to make i-αpli even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes allowing you to compose mail in your favorite cartoon character screen, having a cartoon character tell you who an incoming call or message is from, and linking up with mail functions to provide real-time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices.

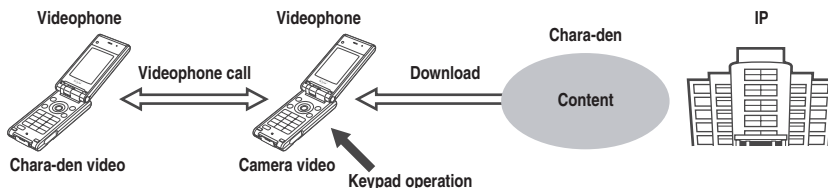
- i-αpli DX → P.318

■ Chara-den

When you are making or receiving a videophone call and you do not want to send an image of yourself to the other party, "Chara-den" provides you with an alternative in the shape of a cartoon character. You can even make the "Chara-den" character's mouth move in time with sounds and control its movement using your phone's keypad. You can even download your favorite character, shoot it as a still image or movie file and set it in the standby screen or send it as a mail attachment. (You cannot attach an image or movie file if it is forbidden to send that file as a mail attachment or output from your FOMA terminal.)

- To download a Chara-den character → P.228
- To check a Chara-den character → P.369
- To set a Chara-den character → P.371
- To control a Chara-den character → P.370

- To shoot a Chara-den character → P.373



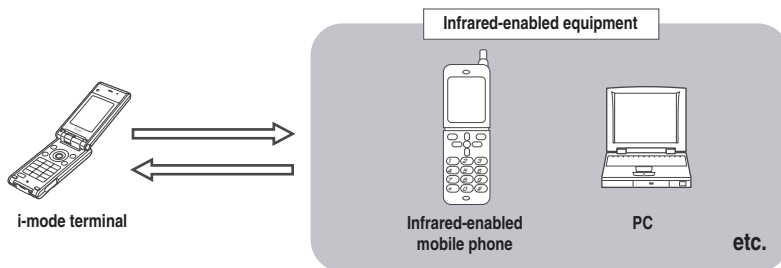
■ Infrared data exchange function

i-mode terminal can exchange information such as phonebook entries, mail and bookmarks with mobile phones, PC and other devices equipped with infrared data exchange function.*

Using an i-appli in conjunction with the Infrared data exchange function allows you to link up with other devices equipped with Infrared data exchange functions, expanding the range of uses for your FOMA terminal. For example, a mobile phone can be used as a TV remote control or as a corporate ID.

*: Depending on the remote device, it may not be possible to exchange some types of data even if the device has an Infrared data exchange function.

To use the Infrared data exchange function → P.394

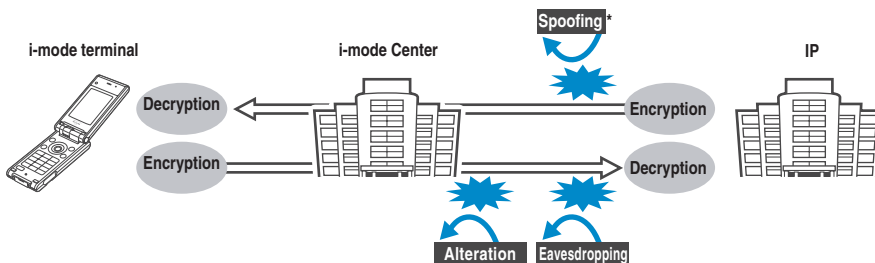


■ SSL communication

SSL is an encryption technology that is used to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from an SSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping, site spoofing*, or altering the data, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information safer. There are 2 types of SSL communication. In one, SSL certification authority (CA) (SSL certificates) stored in the i-mode terminal are used to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) without requiring the user to perform any special procedures. In the other, user certificates downloaded from the FirstPass Center are used to display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages). The type of certificate used depends on the site. → P.215

- To view sites using SSL certificates stored in the i-mode terminal → P.215

- To use FirstPass user certificates → P.239



* Spoofing: A security attack that allows an adversary to observe all information entered into forms by the victim.

■ FOMA card operational restriction function

These functions place restrictions on files such as melodies, images and movies loaded from mail or downloaded from sites when you insert a FOMA card (UIM) containing your data (such as phone numbers and some phonebook data) into an i-mode terminal. When you insert a different FOMA card (UIM) or turn the phone on without inserting the FOMA card (UIM), these functions also prevent the obtained files from being played or viewed.

※ Images and movies shot with the camera function, and files saved in the FOMA terminal from external memory sources are not subjected to this function.

※ If the files are set (for example ring tone and standby screen settings) in other i-mode terminals, these settings are reset by this function.

■ i-melody

You can download the latest songs or your favorite tunes from sites to an i-mode terminal, and then use them as ring tones. → P.227

■ i-anime

You can download your favorite animations from sites to an i-mode terminal and then run the animation on your standby screen or receiving screen. → P.226

■ Flash™

Flash is an animation technique that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download Flash movies to an i-mode terminal and set them in the standby screen. → P.219

Some Flash movies are able to access the terminal data on your i-mode terminal. Such movies may use the following types of the terminal data:

- Battery Level
- Ring volume setting
- Reception Level
- Bilingual Settings
- Clock Time
- Model Information

■ Download dictionary

You can download dialect or specialist dictionaries from sites to an i-mode terminal and set them as the kanji-conversion dictionary. → P.228

■ Message service

Message services allows you to have information that you need automatically delivered to your i-mode terminal.

The message services consist of the Message Request and Message Free services.

Message Request (MessageR)	If you subscribe to a site that offers a message service, the desired information is automatically delivered to your FOMA terminal.
Message Free (MessageF)	The messages are delivered via free packet communication.

How to use message services → P.233, 235

As of October 1, 2004, Message Free is set to “受信する (ON)” as the default setting for all subscribers who signed a new FOMA contract and at the same time applied for i-mode. If you do not want to receive Message Free, you have to set Message Free to “受信しない (OFF)”.

※ For those subscribers other than the above, to receive Message Free you have to change the settings in “オプション設定 (Options)”. The default setting is “受信しない (OFF)”.

If you cannot receive messages because your FOMA terminal is turned off or is out of range (“圏外” displayed), Message Request and Message Free are held at the i-mode Center.

・ The table below shows the maximum number of messages that can be held at the i-mode Center and the maximum storage period. If the limit on the holding number or period is exceeded, messages are deleted starting with the oldest message.

	Max. messages held	Max. holding time
Message Request (MessageR)	300	72 hours
Message Free (MessageF)	300	72 hours

・ Use “Check new message” to retrieve Message Request and Message Free held at the i-mode Center. → P.235

■ トクだねニュース便 (Read and Reap News)

This is a service offered by DoCoMo which uses the Message Request function to send information such as news and weather updates to i-mode terminals.

トクだねニュース便 (Read and Reap News) is a charged service to which users must subscribe. Once you have completed the subscription, the service is automatically registered to your My Menu list and you can then view the same information by accessing the service from My Menu.

Viewing messages in Message Request → P.236

● i-mode password

You have to enter an "i-mode password" to register or unregister sites in My Menu, specify your i-mode mail settings, or subscribe to charged i-mode sites. At the time of purchase, the i-mode password is set to "0000" (4 zeros) by default, but you should change this number to a 4-digit number of your choice. → P.220

Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.

Internet connection

You can use your FOMA terminal to connect to the Internet and view i-mode-compatible websites simply by entering the URL of the website that you want to visit.

How to view websites → P.220

NOTE

- Websites that are not i-mode-compliant may not be displayed properly. To be i-mode-compliant, websites must be created using i-mode-compliant tags. For details → P.220
- Websites may be displayed differently as on PCs.
- The websites whose URL exceeds 256 half-pitch characters may not be displayed.

■ When you display pages stored in cache

- Cache refers to an area of memory on the FOMA terminal itself in which data from sites or websites you have visited is temporarily stored. If you press  to move to another page while you are viewing a site or website, the FOMA terminal displays the page stored in cache rather than connecting to the i-mode Center and accessing the page on the actual site. However, if the cache is full or if the page is set to always display the latest information, the FOMA terminal connects to the site even when you press . Also, even when the page is stored in the cache, if the date and time information for that page has been updated, the FOMA terminal connects to the site and displays the latest data.
- When site data is loaded from cache, the text and settings you entered on previous visits is not displayed.
- The cache is cleared when you exit i-mode.
- When you download SSL-compatible pages from cache, the message indicating that the SSL page will be displayed.

■ Notes on using i-mode

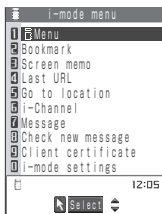
- Contents on sites (programs) or Internet websites are normally protected by copyright laws. The downloading of documents, pictures, and other data from these sites or websites to your i-mode terminal is permitted only when intended for your personal use only. No data may be copied in part or in whole, whether modified or not, for resale or redistribution without the consent of the copyright holder.
- Note that all data saved (mail, Message Request/Free, screen memos, i-appli and i-motion) or stored (bookmarks, etc.) in your i-mode terminal may be lost when your i-mode terminal is damaged, repaired, or otherwise mishandled. It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored in the i-mode terminal. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your i-mode terminal.
- In the course of repairs or other work performed on your i-mode terminal, data downloaded in i-mode, i-appli or i-motion will not be transferred to a new mobile phone due to copyright law. Note also that when the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the mobile phone is turned on with no FOMA card (UIM) inserted, some types of mobile phone may be incapable of viewing or playing melodies, images and movies downloaded from sites, files attached to sent or received mail (images, movies or melodies), screen memos and Message Request/Free messages.
- If a file with restrictions on viewing and playback imposed by the FOMA card (UIM) is set as the standby screen or as a ring tone, the FOMA terminal operates using the initial default settings if the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the FOMA terminal is turned on without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.

■ Important

Data stored in your bookmarks should be noted in writing or backed up onto a miniSD memory card.

Displaying i-mode Menu

Starting i-mode



The "i-mode menu screen" appears. The i-mode menu consists of 10 items. You can also display the "i-mode menu screen" by pressing .

■ When is displayed

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move to a place where the radio reception level indication such as appears.

■ When is flashing

This icon flashes while the communication with the i-mode Center is in progress. If you try to connect to a site (P.213) or website (P.220) or send i-mode mail (P.253) while you are in the service area but you are not already using the i-mode service, the icon flashes and i-mode startup may take some time.

■ When is flashing

When you are receiving i-mode service (during i-mode), flashes.

Item	Description	See page
iMenu	This is the first page displayed when you connect to the i-mode Center. From this screen, you can access a variety of other sites such as the "週刊 iガイド (What's New)".	P.207, 213
Bookmark	Allows you to store the addresses of your favorite websites on your i-mode terminal so that you can jump directly to them next time.	P.221
Screen memo	Shows the screens for i-mode sites stored in your i-mode terminal.	P.224
Last URL	Displays the last i-mode site or website you visited.	P.217
Go to location	Allows you to connect to an i-mode site or website by directly entering the site address.	P.220
i-Channel	Displays i-channel list screen.	P.334
Message	Displays received Message Request/Free. The message service automatically delivers requested information to your mobile phone.	P.236
Check new message	Connects your FOMA terminal to the i-mode Center to check for new mail or Message Request/Free.	P.235
Client certificate	Connects to the FirstPass Center to perform operations such as downloading data or requesting user certificate.	P.239
i-mode settings	Enables you to specify the i-mode settings for your FOMA terminal.	P.231

NOTE

- The i-mode service area is the same as the FOMA service area (the area in which calls can be made and received).
- The i-mode menu can still be displayed when you are outside the service area. However, you cannot send or receive information to sites or via the Internet.

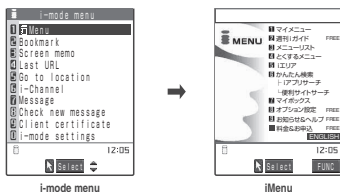
Viewing the iMenu screen



The FOMA terminal connects to the i-mode Center and the "iMenu screen" (the first i-mode screen) appears.

■ To cancel the download of pages

▶ or (Quit)



Exiting i-mode

1 During i-mode, press **“YES”**

After “” blinks, “” disappears.

NOTE

- Holding down for 2 seconds or longer turns the FOMA terminal off.

Viewing a Site

You can access the services provided by IPs (information service provider). (You may need to subscribe.)

1  () ▶ “iMenu” ▶ “ENGLISH”

 “Menu List” ▶ Select a site

The “sites screen” appears.



Function menu ➔ P.214

● “みんなNらんど”

You can download and save i-αppli, dictionary, face stamp, Deco-mail template from the site “みんなN
らんど” of iMenu that can be used on your FOMA terminal and use them for various purposes.

The procedure for connecting to a site “みんなNらんど” is as follows:

Select “iMenu” → “メニューリスト” → “ケータイ電話メーカー” → “みんなNらんど” in order.

NOTE

- You cannot view a site while "PIM lock" is set or the FOMA terminal is in "Self mode".
- Some sites may require you to submit an application separately in paper form, etc. before using the site.
- Some sites may require you to provide additional information fee in order to use the site.
- You may be unable to view images displayed on some sites.
- If an image cannot be downloaded, the "" icon appears.
- You can still make and receive calls while you are connected to a site (P.406). You can also send and receive mail. However, you cannot receive videophone calls during i-mode communication.
- You can use  to scroll the screen even while the "Receiving Page" message is displayed.
- You can select any of the underlined items on the site screen. When selected, the item is highlighted.
- The currently displayed site screen is not updated automatically. To see the latest information, select "Reload" from the function menu.
- The number of colors displayed on certain sites exceeds the maximum number of colors that the FOMA terminal can display. For this reason, the site may not appear as intended.
- On some i-mode-compatible site and websites, some characters may be difficult or impossible to see due to the colors selected.

Function menu (sites screen)

1 Sites screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Add bookmark	Adds the URL for the page to your list of bookmarks. "Adding bookmarks" → P.221
Save screen memo	Saves the page as a screen memo. "Saving a screen memo" → P.224
iMenu	Displays the iMenu screen.
Bookmark	Displays the Bookmark folder list screen. "Accessing Websites and Sites Quickly" → P.221
Screen memo list	Displays the screen memo list screen. "Displaying a screen memo" → P.224
Reload	Refreshes the page.
Save image	"Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" → P.226
Refer dic.	Uses a dictionary from the page. "Using dictionaries from other functions" → P.433
Enter URL	 (Select)  Enter URL  "OK"  "OK" Enters a URL to connect to the website.
Add to phonebook	"Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook" → P.219
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143
Compose message	Allows you to compose i-mode mail and Deco-mail with the URL for the page pasted into the message or the image pasted/attached.
	Attach URL Composes an i-mode mail with the URL of the page inserted in the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
	Attach image  Select the image Composes an i-mode mail with the image of the page attached the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
	Insert image  Select the image Composes Deco-mail with the image in a screen pasted into the message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → P.259
Save schedule	Stores a scheduled event while browsing the page. "Managing Schedule" → P.414
Set as home URL	Registers the URL of the page as home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.
Display home	Displays the page stored as your home URL.
Title	Displays the title to check the page.
URL	Displays the URL to check the page.
Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the page supports SSL.
Change CHR code	Changes the character code to redisplay the page that is not displayed correctly.
Set image display	Specify whether the image is displayed for the page or not. If "OFF" is selected,  appears instead of the image which cannot be displayed.
Sound effect	Specifies whether the Flash movie sound effects is enabled or not (ON/OFF).
Retry	Plays the Flash movie or animation on the page again from the beginning.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- You can paste URLs up to 256 half-pitch characters long on a message. Longer URLs cannot be pasted.

<Set as home URL>

- If you have already set a home URL, a message appears asking whether to replace the current home URL. Select "YES" to replace the current URL or "NO" to retain the current URL.
- Storing a URL in the "Set as home URL" option does not change the "Valid/Invalid" setting for "Home URL".

<Display home>

- "Display home" is not available when "Home URL" is set to "Invalid".
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, pressing the switch in the standby screen will also display the site set as the home.

<Title>

- You cannot edit the displayed title.
- You can display titles up to 64 full-pitch or 128 half-pitch characters long.

<URL>

- You cannot edit the displayed URL.
- If not all the URLs are shown, press  (Select) to display the cursor and then use  to move the cursor to view other URLs. Pressing  (Select) again hides the cursor. Select "OK" to return to the page screen.

<Certificate>

- This setting displays up to 4 certificates. If you have multiple certificates, you can use  to view previous and subsequent certificates.
- When certificates are displayed, the screen scrolls 1 line at a time regardless of the "Scroll" setting.

<Change CHR code>

- If text is not displayed correctly, repeat the procedure. Note that when you perform the procedure for the 4th time, the site is displayed in the original character code setting.
- Some sites may not display correctly even when the character code is changed.
- If you change the character code when a site is displayed correctly, the site may no longer be displayed correctly.
- "Change CHR code" only applies to the currently displayed site.

<Retry>

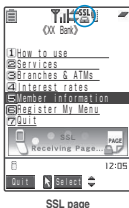
- Selecting this option during playback restarts playback from the beginning.

Displaying SSL pages

To view SSL pages, the following certificates are required:

- CA certificate: Issued by an certification organization and stored in your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase
- DoCoMo CA certificate: Required for connecting to the FirstPass center and stored in the FOMA card (green)
- Client certificate: Downloaded from the FirstPass center by selecting "Client certificate" (P.239) in the i-mode menu and stored in the FOMA card (green)

1 Display an SSL page



SSL page

The SSL page appears and the "SSL" icon is displayed.

■ To cancel display during authentication

- ▶ "Cancel"

■ To cancel page loading after authentication

- ▶  (Quit)

2 Move from the SSL page to an ordinary page▶ "YES"

SSL communication ends and the "SSL" icon no longer appears.

NOTE

- If a message appears saying, "This site is not certified Do you connect?" when you display an SSL page, the SSL certificate for the site has expired or you are attempting to display a page that is using a different SSL certificate from that used by the FOMA terminal. When this happens, you can continue to view the page by selecting "YES", but you should note that you may not be able to safely send personal information such as your credit card number or contact information. To cancel page display, select "NO". When the "SSL session was terminated" message appears, press  (Select) to return to the original screen.
- To display an SSL-compatible page, set the date and time in "Set time" beforehand.

Scroll function

When you are viewing a page on a site, Message Request/Free, i-mode mail or SMS and the text or a list will not fit on the screen, you can scroll up or down to view the rest of the text.

■ Scrolling by lines

Press  to scroll down by lines to view the next list item or line of text.

Press  to scroll up by lines to view the previous list item or line of text.

You can also set the number of lines scrolled each time you press  or .

· Scroll (i-mode) → P.231

· Scroll (Mail) → P.299

■ Scrolling one screen at a time

Press  (Memo/Check) to scroll down one screen to view the next part of the list or text.

Press  (Home) to scroll up one screen to view the previous part of the list or text.

iMenu in English

The iMenu can be displayed in English.

1

 (i-mode) ► “iMenu”



2

Select “ENGLISH”



Select “日本語” to return to the Japanese display.

NOTE

- The iMenu in English differs slightly from the iMenu in Japanese.
- とくするメニュー (tokusuru menu), iエリア (i-area), かんたん検索 (Simple search), マイボックス (My box), お知らせ & ヘルプ (News & Help) and 料金 & お申込 (Fee & application) are not displayed on the English iMenu.
- Generally, the What's New site is updated every other Monday.
- English sites are displayed after entering Menu List (sites differ from Japanese version).
- Access news from DoCoMo and usage regulations on What's New.

Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers

If you select an item while a site or website is displayed on the FOMA terminal, a message may appear notifying you that the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be sent. When sending information is acceptable, select “YES”. If not, select “NO”. Press  (Return) or  (CLR) to return to the previous screen.

- The disclosure notification message is always displayed before your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent. Such information is never sent automatically.

NOTE

- The sent information “mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers” is used by the IP to classify customers and provide customized services for you and to confirm that you can use the content the IP is offering. However, your phone number, address, age, and sex, are not disclosed to the IP.

Reconnecting to the last displayed page <Last URL>

When you end an i-mode session, the URL of the last website displayed is stored by the "Last URL" function. You can reconnect to the last website you visited.



NOTE

- Each time you display a page, the "Last URL" is replaced by the URL of the currently displayed page.

Viewing and Using Sites

This section describes the operations for viewing sites or websites.

Image display

Pages at sites and websites often display images.

- Your FOMA terminal can display GIF and JPEG format images and Flash movies (P.219). However, the FOMA terminal may be unable to display some images regardless of the format.
- The  (color) appears while an image is loading and the image itself appears when loading is completed.
- You can specify whether or not images are displayed in the "Set image display" setting (P.214). If you change the "Set image display" setting in the function menu from "OFF" to "ON" while a page on a site is loading and then use "Reload" (P.218), images are displayed. Even if you changed the setting from "ON" to "OFF", loaded images remain displayed.

Displayed image icons

-  (color): Displayed while an image is loading or when "OFF" is selected in the "Set image display" setting.
-  : Displayed when image loading failed.
-  (B/W) : Displayed when image cannot be loaded.

Selecting links and other options

When you are using i-mode, you may need to perform operations such as those described below.

- Refer to the "i-mode User's Manual" for details.

Links

Displayed pages may include links to related pages.

- You can use the same procedure with links that are set in images.

Radio buttons

Radio buttons allow you to choose one of a range of options.  indicates a selected radio button.

Checkbox

Checkboxes allow you to select multiple options from a range of options.  indicates that it is selected.

Text boxes

You can enter text directly into a text box. When you select a text box, the text input screen appears.

Pull-down menus

Pull-down menus allow you to choose one of a range of options. Some menus show or hidden sub-options that appear as a list when you select an option.

NOTE

- Depending on how the site was constructed, pull-down menus may include multiple available options that can be selected by checking ☐. Each time you use  to move the focus between ☐ and press  (Select), the option (☐) is selected or deselected. When you have completed your selections, press  (Finish) or  to end the procedure.

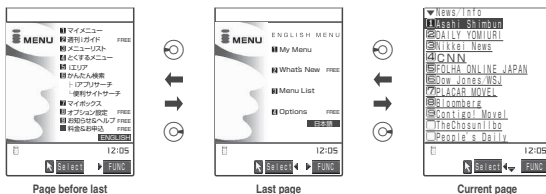
Selection boxes

Selection boxes allow you to choose one of a range of options. On some sites, you can see a part of options.

Jumping to previous/next pages

You can jump forward or back to a page that has been stored in the FOMA terminal's cache (up to 30 pages are stored). Cache → P.211

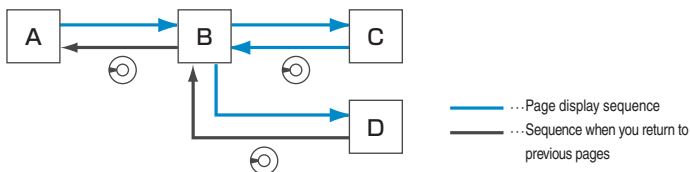
1 Press to jump back to the previous page or to jump forward to the next page



NOTE

- You can review the pages you have visited in the current i-mode session by repeatedly pressing . However, when you have pressed  to return to an earlier page (from "C" to "B") and then gone from that page to another page (from "B" to "D"), pressing  twice from page "D" will not display page "C", but will take you back to "B" and then to page "A" (see below). The previous page is displayed in order of "D", "B", and "A".

■ When the page display sequence is "A", "B", "C", "B" and "D"



Reloading data

Refreshes the displayed page.

1 Sites screen (P.213) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Reload"

NOTE

- If you use "Reload" in the final completion display for pages such as questionnaires or other forms, a message appears asking whether to resend the data. Note that selecting "YES" will resend information that has already been sent once.

Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

You can add a phone number or e-mail address displayed on a site page or screen memo to your phonebook.

<Example: When adding a phone number displayed on a site page>

1 Sites screen (P.213) ► (FUNC) ► “Add to phonebook” ► “YES” ► Add the phone number to phonebook

Adding information to phonebook → P.107, 108

If the name, reading and mail address are attached to phone number, they are also entered to the phonebook together with phone number. Enter remains of needed items and then save to the phonebook.

Working with Flash movies

Flash is an animation technique supported by the FOMA terminal that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download a Flash movie to your FOMA terminal and set it in the standby screen.

- A Flash playing error prevents successful completion of the saving.
- Note that if you play a Flash movie to which vibration is set, your FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the “Vibrator” setting.
- Some Flash movies may not run correctly.
- You may also be able to control a Flash movie even when “” does not appear at the bottom of the screen.
- Flash movies are not displayed if you select “OFF” in “Set image display”.
- Selecting “YES” in “Use saved data” (P.233) allows you to use the FOMA terminal data (time, date, signal strength, battery level, ring volume, language, model type and model info).

NOTE

- To rerun a Flash movie, select “Retry” from the function menu. → P.214
- Some Flash movies use sound effects. To run a Flash movie without the sound effects, select “Sound effect” in the function menu and then select the “OFF” setting. Even if “Vibrator” is set to “Melody linkage”, this setting is invalid for sound effects of Flash movie.
- When a Flash movie is set as a screen such as standby by using “Display setting”, the sound effects or vibrator that are set in the Flash movie do not run. Furthermore, “Retry” is unavailable for repeating the Flash movie.
- When some Flash movies are saved or saved as a screen memo, part of the images may not be saved or they may otherwise differ from the way they appear on the site.
- You may not be able to select menu items with the Neuropointer depending on the Flash movies.

<My Menu>

Registering My Menu Entries

My Menu provides you with a quick and convenient way to connect to frequently visited sites.

- You can register up to 45 sites in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be registered to My Menu.
- To connect quickly to a website, use “Bookmark” (P.221).

1 Sites screen (P.213) ► “My Menu Registration” ► Select the “Input password” box ► Enter your i-mode password ► “Select”

i-mode password → P.220

NOTE

- Charged sites in the iMenu list are automatically registered to My Menu after subscription.

Viewing sites registered to My Menu

1 (i-mode) ► “iMenu” ► “ENGLISH” ► “My Menu” ► Select the site

NOTE

- To connect to a site from My Menu, the site must be registered to My Menu in advance.

NOTE

- Dual Network service users may find that My Menu entries registered on their mova terminal are not available on the FOMA terminal and similarly that entries registered on their FOMA terminal are not available on the mova terminal.

<Change i-mode Password>

Changing Your i-mode Password

You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to register or unregister sites in My Menu, to subscribe to or unsubscribe to message services or charged i-mode sites, and to set your mail preferences.

- Until you change the i-mode password, it is set to "0000" (4 zeros) by default. You can change your i-mode password at any time from your FOMA terminal.
- Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.
- If you forget your i-mode password, the registered service subscriber must take a form of identification (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter to have it reset. A service representative will reset your i-mode password to "0000".

1  ▶ "iMenu" ▶ "ENGLISH" ▶ "Options" ▶ "Change i-mode Password"

2 Select the "Current Password" box ▶ Enter your current i-mode password

The numbers of the entered password is displayed as "*".

3 Select the "New Password" box ▶ Enter the new i-mode password

Enter a 4-digit number as your i-mode password.

4 Select the "New Password (Confirmation)" box ▶ Enter the new i-mode password again

Enter the number you entered in step 3.

5 "Select"

- If you enter your "Current Password" incorrectly

A message appears saying that your i-mode password is incorrect.

- If you enter different numbers in "New Password" and "New Password (Confirmation)"

A message appears saying that your i-mode password does not match.

<Internet connection>

Viewing Websites

This function allows you to view website by entering its URL.

- Websites that are not i-mode-compliant may not be displayed properly.
- The FOMA terminal operations available in websites are the same as those available in ordinary i-mode sites.
- A website may be displayed differently in your terminal from when it is viewed on PC.

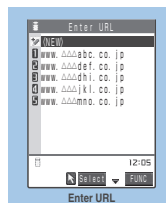
1  ▶ "Go to location" ▶ "Enter URL" ▶ Select "<NEW>"

The "Enter URL screen" appears.
"Entering Text" → P.498

2 Enter URL ▶ "OK" ▶ "OK"

- If you enter no URL or a URL that does not begin with "http://" or "https://"

A message appears saying that the URL is incorrect.



Function menu ▶ P.221

NOTE

- Some websites may not be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal.
- If the received data exceeds the maximum amount that can be loaded for a single page, data reception stops. You may be able to view the data loaded so far by pressing  (Select).
- You can add the displayed page as a bookmark or store it as a screen memo, desktop icon or as your home URL.

NOTE

- To enter a URL while a page is displayed, select “Enter URL” from the function menu and enter the URL.
- You can enter URLs up to 256 half-pitch characters long including “http://” or “https://”.

Viewing sites from the URL history

The FOMA terminal records the last 10 URLs you entered in the URL history.

- 1  **“Go to location”** **“Enter URL”**
- 2 **Select a URL** **“OK”** **“OK”**
 - **To edit the selected URL**
 - ▶ Select the “Internet address” box ▶ Edit the URL

NOTE

- Once the URL history contains 10 entries, the oldest entry is automatically replaced as new entries are added.
- When you enter URLs and connect to sites, visits to the same URL are logged as separate entries.
- The URL history displays URLs up to 22 half-pitch characters long, excluding the “http://” or “https://” prefix.

Function menu (Enter URL screen)

- 1 **Enter URL screen**  **(FUNC)** **Select any item:**

Item	Description
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons” → P.143
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the URL pasted in the message. “Composing and Sending i-mode Mail” → P.253
Set as home URL	Stores the URL as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.
Delete	Deletes one URL.
Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox  (Finish) “YES” Deletes multiple URLs.
Delete all	▶ Enter the security code “YES” Deletes all the registered URLs. Security code → P.152

<Bookmarks>

Accessing Websites and Sites Quickly

Adding frequently visited websites or sites to your Bookmarks folders allows you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can change the titles of your bookmarks and organize the bookmarks into categories by using folders.

Adding bookmarks

- You can bookmark up to 100 sites.
- The URL for each stored bookmark can contain up to 256 half-pitch characters. Pages with longer URLs cannot be bookmarked.
- Some sites cannot be bookmarked.

<Example: When displaying a site>

- 1 **Sites screen (P.213)**  **(FUNC)** **“Add bookmark”** **“YES”** **Select a folder**

■ If there are already 100 bookmarked sites

A message appears asking whether to delete a bookmark before adding the new site. To bookmark the new site, select “YES” and then select the folder and the bookmark to be deleted. To cancel, select “NO”.

NOTE

- Bookmark titles can consist of up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters. Longer titles are truncated when the bookmark is added. If no title is given, the URL is shown (excluding "http://" or "https://").
- You cannot add or display bookmarks while PIM lock is set.
- Even if you enter the item in a radio button, checkbox, text box, pull-down menu or selection box when you add the bookmark, the item does not appear when you visit the site from the added bookmark.

Using a bookmark to access a site or website

1 "Bookmark"

The "Bookmark folder list screen" appears.

When the FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret only mode, the "Secret" folder is also displayed.

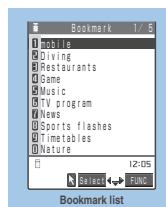


Function menu→P.222

2 Select a folder

The "Bookmark list screen" appears.

3 Select a bookmark



Function menu→P.223

NOTE

- Page titles in the Bookmarks list are displayed in the order they were used.

Function menu (bookmark folder list screen)

You cannot rename or delete the "Bookmark" folder already created on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

1 (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Add folder	Enters a folder name to add a folder. You can add up to 9 folders. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Edit folder name	Edits the folder name of the added folder. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
No. of bookmarks	Shows the total number of bookmarks in all the folders.
Send all Ir data	"Transferring multiple data at the same time" → P.398
Delete folder	▶Enter the security code▶"YES" Deletes the folder and bookmarks in the folder. Security code → P.152
Delete all	▶Enter the security code▶"YES" Deletes all the bookmarks. However, the bookmark folders are not deleted. Security code → P.152

NOTE

<Add folder>

- New added folders appear below the existing saved folders.
- To add a folder, you must enter the folder name.

<Edit folder name>

- You can add a folder with the same name as an existing folder.

<No. of bookmarks>

- The number of bookmarks in the "Secret" folder is not included.

<Send all Ir data>

- The bookmarks in the "Secret" folder are not sent.

<Delete all>

- This option can still be used even when no bookmarks are stored.
- The bookmarks in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

Function menu (Bookmark list screen)

1 Bookmark list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Move	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) of a bookmark ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" You can move bookmarks to other folders to organize them by category.
Edit title	Edits the title of the bookmark. You can enter up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Add desktop icon	Pastes a bookmarked URL as a desktop icon. "Using Desktop Icons" → P.143
Compose message	Composes i-mode mail with a bookmarked URL pasted into the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
Send Ir data	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.397
Export this	Exports one bookmark to a miniSD memory card.
Set as home URL	Stores a bookmarked URL as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.
Copy URL	▶ Highlight the head of text to copy by using  ▶  (Start) ▶ Highlight the last of text to copy by using  ▶  (End) Copies a bookmarked URL. You can paste the copied URL to the entering (editing) screen. → P.515
No. of bookmarks	Shows the total number of bookmarks in all the folders.
Delete	Deletes one bookmark.
Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES" Deletes multiple bookmarks.
Delete all	▶ Enter the security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all bookmarks stored in the folder. Security code → P.152
Keep in secret ^{*1}	"Preventing others from viewing data" → P.159

*1:Displayed only when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

NOTE

<Move>

- You cannot move bookmarks to the "Secret" folder.

<Edit title>

- If you delete the title, the URL is added without the "http://" or "https://" prefix.

<Delete all>

- "Delete all" deletes all the bookmarks in the currently displayed folder. Bookmarks in other folders are not deleted.

Saving Site Content

When you have found some useful information (travel information, etc.), you can save the displayed page on your FOMA terminal as a screen memo for later reference.

- You can save up to 100 screen memos. However, the number you can actually save varies between 2 and 100 depending on the amount of data on each saved page.

Saving a screen memo

1 Sites screen (P.213) ► (FUNC) ► “Save screen memo” ► “YES”

■ If the memory for saved screen memos is full

A message appears asking whether to delete some unwanted screen memos before saving the new screen memo. To save the new image, select “YES”. Then select the image to be deleted.

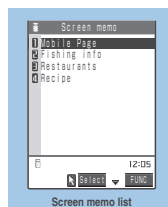
NOTE

- When you save a screen memo of an SSL page, the SSL certificate for that page is also saved.
- Titles for saved screen memo can be up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters long. Longer titles are truncated.
- If you save the same page twice, at the 2nd time it is saved as a new screen memo and does not replace the earlier save.
- If you save as screen memo a site in which an item is already entered in a radio button, checkbox, text box, pull-down menu or selection box, you cannot view the item when displaying the screen memo.
- When you save a display such as the data acquisition screen, the data for that screen is saved along with the screen. However, the data acquisition screen for i-motion with set playback period cannot be saved as a screen memo.
- Other than the data acquisition screen itself, the URL for that page (up to 256 half-pitch characters) can be saved.

Displaying a screen memo

1 (mode) ► “Screen memo”

The “Screen memo list screen” appears.



Function menu ► P.224

2 Select a screen memo

The “Screen memo (screen memo detail screen)” appears.



Function menu ► P.225

NOTE

- Information on the screen memo is the one stored and may differ from the latest one.
- If a saved page has no title, the page appears in the screen memo list screen as “No title”.

Function menu (Screen memo list screen)

1 Screen memo list screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit title	Edits the title of the screen memo. You can enter up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.498

Item	Description
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects screen memo. Protected memo titles are marked with "🔒". The "🔒" icon disappears when the protection is removed.
No. of memos	Displays the numbers of stored and protected screen memos respectively.
Delete	Deletes one screen memo.
Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox (☐)▶ (Finish)▶"YES" Deletes the multiple screen memos.
Delete all	▶Enter the security code ▶"YES" Deletes all the registered screen memos. Security code → P.152

NOTE

<Protect ON/OFF>

● Up to 50 screen memos can be protected. However, the storable number of screen memos varies depending on the data size.

<Edit title>

● If you delete the title, the screen memo is added as "No title".

<Delete><Delete selected><Delete all>

● The protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

Function menu (screen memo detail screen)

1 Screen memo detail screen▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Save image	Save the images displayed in a screen memo. "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" → P.226
Add to phonebook	Add the phone number and e-mail address displayed on the screen memo to the phonebook. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.107 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → P.108
Refer dic.	Using dictionaries from the screen memo "Using dictionaries from other functions" → P.433
Edit title	Edits the title of the screen memo. You can enter up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects screen memo. Protected memo titles are marked with "🔒". The "🔒" icon disappears when the protection is removed.
Compose message	Allows you to compose i-mode mail and Deco-mail with the URL for a screen memo pasted into the message or the image pasted/attached.
	Attach URL Composes an i-mode mail with the URL in a screen memo pasted in the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
	Attach image ▶Select the image Composes i-mode mail with the URL displayed in a screen memo attached to the message. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
	Insert image ▶Select the image Composes Deco-mail with the image displayed in a screen memo pasted into the message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail" → P.259
Save schedule	Stores a scheduled event by browsing the screen memos. "Adding schedule entries" → P.415
URL	Displays the screen memo URL.
Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the screen memo is from an SSL page.
Sound effect	Specifies whether the settings for Flash movie sound effects is enabled or not (ON/OFF).
Retry	Plays the Flash movie or animation in the screen memo again from the beginning.
Delete	Deletes the screen memo.

NOTE

<URL>

- You cannot edit the displayed URL.

<Retry>

- Selecting this option during playback restarts playback from the beginning.

<Delete>

- The protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

<Save image>

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

You can save an image displayed on the current site or sent to you in Message Request/Free and then set the saved image in the standby screen or another screen.

- If you save an image or animation attached to or displayed in i-mode mail or screen memos, it can be set in the standby screen or as the wake-up screen.

<Example: When saving an image displayed on a site page>

1 Sites screen (P.213) (FUNC) "Save image" Select an image "YES" Select a folder

Position the frame  over the image to be saved.

■ When the memory for saved images is full

A message is displayed asking you to delete unwanted images and then save the image. To save the new image, select "YES". Then select the image to be deleted.

2 "YES" Select an item

■ Not to set the image in the standby screen, etc.

▶ "NO"

NOTE

- You cannot save JPEG images larger than 1616 dots wide, 1212 dots high or GIF images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
- You cannot save progressive JPEG images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
- You cannot save images with a file size larger than 100K bytes.
- Up to 36 half-pitch characters can be used in the file name of the saved image. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between "/" and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "imagexxx" (xxx are numerals).
- If "Set image display" is set to "OFF", you cannot save the image. The image can also not be saved if " " is displayed.
- If you try to save an image during reception of a large still image, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while a large size of file is downloaded.
- A transparent GIF file that is not an animation GIF file and has the extension "ifm" is saved as a frame or stamp in one of the following sizes:
 - Frame that has an image size of CIF (352 × 288), CIF Vert. (288 × 352), QVGA (320 × 240), Screen (240 × 345, 345 × 240), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), QCIF Vert. (144 × 176), Sub-QCIF (128 × 96), Sub-QCIF Vert. (96 × 128)
 - Stamp that is not a frame image and has a size of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller

■ Important

- It is recommended to copy the stored images to the miniSD memory card. You can also transfer and save the image data on PC by using the Data Link Software (P.531) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot save images in the miniSD memory card or transfer them to PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output from your FOMA terminal.)
- Saved data may be lost due to a reason such as a damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

■ Progressive JPEG-format images

The progressive JPEG format is an image format for images to be used on sites or websites. Images in this format are initially displayed coarsely (at low resolution) and then displayed clearly as more data arrives.

Downloading Melodies from Sites

You can set your favorite song, the latest hit song downloaded from a site or a stored melody attached to an i-mode mail as a ring tone on your FOMA terminal.

<Example: Storing a melody downloaded from a site>

1 Sites screen (P.213) ▶ Select a melody

2 “Save” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder



■ **When the memory for storing melodies is full**

A message appears asking whether to delete a melody before saving the new melody. To save the new melody, select “YES”. Then select the melody to be deleted.

■ **To play a melody**

▶ “Play”

■ **To display melody information**

▶ “Property”

3 “YES” ▶ Select an item

■ **Not to set the melody as a ring tone, etc.**

▶ “NO”

NOTE

- You may not be able to download melodies depending on sites or the melody size.
- Downloaded melodies may be subject to restrictions such that only a pre-designated part of the melody can be played. While a melody of this type will be played in full when played back on the FOMA terminal, when it is set as a ring tone, only the designated section will be played.
- The URL in the data acquisition screen is not stored in “Last URL”. In this situation, the URL for the page displayed just prior to the data acquisition screen is stored as the last URL.
- Some downloaded melodies may not be played correctly.
- When the file name of saved melody consists of only half-pitch alphanumeric characters, the melody is saved using up to 36 half-pitch characters of that file name. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between the “/” and the “.” or in other cases, the melody is saved as “melodyXXX” (XXX are numerals).
- Downloaded melodies are played at the ring volume setting specified for “Phone” in “Ring volume”.
- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- If you try to save melody during reception of a large still image, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while a large size of file is downloaded.

Important

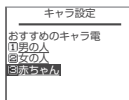
- You can transfer and save the melody data on PC by using the Data Link Software (P.531) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot transfer them to PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output them from your FOMA terminal.)
- Saved data may be lost due to a reason such as a damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

Downloading “Chara-den” Characters from Sites

You can download your favorite Chara-den cartoon characters from sites.

- You can save up to 10 Chara-den characters, including the pre-installed characters.

1 Sites screen (P.213) ▶ Select a Chara-den character



2 “Save” ▶ “YES”



■ If the FOMA terminal's memory for saved Chara-den characters is full

A message is displayed asking you to delete unwanted Chara-den and then save the new Chara-den. To save the new Chara-den character, select “YES”. Then select the character to be deleted.

■ To view a Chara-den character

▶ “Play”

How to control a Chara-den character → P.370

■ To display Chara-den information

▶ “Property”

NOTE

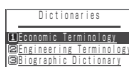
- Some Chara-den characters may not be downloaded depending on the file size.
- If you attempt to save a Chara-den during reception of a large still image, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while a large size of file is downloaded.
- To restore one of the Chara-den preset in the FOMA terminal after deleting it, it should be downloaded from the “みんなのらんど” site. → P.213

Downloading Data Files from Sites

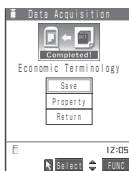
You can enormously expand the range of uses for your FOMA terminal by downloading additional data files such as dictionaries, face stamps, Deco-mail template files from sites.

<Example: Downloading a dictionary file from a site>

1 Sites screen (P.213) ▶ Select a data file



2 “Save” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select an item



■ To display dictionary information

▶ “Property”

■ When the memory for storing dictionaries is full

▶ Select a dictionary to be deleted ▶ “YES”

New dictionary is registered by overwriting the selected dictionary.

NOTE

- You cannot save a template with no decoration.
- If a file is attached to the template, or an image that cannot be output from your FOMA terminal is inserted to the template, the attached file and the inserted image will be deleted.
- The file name used for a template is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute). If the date and time are not set, the title is "templateXX" (where XX = 01 to 45).
- You may not download data file depending on sites or the file size.

<Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions>

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

These functions provide quick and simple procedures for making calls, sending mail and viewing websites using information (phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, etc.) displayed in mail or on a site.

- You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To functions with mail sent from a PC.

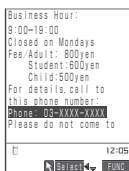
Phone To function

You can make a call to a phone number displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

- When used for videophone calls, this function is called the AV Phone To function.
- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 26 digits as a phone number.

<Example: Making a voice call to a number displayed on a site>

1 Sites screen (P.213) ▶ Select a phone number



2 "Voice phone"



- To make a videophone call
 - ▶ "32K V-phone" or "64K V-phone"

3 "Dial"



- To withhold your caller ID when "Caller ID notification" is set to "ON"
 - ▶ "Notify caller ID" ▶ "Don't notify"
- To provide your caller ID when "Caller ID notification" is set to "OFF"
 - ▶ "Notify caller ID" ▶ "Notify caller"
- To follow the setting of "Caller ID notification"
 - ▶ "Notify caller ID" ▶ "Cancel prefix"

NOTE

- You cannot use the Phone To function to make calls while "Keypad dial lock", "Restrict dialing" or "Self mode" is set.
- You may be able to use the Phone To function with an item other than a phone number which includes a phone number information, such as "Contact us".
- You can also use this function to make calls to phone numbers provided as mail sender or recipient addresses and to phone numbers included in e-mail addresses with the "[phone number]@..." format.

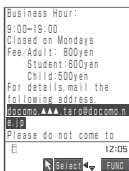
Mail To function

You can send a mail to a mail address displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You cannot use the Mail To function if you already have 20 draft mail messages.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 or more e-mail addresses are displayed consecutively.
- You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters as an e-mail address.

<Example: Sending mail from the sites screen>

1 Sites screen (P.213) ▶ Select a mail address



2 Compose an i-mode mail and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P.253.

NOTE

- You cannot use the Mail To function to send mail when "Keypad dial lock" is set.
- If the entered e-mail address is incorrect, correct the address before sending the mail.
- You may use the Mail To function with the item in which a mail address is not indicated but linked (e.g. "please contact here").

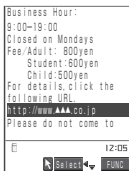
Web To function

You can view a website of the URL displayed on a site or in the body of an e-mail message.

- Not all sites support the Web To function.
- You can enter up to 512 half-pitch characters as a URL.

<Example: Displaying other webpage from the sites screen>

1 Sites screen (P.213) ▶ Select a URL ▶ "YES"



NOTE

- You cannot view a website with Web To function when "Self mode" is set.
- The URL display differs depending on the site.
- You may use the Web To function with the item in which a URL is not indicated but linked (e.g. "for more information").

Specifying Your i-mode Settings

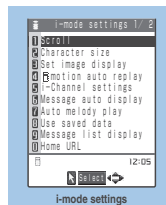
1

 ► “i-mode settings”

The “i-mode settings screen” appears.

2

Select any item:



Item	Description
Scroll (default: 1 line)	Selects the number of scrolling lines in the detail screen for a screen memo, Message Request/Free or a page on a site, from “1 line”, “3 lines” or “5 lines”.
Character size (default: Standard)	Selects the character size of the detail screen for a screen memo, Message Request/Free or a page on a site, from “Standard”, “Small” or “Large”.
Set image display (default: ON)	Sets whether the detail screen for Message Request/Free, screen memos and pages on a site are displayed or not. If you select “OFF”, the “  ” icon will be displayed instead of the images. The “  ” icon appears on the detail screen for Message Request/Free.
i-motion auto replay	“Setting whether to play an i-motion automatically” → P.244
i-Channel settings	“Setting i-channel” → P.335
Message auto display (default: MessageR preferred)	Sets for the messages automatically displayed.
Auto melody play (default: ON)	Sets whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening the Message Request/Free.
Use saved data (default: YES)	“Specifying whether to use terminal data in Flash movies”→P.233
Message list display (default: 2 lines)	Sets the number of lines in the message list screen.
Home URL	Sets for using the home URL display function. You can enter up to 256 half-pitch characters.
	Invalid (default) Disables the home URL display setting.
	Valid Enables the home URL display setting. Select the Home URL field and enter a URL to be stored.
Sound effect setting (default: ON)	Sets whether to play the sound effect for the Flash movies in a site or screen memo.
Check settings	Allows you to check the settings specified in “i-mode settings”.
Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. The last URL reverts to the iMenu URL once cleared.
Reset	►Enter the security code►“YES” Resets the settings specified in “i-mode settings” to the default settings. Security code → P.152

NOTE

<Scroll>

● When displaying the certificate, you can scroll one line at a time even if this function is not set to “1 line”.

<Set image display>

● Even if “ON” is selected, the images may not be downloaded. If so, “” is displayed.

● If “OFF” is set, “” is displayed and data is not received.

<Sound effect setting>

● Even if sound effects are set to “ON”, some Flash movies may not make any sound.

<Reset last URL>

● When you purchase the FOMA terminal, or after you reset the i-mode settings or the last URL, selecting “Last URL” displays the iMenu screen.

Setting the connection timeout <Set connection timeout>

Default setting
60 seconds

This option sets the delay after which the FOMA terminal automatically stops trying to connect when a site is busy and there is no response.

- 1**   **▶ “Connection setting” ▶ “Set connection timeout” ▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description
60 seconds	Automatically stops connecting if there is no response for 60 seconds.
90 seconds	Automatically stops connecting if there is no response for 90 seconds.
Unlimited	Does not automatically stop connecting.

NOTE

- Even when you select “Unlimited”, the connection may drop out due to poor signal reception.

Setting a host different from i-mode host (ISP connection) <Host selection>

Default setting
i-mode

- * There is normally no need to change this setting.**

You need to select a different host when you want to use a service other than i-mode. If you change to a host other than i-mode, you can not use i-mode or i-mode mail.

- You can store up to 10 hosts other than “i-mode”.

- 1**    **▶ Highlight “<Not recorded>” ▶  (Edit) ▶ Enter the security code ▶ Select any item:**

Security code → P.152
“Entering Text” → P.498

Item	Description
Title	Sets the title. You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.
Host name	Sets the host name. You can enter up to 30 half-pitch characters.
Host address	Sets the host address. You can enter up to 99 half-pitch characters.
i-Channel host	Sets the i-channel host. You can enter up to 30 half-pitch characters.

- 2** **Set the respective parameters**  **(Finish)**

NOTE

- You cannot change your i-mode host while you are using i-mode. End the i-mode before changing the host.
- Note that costs of packet communication while you are connected to a host other than i-mode are not covered by the “Pake-Houdai” deal.
- To change a stored “User defined host”, use the procedure for storing.
- To delete a stored “User defined host”, select a host you want to delete, select “Delete” from the function menu, enter the security code and select “YES”. If the deleted host was set as the host to connect, it returns to “i-mode”.
- If you use a different FOMA card (UIM) from that used when the host was stored, the host reverts to “i-mode”.
- When you change the host, “Telop display setting” is set to “ON” and “Indicator display OFF”. The telop is displayed on the standby screen by pressing  to display the channel list or by receiving the latest information.
- The i-channel information may not be updated after changing the host. You can receive the latest information by pressing  to display the channel list.

Specifying whether to use terminal data in Flash movies <Use saved data>

Use this function to specify whether terminal data is used when a Flash movie is running.

- The terminal data may be used depending on the particular Flash movie. To enable Flash movies to use the terminal data, set "YES" in "Use saved data". The default setting is "YES". Such movies may use the following types of terminal data:

- Battery Level
- Ring volume setting
- Reception Level
- Bilingual Settings
- Date and time
- Model information

1 i-mode setting screen (P.231) ▶ "Use saved data" ▶ "YES" or "NO"

<Receive message>

When You Receive a Message

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, Message Request and Message Free are automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- The FOMA terminal will save up to 100 received Message Request and Message Free respectively. However, the number that can actually be saved varies between 20 and 100 for Message Request and between 10 and 100 Message Free depending on the amount of data in each saved message.
- You can set your own choice of ring tone for incoming Message Request and Message Free in "Select ring tone" (P.126) and vary the flashing pattern used by the incoming call lamp in "Illumination" (P.141).
- Refer to P.311 for how to receive the SMS (Short Message Service).

Viewing received new messages

- Automatic display for Message Request/Free can be selected in "Message auto display" (P.231). To prevent the FOMA terminal from automatically displaying new messages when they arrive, select "OFF".



The "R" (green) or "F" (purple) icon flashes and the "MessageR Receiving..." or "MessageF Receiving..." message is displayed.

- Once reception is finished, the icon stops flashing and remains displayed.
- To stop reception while a message is being received, hold down **[END]** for 1 second or longer. However, a message may be received depending on the timing of the cancellation.



- Once reception is finished, the numbers of each type of mail and Message Request/Free received are displayed in the reception results screen for about 15 seconds. The duration for the reception results screen may vary depending on the setting of "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P.130).
- To view the Message Request list screen or Message Free list screen, select "MessageR" or "MessageF".



- If you have received a message while the FOMA terminal is in standby mode, the contents of the received Message Request or Message Free are displayed for roughly 15 seconds. However, if the standby screen was retrieved from the Task menu while any of the menu functions was being used, messages are not automatically displayed.
- If you use operations such as scrolling while a Message Request or Message Free is displayed, the message continues to be displayed.
- If none of the FOMA terminal keys are used for about 15 seconds, the standby screen reappears.

■ When you disable automatic display

The reception results screen appears when you receive a Message Request or Message Free while using the FOMA terminal.

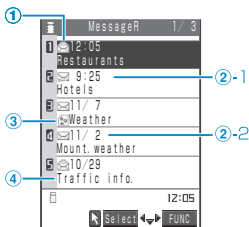
NOTE

- When a new Message Request/Free arrives, the FOMA terminal receives the message together with any Message Request/Free or i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center.
 - Received Message Request/Free are not automatically displayed if PIM lock or All lock is set, if the FOMA terminal is in Driving mode, if an i-appli is running, or if the current screen is not the standby screen.
 - If the data storage capacity of the FOMA terminal is full when you receive a message, the message overwrites from the oldest read message. Unread or protected messages are not overwritten.
 - If the data storage capacity of the FOMA terminal is full of unread or protected messages, the following icons are displayed.
 - (red) / (red) :Displayed when the FOMA terminal cannot receive Message Request/Message Free because of the lack of the data storage capacity.
 - (green) / (purple) :Displayed when Message Request/Message Free are held at the i-mode Center.
 - (red) / (red) :Displayed when the data storage capacity for Message Request/Message Free at the i-mode Center is full.
- If these icons are displayed, you can receive a new message by deleting unwanted messages or read unread mail. Also releasing protect (P.237, 238) enables you to receive a new message.
- After automatic display, messages are still marked as unread in the Message Request or Message Free list screen. However, if you use an operation such as scrolling the screen while a message is being automatically displayed, the message is then marked as read in the Message Request or Message Free list screen.
 - When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and Message Request/Free at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.
 - If you receive a Message Request/Free when a screen other than the standby screen is shown and "Operation preferred" is selected in "Receiving display" (P.299), the FOMA terminal does not ring. When "Alarm preferred" is selected, the FOMA terminal plays the ring tone and displays the reception results screen.
 - If you receive a Message Request/Free during i-motion playback, the video and sound may be interrupted.

How to view the Message Request and Message Free screens

The Message Request and Message Free screens appear as shown below.

- Some of the icons displayed in the Message Request and Message Free list screens are also shown in the Message Request and Message Free detail screens. Some icons are not displayed.



List screen (2-line display)



List screen (1-line display)



Detail screen

- ① Shows the Message Request/Free status.
 - : Unread Message Request/Free
 - : Read Message Request/Free
 - : Unread and protected Message Request/Free
 - : Read and protected Message Request/Free
- ② Shows the message arrival time and date.
 - ②-1 : Only the time is shown for Message Request/Free that arrived today.
 - ②-2 : The date is shown for Message Request/Free that arrived yesterday or earlier.

③ Shows any attached or pasted file.



: An attached or pasted melody.



: Multiple attached or pasted melodies, one or more of which is invalid.



: All the attached or pasted melodies are invalid.



: An image is attached.



: Multiple images are attached and one or more of which is invalid.



: All the attached images are invalid. (This icon is also shown when "OFF" is selected in "Set image display" in the Message detail screen (P.231).)



: Multiple files are pasted.

The following icons appear when 1-line display is selected for a list screen:



: Any file is attached or pasted.



: Multiple files are attached or pasted and one or more of which is invalid.



: All the attached or pasted files are invalid.

④ Shows the message subject.

NOTE

- If the "Set time" setting is not set, "--/--" is displayed as the date and time on the screen for Message Request/Free.

<Check new message>

Checking for Messages

Default setting

Check for all (Mail, Message Request and Message Free)

The messages that the FOMA terminal could not receive are held at the i-mode Center. You can receive the held messages by checking for messages.

- The messages are held at the i-mode Center in the following situation:
 - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
 - When "圏外" is displayed
 - When the message boxes are full
 - During a videophone call or remote observation
 - When Self mode is set
 - When connecting to the FirstPass Center
- You cannot check for messages when "圏外" is displayed.
- Use "Set check new message" (P.301) to specify which items are checked for.

1

(For 1 second or longer)

The check new message screen appears.

You can also check new messages by following procedures below.

- ▶ "Check new message"
- ▶ "Check new message"

The FOMA terminal checks for "Mail" → "Message R" → "Message F".

The "M" (blue), "R" (green) and "F" (purple) icons flash during checking, and the "Checking..." message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then downloads your i-mode mail and Message Request/Free. The numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, Message Request and Message Free are displayed.

■ To cancel the inquiry

- ▶ Hold down for 1 second or longer during the inquiry

When you cancel an inquiry, depending on the timing of the cancellation you may still receive the i-mode mail and messages.

2

Check for the numbers of the new i-mode mails, Message Request and Message Free messages ▶ "Return"

NOTE

- When the "R" (green) or "F" (purple) icon appears, there is a Message Request/Free held for you at the i-mode Center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode Center for holding your Message Request/Free is full, the "M" (red) or "F" (red) icon appears.

NOTE

- If icons such as “ (red)”, “ (red)”, “ (red)” and “ (red)” are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail, SMS or Message Request/Free. Delete any unwanted mail, SMS and Message Request/Free or read your unread mail, SMS and Message Request/Free. Also, you can receive a new message by unprotecting (P.237, 238). The messages which are read are overwritten sequentially from an old one at the time of reception.
- The table below shows the maximum number of Message Request/Free that can be held at the i-mode Center and the maximum storage period.

	Maximum number of messages	Maximum storage period
Message Request	300	72 hours
Message Free	300	72 hours

Once the maximum number of stored messages is reached, messages are deleted as a new message arrives, starting with the oldest message.

- Even if a Message Request or Message Free is stored at the i-mode Center, the “ (green)” or “ (purple)” may not be displayed if the FOMA terminal is turned off, or if “” is displayed.

<MessageR/MessageF>

Viewing Messages in the Message Box

- When a Message Request/Free from the i-mode Center arrives on the FOMA terminal, the “ (green)” or “ (purple)” icon appears at the top of the screen.

- 1  ▶ “Message” ▶ “MessageR” or “MessageF”
The “Message list screen” appears.



Function menu ▶ P.237

- 2 **Select a message**
The “Message detail screen” appears.
To display the next or previous message in the message detail screen, press .
In the message detail screen, press  to return to the message list screen.



Function menu ▶ P.238

NOTE

- Buttons such as “OK” and “Cancel” may appear in a Message Request/Free. In such cases, the buttons can be used in the same way as buttons in a site.

Function menu (Message list screen)

1 Message list screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Display all	The original display (all items shown in reverse chronological order) is reverted from a sorted or filtered display.
Sort	Sorts the Message Request/Free in chronological or reverse chronological order.
Filter	Displays only the Message Request/Free that meets the specified criteria.
	Unread Displays only unread messages.
	Read Displays only read messages.
	Protected Displays only protected messages.
	Melody Displays only messages with attached/pasted melodies.
	Image Displays only messages with attached images.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects Message Request/Free.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all the protected Message Request/Free.
No. of messages	Displays the number of stored Message Request/Free, unread messages and protected messages.
Delete	Deletes one Message Request/Free.
Delete selected	 Use  to select a checkbox ()  (Finish)  "YES" Deletes multiple Message Request/Free with the checkboxes checked.
Delete read	Deletes read Message Request/Free.
Delete all	 Enter the security code  "YES" Deletes all the Message Request/Free. Security code → P.152

NOTE

<Sort>

- The Sort display and Filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the unread messages in chronological order, select "Unread" in the Filter menu and then "Chronological ↓" in the Sort menu.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you display the Message Request/Free list with the Sort display and then exit the screen, when you display the respective list screens again the list will revert to showing all the messages.

<Filter>

- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you display the Message Request/Free list using the Filter function and then exit the screen, when you display the respective list screens again the list will revert to showing all the messages.
- If "OFF" is selected in "Set image display", you cannot select "Image".
- Selecting "Delete read" or "Delete all" when a list of filtered Message Request/Free is displayed deletes all the currently displayed read or unprotected messages respectively.

<Delete>

- This option can delete even unread Message Request/Free.
- The protected Message Request/Free cannot be deleted.

<Delete selected>

- This option can delete even unread Message Request/Free.
- The protected Message Request/Free cannot be deleted.

<Delete read>

- The protected read Message Request/Free is not deleted.
- When only filtered Message Request/Free are displayed, selecting "Delete read" deletes only the unprotected read Message Request/Free shown in the current list screen.

<Delete all>

- This option deletes even unread Message Request/Free.
- The protected Message Request/Free cannot be deleted.
- When only filtered Message Request/Free are displayed, selecting "Delete all" deletes only the unprotected Message Request/Free shown in the current list screen.

Function menu (Message detail screen)

1 Message detail screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Add to phonebook	Add the phone number and e-mail address displayed on Message Request/Free to the phonebook. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook" → P.107 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook" → P.108
Save melody	Saves a melody that is attached to or pasted into Message Request/Free.
Save image	Saves an image attached to Message Request/Free. "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages" → P.226
Reload image	Reloads an image when image loading has failed.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects Message Request/Free.
Delete	Deletes the Message Request/Free.

NOTE

<Save melody>

- Select an attached melody to play it.
- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- When you save a pasted melody, it is saved under its title, not under the file name. If melody has no title, its file name is appended.
- Some saved melodies may not play correctly.

<Reload image>

- Some images may not be displayed correctly even when reloaded.
- Only images in the message body can be reloaded. The attached image is not reloaded. Images with "  (black and white)" displayed also cannot be reloaded.

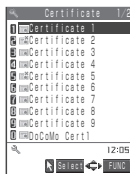
<Delete>

- The protected Message Request/Free cannot be deleted.

Using SSL Certificates

Use this procedure to check the details of an SSL certificate or to set to valid/invalid.

1 "Connection setting" "Certificate"



2 Select a certificate Check the details

■ To validate or invalidate SSL certificates

 Highlight a certificate  (FUNC)  "Valid/Invalid"

NOTE

- All the certificates are set to "Valid" at the time of purchase.
- The "  " icon appears when you select "Valid". The "  " icon appears when you select "Invalid".
- If you select "Invalid", you cannot view SSL pages with that SSL certificate.
- DoCoMo Cert 2 is always set to "Valid" and this setting cannot be changed.

Setting FirstPass

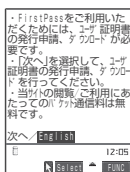
User certificates prove that the user is a bona-fide FOMA service subscriber. Downloaded user certificates are saved on your FOMA card (UIM) and enable you to access client authentication-compliant sites.

Connect to the FirstPass Center

Follow the procedure below to request and download the user certificate.

- You can request a user certificate or download from the FirstPass Center.
- User certificates cannot be used with the FOMA card (blue).
- To connect to the FirstPass Center, you must first set the date and time on your FOMA terminal. → P.55
- The screens and procedures used at the FirstPass Center are subject to change.

1 (i-mode) ▶ “Client certificate” ▶ Check the description ▶ “English”



2 “Request your certificate”



■ If you are using FirstPass for the first time

Select “The usage regulation (Japanese only)” and carefully read the information provided.

■ To apply invalidation

Select “Other settings” and then select “Revoke your certificate”.

Enter your PIN2 code and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

3 Check the description ▶ “Continue”

4 Enter the PIN2 code

PIN2 code → P.153

5 Check the message ▶ “Download” ▶ Check the description ▶ “Continue” ▶ “Menu”

The confirmation message appears.

The FirstPass menu screen reappears after the downloading is complete.

NOTE

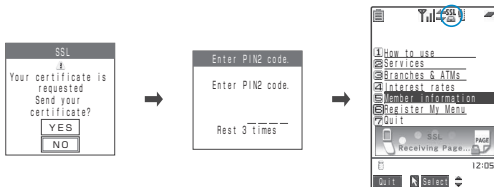
- Packet communication charge for connection to the FirstPass Center is free.
- Packet communication charge for accessing to FirstPass-compliant sites is covered by the “Pake-Houdai” deal.
- You cannot use the following function during connection to the FirstPass Center.
 - Making or receiving videophone calls (making and receiving voice calls is available)
 - Sending or receiving i-mode mail (sending and receiving SMS is available)
 - Check new message (Check new SMS is available)
 - Sending or receiving speed photo mail
 - Reception of Message Request/Free
 - Downloading i-motion
 - Web To function
- Always send a certificate request before downloading a new or updated user certificate. You cannot download a certificate without first requesting the certificate.

NOTE

- Once an application for user certificate invalidation has been completed, you can no longer access FirstPass-compliant sites that require that user certificate.
- If you use FirstPass after completion of invalidation, apply issue for the user certification again and download it.
- To check a downloaded user certificate, see "Using SSL Certificates" (P.238).

Using a user certificate to connect to a site

1 Sites screen (P.213) ▶ Confirm user certificate transmission ▶ "YES" ▶ Enter your PIN2 code



NOTE

- If you connect to a FirstPass-compliant site without a user certificate, or if your user certificate has expired, a message informing you of that fact is displayed. You can still connect to the site and view subsequent pages by selecting "YES", but note that it may not be safe to send your personal information (credit card number, contact details, etc.) on the site. To disconnect, select "NO". When the "SSL session was terminated" message appears, press  (Select) to return to the original screen. Reconnect the site after downloading the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

■ Notes on using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's digital authentication service. When you use FirstPass, the site and your FOMA terminal exchange certificates so that both parties can each conduct client authentication by checking the certificate provided the other party.
- FirstPass can be used either when the FOMA terminal is directly connected to the Internet or when it is connected via a PC. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the Internet via a PC, the FirstPass PC software included in the bundled CD-ROM for FOMA N701i is required. For more information, refer to the PDF-format "FirstPassManual" contained in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder on the CD-ROM. (The "FirstPassManual" is in Japanese only.)
To view the PDF-format "FirstPassManual", you will need Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended).
- If this software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website. (Additional communication charges will apply.) Refer to the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.
- When requesting a user certificate, carefully read and agree to the "The usage regulation" of FirstPass shown on your screen before proceeding with your request.
- To use a user certificate, you will need to enter your PIN2 code (P.153). Take great care to prevent unauthorized persons from using your FOMA card (UIM) or PIN2 code since all the actions performed subsequent to PIN2 code entry will be assumed to have been performed by you.
- If your FOMA card (UIM) is lost or stolen, you can have your user certificates invalidated at an NTT DoCoMo service counter.
- NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for and accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the sites or the content provided by FirstPass-compliant sites. Any disputes are to be resolved between the customer and the FirstPass-compliant site.
- NTT DoCoMo and its authentication company provide no guarantee regarding security or secrecy in the use of FirstPass and SSL certificates. Such certificates are used entirely at the discretion of the user.

Changing the Certificate Host

Default setting
DoCoMo

* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Sets the host for downloading the user certificate.

1



“Connection setting” ▶ “Certificate host”

2

Highlight “<Not recorded>” ▶ (Edit) ▶ Enter the security code ▶ Select any item:

Security code → P.152

3

Set the respective parameters ▶ (Finish)

NOTE

- To change a stored “User setting host”, use the procedure for storing.
- To delete a stored “User setting host”, select “Delete” from the function menu.

What is an i-motion?

An i-motion is a file containing video, voice and music data downloaded from an i-motion site to your FOMA terminal. You can set an i-motion as a ring tone. Chaku-motion → P.126

i-motion types

i-motion can be broadly divided into 2 types. This FOMA terminal supports only Normal-type i-motion (you cannot download Streaming-type i-motion).

Normal type

The FOMA terminal will hold normal i-motion up to 500 KB in size in either of the formats shown below. Some Normal type i-motion can not be saved.

- ① Playable after downloading (up to 500KB)
- ② Playable during downloading (up to 500KB)

Streaming type (Not supported by this FOMA terminal)

This type cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal. The FOMA terminal can play i-motion of up to 2 MB in size while downloading. Because the data is discarded as soon as a streaming i-motion ends, it has to be downloaded again each time it is played.

NOTE

- The FOMA terminal plays i-motion in the MP4 format (Mobile MP4).
- The i-motion of ASF format cannot be downloaded.

Downloading i-motion

Downloading and playing i-motion from the sites

- 1 ▶“iMenu”▶“ENGLISH”▶“Menu List”▶Select the option for the site
- 2 **Select i-motion**
When data downloading is completed, the Data acquisition screen appears.
When “i-motion auto replay” is set to “ON”, i-motion is played automatically. However, some i-motion may not be played automatically.
■ **To cancel the download**
▶ (Quit)
- 3 **“Play”**
Plays the downloaded i-motion.
“Operation available during i-motion playback” → P.361



Function menu▶P.242

NOTE

- i-motion without title is shown in the data acquisition screen as “No title”.
- Some sites and i-motion do not allow downloading or the playback during the download.
- Even if you stop the playback during the download, the downloading continues.
- Even if “ON” is selected for “i-motion auto replay” setting, the data played during the download is not automatically played after the download is finished.
- If “OFF” is selected for “i-motion auto replay” setting, the i-motion is not automatically played after the download is finished, and the data acquisition screen appears.
- Some i-motion is restricted to be played.  is displayed at the beginning of the title for the i-motion with restrictions on the play count, period or time limit. The i-motion restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period. If the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal for a long period, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. If this is the case, i-motion restricted on the playback period or time limit cannot be played.
“i-motion information” → P.360
- When downloading and playing the data, the reception status may affect the replay or motion.
- Some i-motion cannot be correctly played.
- When you download and play i-motion at the same time (the first replay only), you cannot play fast, step or slow.
- If data retrieval is interrupted due to problems with the reception, or if the retrieved data exceeds the limit on the permitted amount of data, and the FOMA terminal can display “Play”, “Save” or “Property” on the data acquisition screen, a message appears saying that the data could not be downloaded, and then the data acquisition screen appears.

Function menu (data acquisition screen)

- 1 **Data acquisition screen**▶ (FUNC)▶Set the following:

Item	Description
Save screen memo	Saves the data acquisition screen to the screen memo. “Saving a screen memo”→ P.224

NOTE

- You can also play an i-motion from a "screen memo" (P.224) as which the data acquisition screen is saved. However, you cannot save the data acquisition screen of:
 - i-motion restricted to be played
 - Incomplete i-motion
- i-motion saved to screen memos are not listed in the i-motion folder of the Data box. Therefore, you cannot use the playlist or stand-by display functions with these i-motion.

Saving i-motion

When "Save" can be selected on the data acquisition screen, the i-motion can be saved to your FOMA terminal.

- Some i-motion cannot be saved.
- Up to 100 i-motion can be saved, and the number 100 includes the movies shot by the camera. The maximum number of i-motion that can be saved varies between 3 and 100 depending on the amount of the i-motion data.
- i-motion folder → P.338

1 Data acquisition screen (P.242) ▶ "Save" ▶ "YES"

■ To cancel the saving

▶ "NO"

Returns to the data acquisition screen without saving the i-motion.

■ When the memory used for saving i-motion is full

A message appears asking whether to delete some unnecessary i-motion and then save the new i-motion.

To save the i-motion, select "YES", and then select an i-motion to delete. Select "NO" to cancel the saving. Selecting "NO" returns you to the data acquisition screen without saving the i-motion.

2 Select the folder

NOTE

- An i-motion without title is listed as "movie".
- You can set an i-motion downloaded from a site to the standby screen. → P.134
Some i-motion cannot be set to the standby screen.
- You cannot use the Phone To, Mail To or Web To function from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

Viewing i-motion details

You can check the details of the i-motion, including the title, file size and replay restrictions.

1 Data acquisition screen (P.242) ▶ "Property"

The "i-motion info" screen appears. Use  to scroll the display up and down to check the details such as the remaining count of the replay, the playback period and the time limit.

Setting whether to play an i-motion automatically

Default setting

ON

You can specify whether to automatically play an i-motion when:

- Downloading i-motion from the site
- Downloading i-motion from the Received mail screen
- Displaying the Screen memo of the data acquisition screen

1

i-mode settings screen (P.231) ▶ “i-motion auto replay” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
ON	Automatically plays the i-motion after downloading. Some i-motion is played during the download.
OFF	Displays the data acquisition screen without automatically playing the i-motion after downloading.

NOTE

- If you select “OFF” and then select an i-motion on the screen memo list screen or download an i-motion from a site, the FOMA terminal displays the data acquisition screen without automatically playing the i-motion.

● Mail

What is i-mode Mail?	246
Displaying Mail Menu.....	Mail menu 252
■ Composing i-mode mail/Deco-mail	
Composing and Sending i-mode Mail.....	Compose message/Send 253
Composing and Sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail 259
Using Templates to Create Deco-mail	266
Attaching Files	Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion mail 269
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later.....	Save i-mode mail 270
Storing Addresses in Mailing Lists.....	271
■ Receiving and using i-mode mail	
When You Receive i-mode Mail	Auto receive mail 273
● Emotion-expressing mail	274
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively	Receive option 276
Checking for i-mode Mail	Check new message 277
Replying to i-mode Mail	Reply to mail 278
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients.....	Forward mail 280
Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook.....	280
Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail.....	Save melody 281
Saving Images in Image Mail.....	Save image mail 281
Playing and Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail.....	i-motion mail 282
■ Using mailboxes	
Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox.....	Inbox/Outbox 282
■ Using mail records	
Using Mail Records.....	Sent address list/Received address list 297
■ Specifying mail settings	
Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions.....	Mail settings 299
■ Using chat mail	
Composing and Sending Chat Mail	Compose chat/Send 302
Registering Chat Session Members in a Chat Group.....	306
■ Using SMS (Short Message)	
Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)	Compose SMS/Send 309
When You Receive an SMS (Short Message)	Receive SMS 311
Checking for SMS (Short Message)	313
Specifying SMS (Short Message) Settings.....	Set SMS 313
Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)	UIM operation 315

What is i-mode Mail?

The mail function provided on the FOMA terminal enables you to send and receive i-mode mail and SMS.

To use i-mode mail, you must first subscribe to the "i-mode" service.

How to send and receive i-mode mail → P.253, 273

- You can send and receive SMS (text) with other FOMA terminals without subscribing to i-mode. How to send and receive SMS → P.309, 311

i-mode mail

Subscribing to i-mode, as well as allowing you to exchange mail with other i-mode terminals (including mova phones), also lets you send and receive e-mail messages via the Internet.

Your mail address when you subscribe to i-mode is determined as described below.

New i-mode subscribers

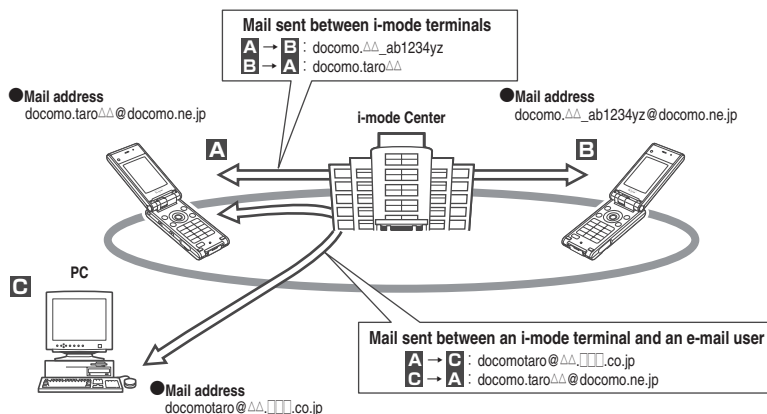
The part before the @ symbol in your e-mail address is randomly created using a combination of alphanumeric characters. You should check what your e-mail address is after you subscribe to the i-mode service.

Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

<To check your own e-mail address>

Menu screen ▶ "ENGLISH" ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings ▶ Confirm Mail Address

- When mail is exchanged between i-mode terminals (including movas), only the part before the @ symbol in the e-mail address needs to be entered.
- To receive mail sent from a PC via e-mail, the full e-mail address, including "@docomo.ne.jp", must be used.



- How to send i-mode mail → P.253
- How to receive i-mode mail → P.273

Receiving mail selectively

You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete items of mail at the i-mode Center before receiving your mail. → P.276

Specifying mail settings

You can customize your mail settings as follows:

<Setting procedure>

Menu screen ▶ "ENGLISH" ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings ▶ <Each setting>

* For details, refer to the "i-mode User's Manual" provided when you subscribed to i-mode.

Changing your mail address <Change Mail Address>

For example, if your address is "docomo.taro_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp", you can change the part that precedes the "@" symbol to your preferred name.

■ Secret code registration <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶ Register a Secret Code>

When your phone number is used as your e-mail address, you can include your 4-digit secret code in the address. In that way, you can avoid receiving unwanted mail since only incoming mail that provides the secret code will be accepted.

■ Resetting your mail address <Mail Address (Other Settings) ▶ Reset Mail Address>

Use this feature to reset your mail address to "[your phone number]@docomo.ne.jp".

■ Confirming your mail address <Confirm Mail Address>

This allows you to check your current mail address.

■ Mail accept/reject settings

You can restrict the mail you receive by using any of the following methods to specify your mail accept and mail reject settings:

- ① Domain-selective reception <Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) ▶ Receive Mail from Selected Domains>
 - Allows you to accept only mail from specified service providers among au, Vodafone, TU-KA and WILLCOM.
 - Also accepts only mail from specified domains when the mail is not from one of the above providers.
 - * You can receive all mail from NTT DoCoMo's i-mode and i-shot services and the Charge Notice service, as well as e-billing invoice notifications and visualnet mail.
- ② Address-specific reception/rejection <Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) ▶ Receive Selected Mail/Reject Selected Mail>
 - This feature allows you to accept or reject mail from specified addresses among all the mail you receive.
- ③ i-mode mail-specific reception/rejection <Receiving Mail (Reject/Receive Mail Settings) ▶ Receive only i-mode mail/Reject only i-mode mail>
 - Use this feature to accept or reject only mail from other i-mode subscribers (rejects mail sent via the Internet).
- ④ Restricting mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders <Receiving Mail (Other Settings) ▶ Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders>
 - This function gives you the choice of accepting or rejecting i-mode mail from an i-mode terminal (including movas) once you have received 200 messages from that terminal in one day. The default setting is "Reject", so you can reject mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders simply by leaving this setting unchanged.
- ⑤ Unsolicited advertising ※ mail rejection <Receiving Mail (Other Settings) ▶ Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail>
 - This feature lets you reject mail marked as "未承諾広告※" that is sent to you without your consent. The FOMA terminal's default setting is "Reject", so you do not have to change the setting to reject unsolicited advertising. (Senders are legally required to include "未承諾広告※" (6 full-pitch Japanese characters) at the beginning of the mail subject line.)
 - * You cannot set "Domain-selective reception", "Address-specific reception", "Address-specific rejection", "i-mode mail-specific reception" and "i-mode mail-specific rejection" at the same time.
- ⑥ Reject SMS <Receiving Mail (Other Settings) ▶ Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings>
 - This function allows you to reject all SMS or only SMS with no caller ID, and to confirm status.

■ Checking your mail settings <Confirm Settings>

You can check your current mail settings, including your mail accept/reject settings.

■ Restricting mail size <Limit Mail Size>

You can limit the size of accepted mail to a preset size.

■ Stopping the mail functions <Suspend Mail>

You can stop the mail functions at the i-mode Center when you are not using them.

■ Preventing nuisance mail

Effective ways of preventing nuisance mail include changing your mail address and using address-specific accept/reject.

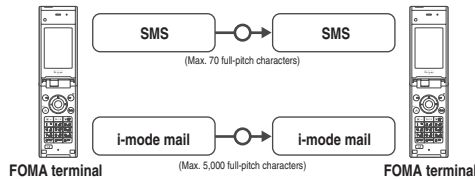
● Your SMS (Short Message) address

Your SMS address is your "subscriber mobile phone number".

● Sending and receiving mail using the 3 mail functions

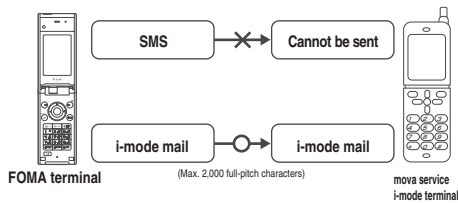
FOMA terminal-to-FOMA terminal

You can exchange SMS only with FOMA terminal users.



FOMA terminal-to-mova service i-mode terminal

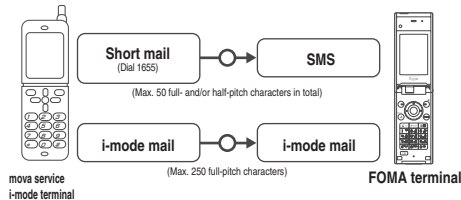
To send messages from the FOMA terminal to a mova service i-mode terminal, use i-mode mail.



* : You cannot send an SMS from a FOMA terminal to an i-mode terminal with mova service.

mova service i-mode terminal-to-FOMA terminal

Short Mail* sent from a mova service i-mode terminal can be received on a FOMA terminal as SMS.



* : Short Mail is a text messaging service provided by DoCoMo for mobile phones.
 · Short Mail cannot be sent from a FOMA terminal. Dialing 1655 does not enable you to send Short Mail from your FOMA terminal.
 · On FOMA terminals, Short Mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal is received as SMS.

● Numbers of characters that can be sent/received

The table below shows the limits on the number of characters that you can send or receive using i-mode mail and SMS.

■ i-mode mail

Item	Full-pitch characters (kanji, hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Half-pitch characters (alphabetic characters, numbers, katakana etc.)
Subject	15	30
Address	—	50
Message	5,000*	10,000*

* : The number of characters in the message that you can send or receive decreases if a file (melody, image or i-motion) is attached to the message. Note also that the number of characters that can be sent in Deco-mail is no more than half the numbers shown above.

■ SMS (Short Message)

Item	Full-pitch characters (kanji, hiragana, pictographs, etc.)	Half-pitch characters (alphabetic characters, numbers, katakana etc.*1)
Address	—	20 (numbers only)*2
Message	70	160*3

*1: Half-pitch katakana characters are counted as 1 full-pitch character.

*2: 21 characters if a half-pitch "+" is included at the beginning.

*3: Only half-pitch alphanumeric characters or symbols (excluding 。 「 」 { } [] | 、 . - * ' ` ~). (Up to 70 characters when other characters are included.)

NOTE

- You can send and receive i-mode mail where the message body contains up to 5,000 full-pitch characters (10,000 bytes), but the number of characters that can be sent and received is reduced depending on the amount of data in any attached files. You cannot send or receive files that are incompatible with i-mode mail. Such attached files are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center and you receive only the message. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the "添付ファイル削除" (Attached file delete) message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message. (The "添付ファイル削除" (Attached file delete) message is included the count of the number of characters that can be received.)
- If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, either "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- When you send i-mode mail to a mova service i-mode terminal, the message body can contain up to a maximum of 2,000 full-pitch characters. An i-shot or i-motion mail is sent with the URL of the i-shot or i-motion specified in the mail message. Attached files other than i-shot and i-motion are deleted.
- If the number of characters in the subject exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, all characters that exceed the limit are automatically deleted.
- Except for mail exchanged between i-mode terminals (including movas), do not use half-pitch katakana or pictographs in the messages as they may not display properly on the receiver side.

● If you cannot receive mail

When mail is delivered to the i-mode Center, it is immediately sent to your i-mode terminal. However, if your i-mode terminal is turned off or you are outside the i-mode service area and cannot receive mail, the mail is stored at the i-mode Center.

While mail is held at the i-mode Center, it is resent a maximum of 3 times over a set period of time. You can also select and receive your mail at the i-mode Center by setting "Receive option setting".

NOTE

<i-mode mail>

- The table below shows the maximum number of messages that can be held at the i-mode Center and the maximum storage period.

	Maximum number of messages	Maximum storage period
i-mode mail	207 to 1,000 (up to approx. 2 M bytes)	720 hours

- Mail that is left at the i-mode Center for longer than the maximum storage period is automatically deleted.
- The limit on the number of messages that can be held differs depending on the mail file sizes. When the amount of held mail exceeds the limit, the i-mode Center no longer accepts incoming mail and any new mail is returned to the sender together with an error message. When this happens, the " (red)" icon appears on your i-mode terminal's screen. If you have selected "ON" in "Receive option setting" (P.300), " (red)" may not appear on your i-mode terminal when the limit is exceeded.
- You can receive mail held at the i-mode Center to your FOMA terminal using "Check new message" (P.277) or "Receive option" (P.276). When the new mail arrives on your FOMA terminal, other held mail and messages are also received at the same time.
- All the mail held at the i-mode Center is deleted once it has been received on your i-mode terminal. The received mail is stored on your i-mode terminal. → P.273
- Very large e-mail messages may not be accepted at the i-mode Center.
- If you use "Suspend Mail" function, new mail is not held at the i-mode Center.

<SMS>

- SMS are held at the SMS Center for a maximum of 72 hours. You can set the holding period for sent SMS using "SMS validity period" (P.300, 310).
- SMS left at the SMS Center for longer than the maximum storage period is automatically deleted.
- You can receive SMS held at the SMS Center to your FOMA terminal using "Check new SMS" (P.313).
- SMS held at the SMS Center is deleted once it has been received on your FOMA terminal. The received SMS is stored on your FOMA terminal.
- SMS received on your FOMA terminal can be moved or copied to a FOMA card (UIM). → P.315

Attachments

Attached melodies

You can attach melodies that you have downloaded from sites or website to i-mode mail and then send and receive mail with the attached melodies. (Note that you cannot attach melodies when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission from your FOMA terminal is prohibited.)

- To send i-mode mail with an attached melody → P.269
- To receive i-mode mail with an attached melody → P.281

Attached images

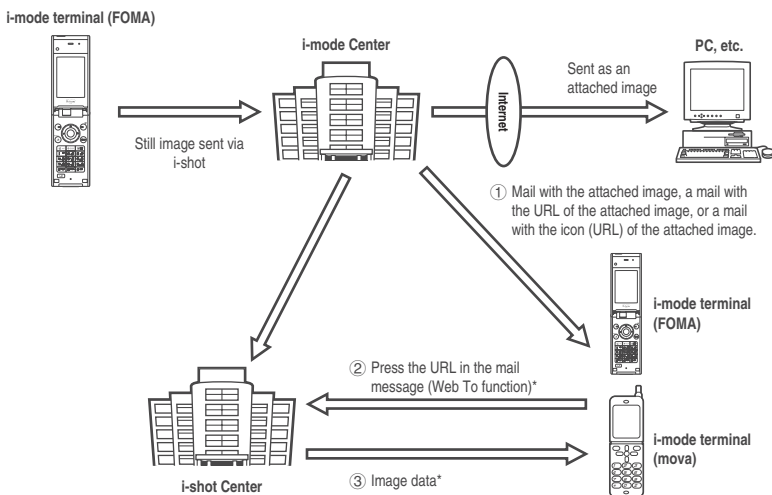
Still images that you have downloaded from sites or website or retrieved from external memory can be attached to i-mode mail and then sent and received on your FOMA terminal. (Note that you cannot attach images when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission from your FOMA terminal is prohibited.)

- To send i-mode mail with an attached image → P.269
- To receive i-mode mail with an attached image → P.281

i-shot

You can use i-shot to exchange still images shot using a terminal with a camera function as attached files with i-mode terminals (including movas), PCs or third-party mobile phones. A mail that includes the attached file format or the URL (or icon) to view the image and the storage expiration date of the image is sent to the recipient, and pressing the URL can download the image. The body of mail sent to a mova service i-mode terminal can be up to 184 full-pitch characters (369 bytes) long. If you attach multiple files, the attached files are deleted and only the message itself is sent.

- To send i-mode mail with an attached image → P.269
- To receive i-mode mail with an attached image → P.281



* : If you receive a mail with the URL of the attached image

- Images are held for up to 10 days at the i-shot Center, after which they are automatically deleted.
- An i-mode terminal can send a still image up to 500KB. Also, when a mail attached with the image larger than 20KB is sent to an i-mode terminal, the i-mode terminal loads the compressed image automatically.

i-motion mail

You can use i-motion mail to exchange movies you have shot or downloaded from sites with phones that support i-motion mail, PCs or third-party mobile phones. (Note that you cannot attach movie files when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission from your FOMA terminal is prohibited.)

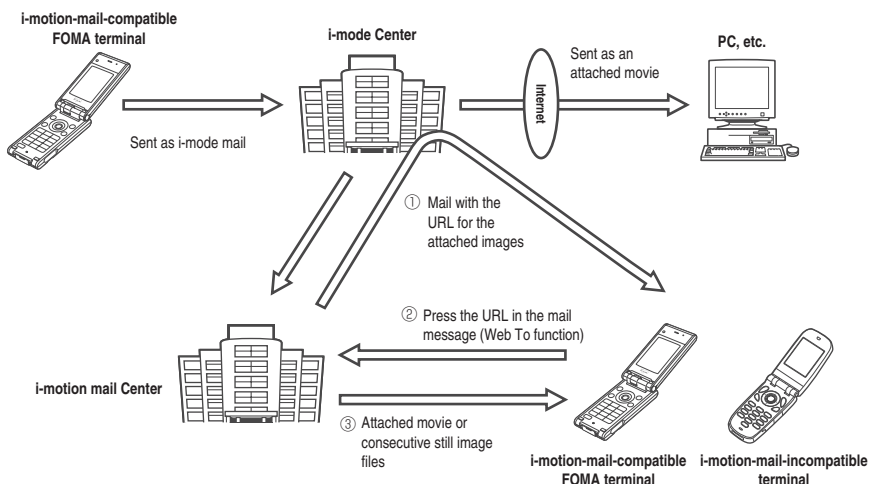
- To send i-motion mail → P.269
- To receive i-motion mail → P.282

■ How the service works

Movie files attached to i-motion mail are sent to the i-motion mail Center where they are saved. (If the mail is sent to a PC, the data is sent directly as an attached file.)

When i-motion mail is received by a phone that supports i-motion mail, the URL appears in the message body of the mail and the recipient can then download the movie by pressing the URL.

If you send i-motion mail to a phone that does not support i-motion mail, the i-motion is converted into consecutive still images and the recipient receives a mail message containing the URL for the images. The recipient can then download the images by pressing the URL displayed in the mail.



- Images are stored at the i-motion mail Center for up to 10 days. If this storage period is exceeded, the images are automatically deleted.
- A terminal that supports i-motion mail can receive a movie up to 500K bytes. The size of downloaded movie is automatically changed to the one that matches the terminal that supports i-motion mail.

■ Deco-mail

The FOMA terminal enables you to compose and send your own distinctive personalized mail or to receive attractively decorated mail by allowing you to vary the text size or change the background color, etc. when editing mail, or by pasting images into the message body. (If you receive decorated mail from a PC, it may not run as it did on the PC because some decorative features are not supported on i-mode terminals.)

If you send Deco-mail to a phone that does not support this function, a URL is included in the message body. The recipient presses on the URL to view the Deco-mail.

- Composing and Sending Deco-mail → P.259
- Compatible phones: Deco-mail compatible mobile phones. For details, refer to "i-mode User's Manual".

■ Templates

You can use templates pre-installed on the FOMA terminal to send Deco-mails and to receive festive mail messages such as Christmas, birthday and New Year's greetings.

- Using Templates to Create Deco-mail → P.266

■ Sending broadcast mail

This feature allows you to send the same i-mode mail message to multiple (up to 5) recipients at once.

- The communication charges for broadcast mail are the same as if only one message was sent. (However, the charge increases by the amount of data in the additional recipient addresses.)

■ Cc/Bcc sending and receiving

As on a PC, you can select "To", "Cc" and/or "Bcc" as the recipient when editing i-mode mail. However, if there is no address in the "To" field, the mail cannot be sent.

- "Change rcv. type" in function menu (new mail screen) → P.255

■ Chat mail

This allows you to exchange mail with several people just as if you were having a normal conversation.

- If there are multiple parties exchanging chat mail, the communication charges are the same as for broadcast mail.

NOTE

<Attachments>

- When "File restricted" is selected in "File restriction", you can still send still images shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera.
- If you send i-mode mail to a mova service i-mode terminal (excluding all the 501 models, R691i, and R209i), you can only send 1 JPEG-format image as an attachment.

<i-motion mail>

- If you send i-motion mail to an i-mode terminal, each i-motion browser URL for the i-motion stored at the i-motion Center can be accessed and the i-motion can be downloaded 50 times. Once it has been accessed downloaded 50 times, the i-motion can be no longer downloaded.
- When "File restricted" is selected in "File restriction", you can still send movies shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera.
- To play an i-motion on a PC, you must have compatible software. See the DoCoMo website for details.

Important

- We recommend that you take memos of the contents of your received, sent, and draft mails, and store them on the miniSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can also save them on your PC by using the Data Link Software (P.531) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You may lose the contents of your received, sent, and draft mails through damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. We take no responsibility in such an event so please take memos of the contents of your mail.

<Mail menu>

Displaying Mail Menu



Item	Description
Inbox	Shows the Inbox folder screen. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your received i-mode mail and SMS. → P.282
Outbox	Shows the Outbox folder screen. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your sent i-mode mail and SMS. → P.282
Draft	Shows the Draft mail list screen. Use this to check the details of temporarily saved i-mode mail and SMS. → P.270
Compose message	Shows the screen used for composing i-mode mail. → P.253
Chat mail	Shows the chat screen. → P.304
Compose SMS	Shows the screen used for composing SMS. → P.309
Check new message	Sends an inquiry to the i-mode Center and receives any i-mode mail held at the Center. → P.277
Receive option	Checks the subject lines of the i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center and then selects the i-mode mail to be received or deletes items of i-mode mail before it is received when "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". → P.276
Check new SMS	Sends an inquiry to the SMS Center and receives any SMS held at the Center. → P.313
Template	Shows the template screen. → P.267
Mail settings	"Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions" → P.299

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new i-mode mail message.

- To attach a melody, image, movie or i-motion → P.269
- You can change the size and color of the text used in the message body, assign actions to the text and insert images, lines and other decorative features. Deco-mail → P.259
- "Entering Text" → P.498

1



"New mail screen" appears.

You can display the "New mail screen" by selecting "Compose message" in the Mail menu.



Function menu → P.255

2

"To" <No address>

The selection menu for address appears.



3

Enter an address

■ Searching in the phonebook

▶ "Phonebook" ▶ Search the phonebook (P.111) ▶ Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detailed screen.

■ Searching in the address list

▶ "Sent address" or "Received address" ▶ Select a mail address.

■ Using Mail member

▶ "Mail member" ▶ Select a mail member.

For information on mail member → P.271

■ Entering a mail address directly

▶ "Enter address" ▶ Enter a mail address.

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch alphabets, numbers or symbols for a mail address.

When you enter a mail address, the new mail address field is displayed below the filled field. You can enter other mail addresses and send a same mail message to multiple recipients. You can enter up to 5 mail addresses.



Function menu → P.256

4

"Subject"

"Subject screen" appears.

5

Enter a subject

You can enter up to 15 full-pitch characters or 30 half-pitch characters.

6

"Message screen" appears.



Function menu → P.256

7

Enter message body

You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch characters or 10,000 half-pitch characters. You can also insert a line feed (hard return) while editing the message. A line feed is counted as 1 full-pitch character and shown as "↵". Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.

You can compose and send the Deco-mail. →P.259

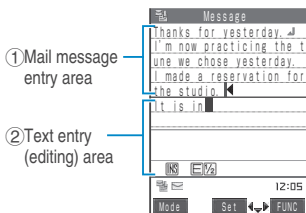
You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. →P.266



Function menu →P.257

Screen displayed when you enter an i-mode mail message

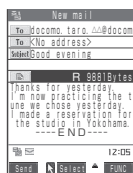
The screen when you enter an i-mode mail message is shown below.



- ① Mail message entry area: Shows the message that has been entered and confirmed so far.
- ② Text entry (editing) area: Shows the text to be entered, operation guidance and other information. This area shows the entered text before you confirm it. You can use the Word Prediction function to enter text in the text entry (editing) area. →P.505

8

Check the message (Send)



An animation is displayed while the i-mode mail is being sent. Select "OK" to return to the Mail menu screen.

To interrupt transmission

- ▶ (CLR) (1 second or longer)

Depending on the timing, the i-mode mail may be sent.

Composing i-mode mail from the phonebook screen



Locate and display an e-mail address stored in the phonebook and then press (MAIL).

Searching phonebook →P.111

The currently displayed phonebook e-mail address is pasted into the address field in the new mail screen.

Temporarily storing unfinished i-mode mail

Select "Save" from the function menu on the new mail screen while composing the message. The unfinished message is stored in the Draft mailbox. The Draft mailbox will hold up to 20 i-mode mail and SMS in all.

Once you have 20 draft messages stored, you cannot compose any more new i-mode mail or SMS.

You can subsequently re-edit and send i-mode mail saved in the Draft mailbox.

NOTE

- If the total number of sent mail items (including both i-mode mail and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 400 messages or the storage capacity for sent mail, sent mail is automatically replaced starting with the oldest message. Note that protected sent mail, and mail messages and SMS messages in the "Secret" folder are not overwritten. It is recommended to protect the important sent mail messages. →P.294, 296
- If "Restrict dialing" (P.165) is set, you can only browse the phonebook to retrieve the phone numbers specified in "Restrict dialing". Also, if "Keypad dial lock" (P.163) is set, you cannot enter the address directly nor refer to the mail members.

NOTE

- When sending mail to phones that do not support i-mode, do not use half-pitch katakana or pictographs in the subject or the message body as the recipients may not be able to display the mail correctly.
- If you select phone number or e-mail address which is already entered, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing data except for "Enter address". Select "YES" to overwrite the previous recipient or "NO" to retain the previous recipient. If you select "YES" when a mail member is selected, all the data is overwritten.
- If you press  or  without sending the current message, a confirmation message appears asking whether to discard the current message text and exit the editing screen. Select "YES" to discard the text entered so far or "NO" to return to the original screen without discarding the text.
- When the recipient address is a phone number and the number is preceded by the "184" or "186" prefix, a message appears when you try to send i-mode mail asking whether to delete the prefix before sending the mail. Select "YES" to send the i-mode mail without the "184" or "186" prefix. Select "NO" to return to the original screen.
- You cannot send i-mode mail to addresses that include a comma (,) or a space (blank).
- If you enter multiple addresses and the mail could not be sent to a recipient, a message appears notifying you that mail could not be sent to an address.
- When you try to send a mail which is addressed to the multiple same address, a message appears asking whether to delete the address and send.
- You can use To, Cc and Bcc to send an i-mode mail message to different addresses (P.255). However, you must set an address in the "To" field to send i-mode mail.
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly. Also, the "Transmission failed" message may appear even after the message has been sent.
- If you enter an address that was stored in the phonebook with a "Secret code" assigned (P.115), the secret code is automatically added to the address when the message is sent. However, the secret code is not displayed in the record of sent mail addresses.
- Provided the recipient is an i-mode subscriber, you can also send i-mode mail from the FOMA terminal to a mova service i-mode terminal.

Function menu (new mail screen)

1 New mail screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description	
Send	Sends i-mode mail.	
Preview	Allows you to check the mail address and content before sending a message.	
Save	Saves the i-mode mail message you are currently editing in the Draft mailbox. "Saving i-mode mail" → P.270	
Delete receiver	Deletes an added address. When other addresses are entered after the deleted address, the addresses close up to fill the space. If there is only 1 address entered, you cannot delete the address.	
Change rcv. type	Changes the address type with an address selected.	
	To	The recipient's address. Displayed to the recipient. The mail address entered in the "To" field is displayed in other recipients' terminals.
	Cc	Broadcasts address. The mail address entered in the Cc field are also displayed to the other recipients. Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses.
	Bcc	Broadcasts address. The mail address entered in the Bcc field are not displayed to the other recipients.
Template	You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. "Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" → P.266	
Attach file	Attaches a melody, image or i-motion data to an i-mode mail message. "Attaching Files" → P.269	
Activate camera	Activates camera function. "Shooting Still Images" → P.178 "Shooting Movies" → P.186	
	Photo mode	Starts up the camera function so you can shoot an image. The image sizes you can shoot are Stand-by (240 × 320) or Mail (S) (128 × 96).
	Movie mode	Starts up the camera function so you can shoot a movie. File size setting can be specified as Restricted (Short) or Restricted (Long).
Delete att. file	Deletes one attachment file.	
Del all att. files	Deletes all the attachment files.	
Add header	Pastes a header into the i-mode mail message.	

Item	Description
Add signature	Pastes your signature into the i-mode mail message.
Erase message	Erases the message body in the current i-mode mail message.
Delete	Deletes the current i-mode mail message.

NOTE

<Change rcv. type>

- You cannot send i-mode mail with no address set in the "To" field.
- E-mail addresses entered in the "To" and "Cc" fields are usually displayed to the recipient. However, depending on the terminal device and mail software used by the recipient, the e-mail addresses may not be displayed.

<Add header><Add signature>

- If you select the "Insert" checkbox in "Header/Signature", the header or signature is automatically pasted into the new i-mode mail message. → P.301
- If the combined size of the text (including attached melodies or images) and the pasted header and/or signature exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters or 10,000 half-pitch characters, you will not be able to paste the header and/or signature into the mail.

Function menu (address/subject screen)

1 Address/subject screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
PI•SB input mode	"Entering symbols and pictographs continuously" → P.509
Face Mark	"Entering face symbols" → P.509
Upper case^{*1}	"Switching between upper case and lower case" → P.507
Full pitch^{*2}	"Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters" → P.500
Copy	"Copying (or cutting) text" → P.514
Cut	"Copying (or cutting) text" → P.514
Paste	"Pasting text" → P.515
Common phrases	"Entering common phrases" → P.512
Space	"Inserting a space (blank)" → P.508
Line feed	"Inserting a line feed" → P.508
Symbols	"Inserting symbols" → P.508
Pictograph	"Entering pictographs" → P.509
Kuten code	"Entering Kuten Codes" → P.515
Overwrite^{*3}	Selects whether to insert or replace text at the cursor location during text entry.
Quote phonebook	"Entering text by quoting personal data or the phonebook entries" → P.512
Quote own number	"Entering text by quoting personal data or the phonebook entries" → P.512
Access reader	Pastes text information acquired with the "Access reader", "Scanning Text" → P.198
Bar code reader	Pastes text data acquired with the "Bar code reader", "Using the Bar Code Reader" → P.194
Refer dic.	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries" → P.431
Prediction ON^{*4}	Specifies whether to turn the word prediction function (displays previously entered words with similar spelling) ON or OFF. → P.505
CHG input method	Selects an input mode from "Mode 1 (5-touch)", "Mode 2 (2-touch)", or "Mode 3 (T9 input)". You can switch the character input mode only in the Text entry (edit) screen that is currently displayed. Once text entry exits and the Text entry (edit) screen reappears, the input mode returns to the one set in "Character input method".
T9 Kana CHG mode^{*5}	When you enter characters using the T9 input method, you can specify whether to convert entered characters to Kanji or to Kana. You can switch conversion modes only in the Text entry (edit) screen that is currently displayed. Once text entry exits and the Text entry (edit) screen reappears, it returns to the setting specified in "Character input method" → "T9 change mode".

Item	Description
Jump	Moves the cursor quickly to the beginning or end of sentence.

*1: "Lower case" appears in the subject screen.

*2: "Half pitch" appears in the subject screen.

*3: "Insert" appears when "Overwrite" is selected.

*4: "Prediction OFF" appears in the subject screen.

*5: "T9 Kanji CHG mode" appears when "T9 Kana CHG mode" is selected.

Function menu (message screen)

1 Message screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Decorate mail	"Basic operations and menus for Deco-mail" → P.260
PI•SB input mode	"Entering symbols and pictographs continuously" → P.509
Face Mark	"Entering face symbols" → P.509
Lower case	"Switching between upper case and lower case" → P.507
Half pitch	"Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters" → P.500
Copy	"Copying (or cutting) text" → P.514
Cut	"Copying (or cutting) text" → P.514
Paste	"Pasting text" → P.515
Common phrases	"Entering common phrases" → P.512
Space	"Inserting a space (blank)" → P.508
Line feed	"Inserting a line feed" → P.508
Symbols	"Inserting symbols" → P.508
Pictograph	"Entering pictographs" → P.509
Quote phonebook	"Entering text by quoting personal data or the phonebook entries" → P.512
Quote own number	"Entering text by quoting personal data or the phonebook entries" → P.512
Access reader	Pastes text information acquired with the "Access reader". "Scanning Text" → P.198
Bar code reader	Pastes text information acquired with the "Bar code reader". "Using the Bar Code Reader" → P.194
Refer dic.	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries" → P.431
Jump	Moves the cursor quickly to the beginning or end of sentence.
Property	Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message.
Undo	Returns the entered text or message decoration to its status in the previous step.
CHG input method	Selects an input mode from "Mode 1 (5-touch)", "Mode 2 (2-touch)", or "Mode 3 (T9 input)". You can switch the character input mode only in the Text entry (edit) screen that is currently displayed. Once text entry exits and the Text entry (edit) screen reappears, the input mode returns to the one set in "Character input method".
Preview	Displays a preview of the message.
Change window	When you are replying to mail while referring to the original message, this option switches between the reference screen and the message screen. "Changing the Active Screen" → P.518

NOTE

<Undo>

- After you press "Undo" and return the text or message decoration to its state one step ago, you cannot cancel "Undo".
- If you return from the message screen to the new mail screen and then go back to the message screen, you cannot "Undo". (If you select "Preview" on the message screen, after previewing the text, you are able to return.)

<Preview>

- When you have included a phone number, e-mail address, URL or a link to an i-appli in an i-mode mail message, it is shown underlined in the preview screen. However, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions cannot be used.

Sending an image you shot during a call <Speed photo mail>

This function allows you to send a picture shot during a voice call or a picture saved in your FOMA terminal to the other party.

- To use Speed photo mail, the phone number and e-mail address of the person you are talking to must be stored in the phonebook under the same memory number beforehand.

<Example: To send a picture taken as you speak>

1 In-call screen (P.58) ➤ (FUNC) ➤ “Speed photo mail” ➤ “Photo mode”

- **To send an image saved on the FOMA terminal**

➤ “Speed photo mail” ➤ “My picture”

Images that cannot be sent cannot be selected.

You can only send “Mail(L)” or “Mail(S)” images that are 9,000 bytes or less in size when they are attached to mails.

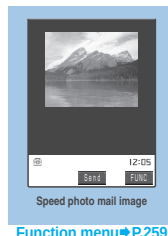
2 (Record) or (Camera)

The camera shoots an image.

The FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound as it takes the picture.

You can use the camera functions to adjust the brightness or set the image size before taking the picture. → P.179

“Speed photo mail image screen” appears.



Function menu ➤ P.259

3 (Send) ➤ (Select)



A send confirmation message appears.

- **When multiple e-mail addresses are registered**

➤ Select the e-mail address of the intended recipient



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

NOTE

- This function cannot be used in the following situations:

- When the other party's phone number and e-mail address are not stored in the phonebook
- When the other party's phone number and e-mail address are stored in the phonebook in “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”
- When the called party has not been provided a caller ID (User unset or Not supported, etc.)
- When Restrict dialing is set and the other party's phone number is not designated in the Restrict dialing settings
- When PIM lock is set
- During packet communication in data communication
- When the Draft mailbox is full
- During call waiting
- When the call was made during software updating

- Mail sent using this function is stored in the Outbox with your phone number as the subject.

- If “Image-valid” is not checked in “Attached file” (P.300), images in Speed photo mail are deleted on arrival.

- If “SXGA(1280 × 960)”, “VGA(640 × 480)”, “CIF(352 × 288)”, “Screen(240 × 345)” or “Stand-by(240 × 320)” is selected in “Select size”, the setting reverts to “Mail (L)(176 × 144)” when this function is launched.

- If you change the “Select size” while this function is running, only the “Mail(L)(176×144)” and “Mail (S)(128× 96)” formats can be selected.

<Priority order for addresses highlighted in the send confirmation screen>

- If there are multiple e-mail addresses stored for the other party, the addresses shown in the send confirmation display are highlighted in the following priority order (where ① has the highest priority):

- ① i-mode address (where the “@” symbol is followed by “docomo.ne.jp”)
- ② Phone numbers or addresses without domains (the domain name is the part that follows the “@” symbol)
- ③ The first address stored in the phonebook

Function menu (speed photo mail image)

1 Speed photo mail image screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description	
Save & send	Saves the photographed image in My picture and then sends it as speed photo mail. → P.258	
Compose message	Sends the photographed image as speed photo mail without saving it.	
Set as display	Saves and pastes the photographed image before sending it as speed photo mail. This is the same procedure as "Set as display" in the function menu (image checking screen). → P.180	
File restriction	File unrestricted (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	File restricted	Prevents the image from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
Cancel	Deletes the photographed image and so you can retake the shot.	

<Deco-mail>

Composing and Sending Deco-mail

The Deco-mail function allows you to make your i-mode mail (text mail) more visually appealing and exciting by changing the size and color of the text, the background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into your message.

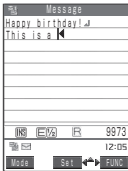
- When you send a Deco-mail to a terminal that does not support Deco-mail, the terminal receives a mail whose message includes URL for viewing the Deco-mail. The recipient can view the Deco-mail with Web To function by clicking the URL. The Deco-mail is held for up to 10 days and automatically deleted after 10 days. Depending on the recipient's mobile phone model, the mail may not be received or displayed correctly.
- If you decorate the message, you can enter fewer characters than in the i-mode mail which is not decorated (text mail).

1 Enter address and subject on the New mail screen (P.253) ► “ <No message>”

“Message screen” appears.

You can change the prepared templates or decorations to compose a Deco-mail. → P.266

2 Compose a Deco-mail



You can decorate the message body by selecting decoration menu and then entering text, or by selecting the entered text and then selecting decoration menu.

“Basic operations and menus for Deco-mail”. → P.260

■ Checking the decoration

Some decorations cannot be checked on the text entering screen. In this case, you can check the decoration by pressing (FUNC) and then selecting “Preview”.

3 Check the message ► (Send)

You can store the composed Deco-mail as a template. → P.267

NOTE

- If a mail is exchanged with PC or devices other than an i-mode terminal that supports Deco-mail, decorations may not be displayed correctly.
- If you quote or forward a mail whose message includes URL for Deco-mail, or if you enter the URL directly, you cannot view the Deco-mail from the terminals other than the one which received the original message.
- If you forward received Deco-mail or quote Deco-mail in a reply, inserted images and decorations appear as quoted in the message.
- If you quote or forward Deco-mail that includes an image that cannot be sent as mail, the image is deleted.

Basic operations and menus for Deco-mail

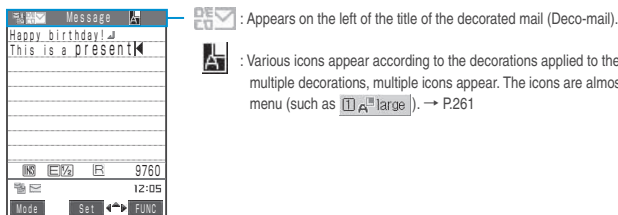
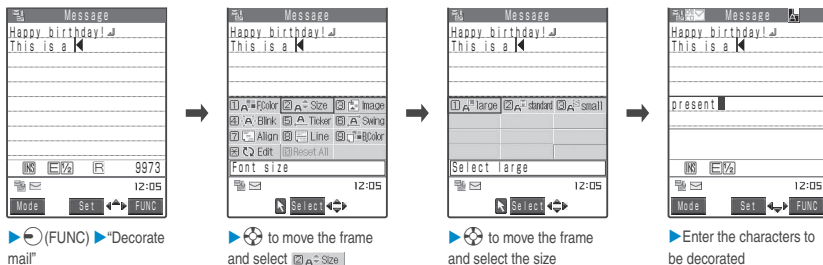
● The basic operations to decorate

Follow the procedures [A] or [B].

The procedure [A] decorates the text entered after the current cursor insertion point. The procedure [B] decorates the selected entered text.

- You can change the background color (irrelevant to the cursor insertion point) or insert images or lines (you do not have to specify the range) by following the procedure [A].
- You can change, add or cancel decorations only with the procedure [B].
- You can combine multiple decorations (example: changing the color and size of characters and making them blink).

[A] Selecting a decoration and then entering text <example: changing the character size>

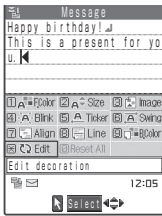


The entered characters are displayed in the changed character size.

[B] Decorating the entered characters <example: changing the character size>



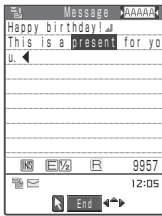
▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Decorate mail"



▶ to move the frame and select [Edit]



▶ to move the cursor at the first character you want to decorate, press (Start)
(All) : Selects the whole range.



▶ to move the cursor at the last character you want to decorate, and press (End).



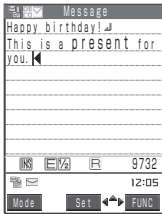
▶ to move the frame and select [A+Size]



▶ to move the frame and select the size



The size of the selected characters are changed.



The highlight is canceled when you move the cursor.

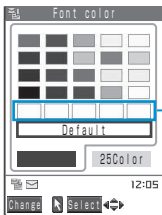
● The kind of the decoration menu

The screens and operations for the procedure [A] are described below.

Changing the color of characters/background ([A+FCOLOR] / [A+BCOLOR])



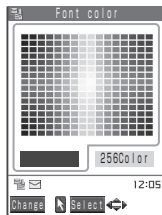
▶ to move the frame and select [A+FCOLOR] or [A+BCOLOR]



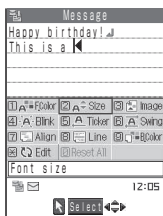
▶ to move the frame and select the color

Each time you press (Change), the palette switches between 25 colors and 256 colors.

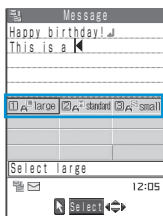
The last 5 colors selected in 256 colors palette are displayed at the bottom of the palette.



Changing the character size (Size)



▶  to move the frame
and select  Size



▶  to move the frame
and select the size

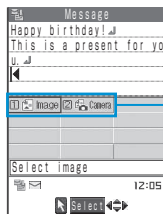
Available character sizes

Inserting an image (Image)

● To delete the inserted image, move the cursor on the line where the image is inserted and press .



▶  to move the frame
and select  Image



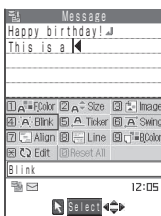
▶  to move the frame
and select  Image or
 Camera

Available image insertion menu

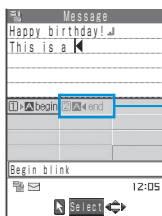
 Image : Selects an image to be inserted from My picture folder.
→ P.339
 Camera : Activates Camera function to shoot an image to be
inserted. → P.178

Making characters blink/Ticker/Swing ([A] Blink / [A] Ticker / [A] Swing)

- Ticker scrolls the entered text horizontally and Swing swings the entered text horizontally.
- Ticker and Swing decorates characters by lines, therefore, line feeds will be automatically inserted where you set the start point and the end point.



▶ [A] to move the frame and select [A] Blink, [A] Ticker or [A] Swing.



▶ [A] to move the frame and select [A] begin.

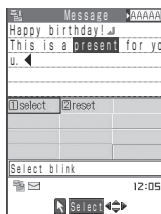
Select this item to determine the range of characters to be decorated after entering characters to be decorated.

■ In the case of procedure [B]

The following menu appears after "Start" and "End" are set, and a kind of decoration is selected.

[1]select : Decorates the selected characters.

[2]reset : Cancels the decorations of the selected characters.

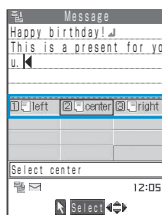


Align ([A] Align)

- Align decorates characters by lines, therefore, line feeds will be automatically inserted at the cursor insertion point.



▶ [A] to move the frame and select [A] Align.



▶ [A] to move the frame and select the line whose alignment is changed.

Available alignment settings

Inserting lines



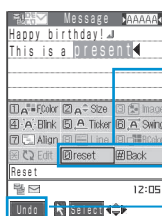
- Lines are inserted by lines, therefore, line feeds will be automatically inserted at the cursor insertion point when you insert a line.
- To delete the inserted line, move the cursor on the line of the line and press **[CLR]**.

▶ to move the cursor and select **[Line]**

Other functions



[Reset All] : Cancels all the decorations.



[Reset] : Cancels decorations of the selected characters.

[Back] : Returns to the message body entering screen.

[Undo] : Returns the entered text or decoration to its status in the previous step.

NOTE

<Changing the color of characters/background>

- Pictographs are also displayed in the specified color. To return them to their original color, select "Edit", specify the area to be changed and then select "reset".
- If you change the background color setting, the cursor color also changes in accordance with the selected colors.
- Some background colors may overlap with a font color of URL for downloading an image or i-motion so that it may be difficult to see the URL.

<Inserting an image>

- You can insert JPEG images or GIF images such that the total size of the message plus the image does not exceed 10,000 bytes. However, you can not insert an image which is prohibited to be output from your FOMA terminal.
- You can insert up to 10 images. However, if there are too many images to display, " " may appear before 10 images are reached. When the memory-low warning appears, press **[Select]**.
- If you insert multiple copies of the same image, they are handled as 1 image. However, if you save or send an image once and then edit the image and insert it again, it is handled as a separate image.
- If you copy and paste an image that has already been inserted in the edit display, it is also regarded as the same image and the original and copied images are handled as a single image. (This remains valid during re-editing.)
- If you insert an animation, the animation stops after a set time has elapsed.
- The image size for images shot using the camera function is Mail (S)(128 × 96).
- You cannot insert an image when it is prohibited to output to devices other than a FOMA terminal or send that image as an attachment.

<Making characters blink/Ticker/Swing>

- Blinking, ticker subtiting or swinging stops once a set time has elapsed.

<Editing the message body>

- If you insert a new character in the decorated characters, the decorations also effect to the newly entered character.
- If you move the cursor without entering a text after selecting a menu of the procedure [A] (entering a text after selecting a decoration menu), the specified decoration will be canceled.
- If you used "Add header" or "Add signature" in the compose message screen, the pasted header and signature take the decorative size and color attributes of the message text at the beginning and end of the message respectively. To change the decorations used for the header or signature, select "Decorate mail" and "Edit" in the function menu of Deco-mail screen after pasting them into the message.
- Even if you delete the decorated text, the decoration data itself may be retained and reduces the number of characters that can be entered. You should remove the decorations and then delete the text. Also, if you hold down **[CLR]** for 1 second or longer, all the characters and decoration data are deleted.

Deco-mail pictures

The Deco-mail pictures below are saved in the "Decomail-picture" folder in "My picture".

- In the message screen, select (FUNC)▶"Decorate mail"▶Image▶Image▶"Decomail-picture" folder.
- The depictions of Deco-mail shown here may differ slightly from what actually appears on the screen.



Mickey&Minnie 1



Mickey&Minnie 2



Mickey&Minnie 3



Mickey&Minnie 4



Mickey&Minnie 5



HELLO!



Good Night



Hey



Cheer Up!



Bubble wrap



Sad dogs



Happy cats



Mad!



Skateboard



Motorbike rider



Happy Birthday



Congratulations!



Roar!



A-chooo!



Heart1



Note



Food



Trouble



Bee



Pinwheel



Cube Line



Running dog



Heart2



Twinkle

Keep Out



yawn



sorry



angry



eat



lovely



sleeping



amazed



relaxed



sorrow1



sorrow2



Kingyo



Star



Snow



Shinkansen



Balloon 1



Balloon 2



Cold



Entertainment



Party



Stomachache

©BVIG

Using Templates to Create Deco-mail

You can create Deco-mail by using pre-installed templates. A template is a form for Deco-mail to which the layout and the ornament were already set. By using a template, Deco-mail can be created and transmitted easily.

Templates stored at the time of purchase → P.268

● You can download templates from sites. "Downloading Data Files from Sites" → P.228

● You can edit a template on the template preview screen. → P.268

● The decoration information is already included in the templates. Consequently, the number characters that can be entered may be fewer than for text mail.

● When you try to use a template in the following situations, a message appears asking whether to delete the edited content in the message:

- When there is already text entered in the mail message
- When the header or signature is automatically inserted
- When there is an attached file

● You cannot select a template that includes an image that cannot be sent as mail.

1 Enter an address and a subject on the new mail screen (P.253) ▶(FUNC)▶"Template"▶"Load template"▶Select a template

■ To display a preview of the template

▶Highlight a template▶(Play)

- The template is shown in the preview. → P.268
- During preview display, use (Play) to display other templates.
- If the template will not fit into the display, use (Scroll) to scroll the display.
- To select the template from the preview display, press (Select).

2 (Select)▶Enter a message



"Entering Text" → P.498

After you have applied the template, you can still enter a message. You can use "Decorate mail" (P.259) to add arrangement of decorative features.

3 Check the message▶(Send)



When you have included a phone number, e-mail address, URL or a link to an i-appli in the i-mode mail message, it is shown underlined in the preview screen. However, the "Phone To (AV Phone To)", "Mail To" and "Web To" functions cannot be used.

Saving a template

This function allows you to save the Deco-mail you are composing as a template.

- You can save up to 45 templates. You can also save up to six templates which are obtained by scanning QR codes attached to styleplus.
- If the message has any attachments files other than inserted images, those files are deleted and the message is saved as template.
- Text-only mail cannot be saved as a template.
- Templates are saved in "Template" in the Mail menu.

1 Compose a Deco-mail (P.259) ► (FUNC) ► "Template" ► "Save template" ► "YES"

NOTE

- The subject of the message being composed is used as the template title. If no subject is entered, "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" is used as the title (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).
If the date and time are not set, the title is "templateXX" (where X = 01 to 45).

Viewing the templates list

1 (MAIL) ► "Template"

"Template screen" appears.



Function menu ► P.267

Function menu (template screen)

1 Template screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Compose message	"Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" → P.266
Sort	Sorts the templates according to the specified criteria.
	Chronological ↑ Displays in reverse chronological order by save date/time.
	Chronological ↓ Displays in chronological order by save date/time.
	By title ↓ Displays templates in "Number (123) → Alphabet (aAbBcC) → Hiragana (あいう) → Kanji" order.
	By title ↑ Displays templates in "Kanji → Hiragana (ういあ) → Alphabet (CcBbAa) → Number (321)" order.
Edit title	Edits the title of the template. You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Info	Displays the template size, save date and whether or not it includes images.
Memory info	Shows the number of saved templates.
Delete	Deletes one template.
Delete selected	► Use (Select) to select a checkbox (☐) ► (Finish) ► "YES" Deletes multiple templates.
Delete all	► Enter the security code ► "YES" Deletes all the saved templates. Security code → P.152

NOTE

<Compose message>

- If you attempt to use "Header/Signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

Previewing a template

1 Template screen (P.267) ▶ Select a template

"Template preview screen" appears.



Function menu ▶ P.268

Function menu (template preview)

1 Template preview screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Compose message	"Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" → P.266
Edit	Edits the template.
Save insert image	▶ Select an image ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder ■ If the image can be set as a screen such as standby ▶ "YES" ▶ Select an item Saves the images inserted in the template. If you do not want to set the image in a screen such as standby, select "NO" after selecting the folder.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- If you attempt to use "Header/Signature" to automatically paste the header or signature, the header or signature is not pasted.

<Edit>

- The title used when the template is saved as a separate file is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).
If the date and time are not set, the title is "templateXX" (where X = 01 to 45).
- If the template contains no decorations at all after editing, it cannot be saved.

Pre-installed templates

- Actual displayed templates may differ slightly from those shown here.



Mickey&Minnie 1



Mickey&Minnie 2



Mickey&Minnie 3



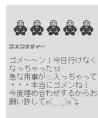
Mickey&Minnie 4



Mickey&Minnie 5



Thank You !



Sorry



Goody!



Shock!



Happy Birthday



Bear signature



What Are You Doing?



Invitation To Dinner



Heart



Flower



Twinkle



Speech Balloon



Thank You



How Are You?



Let's go!

©BVIG

<Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion mail>

Attaching Files

1 New mail screen (P.253) ► (FUNC) ► “Attach file” ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Attach melody	Selects a melody to be attached. → P.338, 375
Attach image	Selects an image to be attached. → P.338, 339
Attach i-motion	Selects an i-motion to be attached. → P.338, 357

■ To switch the image list screen

► On the image list screen ► (FUNC) ► “Title name”

The Picture list screen changes to the Title name list screen. You cannot select images that cannot be attached to mail.

To return to the Picture list screen, select “Picture” from the function menu.

■ To display an image

► Move the frame to the image you want to display ► (Play)

Images that cannot be sent as attachments are not displayed.

■ To play a melody

► Highlight a melody you want to play ► (Play)

Melodies that cannot be attached cannot be selected.

To stop melody playback, press (Stop), (F), (M), (H) or CLR.

If the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a message appears asking whether to play the melody. Select “YES” to play the melody.

■ To send an image to a mova service i-mode terminal using i-shot

You can use i-shot to send an image to a mova service i-mode terminal.

If you send an i-shot mail to a mova service i-mode terminal, you can attach only one JPEG image. If you attach multiple files or attach a GIF-format image downloaded from sites, all the attached files are deleted and only the message reaches the recipient.

When you send mail to a mova service i-mode terminal, unless the recipient has receive-divided-mail enabled, he or she can only receive messages up to 184 full-pitch characters long. If the recipient has receive-divided-mail enabled, the recipient can receive up to 2,000 full-pitch characters including the i-shot URL (where the image is held).

■ To re-size and change the file size of an image attached to a mail

To attach an image with a file size larger than 500K bytes that is stored in the My picture Inbox folder, Camera folder or in a folder you have created, select “Size for mail” → “Attach mail” from the function menu in the image list screen and reduce the file size to 500K bytes or less with no change in image size. → P.347

If the file size you are attaching is larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, select “Size for mail” → “QVGA scale down” from the function menu and reduce the file size to less than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high (or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high). → P.347

A file size of 240 dots wide × 320 dots high is the best size to send to an i-mode compatible terminal.

■ To re-size an i-motion attached to a mail

To attach an i-motion larger than 500K bytes to a mail, select “Trim for mail” from the function menu in the edit movie screen, and cut the file into sections less than 500K bytes. → P.369

NOTE

● The table below shows the files that can be attached to i-mode mail.

File type	Max. files attached to 1 mail	Comments
Melody	10	You can attach up to 10 image and/or melody files in all, up to a total size of 10,000 bytes (5,000 full-pitch characters). The maximum number of files varies according to file size.
Image ¹		
Large image ²	1	You can attach 1 large image, movie or i-motion. * Some files may not be attached depending on i-motion.
Movie/i-motion ³ (i-motion mail)		

*1: Still image shot using the built-in camera or a JPEG or GIF format image of 10,000 bytes (5,000 full-pitch characters) or less that was downloaded from a site

*2: JPEG format image larger than 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters) but no larger than 500K bytes (equivalent to 256,000 full-pitch characters). Note that the size is changed at the i-shot Center to the one suitable for being received at an i-mode terminal before being sent to the recipient. You cannot attach a GIF image that exceeds 10,000 bytes.

*3: Movie or i-motion of 500K bytes (equivalent to 256,000 full-pitch or 512,000 half-pitch characters)

● If an image selected for "Attach image" is more than the QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high) or Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high), the confirmation message "Large size image Attach to mail?" appears.

Select "YES" to attach the image. Select "NO" to cancel the attachment.

● If the amount of data remaining for the message (including attached files) is less than 200 bytes for i-mode mail (equivalent to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters) or less than 400 bytes for Deco-mail (equivalent to 200 full-pitch or 400 half-pitch characters), you cannot attach a large image, movie or i-motion.

● Images that cannot be attached cannot be selected.

● When you send an i-motion mail, a mail with a URL for viewing the i-motion is sent so that the i-motion can be viewed.

● Depending on the recipient's mobile phone model, the sent image may be displayed incorrectly or may not be displayed. A coarse image may also be displayed.

● When you send an i-motion mail, depending upon the phone model of the recipient, movies may be choppy and may be converted to continuous still images for viewing.

● You cannot attach movies stored on a miniSD memory card. Import the movie first.

● An image shown in the new mail screen may differ from the image as it is displayed in My picture. Images that are too large may not appear at all in the new mail screen. When this occurs, the image shown in My picture is sent to the recipient. Consequently, to view the image correctly, the recipient must save the image on his or her mobile phone and then view it using My picture.

● You can send still images shot on the built-in camera as attachments to an i-mode terminal, PC or third-party mobile phone. However, when attached images are sent to a mova service i-mode terminal, they are sent as an image browser URL with an automatically assigned storage period. The mova service user can then retrieve the image by clicking the URL. The body of mail sent to a mova service i-mode terminal can be up to 184 full-pitch (369 bytes) long (when the number of characters that can be received by the mova terminal is 250 full-pitch characters). If you attach multiple files, the attached files are deleted and only the message itself is sent.

● Attached melodies or GIF images cannot be received by a mova service i-mode terminal.

● You cannot attach a file if it is forbidden to send that file as a mail attachment or output it from your FOMA terminal.

● You can attach images or movies shot using the built-in camera even if "File restriction" is set to "File restricted".

● If the recipient is not using a FOMA N701i, melodies you send may not be playable.

<Save i-mode mail>

Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later

If you have to break off while composing i-mode mail, you can temporarily save the unfinished message on your FOMA terminal. This feature also enables you to edit and resend a message that you sent and saved earlier.

Saving i-mode mail

The unfinished message is stored in the Draft mailbox.

● The Draft mailbox will hold up to 20 i-mode mail and SMS in all.

● Once there are 20 message stored in the Draft mailbox, you cannot compose any more new i-mode mail messages.

1

New mail screen (P.253) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Save"

If there are no characters in the address, subject, or message body, the mail cannot be saved. If there is an attached file, the mail can be saved even when no text is entered.

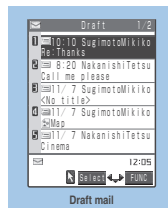
* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

Sending draft i-mode mail

1  **“Draft”**

“Draft mail screen” appears.

2 **Select a mail ▶ Edit the address, subject or message body and then send the mail**



Function menu▶P.271

Function menu (draft mail screen)

1 **Draft mail screen ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:**

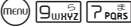
Item	Description
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from “Subject”, “Name” or “Address”. However, when the 2-line display is selected in “Mail list disp.” (P.299), it is not possible to select “1 line Subject”.
Send 1r data	“Transferring one data at a time”. →P.397
Send all 1r data	“Transferring multiple data at the same time” →P.398
Export this	Exports one mail to the miniSD memory card.
No. of messages	Shows the number of mails in the Draft mailbox.
Delete	Deletes one mail.
Delete selected	▶Use  to select a checkbox (□)▶  (Finish)▶“YES” Deletes multiple mails.
Delete all	▶Enter the security code▶“YES” Deletes all mails in the Draft mailbox. Security code →P.152

Storing Addresses in Mailing Lists

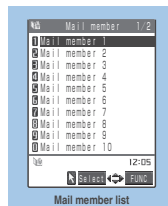
Default setting
Not stored

If you store groups of addresses on your FOMA terminal as members in a mailing list, you can then address i-mode mail to multiple addresses simply by selecting a mailing list when you compose the message.

● You can store up to 20 mailing lists with up to 5 e-mail addresses in each list.

1   

“Mail member list screen” appears.



Function menu▶P.272

2

Select a mail member

"Mail member detail screen" appears.

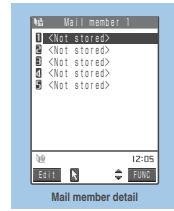
3

Highlight "<Not stored>" ► (Edit) ► Enter the mail address

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters in each e-mail address.

To store more e-mail addresses, repeat step 3.

"Entering Text" → P.498



Function menu ► P.272

NOTE

- You cannot display mailing lists when PIM lock is set.
- If you attempt to send a mail to mailing list members that have the same address, a message appears asking whether to delete the duplicated addresses before sending the mail. Select "YES" to delete the addresses before sending the mail.

Function menu (mail member list screen)

1

Mail member list screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the members of the mailing list pasted into the recipients field. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
Edit member name	Edits the name of the mailing list. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Reset member name	Resets the mailing list name to the default name.

Function menu (mail member detail screen)

1

Mail member detail screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description						
Edit address	Edits the e-mail address. You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498						
Look-up address	■ If no address is stored ► Select any item ■ If addresses are stored ► "YES" ► Select any item Enters the e-mail address by browsing the phonebook and records. <table> <tr> <td>Phonebook</td><td>Enters an e-mail address by searching from the phonebook entry detail screen. Searching phonebook → P.111</td></tr> <tr> <td>Sent address</td><td>Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Received address</td><td>Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.</td></tr> </table>	Phonebook	Enters an e-mail address by searching from the phonebook entry detail screen. Searching phonebook → P.111	Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.	Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Phonebook	Enters an e-mail address by searching from the phonebook entry detail screen. Searching phonebook → P.111						
Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.						
Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.						
Delete this	Deletes the address.						
Delete all	► Enter the security code ► "YES" Deletes all members in the mailing list. Security code → P.152						

When You Receive i-mode Mail

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- You can use "Select ring tone" (P.126) to change the ring tone used by the FOMA terminal when you receive mail, and you can use "Illumination" (P.141) to change the flashing pattern used when mail arrives.
- The FOMA terminal can also receive i-mode mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal.

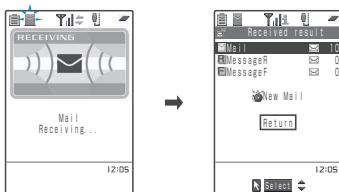
1

When you receive an i-mode mail, the " (blue)" icon flashes and the "Mail Receiving..." message appears

Once the mail has been received, the reception results screen appears showing the number of mails and Message Request/Free received.

Select "Mail" to display the received mail list screen.

If you do not press any of the FOMA terminal's keys for around 15 seconds, the original screen reappears. The display period for the reception results screen may vary depending on the setting of "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P.130). The ring tone volume is the volume that was set at "Mail" in "Ring volume" (P.77).



■ When you receive mail from the i-shot service

If you receive i-shot service mail sent from an i-mode terminal with mova service, images arrive as attached files.

■ When you receive a mail with a large image attached

If a large image that is more than 10,000 bytes in size attached to i-mode mail is successfully received automatically, " (blue)" is displayed and the received image is stored in My picture. If the image could not be received automatically, select " (blue)" in the mail detail display to receive the image and save it in My picture.

When the memory for saved image is full, a message asking you whether to delete unwanted images and then receive the image appears. If you want to receive the image, select "YES" and select an image to delete.

NOTE

- When the " (blue)" icon is flashing, the FOMA terminal is receiving mail. When all the mail has been received, the icon stops flashing and remains on the display.
- When the " (red)" or " (red)" icon appears, the FOMA terminal can receive no further mail. You can receive new mail message by deleting unwanted mail messages or reading unread messages. Also, you can receive new mail message by releasing protect (P.292, 295). The new mail message overwrites the oldest message.
- If the total number of received i-mode mail and/or SMS stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds 1,000 messages or the FOMA terminal's storage capacity even if the number of messages does not reach 1,000, received mail in the Trash box and old received mail is automatically deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that unread or protected received mail and mail and SMS in "Secret" folder are not deleted. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. → P.292, 295
- When an extremely large i-mode mail message is sent to you that cannot be accepted by the i-mode Center, it may be returned to the sender together with an error message.
- You can use "Attached file" (P.300) to specify whether you will accept melodies or images attached to your mail.
- Once the FOMA terminal has received your i-mode mail, the i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center is deleted.
- i-mode mail allows you to send and receive mail with melodies or images included as attached files. Unsupported attachments are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the "添付ファイル削除" (Attached file deleted) message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message.
- When new i-mode mail is delivered to your FOMA terminal, you also receive any other i-mode mail or Message Request/Free that were being held at the i-mode Center.
- If you receive i-mode mail from a terminal capable of specifying "To", "Cc" and "Bcc" recipients, refer to the mail detail screen to see whether your own address was in the "To", "Cc" or "Bcc" field. → P.286
- You can set a limit in advance on the sizes of the i-mode mail you receive. → P.247
- When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and Message Request/Free at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.

NOTE

- If you receive i-mode mail when the standby screen is not shown on the FOMA terminal and "Operation preferred" is set in "Receiving display", the FOMA terminal does not ring. When "Alarm preferred" is selected, the FOMA terminal plays the ring tone and displays the reception results screen.
- If you receive i-mode mail when the FOMA terminal is folded, it is displayed in the indicator display.
- If you receive i-mode mail while playing an i-motion, the video and sound may be interrupted.
- If you receive an i-mode mail while the chat mail is activated, you can switch from chat screen to reception result screen to check the mail reception.

<If you received a mail with a large image attached>

- If a tools group function (P.408) is active or the FOMA terminal is ringing and you select "New mail" (New mail icon), a message appears saying that you cannot retrieve a large still image and the image is not retrieved. Quit the active function before retrieving the image.

<Priority order for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>

- Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone and illumination when you receive i-mode mail. ① has the highest priority.
 - ① The settings specified for each e-mail address in phonebook utilities. → P.119
 - ② The settings specified for each group in group utilities → P.119
 - ③ The "Select ring tone" → P.126 / "Style mode" → P.147, "Illumination" settings → P.141

Viewing new i-mode mail

- Depending upon the Deco-mail's background color, the color of the URL text to download the image or i-motion may overlap and hence unreadable.

1 On standby screen▶▶▶ Select "New mail" (New mail)



2 Select a received mail

NOTE

- Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.
- If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, either "I" or "II" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- If the size of mail to be sent to you exceeds the value set in "Limit Mail Size" in "Options", the file or data that is attached or pasted in the mail is deleted in the i-mode Center so that you cannot download it.
- The FOMA terminal may sometimes be unable to correctly display images attached to i-mode mail. Images larger than 240 dots wide are shown reduced.
- If you receive decorated mail (HTML mail) from a PC, the decorations may not be displayed correctly.
- You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To, or Web To functions included in a mail message received from a PC.

Emotion-expressing mail

An icon pops up and shows the emotion matching the contents of the received mail. You can also specify the icon for the received mails containing the keywords specified.

- The following are the icons for the emotion-expressing mail:

Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning
	Hurry		Advice		OK
	Love you		Go for it		Reply
	Hate you		Question		Information
	Happy		Join		Angry

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.380

Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning
	Remark		Sad		Please
	Fun		Note		Icon unsupported*
	Surprised				

* : "Icon unsupported" icon is displayed for the following mails:

- Mail forwarded by Infrared data exchange or cable connection
- Mail copied from miniSD memory card
- SMS copied or moved from FOMA card (UIM)
- SMS in FOMA card (UIM)
- etc.

● You can specify whether to display icons in "Emotion/Keyword". → P.302

● The followings are "Disp keyword" icons that appear when you receive a mail that includes the specified keyword.

You can specify the settings of "Disp keyword" in "Emotion/Keyword". → P.302



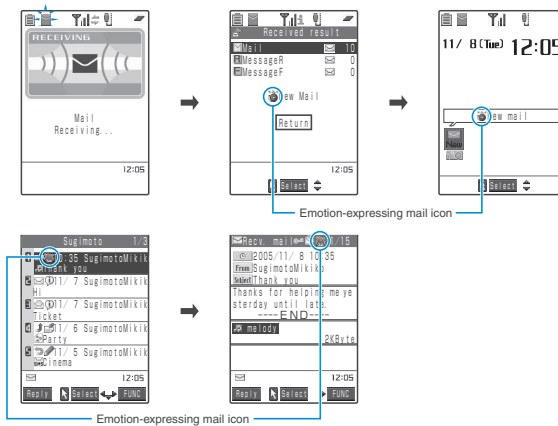
● If the received mail includes the contents for the icons of emotion-expressing mails or keywords, the following priority will be applied. ① has the highest priority.

① Disp keyword 1 ② Disp keyword 2 ③ Disp keyword 3 ④ Disp emotion

● The icons for the received i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS are displayed as follows.

● You can pick up the messages with the specified emotion-expressing mail icon by using the filter function.

→ P.292



NOTE

- Depending on the received i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, the icons displayed may not match the contents.
- Emotion-expressing mail icons are not displayed for Message Request/Free.
- The reception date and time, subject and up to 1,000 bytes (500 full-pitch characters) from the beginning in the message are searched for determining an appropriate emotion-expressing mail icon. The subject and all the message texts are searched for "Disp keyword" icon.
- When you receive two mails or more at the same time, only the icon for the newest mail is displayed on the reception results screen and as a popup on desktop.
However after receiving the mails, all the icons for the received mails are displayed on the received mail list screen.

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

This function allows you to check information such as the titles of mail held at the i-mode Center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete mail at the Center before you receive it.

- To use this function, you must first select "ON" in "Receive option setting" (P.300).

When mail arrives

When the FOMA terminal notifies you of mail received from the i-mode Center, a message appears stating that mail is kept at the i-mode Center, and "MAIL" icon is displayed at the top of the screen. Both "MAIL" (blue)" and "MAIL" (blue)" are not displayed. When you confirm the message and press any key, the message and icon disappear.



NOTE

- The message and "MAIL" icon are not displayed while All lock, PIM lock or Driving mode is set. When you release those functions, the message and the icon appear.
- During Multi-tasking, only "MAIL" icon is displayed on the current task screen, and the message is displayed when standby screen is displayed.

Receiving mail selectively

1

MAIL "Receive option"

- If "Receive option setting" is set to "OFF"

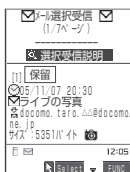
A message appears asking whether you want to enable mail receive options. Select "Receive option setting" to specify the "Receive option" setting. When you set the receive option to "ON", the Mail menu screen reappears.

If you used this function to show the receive option screen, the "MAIL" icon disappears even when you do not receive or delete mail.

The "MAIL" icon also disappears if you turn the FOMA terminal off or display the mail screen.

2

Select and set option for each item of i-mode mail



“受信” Accept: Accepts the selected mail.

“削除” Delete: Deletes the selected mail.

“保留” Hold: Leaves the selected mail at the i-mode Center.
Use "Check new message" (P.277) to receive the mail.

- To delete all mails

▶ “削除”(Delete) at the bottom of the page ▶ “決定”(OK)

- When there are multiple pages of mail

▶ “前ページ”(Previous page) or “次ページ”(Next page) ▶ Move to other pages and select the mail to be accepted

When you view the 2nd page, your selections on the 1st page remain valid.

The meanings of the icons displayed after “サイズ(Size):XXXバイト(bytes)” are as follows:

	Image file attached.
	Melody file attached.
	i-motion attached.

3 “受信／削除”(Receive/Delete)▶“決定”(OK)

The completion screen appears and mail reception begins.



■ To cancel selective reception

▶“キャンセル”(Cancel)

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

Selecting “Receive/Delete” mid-way through the pages applies your options (hold, accept or delete) to the mail up to the selected page and mail on the remaining pages remains held at the i-mode Center.

NOTE

● You can also access “Receive option” as follows:

・ (i-mode) ▶ “iMenu” ▶ “メニューリスト”(Menu List) ▶ “メール選択受信”(Receive option)

● If you use “Check new message”, all messages will be downloaded even if the “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”. Deselect “Mail” in “Set check new message” (P.301) if you do not want to receive any mail.

● If the Receive option setting is “ON”, you cannot automatically receive mail, the mail ring tone will not sound, and the vibrator does not vibrate.

<Check new message>

Checking for i-mode Mail

Default setting

Check for all (Mail, Message Request and Message Free)

The i-mode mail messages which the FOMA terminal could not receive are held at the i-mode Center. You can receive the held mail messages by checking for i-mode mail at the i-mode Center.

- i-mode mail messages are held at the i-mode Center in the following cases:
 - ・ When the FOMA terminal is turned off
 - ・ When “ ” is displayed
 - ・ When the Inbox is full
 - ・ When “Receive option setting” (P.300) is set to “ON”
 - ・ During a videophone call or remote observation
 - ・ When Self mode is set
 - ・ When connecting to the FirstPass Center
- You cannot check for new mail when “ ” is displayed.
- Use “Set check new message” (P.301) to specify which items are checked for.

1 (MAIL) ▶ (1 second or longer)



The check new message screen appears.

You can also check new messages by following procedures below.

- ・ (i-mode) ▶ “Check new message”
- ・ (MAIL) ▶ “Check new message”

The FOMA terminal checks for “Mail” → “MessageR” → “MessageF”.

The “ ” (blue), “ ” (green) and “ ” (purple) icons flash during checking, and the “Checking...” message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and Message Request/Free.

■ To cancel the inquiry

▶ Hold down for 1 second or longer during the inquiry

When you cancel an inquiry, depending on the timing of the cancellation you may still receive the i-mode mail and messages.

2 Check for new i-mode mails, Message Request and Message Free ▶ “Return”

NOTE

- If the "  (blue)" icon was displayed, you have i-mode mail messages held at the i-mode Center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode Center for holding your i-mode mail messages is full, the "  (red)" icon is displayed.
- If icons such as "  (red)", "  (red)", "  (red)" and "  (red)" are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail or Message Request/Free. You can receive new messages by deleting unwanted mail, SMS or Message Request/Free or reading unread mail, SMS or Message Request/Free. Also, you can receive messages by releasing protect (P.237, P.292). The message overwrites the oldest message.
- Even when there is i-mode mail held at the i-mode Center, the "  (blue)" icon is not displayed if the mail arrived at the Center while the FOMA terminal is turned off or the "  (red)" is displayed.
- You cannot use this function to check for SMS. Use "Check new SMS" to download SMS.

<Reply to mail>

Replying to i-mode Mail

You can send a reply to an i-mode mail message. When replying, you can either compose a new message, compose a reply while referring to the original message, or quote the body of the received message in your reply.

- A reply has "Re:" automatically inserted into the front of the subject. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 full-pitch characters (including "Re:"), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.
- "Entering Text" → P.498

Replying by composing a new message

1 Received mail list screen (P.284) or received mail detail screen (P.286) ► (Reply) ► Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P.253.

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

► "Reply" ► "To sender"

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select "Reply" and then "To all".

If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including the other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

After the reply has been sent, the received mail list screen or received mail detail screen appears and the "  " icon changes to "  ". However, if you reply to an unread mail message, "  " does not change to "  ".

NOTE

- The "  " icon is displayed for senders to whom you cannot reply (e.g. senders with e-mail addresses longer than 50 half-pitch characters).
- You cannot reply to mail if there are already 20 messages in the Draft mailbox.
- When you reply to i-mode mail that has "Re:" (all half-pitch characters) already included in the subject line, "Re2:" is inserted into the reply's i-mode mail subject line instead of "Re:". Similarly, if "Re2:" is included, "Re3:" is inserted in the reply, and "Re4:" if "Re3:" is included and so on up to "Re99:". If the "Re:" in the original mail includes full-pitch characters or an upper case "E" ("RE:"), this is discarded and replaced by "Re:" in your reply.
- Even if you reply to an i-shot mail sent from the address "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp", the message will not be sent to the original sender.

Replying by referring to received mail

1 Received mail detail screen (P.286) ► (FUNC) ► “Reply with ref”



In “Reply with ref”, the top part of the display is the message entry screen, while the lower part shows the received message (reference screen).

■ To switch between the reference and message entry screens

► (FUNC) ► “Change window” or (1 second or longer)

“Changing the Active Screen” → P.518

■ To copy the message, subject or address from the reference screen

► Reference screen ► (FUNC) ► “Copy” ► “Message”, “Subject” or “Address”

How to copy text → P.514

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

► “Reply with ref” ► “To sender”

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select “Reply with ref” and then “To all”.

If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including the other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

2 Edit the message body and send it

■ To edit the subject

► Select “ Subject” ► Enter a subject

If return to the mail reply screen and then display the message entry screen again, the reference screen is not displayed.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 6 to 8 on P.253.

After the reply has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the icon changes to .

Replying by quoting the received message

You can quote the received i-mode mail in your reply.

● Attached files are deleted when you quote i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (P.286) ► (FUNC) ► “Reply with quote” ► Edit the subject and message body and send it

■ To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses

► “Reply with quote” ► “To sender”

To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses, select “Reply with quote” and then “To all”.

The message in the received i-mode mail is quoted in the body of the reply.

A single quotation symbol (set to “>” by default) is displayed at the start of the quoted message in the reply. Quotation symbols are not shown at the beginning of each line.

To edit the quotation symbol → P.301

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 4 to 8 on P.253.

After the reply has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the icon changes to .

NOTE

- You cannot reply when 20 mails are stored in the Draft mailbox.
- If you add a quotation symbol to an i-mode mail message and the combined size of the message and the quotation symbol exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters, a message appears informing you that you have exceeded the limit on the acceptable number of characters. Press (Select) to display the message entry screen and then delete text until the message length no longer exceeds the limit.
- If there is a file attached to the i-mode mail messages you are replying to, a message appears notifying you that the attached file will be deleted. Pressing (Select) deletes the file and displays the mail reply screen.
- If you insert an image into the body of a Deco-mail message that is prohibited to be output from your FOMA terminal or send an attachment, the image is deleted before the message is sent.
- When data is pasted in an i-mode mail message, the pasted data is deleted when replying to the i-mode mail by “Reply with quote”.

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients

You can forward i-mode mail you have received to other people.

- Forwarded mail has "Fw:" automatically inserted in the subject line. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 full-pitch characters (including "Fw:"), the part that exceeds this limit is deleted.

1 Received mail detail screen (P.286) ► (FUNC) ► "Forward" ► Enter an address

For detailed information on entering addresses → P.253

You can edit the subject and message body. You can forward i-mode mail consisting of up to a total of 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters including the received message body and any additional messages, headers, signatures and attached melodies or images.

2 (Send)

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the "✉" icon changes to "📧".

NOTE

- You cannot forward mail if there are already 20 messages in the Draft mailbox.
- When you forward i-mode mail that has "Fw:" (all half-pitch characters) already included in the subject line, "Fw2:" is inserted into the forwarded i-mode mail subject line instead of "Fw:". Similarly, if "Fw2:" is included, "Fw3:" is inserted in the forwarded mail, and "Fw4:" if "Fw3:" is included and so on up to "Fw99:". If the "Fw:" in the original mail includes full-pitch characters or an upper case "W" ("FW:"), this is discarded and replaced by "Fw:" in the forwarded mail.
- If the file which is prohibited to be attached to mails or output from your FOMA terminal is attached to or pasted into i-mode mail to be forwarded, the file and its information is deleted.
- If the image was not received, it cannot be attached.
- When data is pasted in an i-mode mail message, the pasted data is deleted when forwarding the i-mode mail.

Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook

You can add the e-mail address or phone number of the sender of received mail to your phonebook.

- For the received SMS message, the sender's phone number is stored in the Phonebook as a phone number.

<Example: Adding the sender's e-mail address to the phonebook>

1 Received mail detail screen (P.286) ► (FUNC) ► "Save address"

■ When there are multiple e-mail addresses to be added

► On the e-mail address selection screen, select the e-mail address you want to add

■ To add a recipient e-mail address or phone number in a sent i-mode mail

► Sent mail detail screen ► (FUNC) ► "Save address"

If the mail was sent to multiple addresses, select the e-mail address to be added from the displayed list of e-mail addresses.

■ To add an e-mail address or phone number included in the body of sent or received i-mode mail

► "Sent mail detail screen" or "Received mail detail screen" ► Highlight an e-mail address or phone number you want to add ► (FUNC) ► "Add to phonebook"

2 "YES" ► "Phone" ► "New"

The add new phonebook entry screen appears with the entered information displayed. Enter the required items and store the entry.



■ To add information to the UIM phonebook

► "YES" ► "UIM"

When you add information to the UIM phonebook, "Overwrite" is displayed as the storage method instead of "Add".

Adding information to phonebook → P.107, 108

<Save melody>

Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail

A melody (🎵 or 🎶) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail is played automatically when you display the received mail details screen. You can save the data on the FOMA terminal.

- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- If the sender was not using a FOMA N701i, the received melody may not play correctly.
- Select the melody mail beforehand.

1 Received mail detail screen (P.286) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save data” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder

■ To stop the melody

▶ (🔍), (E), (0-9) to (0-9), (*), or (#)

■ To prevent melodies from playing automatically when you open mail

▶ Set “Auto melody play” (P.299) to “OFF”

■ When the memory for storing melodies is full

A message appears asking whether to delete a melody before saving the new melody. To save the new melody, select “YES”. Then select the melody to be deleted.

2 “YES” ▶ Select an item

■ Not to set the melody as a ring tone, etc.

▶ “NO”

NOTE

- If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.

<Save image mail>

Saving Images in Image Mail

You can save images (🖼️) attached to received i-mode mail.

- Select the image mail beforehand.

1 Received mail detail screen (P.286) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Save data” ▶ “YES” ▶ Select a folder

In the case of the Deco-mail, the images inserted in the body are displayed, and the attached images are displayed when you select the file name. In other cases, all the attached images are displayed.

■ To change image display to file name display

▶ Select the image that you want to see as a file name

To return to image display, select the displayed file name of an image.

■ When the memory for saved images is full

A message is displayed asking you to delete unwanted images and then save the image. To save the new image, select “YES”. Then select the image to be deleted.

2 “YES” ▶ Select an item

■ Not to set the image in the standby screen, etc.

▶ “NO”

NOTE

- Images in formats that are larger than the display are shown reduced. However, images that are too large may not be displayed at all in some cases.
- Images may be displayed differently in i-mode mail and My picture. Consequently, to view an image correctly, you must first save the image in the “Inbox” folder and view the image from “My picture”.
- A JPEG image attached to an i-mode mail that is larger than 10,000 bytes is automatically loaded. If it is not automatically loaded, you can load it by selecting “🖼️” in the i-mode mail. The image is automatically saved in INBOX in My picture in Data box.

Playing and Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail

When you receive an i-motion data sent as i-motion mail, the data is not downloaded to the FOMA terminal when you receive mail. This function downloads the i-motion from the i-motion Mail Center and saves it on your FOMA terminal.

- You receive the mail to which the URL to browse the i-motion is attached.
- Select an i-motion mail beforehand.

1 Received mail detail screen (P.286)▶Select a URL▶“YES”

Once the i-motion has been downloaded on your FOMA terminal, the “Data acquisition screen” appears.

■ To cancel i-motion downloading mid-way

▶ (Quit)

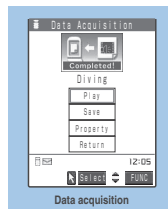
■ To save a downloaded i-motion

▶Data acquisition screen▶“Save”▶“YES”▶Select a folder

You can save the downloaded i-motion in your FOMA terminal. → P.243

■ To display information about the downloaded i-motion

▶Data acquisition screen▶“Property”→P.243



Function menu▶P.242

NOTE

- If “ON” is selected in “i-motion auto replay” (P.244), the FOMA terminal plays the i-motion during downloading. However, depending on the signal quality, playback may pause or the image may break up. When this occurs, play the i-motion again after it has finished downloading.
- You cannot use fast playback, frame advance or slow playback when an i-motion is playing during downloading (first playback only).

Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox

The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000 received i-mode mail and SMS in all and up to 400 sent i-mode mail and SMS in all. You can protect the half of the messages as many as the maximum capacity. The number of the messages the FOMA terminal can hold or protect varies depending on the data size. When data with large file size is stored, the number decreases.

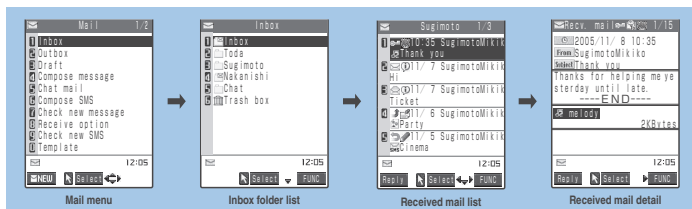
- i-mode mail allows you to send messages consisting of up to 5,000 full-pitch characters and receive mail with messages consisting of up to 5,000 full-pitch characters.

Reading i-mode mail messages

<Example: Reading a received mail message>

1 ▶“Inbox”▶Select a folder▶Select a mail

The “Secret” folder is displayed in the folder list screen when the FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret only mode.



Function menu▶P.288

Function menu▶P.291

Function menu▶P.295

■ To view the previous or next mail

▶Mail detail screen▶

Press to return to the received mail list screen.

NOTE

- To view the contents of a folder for which mail security is set, enter your security code. However, if "Mail security" (P.164) is set for the Inbox or Outbox in the Mail menu, you do not have to enter your security code again because you have to enter it to view the Inbox folder screen or Outbox folder screen.
- By selecting "Mail info" from the function menu in the received mail list screen, you can check the sender, the subject and the date and time a message arrived at the i-mode Center before actually opening the mail.
- You can also paste the e-mail address of an i-mode mail sender or one of the broadcast mail recipients into your standby screen as a desktop icon. You can then use the pasted desktop icon to compose a new i-mode mail message addressed to that e-mail address. However, you cannot paste e-mail addresses with the "Fm" icon, "To" or "Cc" icon as desktop icons. Note that for broadcast mail also, only one e-mail address can be pasted in each operation.

■ Mail-connected i-appli

- i-mode mail sent using a mail-connected i-appli is sorted into the dedicated folder for that mail-connected i-appli.
- Where the sender used a mail-connected i-appli to send i-mode mail and the recipient has created a dedicated mail folder for that mail-connected i-appli, the i-mode mail is sorted into that folder.

If there is no dedicated folder but the "Auto-sort" function has been set, mail is sorted into the folder designated in the "Auto-sort" settings. If the "Auto-sort" function has not been set, mail is sorted into the Inbox.

- Selecting the dedicated folder for a mail-connected i-appli activates the software.
- To view the mail list screen for a folder without activating the software, highlight the folder and select "Open folder" from the function menu.

Guide to the folder list screens

The following is a guide to the conventions used in the folder list screens.

- Mail can be saved in any of the folders in the Inbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the "Inbox", "Chat" and "Trash box" folders, but you can add folders using the function menu and mail-connected i-appli.
- Mail can be saved in any of the folders in the Outbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the "Outbox" and "Chat" folders, but you can add folders using the function menu and mail-connected i-appli.
- The Draft mailbox does not contain any folder.



Function menu→P.288

- ① : Contains no unread mail.
- ② : Contains unread mail.
- ③ : Contains no unread mail and security (P.164) is set.
- ④ : Contains unread mail and security is set.
- ⑤ : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-appli (P.319)
- ⑥ : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-appli containing unread mail
- ⑦ : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-appli with security set
- ⑧ : Received mail folder for a mail-connected i-appli with security set and containing unread mail
- ⑨ : Trash box folder
- : Trash box folder with security set
- ⑩ : "Secret" folder

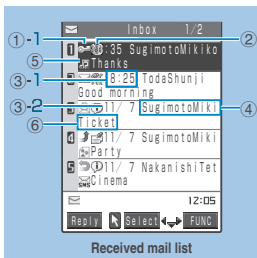


Outbox folder list
Function menu→P.288

- ① : Sent mail folder
- : Sent mail folder with security (P.164) set.
- ② : Sent mail folder for a mail-connected i-appli (P.319)
- ③ : Sent mail folder for a mail-connected i-appli with security set
- ④ : "Secret" folder

Guide to the mail list screens

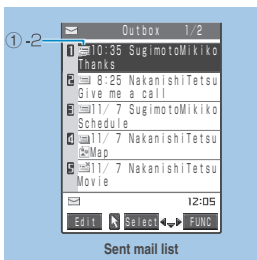
The following is a guide to the conventions used in the mail list screens.



Received mail list
Function menu→P.291

- ① Shows the mail status.

- ①-1 Received mail
 - : Unread mail
 - : Read mail
 - : Forwarded mail
 - : Replied-to mail
 - : Unread protected mail
 - : Read protected mail
 - : Forwarded protected mail
 - : Replied-to protected mail



Sent mail list
Function menu→P.294

- ①-2 Sent mail

- : Mail sent successfully
- : Mail sent unsuccessfully
- : Mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully
- : Mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully
- : Mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully
- : Protected mail sent successfully
- : Protected mail sent unsuccessfully
- : Protected mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully
- : Protected mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully
- : Protected mail to multiple recipients, none sent successfully

- ② Emotion-expressing mail icon that indicates characteristics of the message

(e.g.) : Emotion-expressing mail icons→P.274

- ③ Shows the time and date of transmission

③-1 The time is shown for mail sent and received today.

③-2 The date is shown for mail sent and received yesterday or before.

- ④ Shows the sender/recipient. For a sender/recipient stored in the phonebook, this can be changed to show the e-mail address, phone number or name. If the sender's address is stored in the phonebook and an image is also stored, is displayed.

- ⑤ Shows the message type and the attached or pasted file information type.

<2-line display>

: SMS

: SMS with SMS report received

: SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM)

: Attached melody

: Multiple attached melodies, some of which were invalid or deleted.

: All the attached melodies were invalid or deleted.

: Attached image

-  : Multiple attached images, some of which were invalid or deleted.
-  : All the attached images were invalid or deleted. (Too many attached images to be displayed on the mail detail screen).
-  : Large image downloaded and confirmed as OK.
-  : Large image downloaded but was then found to be invalid or was deleted.
-  : Large image attached but was not automatically downloaded.
-  : Before downloading, attached large image was found to be invalid.
-  : Displayed when an i-mode mail with an attached i-motion has been sent.
-  : An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted or the file name was edited.
-  : Before downloading a large image pasted to a Deco-mail or attached i-motion, the type of file was found to be unknown.
-  : An i-appli can be launched from the message body.
-  : An i-appli cannot be launched from the message body.
-  : Mail sent or received by a mail-connected i-appli
-  : Multiple pasted files (also displayed when the data is pasted along with i-appli To).
-  : Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

<1-line display>

-  : One or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large.
-  : Multiple files attached or pasted, none of which are large but some of which are invalid.
-  : One or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large but all of which are invalid.
-  : One or more files attached, including one or more large files
-  : Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and some of which are invalid.
-  : Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and all of which are invalid.
-  : Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

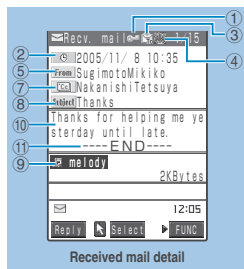
- ⑥ Shows the message subject. Where i-mode mail has no subject, "No title" is displayed. For SMS, the message header is displayed. (For an SMS report, "SMS report" is displayed.) For Voice Mail notices, "Noticecall voicemail" is displayed.

NOTE

- If the date and time are not set (P.55), the date and time in the received mail list screen and sent mail list screen are shown as "--/--".
- When you view i-mode mail with an attached image in the received mail detail screen or sent mail detail screen, the screen switches between image display and file name display each time you press  (Select).

Guide to the mail detail screens

The following is a guide to the conventions used in the mail detail screens.



Received mail detail
Function menu▶P.295



Sent mail detail
Function menu▶P.296

① Shows the mail status. (See the explanation for item ① in the mail list screen on P.284.)

② Shows the time and date of transmission (time and date of arrival at the Center).

③ Shows the sending type of received mail.

: Received mail addressed specifically to the recipient by the sender.

: Received mail broadcast by the sender.

: Received mail broadcast by the sender with the other recipients not shown.

④ Emotion-expressing mail icon that indicates characteristics of the received message

(e.g.) : Emotion-expressing mail icons → P.274

⑤ Shows received mail with the sender's e-mail address.

: Sender's e-mail address

: E-mail address to which replies cannot be sent (shown when the e-mail address exceeds 50 half-pitch characters, etc.)

⑥ Shows sent mail with the recipient's address and recipient type. Use this to check whether the message was sent successfully. If the message was sent to multiple recipients, all the recipients are shown.

: Recipient to which mail was successfully sent.

: Recipient to which mail was not successfully sent.

: Recipient to which broadcast mail was successfully sent.

: Recipient to which broadcast mail was not successfully sent.

: Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was sent successfully.

: Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was not sent successfully.

⑦ Shows received mail with multiple recipient addresses specified (not including the current FOMA terminal user). Up to 4 recipients can be shown.

: The sender addressed the message specifically to the recipient.

: An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender specifically addressed the message.

: The sender sent a copy of a message to the recipient as broadcast mail.

: An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender sent a copy of the message as broadcast mail.

The "", "", or "" icons are used to indicate an e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent.

If the sender of received mail or the recipient of sent mail is stored in the phonebook, the "Name" stored in the phonebook appears in fields ⑤, ⑥ and ⑦.

To display the name, the other party's e-mail address must be stored correctly in the phonebook.

→ P.107

⑧ Shows the message subject. Where there is no subject, "No title" is displayed. For received SMS, "" is displayed ("SMS" if the SMS is in the FOMA card (UIM)) and "SMS" is displayed as the title (or "SMS report" for SMS reports). When an SMS report has been received, the "" icon is also displayed.

⑨ When a message includes attached or pasted files, this shows the icon, file name and file size (in bytes).

: Pasted melody. If the pasted melody file is faulty, it is displayed as text in the message.

: Multiple pasted files (also displayed when a file is pasted along with i-appli To).

: An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted, renamed, or kept in "Secret" folder.



: An attached image was deleted.



: A large image file was loaded and then deleted (also displayed when the data has been edited or overwritten after retrieval or kept in the "Secret" folder).



: An attached melody was deleted.

Attached file icons → P.284

⑩ Shows the mail message.

⑪ Shows the end of the message body.

On the following situations, the e-mail address and not the "Name" is displayed, even when the phone number or e-mail address is stored in the phonebook.

- When "Restrict dialing" (P.165) is set and the phone number is not designated in the "Restrict dialing" settings
- When the FOMA terminal is in Secret only mode and received from an e-mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data
- When the FOMA terminal is not in Secret mode or Secret only mode and received from an e-mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data

Changing the mail character size or list display mode

Changing the mail character size

On the mail detail screen, you can change the size of the text in the message body.

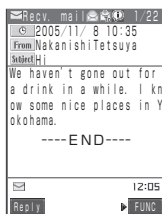


Small

⌂ (1 second or longer)



⌂ (1 second or longer)

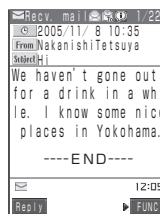


Standard

⌂ (1 second or longer)



⌂ (1 second or longer)



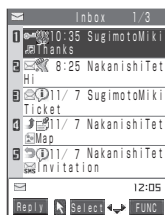
Large

NOTE

- If you move to a display other than a mail detail screen, the character size automatically reverts from Small or Large to Standard. When you return to the mail detail screen, the character changes back to Small or Large.
- When you use the keys shown above to change the text size, the setting in "Character size" (P.299) also changes.

Changing the mail list screen display mode (1 line/2 lines)

You can switch between 1-line display and 2-line display using the "Mail list disp." setting in "Mail settings" in the Mail menu. → P.299



2-line mode

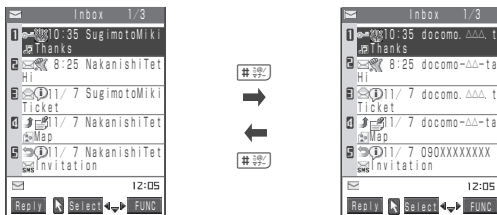


1-line mode

● Changing the mail list screen display mode (Name/Address/Subject)

In the mail list screen, you can switch between displaying mail by recipient or sender, by e-mail address or phone number, and by subject. If the name of the recipient or sender is stored in the phonebook, his or her name can also be displayed.

● Mail list screen (2-line mode)



● Mail list screen (1-line mode)



NOTE

- You can also change the display mode by selecting "List setting" from the function menu in the received mail list screen, sent mail list screen or draft mail list screen and then selecting "Subject", "Name", or "Address".

● Checking the number of received or sent mail messages

To check the total number of saved messages in all the folders, select "Memory info" from the function menu in the folder list screen.

To check the number of messages stored in each folder, display the mail list screen for the mail in folder you want to check and then select "No. of messages" from the function menu.

● Display light function

When you open the FOMA terminal, press a key or send or receive an i-mode mail or SMS, the FOMA terminal's display light comes on for about 15 seconds. (You can change the time for which the display light stays on in "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P.130).) However, when an i-mode mail or SMS is displayed, the time for which the display light stays on varies depending on the length of the message.

The display light does not turn on if "Lighting" is set to "OFF" in "Display light" (P.136).

Function menu (Inbox folder list/Outbox folder list screen)

- You can add up to 22 folders.
- You can specify automatic sorting of received i-mode mail and SMS into added folders.
- You cannot delete or rename the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat" and "Trash box" folders that are already installed on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

1 Inbox folder list/Outbox folder list screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Add folder	Enters a folder name to add a new folder. "Entering Text"→P.498

Item	Description
Auto-sort	Automatically sorts received i-mode mail and SMS into folders in the Inbox or Outbox according to e-mail address, phone number and phonebook group settings, etc. "Automatic sorting settings" → P.290
Edit folder name	Edits the folder name of the added folder. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Mail security	▶ Enter the security code ▶ "YES" Sets or cancels folder security. "Setting security for individual folders" → P.164 Security code → P.152
Delete folder	▶ Enter the security code ▶ "YES" Security code → P.152
Sort folder	▶ Select a location Sorts the folders.
Memory info	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in all the folders.
Open folder	Displays list of the mails in a folder.
Send all Ir data	"Transferring multiple data at the same time" → P.398
Delete read^{*1}	Deletes all the read mails.
Delete all^{*2}	▶ Enter the security code ▶ "YES" Deletes all mails. Security code → P.152

*1: Only displayed in the Inbox folder screen.

*2: "Delete all" is also displayed in the Outbox folder screen.

NOTE

<Add folder>

- When you download a mail-connected i-appli, an i-appli mail folder is automatically created.

<Auto-sort>

- You cannot set the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Secret", "Chat" or "Trash box" folders in automatic sorting.
- If "Mail security" (P.164) is set for the "Inbox" or "Outbox" in the Mail menu,  appears next to "Inbox" and "Outbox" in the Mail menu. In this situation, you have to enter your security code.
- If Mail security is set for an added folder, you must enter your security code after setting "Auto-sort".

<Edit folder name>

- You cannot edit the names of mail-connected i-appli folders.

<Mail security>

- You cannot delete or edit the names of folders for which mail security is set.

<Delete folder>

- You cannot delete a folder that contains protected mail or a folder for which mail security is set. Remove the protection or mail security and then delete the folder.
- You cannot delete an i-appli mail folder if there is a corresponding mail-connected i-appli. You can delete an i-appli mail folder if there is no corresponding software, but the folder created in the Inbox folder screen or Outbox folder screen is also deleted.
- If you delete a folder that is specified in the "Auto-sort" settings, the automatic sorting setting for that folder is also canceled.

<Sort folder>

- You cannot sort the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Secret", "Chat" or "Trash box" folders and you cannot run "Sort folder" when any of these folders is selected.
- You cannot run "Sort folder" when only one folder was added.

<Memory info>

- The mail messages stored in the "Secret" folder are not included.

<Send all Ir data>

- The mail messages in the "Secret" folder are not sent.

<Delete read>

- You cannot delete read SMS or i-mode mail that is protected or in the "Secret" folder.

<Delete all> (on the Outbox folder screen)

- You cannot delete SMS or i-mode mail messages that are protected or mail messages in the "Secret" folder.

NOTE

<Delete all> (on the Inbox folder screen)

- This option also deletes unread mail. However, this option does not delete SMS or i-mode mail messages that are protected or mail messages in the "Secret" folder.

Automatic sorting settings

- You can sort mail messages into the specified folders by the sender's mail address, recipient's mail address, subject, message that cannot be replied, etc. You can also sort all the received or sent mail messages into the mail-connected i-appli folders
- You can set a total of 700 e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for automatic sorting in all the folders in the Inbox and Outbox. You can set multiple e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for the same folder. Only one subject can be set for each folder.
- If received or sent mail meets multiple sort criteria, the Auto-sort settings are prioritized as shown below, with ① having the highest priority. Note that mail for mail-connected i-appli is sorted into the respective dedicated folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings. Unless "Sort all" is specified, chat mail is always sorted into the "Chat" folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings.
 - ① Sort all ② Subject sort ③ Reply/Send impossible ④ Address/Number sort
 - ⑤ Mail member ⑥ Phonebook group
- Mail received or sent before the automatic sorting settings are specified remain stored in their original folders.

1 Inbox folder list screen (P.283) or Outbox folder list screen (P.284)

▶ Select the destination folder ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "Auto-sort" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Address sort	Sets an e-mail address to be used for automatic sorting.	
	Look-up address	Sets the e-mail address by browsing the phonebook and records.
		Phonebook Sets an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. "Searching Phonebook" → P.111
		Received address Sets an e-mail address from the Received address list.
		Sent address Sets an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	Look-up group	Sets the group of the phonebook.
	Look-up member	Sets the mail member.
	Enter address	Sets an e-mail addresses directly entering each character. "Entering Text" → P.498
Subject sort	Enters a subject to set the subject as an auto-sort criterion. "Entering Text" → P.498	
Reply impossible*1	Sets an e-mail address to which you cannot reply or you could not send a mail as an auto-sort criterion.	
Sort all	This can only be set for mail-connected i-appli folders. Sorts all mails into a mail-connected i-appli folder.	
Edit addr/subj	Edits a previously specified e-mail address or mail subject.	
List setting	Selects the list format of mail addresses that will be automatically sorted, from "Name" or "Address".	
Release	Deselects the auto-sort criterion.	
Release selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish) ▶ "YES"	
Release all	Deselects all the auto-sort criteria.	

*1: If you have selected the Auto-sort settings in the Outbox folder, "Send impossible" is displayed.

NOTE

- If auto-sort criteria is already stored and you store a different set of criteria in the same folder, a message is displayed asking you if you want to change the settings. Select "YES" to change the settings. Selecting "NO" returns you to the previous screen.
- The mails that has been sent as broadcast message are not sorted to folders for which "Address sort" or "Send impossible" is set.

<Address sort (Look-up group)>

- You cannot set "Group 00" or groups in the FOMA card (UIM).

<Address sort (Enter address)>

- Ensure that the e-mail address domain (the part that follows the @ symbol) is entered correctly. However, if the address format is "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp", simply enter the phone number.

<Subject sort>

- If the subject meets the sort criteria for multiple folders, the mail is sorted into the folder closest to the "Inbox" or "Outbox" folder.
- Only 1 subject can be set for each folder.
- You cannot use this function to sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" by setting "No title" as a sort criteria.
- You cannot use this option to sort SMS.

<Reply impossible>

- You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports.
- "Reply impossible" can only be set for 1 folder.

<Send impossible>

- "Send impossible" can only be set for 1 folder.

<Sort all>

- You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports or SMS received directly to the FOMA card (UIM).
- "Sort all" can only be set for 1 i-appli mail folder for received and sent i-appli mail respectively.
- Setting "Sort all" disables all other sort settings.

<List setting>

- You can also switch between the "Name" and "Address" by pressing  in the Auto-sort settings screen.

Function menu (received mail list screen)

1

Received mail list screen ►  (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Mail

Item	Description	
Reply	"Replying by composing a new message" → P.278	
Move	► Select a folder ► Use  to select a checkbox (□) ►  (Finish) ► "YES" Moves the multiple mail messages to another folder.	
Search mail	Searches for mail using a specified sender or subject.	
	Search sender	Specifies the mail address by browsing the Phonebook or history, or by entering characters.
	Phonebook	Specifies an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. "Searching phonebook" → P.111
	Received address	Specifies an e-mail address from the Received address list.
	Sent address	Specifies an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	Enter address	Specifies an e-mail addresses directly entering each character.
Search mail	Search subject	Enters a subject to search. "Entering text" → P.498
Display all	Returns the search and sort displays or displays that use filter functions to their original display settings (all "Chronological ↑").	
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.	
	Chronological ↑	Displays in reverse chronological order by date/time.
	Chronological ↓	Displays in chronological order by date/time.
	By address ↓	Displays in ascending order by the sender's e-mail address or phone number.
	By address ↑	Displays in descending order by the sender's e-mail address or phone number.

Continued on next page

Item	Description	
Sort	By subject ↓	Displays in "Number (123) → Alphabet (aAbBcC) → Hiragana (あいう) → Kanji" order.
	By subject ↑	Displays in "Kanji → Hiragana (ういあ) → Alphabet (CcBbAa) → Number (321)" order.
Filter		Displays mail according to the specified criteria.
	Unread	Displays only unread i-mode mail and SMS.
	Read	Displays only read i-mode mail and SMS.
	Protected	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.
	Melody	Displays only i-mode mail with attached melodies or with pasted melodies.
	Image	Displays only i-mode mail with attached images or with pasted downloading information for large images.
	i-motion	Displays only mail with an attached i-motion "H".
	i-appli	Displays only i-mode mail that includes i-appli startup information.
	SMS	Displays only SMS.
	keyword	Selects a "Disp keyword" (1 to 3) icon to display only i-mode mail and SMS with the selected "Disp keyword" icon added. "Emotion/Setting Keyword"→P.302
	Emotion	Selects a "Disp emotion" icon to display only i-mode mail and SMS with the selected "Disp emotion" icon added.
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address". However, when the 2-line display is selected in "Mail list disp." (P.299), it is not possible to select "Subject".	
Read all	Marks all the unread mail in the folder as read.	
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.	
Unprotect all	Unprotects all protected mail.	
Send Ir data	"Transferring one data at a time"→P.397	
Export this	Exports one mail message to a miniSD memory card.	
UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).→P.315	
Display image	Displays the stored image for the mail with the  icon (for the mail whose sender's address and image are stored in the phonebook).	
Mail info	Displays information such as the sender without opening the i-mode mail.	
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in the folder.	
Move trash box	▶Use  to select a checkbox (□)▶  (Finish)▶"YES" You can move the multiple mail messages to the trash box folder.	
Delete	Deletes one mail message.	
Delete selected	▶Use  to select a checkbox (□)▶  (Finish)▶"YES" You can delete the multiple mail messages.	
Delete read	Deletes read mail messages.	
Delete all SMS-R	▶Enter the security code▶"YES" Deletes all SMS reports. Security code→P.152	
Delete all	▶Enter the security code▶"YES" Deletes all the received mail messages. Security code→P.152	
Keep in secret *	"Preventing others from viewing data" → P.159	

* : Displayed only when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode"

NOTE

<Move>

- You cannot use this option to move mail to the "Trash box" or "Secret" folder.
- You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<Search mail>

- You can also search the results of a search.
- This option can also be used with the Filter function or Sort display.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- You cannot use this function to search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" by setting "No title" as a criterion for searching by subject.

<Sort>

- The Sort display and Filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the unread mail in the received mail list screen in chronological order, select "Chronological ↓" in the Sort menu and then "Unread" in the Filter menu.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- If you view mail in the Sort display, exit the display and then view the received mail list screen again, the screen reverts to showing all the mail.

<Filter>

- If you view mail in the Filter function, exit the display and then view the received mail list screen again, the screen reverts to showing all the mail. You can also return to this screen by selecting "Display all".

<List setting>

- You can also switch between the "Subject", "Name" and "Address" by pressing  in the received mail list screen.

<Read all>

- If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Read all", only the currently displayed mail is marked as read.

<Protect ON/OFF>

- If you exceed the limit on the number of received mail messages (the total number of i-mode mail and SMS) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (P282), precedence is given to deleting mail in the "Trash box" folder when new mail arrives. If there is no mail in the "Trash box" folder, read and unprotected received mail is deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that the mail messages and SMS messages in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.
- You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).
- You cannot protect mail in the "Trash box" folder.

<Unprotect all>

- If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Unprotect all", protection is only removed from the currently displayed mail.

<Move trash box>

- This option moves mail to be deleted to the "Trash box" folder. Mail moved to the "Trash box" folder is not deleted immediately and can be retrieved and returned to another folder until it is deleted. Once the "Inbox" folder is full, mail in the "Trash box" folder is the first mail to be deleted as new mail arrives.
- You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the "Trash box" folder.
- If you move unread mail to the "Trash box" folder, it is marked as read.
- If you select "Move trash box" from the received mail list screen function menu and select the mail to be moved to the "Trash box" folder, a message appears confirming that the moved mail will be given priority in automatic deletion when the limit on the permitted number of saved messages has already been reached and new mail is received. Select "YES" to move the mail to the "Trash box" folder.

<Delete>

- You can use this option to delete unread i-mode mail and SMS.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete selected>

- You cannot select protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete read>

- You cannot use this option to delete read i-mode mail or SMS that are protected.
- Selecting "Delete read" after filtering mail messages deletes only the filtered read mail messages.

<Delete all SMS-R>

- You cannot use this option to delete protected SMS reports.

<Delete all>

- You can use this option to delete unread i-mode mail and SMS.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.
- Selecting "Delete all" after filtering mail messages deletes all the filtered mail messages.

Function menu (sent mail list screen)

1 Sent mail list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Edit	▶ Edit the mail address, subject and message ▶ (Send) Re-edits the mail. "Entering Text" → P.498	
Move	▶ Select a folder ▶ Use () to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" You can move the multiple mail messages to another folder.	
Search mail	Searches for mail using a specified receiver or subject.	
	Search receiver	Specifies the mail address by browsing the Phonebook or history, or by entering characters.
	Phonebook	Specifies an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. "Searching phonebook" → P.111
	Sent address	Specifies an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	Received address	Specifies an e-mail address from the Received address list.
	Enter address	Specifies an e-mail addresses directly entering each character. "Entering Text" → P.498
	Search subject	Enters subject to search. "Entering Text" → P.498
Display all	Returns the search and sort displays or displays that use filter functions to their original display settings (all "Chronological ↑").	
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.	
	Chronological ↑	Displays in reverse chronological order by date/time.
	Chronological ↓	Displays in chronological order by date/time.
	By address ↓	Displays in ascending order by the receiver's e-mail address or phone number.
	By address ↑	Displays in descending order by the receiver's e-mail address or phone number.
	By subject ↓	Displays in "Number (123) → Alphabet (aAbBcC) → Hiragana (あいう) → Kanji" order.
	By subject ↑	Displays in "Kanji → Hiragana (ういあ) → Alphabet (CcBbAa) → Number (321)" order.
Filter	Displays mail according to the specified criteria.	
	Protect	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.
	Melody	Displays only i-mode mail with attached melodies.
	Image	Displays only i-mode mail with attached images.
	i-motion	Displays only i-mode mail with attached movies or i-motion.
	SMS	Displays only SMS.
	Failed	Displays only i-mode mail and SMS that could not be sent.
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address". However, when the 2-line display is selected in "Mail list disp." (P.299), it is not possible to select "1 line Subject".	
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.	
Unprotect all	Unprotects all protected mail.	
Send Ir data	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.397	
Export this	Exports one mail message to a miniSD memory card.	
UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). → P.315	

Item	Description
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages and protected messages in the folder.
Delete	Deletes one mail message.
Delete selected	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple mail messages.
Delete all	▶ Enter the security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the sent mail messages. Security code → P.152
Keep in secret*	“Preventing others from viewing data” → P.159

* : Displayed only when the FOMA terminal is set to “Secret mode” or “Secret only mode”.

NOTE

<Move>

- You cannot move SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<Search mail>

- You can also search the results of a search.
- This option can also be used with the Filter function or Sort display.
- To return to the original display, select “Display all”.
- You cannot use this function to search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as “No title” by setting “No title” as a criterion for searching by subject.

<Sort>

- The Sort display and Filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the protected mail in the sent mail list screen in chronological order, select “Chronological ↓” in the Sort menu and then “Protect” in the Filter menu.
- To return to the original display, select “Display all”.
- If you view mail in the Sort display, exit the display and then view the sent mail list screen again, the screen reverts to showing all the mail.

<Filter>

- If you view mail in the Filter function, exit the display and then view the sent mail list screen again, the screen reverts to showing all the mail. You can also return to this screen by selecting “Display all”.

<List setting>

- You can also switch between the “Subject”, “Name” and “Address” by pressing in the sent mail list screen.

<Protect ON/OFF>

- If you exceed the limit on the number of sent mail messages (the total number of i-mode mail and SMS) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (P.282), unprotected sent mail is deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that the mail messages and SMS messages in the “Secret” folder are not deleted.
- You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).

<Delete> <Delete selected> <Delete all>

- You cannot delete protected i-mode mail messages and SMS messages.

Function menu (received mail detail screen)

1 Received mail detail screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Reply	“Replying by composing a new message” → P.278
Reply with quote	“Replying by quoting the received message” → P.279
Reply with ref	“Replying by referring to received mail” → P.279
Forward	“Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients” → P.280
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Move	Selects the destination folder to move a mail message to the folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address. You can paste the copied text into the text entry (editing) screen. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” → P.514
Save address	“Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook” → P.280
Add to phonebook	“Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook” → P.280

Item	Description
Save data	Saves a melody or image that is attached to or pasted into mail. "Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail"→P.281 "Saving Images in Image Mail"→P.281
Save insert image	▶ Select an image ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" ▶ Select an item Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not want to set the image in the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Save schedule	Stores a scheduled event by browsing an i-mode mail message. →P.415
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→P.143
Save template	Saves a received i-mode mail as a template. "Saving a template"→P.267
Refer dic.	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries"→P.431
Property	Selects an image to display the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
URL	Displays the URL of the large image attached to mail.
Chat	Launches Chat mail. →P.304
Send Ir data	"Transferring one data at a time"→P.397
Export this	Exports one mail message to a miniSD memory card.
UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). →P.315
Scroll	Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines".
Character size	Selects the size of displayed characters from "Standard", "Small" or "Large".
Delete att. file	Deletes the attached file. Note that the file saved in Data box is not deleted.
Move trash box	Moves the mail to the "Trash box" folder.
Delete	Deletes the mail message.
Keep in secret *	"Preventing others from viewing data" →P.159

* : Displayed only when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

NOTE

<Move>

- You cannot use this option to move mail to the "Trash box" folder.
- You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to another folder.

<Delete att. file>

- You cannot use this option to delete a file pasted into the message body.

<Move trash box>

- You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the "Trash box" folder.

Function menu (sent mail detail screen)

1 Sent mail detail screen ▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	▶ Edit the address, subject or message body ▶ (Send) Re-edits the message. "Entering Text"→P.498
Resend	Resends the message.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Move	Selects the destination folder to move a mail message to the folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address. You can paste the copied text into the text entry (editing) screen. "Copying, Cutting and "Pasting Text" →P.514
Save address	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook"→P.280
Add to phonebook	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook"→P.280

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

Item	Description
Save data	Saves a melody or image that is attached to mail. → P.281
Save insert image	▶ Select an image ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder ▶ "YES" ▶ Select an item Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not want to set the image in the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143
Save template	Saves a sent i-mode mail as a template. "Saving a template" → P.267
Refer dic.	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries" → P.431
Property	Selects an item to display the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
Disp. SMS report	Displays the SMS report for an SMS. → P.310
Send Ir data	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.397
Export this	Exports one mail message to a miniSD memory card.
UIM operation	Moves or copy the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or move or copy the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). → P.315
Scroll	Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines".
Character size	Selects the size of displayed characters from "Standard", "Small" or "Large".
Delete att. file	Deletes the attached file. Note that the file saved in the Data box is not deleted.
Delete	Deletes the mail message.
Keep in secret *	"Preventing others from viewing data" → P.159

* : Displayed only when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

NOTE

<Resend>

- Selecting "Resend" resends the message unedited. Use this option as a simple way to resend mail when the initial transmission has failed.
- When you resend a message for which a previous transmission failed, the message is saved as a sent mail. When you resend broadcast mail for which the previous transmission failed at all the addresses, the message is also saved as a sent mail.

<Disp. SMS report>

- If there is no SMS report for the selected message, this function cannot be used.
- Even when "ON" is specified in "SMS report request", no SMS report is provided for mail that cannot be sent (that does not reach the recipient).

<Sent address list/Received address list>

Using Mail Records

When you send or receive mail, destination addresses are recorded in the Sent address list and sender addresses are recorded in the Received address list. You can send mail by selecting an address from these address lists. Different icons are used for the i-mode mail and SMS address lists so that you can quickly distinguish the record types.

- Up to 30 i-mode mail address or SMS phone number entries can be stored in the respective Sent address and Received address lists.
- E-mail addresses stored in the phonebook as secret data in "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode" are not recorded in the address lists.
- If you received or sent mail while mail security was set for the Inbox or Outbox in the Mail screen, the e-mail address of the sender or the recipient is not added to the address list.

Checking an address list

Use this procedure to check the Sent address or Received address list.

<Example: Viewing the received address list screen>

1 (for 1 second or longer)

"Received address list screen" appears.

■ To display the sent address list screen

⌂ (for 1 second or longer)



Function menu ▶ P.298

2 Select a sender

"Received address detail screen" appears.



3 Check the details

NOTE

- You cannot display the Sent or Received address list when "OFF" is selected for "Redial/Dialed calls" and "Received calls" in "Record display set".
- The following icons are used in the sent address list and sent address detail screens:
 - Ⓜ : i-mode mail transmission successful.
 - Ⓜ✖ : i-mode mail transmission failed.
 - SMS : SMS transmission successful.
 - SMS✖ : SMS transmission failed.
- The following icons are used in the received address list and received address detail screens:
 - Ⓜ : i-mode mail received.
 - SMS : SMS received.
- When "PIM lock" or "Keypad dial lock" is set, the registered Sent/Received address lists are deleted. After the setting, they are newly registered.

Function menu (sent address/received address list screen)

This explanation also applies to the function menus in the sent address and received address detail screens.

- Turning the FOMA terminal off or deleting sent or received mail messages does not delete the entries in the address lists. You should delete the record entries themselves to prevent others seeing them.

1 Sent address/received address list screen ▶ ⌂ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Add to phonebook	"Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook" → P.280
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143
Compose message*1	Composes an i-mode mail message with the e-mail address pasted into the recipient's field. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253

Item	Description
Dialing	Uses the Phone To function to call the phone number in the phonebook entry that contains the e-mail address. → P.229
Received calls *2	Switches to the received calls screen (or redial screen) (list). → P.64, 74
Delete this	Deletes one e-mail address.
Delete selected	▶Use  to select a checkbox (☐)▶  (Finish)▶“YES” Selects a mail address from the received address list or sent address list and deletes it.
Delete all	▶Enter the security code▶“YES” Deletes all items in the Received address or Sent address list. Security code → P.152

*1 : If an SMS is selected, this option changes to “Compose SMS”, which composes an SMS with the phone number pasted in as the recipient.

“Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)” → P.309

*2 : “Dialed calls” is displayed in the sent address list screen.

NOTE

<Received calls>

- The displayed received calls screen is “All calls” (shows the entire received calls record).

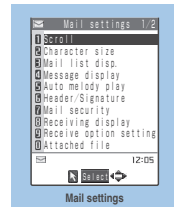
<Mail settings>

Setting Up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

Use this procedure to set the mail functions on your FOMA terminal.

1   ▶ “Mail settings”
“Mail settings screen” appears.

2 Select any item:



Item	Description	
Scroll (default: 1 line)	Selects the number of lines that are scrolled when you press  on the mail detail screen, from “1 line”, “3 lines” or “5 lines”.	
Character size (default: Standard)	Selects the size of characters displayed in the mail detail screen, from “Standard”, “Small” or “Large”.	
Mail list disp. (default: 2 lines Name)	Sets the number of lines and item to be displayed on the mail list screen. Select one item from “2 lines Name”, “2 lines Address”, “1 line Subject”, “1 line Name” or “1 line Address”.	
Message display	Sets the position from where to start displaying the message body.	
	Standard (default)	Displays the message from the headers onwards (date and time received/sent).
	From message	Displays the message from the message body onwards.
Auto melody play (default: ON)	Set whether to automatically play the attached or pasted melody when opening an i-mode mail.	
Header/Signature	“Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation Marks” → P.301	
Mail security	“Setting security for individual mailboxes” → P.164	
Receiving display	Sets whether to give display priority to receiving and reception results screen if a mail, Message Request, or Message Free is received while you are using the FOMA terminal.	
	Alarm preferred (default)	Shows the receiving and reception results screen.
	Operation preferred	Gives priority to the screen being used rather than showing the receiving and reception results screen.

Item	Description	
Receive option setting	Sets whether to receive mail selectively.	
	ON	Does not automatically receive mail.
	OFF (default)	Receives mail automatically.
Attached file (default: ☒ Melody-valid ☒ Image-valid)	▶Use to select a checkbox ()▶ (Finish) Sets whether to receive attached files. When ☒ is selected, files attached to mail are also received. Set "Melody-valid" and "Image-valid".	
Speed photo auto disp. (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically display a still image when receiving a speed photo mail. If you set Speed photo auto display to "OFF" and you receive a speed photo mail, the attached image is not automatically displayed. To display the image, display the received mail.	
Chat	"Specifying the chat settings" → P.308	
Emotion/Keyword notice	"Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail" → P.302	
SMS report request	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS.	
	ON	An SMS report is delivered following SMS transmissions.
	OFF (default)	No SMS report is delivered following SMS transmissions.
SMS validity period (default: 3 days)	Sets the period of time that the sent SMS is stored at the SMS Center by selecting "None", "1 day", "2 days" or "3 days". Set "None" not to store SMS at the SMS Center.	
SMS input character	Sets the SMS body character input method.	
	Japanese (70char.) (default)	Up to 70 full-pitch and/or half-pitch characters can be entered in all.
	English (160char.)	Up to 160 half-pitch alphanumeric characters can be entered.
Check settings	Allows you to check the settings specified in "Mail settings".	
Reset	Resets the settings specified in "Mail settings" to the default settings. → P.302	

NOTE

<Scroll>

- The number of lines scrolled can also be set on the mail detail screen by selecting "Scroll" from the function menu. Using that method also changes this setting.

<Character size>

- You can also change the character size on the mail details screen by pressing or for 1 second or more. You can also change the character size on the mail detail screen by selecting "Character size" from the function menu. Using any of these methods also changes this setting.
- When you switch to a screen other than the mail detail screen, an enlarged or reduced display automatically reverts to normal display. When you return to the mail detail screen, it is again shown enlarged or reduced.

<Message display>

- If the entire message body can be displayed on a single page, all or part of the mail headers may be displayed even when you select "From message".

<Receiving display>

- When you are receiving an incoming voice call, making a voice call, on a call or using FOMA terminal functions such as an i-xppli, Chara-den or the camera, the receiving and reception results screens may not appear when you receive mail or Message Request/Free even if you have set "Alarm preferred".

<Receive option setting>

- This setting applies to i-mode mail only. SMS, Message Request, and Message Free are all received automatically regardless of what this setting is set to.
- If you set this setting to "ON", you cannot automatically receive i-mode mail. You also cannot activate chat mail.
- If you set this setting to "ON", you cannot automatically receive i-mode mail. i-mode mail sent to you is stored at the i-mode Center, and " " and a message saying that the mail is stored in the i-mode Center displayed. To receive mail, use "Check new message" or select the "Receive option".
- If you use "Check new message", all messages will be received even if the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". Deselect "Mail" in "Set check new message" (P.301) if you do not want to receive any mail.
- You cannot receive SMS by selecting SMS.

NOTE

<Attached file>

- If you receive an attached file when the checkbox (☐) is deselected, the attached file is deleted at the i-mode Center. You cannot retrieve the attached file from the i-mode Center.
- If you set the "Melody-valid" check box to "☒", you can receive melodies, but melodies sent from a phone other than the FOMA N701i may not play correctly.
- When the "Image-valid" checkbox (☐) is unchecked, an image inserted to a Deco-mail or still image in a speed photo mail is deleted at the i-mode Center.

<SMS report request>

- You can view received SMS reports in the "Inbox" folder. You can also check the report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu in the detail screen of the sent SMS.

Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation Marks

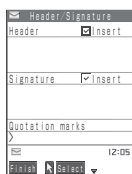
Default setting

Header/Signature (Not stored): Insert Quotation marks: >

Storing text to be inserted at the beginning of an i-mode mail message body (a header) and your name or other information (signature) to be added at the end in advance allows you to quickly and easily paste that information into an i-mode mail message. This function also allows you to insert a symbol or comment (quotation mark) at the beginning of quoted text when you reply to received mail by quoting the original message.

- "Entering Text" → P.498

- 1 Mail settings screen (P.299) ▶ "Header/Signature" ▶ Select the "Insert" checkbox for the header or signature ▶ Select the header or signature box ▶ Enter your header or signature**



Enter the header and signature in the respective fields.

You can enter up to 120 full-pitch or 240 half-pitch characters for each of the header and signature.

■ Not to add header or signature automatically

- ▶ Deselect the "Insert" checkbox for the header or signature

- 2 Select the Quotation marks box ▶ Enter the quotation mark ▶ (Finish)**

You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.

NOTE

- Even if you select the "Insert" checkbox, the header or signature is not pasted into speed photo mail, template, chat screen or i-mode mail composed from an i-mode mail-connected i-appli.

Specifying which items are checked for in Center inquiries <Set check new message>

Default setting
All (Check new message)

You can select the items checked for when you send an inquiry to the i-mode Center by "Check new message". You can specify whether to check for "Mail" (i-mode mail), "Message Request" and/or "Message Free".

- A deselected checkbox (☐) denotes that the FOMA terminal will not check for that item.

- 1 (Menu) ▶ (Setting) ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "Set check new message"**

- 2 Use (Select) to select a checkbox (☐) ▶ (Finish)**

NOTE

- If you do not want your Message Request/Free distributed, deselect the relevant checkbox (☐)

Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail <Emotion/Keyword>

Default setting

Disp emotion: ON Disp keyword: OFF

You can specify whether to display the emotion-expressing mail icons when receiving i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS. You can also set to use icons for notifying you of the received mails containing the keywords specified.

- "Emotion-expressing mail" → P.274

1 Mail settings screen (P.299) ▶ "Emotion/Keyword notice"

"Emotion/Keyword screen" appears.

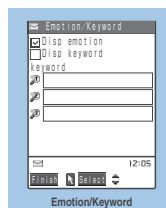
■ To use "Disp emotion"

- ▶ Select the checkbox (☐) of "Disp emotion"

The checkbox is checked (☒) , and an emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed when you receive a mail.

■ To use "Disp keyword"

- ▶ Select the checkbox (☐) of "Disp keyword" ▶ Enter one keyword or more
The checkbox is checked (☒) , and when you receive a mail containing the strings entered in "Keyword", the corresponding keyword notification icon (👉, 👈, 👁) is displayed. Enter at least one keyword (up to 3 keywords are available).



Function menu ▶ P.302

2 (Finish)

Function menu (Emotion/keyword screen)

1 Emotion/Keyword screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Delete keyword	Deletes one keyword.
Delete all keyword	Deletes all the keywords specified.

NOTE

- Changing or deleting the keywords also deletes the keyword icons displayed on received mail list screen, etc.

Resetting your mail function settings <Reset>

1 Mail settings screen (P.299) ▶ "Reset" ▶ Enter the security code ▶ "YES"

Security code → P.152

<Compose chat/Send>

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

You can exchange mail with several people just as if you were having a normal conversation.

- You cannot launch Chat mail in the following situations:
 - When "ON" is selected in "Receive option"
 - If your Inbox is full of saved mail
 - When PIM lock is set
- The communication fee for sending chat mail to several people is the same as sending a mail with multiple recipients.
- You can set a ring tone specifically for chat mail. When you receive multiple items of mail that includes chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for chat mail.

Selecting chat session members <Chat member>

You can select the people you want to chat with.

1 ► “Chat mail” ► (FUNC) ► “Chat member”

“Chat member screen” appears.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see “Refer address” in the function menu list on P.303.



Function menu►P.303

Function menu (Chat member screen)

You can register up to 6 chat session members (including yourself).

1 Chat member screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description	
Edit	Edits the e-mail addresses of chat session members other than yourself. "Entering Text"→P.498	
Refer address	Enter the chat member's mail address from the phonebook or history. ■ If no address is stored ▶Select any item ■ If addresses are stored ▶"YES"▶Select any item	
	Phonebook	Enters an e-mail address from the phonebook. "Searching phonebook"→P.111
	Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Change member	"Changing chat session members"→P.304	
Add chat group	"Registering Chat Session Members in a Chat Group"→P.306	
Display setting	Displays the details of the chat session member settings.	
Delete	Deletes one chat session member other than yourself.	
Delete all	Deletes all the chat session members other than yourself.	

NOTE

<Edit>

- You cannot add an e-mail address that is already registered for another chat member.
- If the added e-mail address is registered in a chat group, the member's name is displayed. If the address is not registered in a chat group but registered in the phonebook, up to 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters of the name stored in the phonebook are displayed. If the address is not registered in the phonebook, up to 8 half-pitch characters of the address are displayed.

<Refer address (Phonebook)>

- If you enter a registered chat member e-mail address by searching it in the phonebook, the member's name and image are also changed.

<Display setting>

- If you display your own details, your e-mail address is not shown.

<Delete><Delete all>

- You cannot delete yourself.

● Changing chat session members

1 Chat member screen (P.303) ► (FUNC) ► “Change member” ► Select any item:

Item	Description	
Chat group	Group list	Selects a chat group to change entire chat members in units of chat groups.
	Member list	Changes chat members by selecting members from all the chat groups. ► Use (Select) to select a checkbox (☐) ► (Finish)
Mail member	Selects a mail member to change chat members in units of mail member.	

NOTE

- If there are some chat members already registered, a message appears asking whether to replace all the chat members. Select “YES” to replace all the members, or “NO” to cancel replacement.
- When a chat mail is received from a member who has already been deregistered from the chat members, the icon displayed in the standby display is variable depending on whether that member is registered in the chat group.
 - If the member is registered, the mail is handled as a chat mail so  is displayed.
 - If not, the mail is handled as an ordinary i-mode mail so  is displayed.

Composing and sending chat mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new chat mail message.

1 (MAIL) ► “Chat mail”

“Chat screen” appears.

2 (Select) ► Enter your message ► (Send)

You can send up to 250 full-pitch characters or 500 half-pitch characters from the chat screen.

When sending is completed, your message appears in the latest message area.

To send another message, repeat step 2.

■ If message transmission fails

The latest message area turns gray and your message remains displayed in the text editing area, so you can simply resend the failed chat mail message.

■ To end a chat mail session

Ending a chat session → P.305



Function menu ► P.304

NOTE

- If “Mail security” is set for the “Inbox”, “Outbox” or “Chat” folder in the Mail menu or for a folder that contains chat mail, you must enter your security code.
- If the FOMA terminal's memory for received mail is full with unread and/or protected mail, you cannot launch chat mail. Delete some unwanted mail or read some unread mail and then try again.
- Attached and pasted files are not displayed.
- Sent and received chat mail is stored in the “Chat” folder. To resend chat mail, send it from the “Chat” folder.
- The subject used for chat mail you send is “チャットメール” (half-pitch characters).
- Chat mail displayed in the chat screen is marked as read in the “Chat” folder.
- If you try to send chat mail without entering a message, a confirmation message appears. Select “YES” to send the chat mail without a message, or “NO” to cancel chat mail transmission.
- If you receive ordinary i-mode mail while chat mail is running, the reception results screen does not appear.

Function menu (Chat screen)

1 Chat screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Send	Sends chat mail.

Item	Description
Select receiver	▶Use  to select a checkbox (□)▶  (Finish)
Chat member	"Selecting chat session members" → P.303
Broadcast address	"Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail" → P.305
Reload	Receives the chat mail held at the i-mode Center.
View first line	Displays the most recent message in the latest message area.
View last line	Displays the oldest message in the latest message area.
Delete read	Deletes the read and unprotected chat mail you have sent and received.
Quit	Deletes the read and unprotected chat mail you have sent and received, and unsent chat mail and then quits chat mail.

NOTE

<Broadcast address>

- You cannot set this option for more than 6 chat members.

<Reload>

- If you receive mail other than chat mail, the chat screen is not reloaded.

<Delete read>

- This option also deletes chat mail that could not be sent.
- You cannot use this option to delete protected chat mail.

<Quit>

- To quit chat mail without deleting the chat mail, select "NO" after you select "Quit".
- If you quit chat without deleting the chat mail, the sent and received chat mail is saved in the "Chat" folder in the Outbox screen and Inbox screen respectively. However, when "Sort all" is selected, it is saved in the specified folders.
- If you did not delete the chat mails at the end of a session, when starting the next chat session the mails appear in the message record area in reverse chronological order.
- When closing the chat screen, you can delete all chat mail. Chat mails on the i-mode mail list screen are also deleted in this case. However, protected chat mails are not deleted.

● Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail

When a received chat mail has multiple destinations (simultaneous mail), these destinations can be added in the chat members.

- If one of the destinations is not a FOMA terminal with the chat mail compatibility, the mail sent to it as a chat mail from your FOMA terminal will be received as an ordinary mail.

1 Chat screen (P.304)▶ (FUNC)▶"Broadcast address"▶"YES"▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)

■ When all the addresses are for chat session members

▶"Broadcast address"▶"OK"

Receiving chat mail <Chat mail recv.>

If you receive chat mail while chat mail is not running, the  icon appears on the FOMA terminal's standby screen. Selecting this icon launches chat mail so that you can start using it.

- Chat mail can display up to 250 full-pitch characters (or 500 half-pitch characters).
- If a file is attached to a received chat mail, only the message body is displayed in the chat mail screen.
- If you launch chat by selecting the  or by selecting "Chat" from the function menu in the received mail detail screen, the chat session members and recipients change as follows:
 - When the sender's e-mail address was set in the list of chat session member, the session members from the last time you quit a chat session are again set. However, if you launched chat from the received mail detail screen, session members in the recipients list other than the sender are excluded. If you selected the , members are added as specified in "Select receiver", and when the sender's e-mail address is not included, it is added to the list of recipients.
 - If the sender's e-mail address is not set as a chat session member but is registered in a chat group, all the members of the chat group to which the sender belongs are set as chat session members. Note that members on the recipients list other than the sender are not included as recipients.
 - If the sender's e-mail address is not set as a chat session member and is not registered in a chat group, only the sender's e-mail address is set as a chat session member.

1 On standby screen▶▶Select “” (Chat mail)



■ When the sender is not registered as a chat session member

▶“YES”

A message appears asking whether to delete the chat session members and launch chat mail. Select “YES” to change the current chat session members and launch chat mail.

■ To remain the currently specified chat members

▶“NO”

The current chat session member settings are retained and the Mail menu screen appears.

2 Begin chat session

Received chat mail appears in the latest message area. If you have undeleted chat mail, it appears in the message record area in reverse chronological order.

NOTE

● The FOMA terminal recognizes mail as Chat mail when it meets the following criteria:

- The subject line includes “チャットメール” (all full-pitch or all half-pitch characters).
- The sender's or recipient's e-mail address is registered as a chat member or chat group.
- When it is not mail-connected i-appli mail.
- When it is not Deco-mail.
- When it is not SMS.
- When it is not the mail in the “Secret” folder.

● You cannot use Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function in the chat mail screen. You can use those functions in the mail screen that you opened from Inbox.

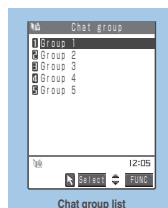
Registering Chat Session Members in a Chat Group

Registering proposed chat session members in a chat group beforehand simplifies the task of registering chat session members.

- You can register up to 5 people in a chat group. You do not need to register yourself.
- You can register up to 5 chat groups.
- You cannot register the same chat session member in more than 1 chat group.
- When you register a chat session member in a chat group, you can edit that member's name and set an image for him or her.
- You cannot register chat session members while PIM lock is set.

1 ▶▶“Chat group”

“Chat group list screen” appears.



Chat group list

Function menu▶P.307

2 Select a chat group

“Group member list screen” appears.

3 Highlight “<Not stored>”▶▶(Edit)▶Enter the mail address

You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.

To store more e-mail addresses, simply repeat steps 2 and 3.

“Entering Text”→P.498

■ To enter a mail address from the phonebook

- ▶Address entry screen▶▶(FUNC)▶“Quote phonebook”▶Select a search method▶Select a mail address you want to enter

“Entering text by quoting personal data or the phonebook entries”→P.512



Group member list

Function menu▶P.307

NOTE

- When you store an i-mode mail address for a chat member, you must store the full address including "@docomo.ne.jp". However, if you want to store an address "phone number @docomo.ne.jp", enter only phone number.
- The first 8 half-pitch characters of the registered e-mail address are set as the member name. If the registered e-mail address is stored in the phonebook, the first 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters of the name stored in the phonebook are set. The registered image is also set if it is stored on the phonebook.

Function menu (chat group list screen)

1 Chat group list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Active chat	Sets the chat group as the chat session members and launches chat mail.
Edit group name	Edits a group name. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Reset group name	Resets the group name to the default.

Function menu (group member list screen)

1 Group member list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Edit	Edits the e-mail address. You can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text"→P.498	
Refer address	Enter the group member's mail address from the phonebook or history. ■ If no address is stored ▶Select any item ■ If addresses are stored ▶"YES"▶Select any item	
	Phonebook	Enters an e-mail address by searching from the phonebook entry detail screen. The registered name and image are stored in the phonebook. "Searching phonebook"→P.111
	Sent address	Enters an e-mail address from the Sent address list.
	Received address	Enters an e-mail address from the Received address list.
Change member	■ If no member is registered ▶"Mail member"▶Select a mail member ■ If a member is registered ▶"Mail member"▶"YES"▶Select a mail member	
Member setting	"Setting member details"→P.308	
Delete	Deletes one mail address of the group member.	
Delete all	▶Enter the security code▶"YES" Deletes all the members in the group. Security code→P.152	

NOTE

<Change member>

- If there are some group members already registered, a message appears asking whether to replace all the chat group members. Select "YES" to replace all the members, or "NO" to cancel replacement.
- If a chat group member with the same e-mail address is registered in another chat group, you cannot change the chat member.

● Setting member details

- 1** Group member list screen (P.306) ► (FUNC) ► “Member setting” ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit member name	Edit a member name. You can enter up to 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.498
Set image	Selects the image shown for each member in the chat screen from My picture. → P.338, 339

NOTE

<Edit member name>

- If there is no member name entered, the first 8 characters of the e-mail address are set as the member name.

<Set image>

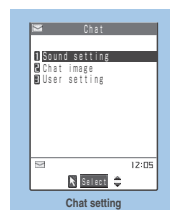
- You cannot change the background color.

■ Specifying the chat settings <Chat settings>

- 1** Mail settings screen (P.299) ► “Chat”

“Chat setting screen” appears.

- 2** Select any item:



Item	Description
Sound setting	Selects the sound for new received or sent chat mail in the chat screen from Melody. → P.338, 375 Select “OFF” to deactivate sound.
Chat image (default: ON)	Sets whether to display an image in the latest message area.
User setting	“Setting user details” → P.308

NOTE

<Sound setting>

- The notification tone does not sound when you receive chat mail from someone who is not a registered chat member.

● Setting user details

- 1** Chat setting screen (P.308) ► “User setting” ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Name	Enters a user name. You can enter up to 4 full-pitch or 8 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.498
Image	Selects the image you want to display on the chat screen from My picture. → P.338, 339

NOTE

<Name>

- If you leave the name blank or enter only spaces, “Own” is used.

<Image>

- You cannot change the background color.

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)

- This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For information on the supported country and the supported overseas carriers, refer to the DoCoMo website.

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)

1 “Compose SMS”

“New SMS screen” appears.



Function menu▶P.310

2 “ <No address>”

The selection menu for address appears.



3 Enter an address

You can only enter one SMS address.

■ Searching in the phonebook

- ▶ “Phonebook” ▶ Search the phonebook (P.111)
- ▶ Select an address in the phonebook entry detailed screen.

■ Searching in the address list

- ▶ “Sent address” or “Received address” ▶ Select an address.

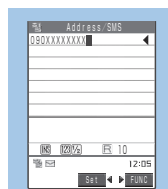
■ Entering an address directly

- ▶ “Enter address” ▶ Enter an address.

You can enter up to 21 half-pitch digits for an address.

■ If the recipient is using an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo

- ▶ Enter + (hold down  for 1 second or longer) - the country code - the other party's mobile phone number
- If the mobile phone number begins with a zero (0), omit the zero.



Enter SMS address (Enter address)

Function menu▶P.256

4 “ ”

“SMS message screen” appears.

5 Enter message body

The numbers and types of characters that can be entered in the message entry screen are as specified in the “SMS input character” settings (P.311). If “Japanese” input is selected, you can enter up to 70 full-pitch or half-pitch characters in all. If “English” input is selected, you can enter up to 160 half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols (excluding        ). Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.

You can use the “Enter address” function menu (P.256) while entering a message.



Function menu▶P.257

6 (Send)

An animation is displayed while the SMS is being sent. Select “OK” to return to the Mail menu screen.
Editing sent and unsent SMS → P.294, 296

NOTE

- In the following situations, SMS cannot be sent to the entered phone number:
 - When it includes characters other than numbers, asterisks (*) or hash symbols (#)
 - When it includes "+" as second or later character.
 - When it includes a space
- If you try to send an SMS to a phone number preceded by "184", "186", "#31#" or "X31#", a message appears asking whether to send the message with the Notify caller ID prefix deleted. Select "YES" to delete the "184", "186", "#31#" or "X31#" prefix and send the SMS.
- You cannot send an SMS from a FOMA terminal to an i-mode terminal with mova service.
- If you exceed the limit (P282) on the number of sent mail messages (total SMS and i-mode mail messages) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal, sent mail is automatically deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that protected sent mail and the mail in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly.
- Even when "Caller ID notification" is set to "OFF", your caller ID is provided to the recipient during SMS transmission.
- If you press  or  on the new SMS screen without sending the current message, a confirmation message appears asking whether to discard the current message text and exit the editing screen. Select "YES" to discard the text entered so far or "NO" to return to the original screen without discarding the text.
- You can insert a line feed while editing the message text. The line feed symbol is counted as 2 characters in Japanese input mode and as 1 character in English input mode.

SMS (Short Message) reports <SMS report request>

If "ON" is selected in "SMS report request" (P310), you receive an SMS report after you send an SMS. SMS reports are saved in the Inbox, and the SMS reports are saved along with the sent SMS so that you can check whether the message successfully reached the recipient.

To view an SMS with an SMS report () , select "Disp. SMS report" from the function menu.

You can also view an SMS report by selecting the SMS report in the received mail list screen. SMS reports are indicated by " SMS report" in the subject line.

NOTE

- You cannot send an SMS from a FOMA terminal to an i-mode terminal with mova service.
- If you exceed the limit (P282) on the number of sent mail messages (total SMS and i-mode mail messages) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal, sent mail is automatically deleted starting with the oldest message. Note that protected sent mail and not the mail in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly.
- Even when "Caller ID notification" is set to "OFF", your caller ID is provided to the recipient during SMS transmission.
- If you press  or  on the new SMS screen without sending the current message, a confirmation message appears asking whether to discard the current message text and exit the editing screen. Select "YES" to discard the text entered so far or "NO" to return to the original screen without discarding the text.
- You can insert a line feed while editing the message text. The line feed symbol is counted as 2 characters in Japanese input mode and as 1 character in English input mode.

Function menu (New SMS screen)

1 New SMS screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description	
Send	Sends an SMS.	
Preview	Allows you to check the SMS recipient and message before sending it.	
Save	Saves the SMS you are currently editing in the Draft mailbox. The Draft mailbox will hold up to 20 SMS and i-mode mail in all. You can send saved SMS later.	
SMS report req.	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS.	
	ON	SMS report is delivered following SMS transmissions.
	OFF (default)	No SMS report is delivered following SMS transmissions.
SMS valid. per. (default: 3 days)	Selects the storage period of the sent SMS messages stored at the SMS center from "None", "1 day", "2 days" and "3 days".	

Item	Description	
SMS input char.	Sets the SMS body character input method.	
	Japanese (default)	Up to 70 full-pitch and/or half-pitch characters can be entered in all.
	English	Up to 160 half-pitch alphanumeric characters can be entered.
Erase message	Only the message body is deleted.	
Delete	The SMS being edited is deleted.	

NOTE

- If you set "SMS input character", "SMS report request" or "SMS validity period" in the mail settings screen, the setting is retained when the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, the "SMS input char.", "SMS report req." or "SMS valid. per" set in the function menu is only valid for the current SMS.

<Receive SMS>

When You Receive an SMS (Short Message)

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, SMS is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the SMS Center.

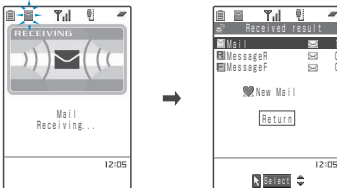
- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 1,000 SMS and/or i-mode mail in all.
- You can use "Select ring tone" (P.126) to change the ring tone used by the FOMA terminal when you receive mail, and you can use "Illumination" (P.141) to change the flashing pattern used when mail arrives.
- Short mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal is received on the FOMA terminal as SMS.

1 When you receive an SMS, the " (blue)" icon flashes and the "Mail Receiving..." message appears

Once the mail has been received, the reception results screen appears showing the number of SMS, i-mode mails and Message Request/Free received. The number of SMS is included in the number of "Mail" messages.

Select "Mail" to display the received mail list screen.

If you do not press any of the FOMA terminal's keys for around 15 seconds, the original screen reappears. The display period for the reception results screen may vary depending on the setting of "Mail/Msg. ring time" (P.130). The ring tone volume is the volume that was set at "Mail" in "Ring volume" (P.77).



NOTE

- If the total number of received messages stored on the FOMA terminal (total i-mode mail and SMS) exceeds 1,000 or the storage limit even if the number of messages does not reach 1,000, received mail is automatically replaced starting with the mail in the trash box and the oldest message. Note that unread or protected received mail and mail and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not replaced. You should protect any important received mail that you want to keep. → P.292, 295
- Once you reach the limit on the number of unread or protected received mail messages that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (the total number of i-mode mail and SMS), you can no longer receive mail and " (red)" appears on the screen. To enable the FOMA terminal to receive SMS, delete received mail stored on the FOMA terminal, read unread mail or remove the protection from protected mail until the " (red)" icon is no longer displayed. Then use "Check new SMS".
- When you receive multiple SMS at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp pattern set for the last item of mail received.
- If you receive short mail sent from a mova service i-mode terminal, the sender's phone number is displayed. If the caller ID is not provided, the reason is displayed.
- If you receive SMS when the standby screen is not shown on the FOMA terminal and "Operation preferred" is set in "Receiving display", the FOMA terminal does not ring. When "Alarm preferred" is selected, the FOMA terminal plays the ring tone and displays the reception results screen.
- If you receive SMS while playing an i-motion, the video and sound may be interrupted.

NOTE

<Priority order for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>

- Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone and illumination when you receive SMS. ① has the highest priority.
 - ① The settings specified for each phone number in phonebook utilities→P.120
 - ② The settings specified for each group in group utilities→P.119
 - ③ The "Select ring tone"→P.126 / "Style mode"→P.147, "Illumination" settings→P. 141

Viewing received SMS (Short Message)

- For received SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed as the subject in the received mail list screen.
- "SMS center" is displayed as the subject for received SMS reports.
- For Voice Mail notices, "Noticecall voicemail" is displayed.

1

On standby screen ▶  Select "New mail" (New mail)



2

Select a received SMS

NOTE

- If a received SMS includes special European characters that are not half-pitch alphanumeric characters or symbols, or full-pitch characters that are not listed in the kuten code table, those characters are shown as blanks (spaces).
- The phone number of the sender of the current SMS is highlighted. Pressing  (Select) while the number is highlighted makes a voice or videophone call to that number (Phone To/AV Phone To function). If the sender's phone number is stored in the phonebook, the stored "Name" is highlighted. In that case, you can call the sender in the same way.
- SMS report is sent to you only when the FOMA terminal is set to receive SMS report in "SMS report request" (P.300). You can also view the SMS report by selecting "Disp. SMS report" (P.297) from the function menu in the sent mail detail screen.

Forwarding and replying to received SMS (Short Message)

You can forward SMS and send a reply to the sender.

- You cannot enter a subject.
 - "Replying by composing a new message"→P.278

NOTE

- You cannot reply to an SMS by referring to or quoting the received message.
- If you reply to short mail sent from a mova, a message appears after you send the reply saying that the message could not be sent.
- You cannot reply to an SMS when the sender has withheld his or her caller ID (User unset) or is sending from a pay phone (Payphone) or a phone that does not support caller ID notification (Not supported).
- The SMS report cannot be replied to or forwarded.
- The Voice Mail notice cannot be replied to.
- If you reply to or forward an SMS on the FOMA card (UIM), the  remains on the received mail list screen and received mail detail screen and the  icon does not appear.

Checking for SMS (Short Message)

The SMS that are not received by the FOMA terminal will be held at the SMS Center. You can receive the held SMS by checking new SMS.

- SMS are held in the following cases:
 - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
 - When  is displayed
 - When the inbox is full
 - When the Self mode is set
- SMS that arrive at the SMS Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal, but are held at the Center if the FOMA terminal is turned off, if you are outside the service area, if the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, or if the FOMA terminal's memory is full.
- You cannot check for new SMS when  is displayed.

1 ▶ “Check new SMS”

“SMS Checking” is displayed while you check for new SMS. Once the FOMA terminal has sent the inquiry, the message informing that the inquiry has done appears. Press  (Select).

If there are any messages held at the SMS Center, automatic downloading begins.

In some cases, automatic downloading may not begin immediately after the inquiry is sent.

NOTE

- When an icon such as  (red) or  (red) is displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot accept any further i-mode mail or SMS. Delete unwanted mail, read unread mail or remove the protection (P.292, 295) until the icons are no longer displayed. Read and unprotected mail is then overwritten as new messages arrive, starting with the oldest received mail.
- This function cannot be used to receive i-mode mail or Message Request/Free. To receive your i-mode mail or Message Request/Free, use “Check new message”.

<Set SMS>

Specifying SMS (Short Message) Settings

Default setting
DoCoMo

Specifying the SMS (Short Message) center setting

* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Use this setting to specify whether the FOMA terminal uses the DoCoMo SMS Center or another provider's SMS center for SMS.

<Example: To use another provider's SMS center>

1   ▶ “Connection setting” ▶ “SMS center selection” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
DoCoMo	Uses the DoCoMo SMS Center.
User setting	▶ Enter the SMS center address ▶ “International” or “Unknown” Uses another provider's SMS center.
Reset	▶ Enter the security code ▶ “YES” Deletes the “User setting” data and resets the setting to “DoCoMo”.

NOTE

- If the entered SMS Center address includes “#” or “X”, you cannot select “International”.

Specifies the SMS rejection settings. You can restrict SMS using one of the following methods.

- "Reject all": SMS can be rejected regardless of whether a caller ID is provided.
- "Reject SMS with no caller ID": Enables you to reject SMS sent from mova service i-mode terminals and PHS or ordinary phones without a caller ID.

1



You are connected to the SMS Center.

■ **To connect to the SMS Center via the iMenu screen**

▶ iMenu screen ▶ ENGLISH ▶ Options ▶ Mail Settings ▶ "Other Settings" in Receiving Mail ▶ "Set/Confirm SMS Rejection Settings" ▶ SMS Center " * 20184 "

2

Listen to the guidance ▶ Press any of the following keys

Item	Description
	Rejects all SMS.
	Only rejects SMS with no caller ID.
	Releases rejection settings.
	Exits the SMS rejection settings.

※ : Rejecting all SMS or rejecting SMS that do not have caller ID are effective ways to stop nuisance SMS.

NOTE

- The rejection does not apply to SMS messages sent under the "mopera Mail Notification", "visualnet Conference Notification" and "FOMA Mail Notification" services provided by DoCoMo.
- You can only set to reject SMS in the FOMA terminal with which you do not want to receive the SMS. You cannot connect to the SMS Center when you are using a mova terminal or dual network service with a mova terminal.
- You are automatically disconnected from the network if you press , , or in step 2 or after 3 incorrect operations.
- This setting does not incur communication or packet fees.

Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)

This function allows you to move or copy SMS stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) to your FOMA card (UIM). You can also move or copy SMS stored on your FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

- The FOMA card (UIM) will hold up to 20 received or sent SMS.

Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) to the FOMA card (UIM)

<Example: Moving an SMS from the Inbox to the FOMA card (UIM)>

- 1  ▶ “Inbox” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight an SMS ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “UIM operation” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Move to UIM	Moves SMS stored in a FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).
Copy to UIM	Copies SMS stored in FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).

NOTE

- When you move or copy received or sent SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the moved SMS appears in the Inbox or Outbox folder respectively.
- You can also move or copy SMS by selecting “UIM operation” from the function menu in the received mail detail screen, sent mail list screen or sent mail detail screen.
- SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be protected. If you move or copy protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the messages are unprotected on the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you already have 20 SMS stored on the FOMA card (UIM), the “”, “ (blue)” or “ (red)” icon appears and no further SMS can be moved or copied to the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you remove the battery pack, the dates and times for sent SMS stored on the FOMA card (UIM) are erased and they appear at the end of the list. However, if an SMS report is stored with the sent SMS, the date and time are not erased.

Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) on the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone)

<Example: Moving an SMS from the FOMA card (UIM) to the Inbox>

- 1  ▶ “Inbox” ▶ Select a folder ▶ Highlight an SMS ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “UIM operation” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Move from UIM	Moves SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).
Copy from UIM	Copies SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).

NOTE

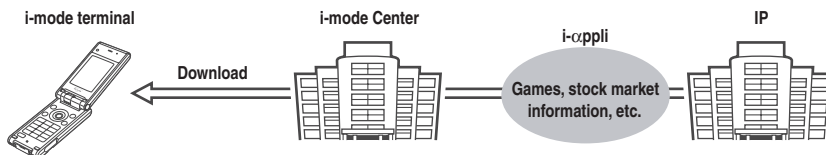
- You can also move or copy SMS by selecting “UIM operation” from the function menu in the received mail detail screen, sent mail list screen or sent mail detail screen.

i-appli

What is an i-appli?	318
Downloading i-appli from Sites	320
Running i-appli	322
Launching i-appli Automatically	326
Running i-appli from Sites or Mail	i-appli To function 327
Setting the i-appli Standby Screen	Stand-by set 328
Organizing i-appli	329

What is an i-appli?

By downloading i-appli from sites, you can make your i-mode-compliant FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) even easier to use. For example, you can download a range of games to an i-mode terminal and play them or download an i-appli that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There are also mapping i-appli that allow you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth. There are other i-appli that enable you to store data from the i-appli directly into the phonebook or your schedule and i-appli linked to Data box that enables you to save or download images.



- To download an i-appli → P.320
- To run an i-appli → P.322
- To launch an i-appli automatically → P.326

NOTE

- Some software applications use the i-mode terminal mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers.
- Some software applications use the FOMA terminal to communicate when running, but they can also be set to run without communicating.

Using terminal data

Some i-appli software can browse, store or use the data stored on an i-mode terminal (phonebook, bookmarks, schedule, images and icon information). The terminal data can be used for the following:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Adding schedule events
- Using icon information
- Loading images from the Data box
- Adding bookmarks
- Saving images in the Data box

i-appli DX

i-appli DX links up with the information on your i-mode terminal (such as mail, the Dialed/Received calls record and phonebook data) to make i-appli even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes allowing you to compose mail in your favorite cartoon character screen, having a cartoon character tell you who an incoming call or message is from, and linking up with mail functions to provide real-time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices.

Using terminal data

Some i-appli DX software can browse, store and use not only the terminal data used by ordinary i-appli (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedules, images and icon information), but also information such as mail, redial records, received call records and ring tones. The terminal data can be used for the following:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Saving melodies
- Browsing phonebook entries
- Changing ring tones (Phone, Video-phone, Mail, Message and Chat mail)
- Using icon information
- Loading images from the Data box
- Adding bookmarks
- Saving images in the Data box
- Adding schedule events
- Changing screen settings (menu screen, standby screen, dialing/receiving phone call, receiving videophone call, receiving/sending mail and receiving Message Request/Free)
- Using the Mail menu
- Saving i-motion
- Using the Compose message screen
- Browsing the latest Dialed calls records
- Browsing the latest Received calls records
- Browsing the latest unread mail

NOTE

- Regardless of the software communication settings, an i-appli DX may automatically establish a connection to check the validity of the software. The frequency and timing of the connections differs depending on the software.
- To launch an i-appli DX, the date and time must be set. → P.55

● What is mail-connected i-appli?

Mail-connected i-appli is a type of i-appli DX that uses i-mode mail to exchange information and provide essential information such as share prices and real time updates on the progress of games, etc., which makes software even easier and more fun to use.

The i-appli mail used with mail-connected i-appli may not be displayed correctly.

● Other useful features

■ i-appli standby screen

In the i-appli standby screen, you can use an i-appli as the standby screen and still receive mails or make calls. This expands the range of uses for your standby screen to include showing the news or weather information or having your favorite cartoon characters let you know when you receive mail or when there is an alarm. → P.328

- This function can be used by software that supports i-appli standby screens.

■ i-appli auto start

This feature allows you to automatically launch a software application by specifying a time, date or day of the week. There are also software applications that can be launched automatically at set intervals specified in the software beforehand. → P.326

■ Using camera

Some software applications allow you to take pictures using the i-mode terminal's built-in camera. → P.172

- This function can be used by software that supports the camera function.

■ Infrared data exchange

This feature allows a software application running on the FOMA terminal to communicate with other devices equipped with the Infrared data exchange function. This further expands the uses of the FOMA terminal by allowing link-ups with devices which support infrared data exchange function.

→ P.394

- This function can be used by software that supports the Infrared data exchange function.
- Depending on the remote device, it may not be possible to exchange some types of data even where the device supports an Infrared data exchange function.

■ Infrared remote control

This allows software applications to control devices such as household appliances that support infrared remote control. → P.400

For example, the pre-installed “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE program guide remote control) enables you to use your terminal as an AV remote control device that works with a TV time table. → P.325

- This function can be used by software that supports the infrared remote control function. Software that is compatible with the controlled device is also required.

Downloading i-αppli from Sites

You can download software from an i-mode site and run the software on your FOMA terminal.

- The FOMA terminal can hold up to 100 downloaded software applications (up to 5 mail-connected i-αppli programs). However, depending on the application sizes, the actual number of downloadable i-αppli programs varies between 10 and 100.
- When you download a mail-connected i-αppli, folders for the mail-connected i-αppli are automatically created in the Inbox and Outbox folder lists. The folder names are assigned by the downloaded mail-connected i-αppli and cannot be changed.
- If there are already 5 dedicated folders for mail-connected i-αppli, delete one or more of the existing dedicated folders for mail-connected i-αppli to create some available space for the new download.
- You cannot download a mail-connected i-αppli if you have already saved a mail-connected i-αppli that uses the same Inbox and Outbox folders.
- You cannot download mail-connected i-αppli while mail security is set.
- Mail sent and received using a mail-connected i-αppli is automatically sorted into the dedicated folders created when that mail-connected i-αppli was downloaded. You can also manually sort received mails.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-αppli without deleting its folders and then download the mail-connected i-αppli again, the undeleted folders can be reused. Alternatively, you can delete the undeleted folders and create new folders. If you neither use the undeleted folders nor create new folders, you cannot download the mail-connected i-αppli.

● If there is memory available for more saved items

1 Select software

Press  (Select) when downloading is completed and the "Completed" message appears. As to software that is immediately launched from the site (P.321), the software starts up without displaying a completion message.

■ To interrupt data downloading in progress

▶ During downloading ▶  (Cancel)

■ If a software setting screen appears

▶ Set the software ▶  (Finish)

Software settings → P.323

2 "YES"

When you launch the software, " " appears at the bottom of the screen. If an i-αppli DX starts up, " " appears.

■ Not to launch the software

▶ "NO"

■ To cancel software launching

▶ While the software is starting up ▶  (Cancel)

NOTE

- Some software may not be downloaded depending on sites or size of i-αppli software.
- Some i-αppli software automatically opens communication after being downloaded. You can set your terminal not to automatically communicate by using "Network setting" in "Software setting".
- You cannot switch tasks while downloading is in progress.
- When you are downloading i-αppli information or an i-αppli from an SSL site, the " " appears. → P.215
- At the time of purchase, the default "Display software info" setting is "Not display". Selecting "Display" allows you to view the software information before downloading. When you press  (Set), a message appears asking whether to download the software. Select "YES" to start the download.
- During downloading, a message may appear asking whether to send the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers. Select "YES" to start the download. When this happens, your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the information service provider (IP) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party as a result. Select "NO" to cancel downloading.
- If you download software that uses the FOMA terminal's communication functions or that can be set as a standby screen, the Software setting screen appears. After selecting the settings for the downloaded software, press  (Finish).
- If you download software you have downloaded once using a different FOMA card (UIM), a message appears asking whether to overwrite the software. Select "YES" to start the download. When downloading finishes, the previously downloaded software is deleted.

NOTE

- The term "i-αppli mail" refers to mail sent by a mail-connected i-αppli and mail that has been sent to you to be used in a mail-connected i-αppli. i-αppli mail contains i-αppli data that enables the mail to be automatically saved in i-αppli mail folders.
- You can display 3-dimensional images in i-αppli by loading the 3D polygon* engine.
* : Uses combinations of polygons to display 3D images with depth.

When the memory for saved software is full

If you have already saved 100 software applications or if there is insufficient space available in the memory, a message appears asking whether to delete some applications before saving the new software. Delete some of the saved software to create space for new software downloads.

1 "YES"

- Not to delete software
- ▶ "NO"

2 Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish)



When you delete software and there is memory available

With each software that you select, the "Shortage" and bar indicator decrease. Continue selecting software to be deleted until the "Shortage" and bar indicator reach zero.

3 "YES"

Downloading restarts.

Viewing i-αppli information during downloading <Display software info>

Default setting
Not display

This setting allows you to specify whether the software information is displayed for checking when you download software.

1 ▶ ▶ "i-αppli settings" ▶ "Disp. software info" ▶ "Display"

- Not to check information
- ▶ "Not display"

i-αppli that is launched immediately from a site

Unlike ordinary i-αppli, some i-αppli software is immediately launched from an i-mode site.

- These i-αppli are not stored on the FOMA terminal after downloading from i-mode sites, and do not appear in the software list screen either.
- A message may appear after the software is activated to ask whether to use the FOMA terminal's communication functions.
- These i-αppli cannot be launched as an i-αppli standby screen.
- After the software quits, a message may appear asking whether to store the software.
- Some i-αppli software cannot be stored on a FOMA terminal.
- Once the i-αppli has been stored on a FOMA terminal, it can be launched in the same way as an ordinary software.

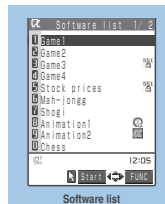
Running i-appli

Launching an i-appli

1 (For 1 second or longer)

"Software list screen" appears.

2 Select software



Function menu ▶ P.322

Quitting an i-appli

1 ▶ "YES"

■ For software developers

When an i-appli software is created and does not run correctly, the trace information can be accessed for reference.

Select in order of  ▶  ▶ "i-appli info" ▶ "Trace info". The trace information is displayed in the order in which actions occurred. You can copy the trace information by selecting "Copy info" from the function menu. To delete the trace information, select "Delete info" from the function menu.

NOTE

- To launch an i-appli DX, first set the date and time in "Set time".
- To launch software automatically, set "Auto start setting" to "ON" and specify a time in "Auto start time". → P.326
- If you receive an i-mode mail, Message Request or Message Free while software is running, "  (blue)", "  (green)" or "  (purple)" flashes to notify the reception. To display the received i-mode mail, Message Request or Message Free, exit the software. You can also display the received i-mode mail by using the multi task function.
- Melodies played while software is running are played at the volume set in "Phone" in "Ring volume". Note that these melodies cannot be played during a call.
- If you receive a call while a software application is running, the software is paused. The software screen reappears when the call ends.
- Some i-appli allows you to use the Phone To (AV Phone To) or Web To function from the i-appli. However, you cannot use the Web To function from the i-appli standby screen.
- Do not remove the battery pack while software is running as this will prevent the FOMA terminal from saving the data up to that point.
- Images used in i-appli and data entered by the user may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.
 - * : Here, "images used in i-appli" refers to images shot when a camera-linked i-appli launches the camera function, images retrieved using an i-appli infrared data exchange function, images downloaded by an i-appli from a site or website or images loaded by an i-appli from the Data box.
- If there is no trace information, the "Trace info" option is not displayed.
- If the memory used to store trace information is full, the oldest entry is overwritten.
- Some i-appli software programs may not make sounds.
- If the camera was activated from an i-appli, the shot images are saved and used as part of the i-appli.
- If the camera is activated by using an i-appli, settings such as the image size, image quality and frame may be specified depending on the software.
- You can use an i-appli to activate the bar code reader and read JAN codes and QR codes. You can also scan a text using the Access reader. The read data are used by the software.

Function menu (Software list screen)

1 Software list screen ▶ ▶ Select any item:

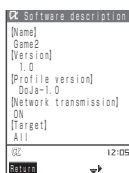
Item	Description
Set i-αppli To	"Enabling software launching with i-αppli To"→P.327
Auto start time	"Setting the launch date/time"→P.326
Software setting	Specifies the software settings.
	Stand-by set "Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen"→P.328
	Network set Sets whether to communicate when launching an i-αppli. When "Check every start" is selected, you can select whether to communicate every time you launch an i-αppli. ▶  (Finish)
	Stand-by net Sets whether the i-αppli set as standby screen communicates. ▶  (Finish)
	Icon info Specifies whether the use of unread mail or message icon information is permitted when an i-αppli is running. ▶  (Finish)
	Change mld/img. Specifies whether to allow the ring tones for phone calls, mail and messages, images such as those used in the standby screen or when mail is sent or received or menu icons to be changed when an i-αppli DX is running. When "ON" is set, the ring tone, image or menu icon is automatically changed. When "Check every change" is set, you can select whether to change the ring tone or image every time an i-αppli attempt to change such item automatically. ▶  (Finish)
	See P.book/hist. Sets whether to allow you to look up the phonebook, newest Dialed and Received calls records, and the newest unread mail when an i-αppli DX is running. When "ON" is set, the phonebook and records are automatically looked up. ▶  (Finish)
Software desc.	"Checking the information for i-αppli"→P.323
Upgrade	"Upgrading i-αppli"→P.330
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→P.143
Delete this	"Deleting i-αppli"→P.330
Delete selected	"Deleting i-αppli"→P.330
Delete all	"Deleting i-αppli"→P.330

NOTE**<Software setting (Network set)>**

- If you specify "OFF", note that you may not be able to receive timely information.

<Software setting (Icon info)>

- If you specify software that is set for the i-αppli standby screen to "ON" for this function, as information about whether there are unread messages and mail, icons for in/out of service area, the battery level and the status of manner mode are sent to the information service provider (IP) via the Internet in the same way as your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, there is a possibility that the information may be disclosed to a third party.
- If this function is set to "OFF", some i-αpplis that require the icon information may not work.

Checking the information for i-αppli**1****Software list screen (P.322)▶  (FUNC)▶ "Software desc."▶ Check the software information**

NOTE

- The software name displayed by this function cannot be changed.
- On the software list screen, software types and settings can be checked by the following icons.

-  : i-appli DX → P.318
-  : Mail-connected i-appli
-  : "Stand-by set" (P.328) can be set.
-  : "Auto start time" has been set. → P.326
-  : "Stand-by set" has been set.
-  : "Auto start time" and "Stand-by set" have been set.
-  : Downloaded by an SSL page

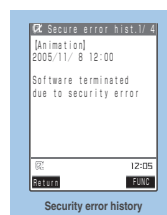
Checking the security error history

When an i-appli or i-appli DX attempts to launch a function that is not permitted run, a security error occurs and the details of the error are recorded in the security error history.

1 ▶ "i-appli info" ▶ "Security error history"

"Security error history screen" appears.

2 Check the details of the security errors



Function menu ▶ P.324

Function menu (Security error history screen)

1 Security error history screen (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Copy info	Copies the security error details.
Delete info	Deletes the security error details.

Launching software from another software application

You can launch a software application from the currently active software. Downloading software that launches the specified application enables you to launch that application without returning to the software list screen.

- You must first download software capable of launching other applications.
- If the software application to be launched is not specified, specify the application.
- If the software application to be launched is specified but is not stored on the FOMA terminal, you must download the application beforehand.

1 Select an item for selecting software ▶ "YES"

NOTE

- If the URL of the software to be launched is specified in the software launch setting, a message appears asking whether to launch the specified software. Select "YES" to quit the currently active software and launch the specified software. To return to the current software, select "NO".

Pre-installed software

The FOMA terminal comes with two software programs (“ぷよぷよフィーバーN” (Puyo-puyo fever N) and “Gガイド番組表リモコン”(G-GUIDE program guide remote control)) pre-installed.

● Note that looking at the display for extended periods of time may cause eye strain.

● If you delete pre-installed i-appli software on the FOMA terminal, and you want to re-install, visit the “ケータイ電話メーカー” site and download it from “みんなNらんど”.

To connect to “みんなNらんど”. → P.213

If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using is not the one used for downloading, FOMA card operational restriction functions will be activated. → P.47

● The “Software setting” items for pre-installed software are set as follows at the time of purchase:

* Only the “Network set” setting can be changed.

	ぷよぷよフィーバーN (Puyo-puyo fever N)	Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program guide remote control)
Stand-by set	—	—
Network set	ON	ON
Stand-by net	—	—
Icon info	—	—
Change mld./img.	—	—
See P.book/hist.	—	—

● Enjoy “ぷよぷよフィーバー N” (Puyo-puyo fever N)

This is the i-appli version of the “ぷよぷよ” series, which is very popular in the field of arcade and household game machines. You can enjoy simple and profound world of the game.

1 Software list screen (P.322) ▶ “ぷよぷよフィーバーN” ▶ Ⓞ (スタート)



©SEGA

2 Select “ひとりでぷよぷよ”

The game launches.

● Using “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE program guide remote control)

As for “G ガイド番組表リモコン”(G-GUIDE program guide remote control), the TV program guide and AV remote control functions were set to one. It is a convenient and free monthly fee application. The TV program information on time to know can be acquired easily anytime, anywhere. Program title, contents of program and start / end time and a G code® corresponding to your location can be known. The “おすすめメール” (recommendation mail) function is available: if you have a particular program on your mind, you can e-mail your friends immediately to give them information about the title of the program, the schedule of airing, and the like. Also, you can remotely control your TV, although this remote control function is not supported by some models.

Separate packet communication charges apply to the use of this product.

Refer to “Using the Infrared Remote Control Function” (P.400) for “G ガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE program guide remote control).

Launching i-αppli Automatically

You can have software applications launch automatically. You can set the date, time and the day of the week for automatic launching.

- To use automatic launching, the date and time must be set in "Set time" (P.55).
- You can set automatic startup times for up to 3 applications.

Enabling automatic launching <Auto start setting>

Default setting
OFF

1   ▶ "Auto start set" ▶ "ON" or "OFF"

Setting the launch date/time <Auto start time>

Default setting
All OFF

You can specify the date and time when the software is automatically launched.

- Software does not start up automatically in the following situations:
 - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
 - When another function is running
 - During a call
 - When All lock or PIM lock is set
 - When the i-αppli menu is active
 - When an alarm clock, schedule or ToDo alarm is set for the same time as automatic launching
 - When software updating is scheduled for the same time as automatic launching

1 Software list screen (P.322)  (FUNC) ▶ "Auto start time" ▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐)



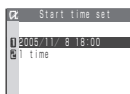
- To enable the time interval set for the software

▶ Check the "Time interval set" checkbox

- To set the launch date and time

▶ Check the "Start time set" checkbox

2  (Finish) ▶ Set the launch date and time



- To set the launch date and time

▶ Select an item for "Date setting" ▶ Enter the launch date and time

- To set repeated automatic launch times

▶ Select an item for "Repeat" setting ▶ "Daily" or "Weekly"

If you selected "Weekly", use  to select a checkbox (☐) and press .

3  (Finish)

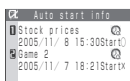
NOTE

- If you set the "Time interval set" and "Start time set" for the same software application and those automatic launch times are less than 10 minutes apart, the software will launch automatically for the first launch time but not for the second.

Checking whether an i-αppli launched automatically

You can check whether an i-αppli automatically started up at the specified time.

1   ▶ "i-αppli info" ▶ "Auto start info"



The screen shows information such as the software application name, the automatic launch time and whether or not the software was launched. "Start ○" indicates that the software started up automatically, "Start ×" indicates that it did not start up automatically and "Start-" indicates that the time for automatic launch has not yet been reached.

NOTE

- If the software could not be launched automatically, the "  (Not run soft) icon appears on the standby screen. Select the icon to view the auto start info screen. Select the software to launch it. Desktop icons → P.143
- The information is also stored when the application could not be launched automatically because you are using i-mode or running another software application.
- "Auto start info" may include the information for the software you did not realize its launch.

<i-αppli To function>

Running i-αppli from Sites or Mail

You can launch an i-αppli from a function other than i-αppli, such as an i-mode site or mail.

Enabling software launching with i-αppli To <Set i-αppli To>

Default setting
All activated

You can specify whether i-αppli software can be launched from i-mode sites, mail, the Infrared data exchange function or bar code reader.

- This setting can be specified separately for each software application.

1 Software list screen (P.322)   "Set i-αppli To"

2 Use  to select a checkbox (☐)   (Finish)

Launching i-αppli from a site

When an i-αppli software launch specification is displayed on an i-mode site, this setting allows the software to be launched from the site.

- This function cannot be used with some sites.

1 Sites screen (P.213)  Select an item for launching the software  "YES"

Launching i-αppli from a mail

When an i-αppli software launch specification is pasted into a received i-mode mail, this setting allows the software to be launched from the i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (P.286)  Select an item for launching the software  "YES"

NOTE

- If multiple data items are pasted into the mail, the pasted data itself may not be displayed.
- If an i-αppli launch specification is included in an i-mode mail message, the i-αppli launch specification cannot be quoted when you reply with a quote or forward the message. You cannot quote a launch specification to launch an i-αppli by forwarding mail using the Data Link Software or the Infrared data exchange function.

Launching i-αppli with the Infrared data exchange function

This setting allows the i-αppli software to be launched when an i-αppli launch signal is received during Infrared data exchange.

1        "Receive"  Receive the i-αppli launch signal

Launching i-αppli from the bar code reader

This setting allows the software to be launched from a bar code when a bar code scanned by the bar code reader includes an i-αppli software launch specification.

- 1   ▶ “Bar code reader” ▶ “New” ▶ Scan the bar code
- 2 Select an item for launching the software ▶ “YES”

<Stand-by set>

Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen

You can set a selected i-αppli software as the standby screen on your FOMA terminal. When the i-αppli standby screen is displayed, the “” or “” icon appears at the bottom of the screen.

- The “Web To function” (P.230) cannot be used from the i-αppli standby screen.
- Some software applications cannot be set as the standby screen.

- 1 Software list screen (P.322) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Software setting” ▶ “Stand-by set” ▶ “ON” ▶  (Finish)

NOTE

- Only 1 i-αppli can be set as the i-αppli standby screen.
- The “” icon is displayed for software set in the standby screen.
- If software that communicates is set as the standby screen, it may not run correctly when problems such as poor signal quality occur.
- If you select “OFF” for “Stand-by net” in “Software setting”, you may not be primed with timely provision of information.
- When an i-αppli standby screen is set, the image set for the “Stand-by display” in “Display setting” (P.133) is not shown.
- If you display the standby screen while a menu function is running, the standby screen selected for “Stand-by display” in “Display setting” appears even when an i-αppli standby screen has been set.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off and then on again while you are setting an i-αppli standby screen, a message appears asking whether to launch the i-αppli standby screen.
- If you set “All lock” (P.155) or “PIM lock” (P.161) while the i-αppli standby screen is shown, the i-αppli standby screen quits. Once you release “All lock” or “PIM lock”, the i-αppli standby screen reappears.

Activating the i-αppli standby screen

You can launch the software application set as the i-αppli standby screen.

- 1 On i-αppli standby screen ▶  CLR
The i-αppli starts up and the “” or “” icon at the bottom of the screen changes to a flashing “” or “” icon.



NOTE

- Some software applications allow you to return to the i-αppli standby screen by using the FOMA terminal's keys while the i-αppli standby screen is activated. However, you cannot return to the i-αppli standby screen while another menu function is running.

Deselecting the i-αppli standby screen <Deselect i-αppli standby screen>

● Deselecting while activating the i-αppli standby screen

- 1** While activating the i-αppli standby screen ▶  (1 second or longer) or  ▶ **Select any item:**

Item	Description
Cancel	Cancels i-αppli standby screen deselection.
Ended	Quits without deselecting the i-αppli standby screen and restarts the i-αppli standby screen.
Terminated	Deselects the i-αppli standby screen.

● Deselecting the i-αppli standby screen while it is displayed

- 1**  ▶  ▶ **"i-αppli settings" ▶ "End stand-by display" ▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description
End	Quits without deselecting the i-αppli standby screen and restarts the i-αppli standby screen.
Terminate	Deselects the i-αppli standby screen.

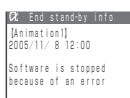
NOTE

- If you deselect the i-αppli standby screen, the image set for "Stand-by display" in "Display setting" appears in the standby screen.

Checking the i-αppli standby screen exit information

If an error occurs that causes the i-αppli standby screen to be deselected, you can check the recorded information on the name of the software in which the error occurred, the time of the error and the reason.

- 1**  ▶  ▶ **"i-αppli info" ▶ "End stand-by info"**



The software name, error date and time and the reason for the error are displayed.

NOTE

- No information is recorded if the i-αppli standby screen ends normally (at normal exit).
-  (FUNC) may appear. Pressing  (FUNC) and selecting "Copy info" copies the information. To delete the information, select "Delete info" and then select "YES".

Organizing i-αppli

- With some software applications, the information service provider (IP) may access software stored on your FOMA terminal and directly disable use of the software. When this happens, you can no longer launch, upgrade or set the software as the standby screen. You can only delete the software or view the software information. To use the software again, you have to contact the information service provider (IP) and have them send an instruction to re-enable the software.
- With some software applications, the information service provider (IP) may send data to software stored on your FOMA terminal.
- When an IP sends a disable or re-enable instruction or other data to software stored on your FOMA terminal in this way, the  icon flashes. No communication charges apply when this happens.

Upgrading i-appli <Upgrade>

You can upgrade downloaded software when a new version is available on the site.

- You cannot upgrade mail-connected i-appli that rename mail folders in the following situations:
 - When mail security is set
 - When folder security is set
 - When the dedicated Inbox or Outbox folder for the mail-connected i-appli to be upgraded is being used

1 Software list screen (P.322) ➤ (FUNC) ➤ “Upgrade” ➤ “YES”

NOTE

- When there is insufficient memory available, a message appears asking whether to delete some unwanted software before saving the upgraded software. → P.321
- If the software is not upgraded, a message appears after the software information has been downloaded notifying you that your current software is the latest version.
- When an SSL page is used, a message appears notifying you that SSL communication will begin.
- Before upgrading, a message may be displayed notifying you that the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be used.
- Some software is upgraded automatically while it is running. In such cases, a message appears asking you whether to upgrade.

Deleting i-appli <Delete i-appli>

You can delete individual saved software application or all the software applications.

1 Software list screen (P.322) ➤ (FUNC) ➤ Select any item:

Item	Description
Delete this	Deletes one i-appli.
Delete selected	▶ Use  to select a checkbox (☐) ➤  (Finish) ➤ “YES” Deletes multiple i-appli programs.
Delete all	▶ Enter the security code ➤ “YES” Deletes all the registered i-appli programs. Security code → P.152

NOTE

- If you try to delete software that is set as the i-appli standby screen (software marked with “”) or software that has been set to launch automatically (software marked with “” or “”), the current status of the software and a message asking whether to delete the software appear.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-appli, a message appears asking whether to delete the corresponding dedicated folders for the mail-connected i-appli. Select “NO” to delete only the mail-connected i-appli or “YES” to delete the mail-connected i-appli, the dedicated Outbox and Inbox folders for the mail-connected i-appli and all the mail stored in those folders. Note that you cannot delete the dedicated Outbox and Inbox folders for the mail-connected i-appli if they are being used, if security is set for the folders, or if they contain a protected mail.
- When you delete a mail-connected i-appli, some incoming i-appli mail that is received while the software to be deleted is selected may also be deleted.

● i-channel

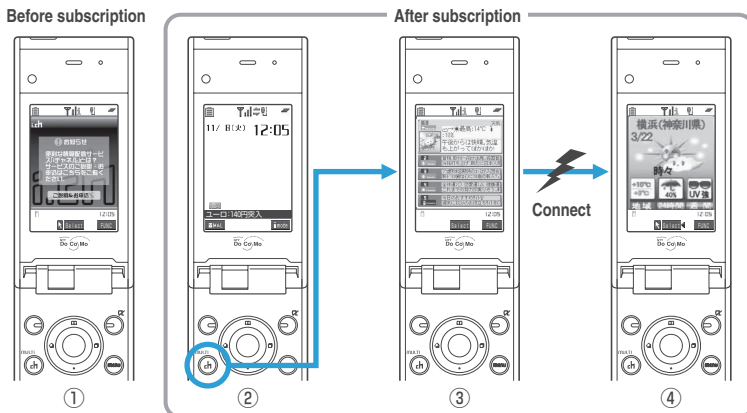
i-channel	332
Using channel List to Display Sites.....	334
Setting i-channel	i-Channel settings 335

i-channel

i-channel is a service that DoCoMo and IPs (information service provider) send news and weather information to i-mode terminal as graphical information.

You can receive information at a set interval, display the telop of the latest information on the standby screen, and display it on the channel list screen by pressing (ch) for the i-channel ("Using Channel List to Display Sites" → P.334). You can also select favorite channels on the channel list screen to receive rich, detailed information.

● For notes and information on details of i-channel, refer to "i-mode User's Manual".

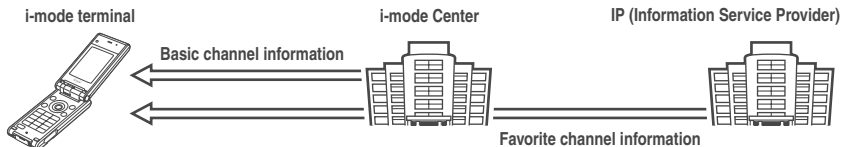


*Screen images are simulated. The actual screen differs.

- ① When you are not subscribed to i-channel.
- ② After the subscription to i-channel, telop is displayed on the standby screen when information is received or when you display the channel list.
- ③ Press (ch) to display the channel list. On the list screen, you can browse the information etc. sent from each channel to be displayed as a telop.
- ④ Press each channel button to view the detailed information screen.

■ Channel type

Channel has two types: "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel". "Basic channel" is provided by NTT DoCoMo and registered beforehand so that you can use i-channel since subscription to i-channel. The packet communication fee to auto-update information for "Basic channel" will be included in the i-channel service fees. "Favorite channel" is provided by IPs (information service provider) other than NTT DoCoMo, and you can register your favorite channels. The packet communication fee to auto-update information for "Favorite channel" will not be included in the i-channel service fees. Note that you can display information only from "Basic channel" on the standby screen as a telop.



*i-channel is a pay service you need to apply for.

- For information on operations → P.334
- Compatible phones: 701i series

NOTE

- Some channels for "Favorite channel" may require you to provide additional information fee.
- Some channels for "Favorite channel" may require you to submit an application to IP (information service provider) which provides the channels separately before using the site.
- Packet communication charges for viewing detailed information for both "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel" from the channel list are not included in the i-channel service fees.

■ Trial service

The free trial service for "Basic channel" is available for a certain period for the subscriber to the i-mode who is using an i-channel compatible terminal and have never been subscribed to the i-channel service. Note that packet communication charges apply for viewing detailed information from the channel list.

- For notes and information on details of the trial service, refer to "i-mode User's Manual".

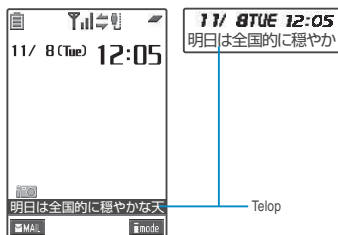
NOTE

- The trial service is to be launched automatically after a certain period from the time you insert the FOMA card (UIM) to use i-channel compatible terminal. If the trial service is not launched automatically, you can launch it by pressing (Ⓜ).
- You can use the trial service one time per one subscription.
- The trial service is expired automatically after a certain period. For information on operations to cancel the service before the due date, refer to the "i-mode User's Manual".

● Telop on the standby screen/ indicator display

If you have subscribed to i-channel, telop is displayed on the standby screen or the indicator display automatically when information is received.

- When the FOMA terminal is turned off or out of signal range, the FOMA terminal may not be able to receive information. In this case, press (Ⓜ) and select the channel for users who have not subscribed to the i-channel service to receive information. Information is received by pressing (Ⓜ) at the time of purchase.
- The "Ⓜ" icon flashes during receiving i-channel information.



You can set the telop to be displayed only when the latest information is sent, or not to be displayed. You can also set the telop to be displayed on the indicator display when the FOMA terminal is folded. → P.335

NOTE

- Telop is displayed even when i-motion or i-appli standby screen is set on the standby screen.
- Telop is not displayed in the following cases:
 - When the FOMA card is not inserted.
 - When the FOMA terminal is set to Driving mode.
 - When All lock is set.
 - When PIM lock is set.
 - When the FOMA terminal is in Power saver mode.

Using Channel List to Display Sites

You can display channel list screen to access information sites of i-channel.

1



The "channel list" screen appears.
You can display the i-channel list screen by selecting "i-channel" in the i-mode menu.

2

Select channel item



Function menu▶P.334

NOTE

- Information may be received when the channel list screen is displayed in some cases.
- When information is received, the ring tone will not sound, and the vibrator does not vibrate. Also, the incoming call lamp does not light up or flash.
- You can change the i-channel host, though there is normally no need to change the host. → P.232
- The channel list screen is not displayed in the following cases:
 - When the FOMA card is not inserted.
 - When All lock is set.
 - When PIM lock is set.
- A message saying that the channel information is not received may be displayed in the following cases:
 - When you receive a Notice call.
 - When you changed the i-channel host.
 - When you initialized the FOMA terminal.
 - When you change the FOMA card (UIM).

Function menu (Channel list screen)

1

Channel list screen▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→ P.143

Setting i-channel

Default setting

Telop display setting: ON (Indicator display OFF)

Telop speed setting: Normal

You can set whether i-channel information is displayed on the standby screen and the indicator display as a telop or not. You can also set the scroll speed of the telop on the standby screen.

- When the "Telop display setting" is set to "ON", the standby display shows a telop permanently. When it is set to "Receiving", the standby display shows a telop twice only when information is newly received.
- When the "Indicator display" is set to "ON":
 - If the "Telop display setting" is set to "ON", the indicator display displays a telop twice every time the FOMA terminal is folded.
 - If the "Telop display setting" is set to "Receiving", the telop is displayed twice only when information is newly received.

1



“i-mode settings”▶“i-Channel settings”▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Telop display setting	Sets whether the telop of channel information is displayed on the standby screen (ON/Receiving/OFF). When "ON" or "Receiving" is selected, you can also set whether the telop is displayed on the indicator display (Indicator display ON/Indicator display OFF).
Telop speed setting	Sets the scrolling speed of the telop on the standby screen (Normal/High/Low).

NOTE

- The Telop display setting remains when you unsubscribe from i-channel service or when you unsubscribe from i-mode service before unsubscribing from i-channel service, however telops will not be displayed automatically.
- If you set the Telop display setting to "ON" before subscribing to i-channel service, telop is not displayed.
- When the "Indicator display" (P.135) is set to "Display clock only" or "OFF", the telop is not displayed even when "Indicator display ON" is set.
- You cannot change the scroll speed of the information displayed on the indicator display.

● Displaying, Editing and Organizing Files

■ Mastering a still image

Data Box		338
Displaying the Stored Images	My picture	339
Editing Images	Edit image	352

■ Mastering movies

Playing Movies/i-motion	i-motion	357
Editing Movies	Edit movie	365

■ Mastering Chara-den

What is Chara-den?		369

■ Mastering melodies

Playing Melodies	Melody	375

■ Mastering memory card

miniSD Memory Card		380
Copying Data Stored on the FOMA Terminal to miniSD Memory Card		384
Previewing Data on a miniSD Memory Card	SD-PIM	385
Copying Data Stored on miniSD Memory Card to the FOMA Terminal		387
Managing miniSD Memory Card		388
Using the FOMA Terminal as a miniSD Reader/Writer		389

■ Mastering various data

Working With Folders and Files		391
Barring Phonebook Image Forwarding	Forwarding image	394

■ Transferring data by Infrared data exchange/cable connection

Forwarding Data by Infrared Data Exchange/Cable Connection	Infrared data exchange/OBEX	394
Transferring One Data at a Time		397
Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time		398
Setting Infrared Data Exchange Mode	Infrared data exchange mode	399
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function		400

■ Printing the still images

Specifying How to Print Images Stored on miniSD Memory Card	DPOF setting	403

Data Box

The following items and folders are prepared for Data box, and the still images or movies shot by the built-in camera, or the data downloaded from the mails or the sites are categorized into the folders.

- My picture can contain a maximum of 360 images including the ones you shot, i-motion a maximum of 100 movies including the ones you shot, Melody a maximum of 200, and Chara-den a maximum of 10 including the pre-installed ones. In addition, you can store up to 100 images in the "Secret" folder in My picture and up to 10 i-motion in the "Secret" folder in i-motion.
- Up to 20 folders can be added to My picture, i-motion and Melody respectively.
- The data stored in My picture, i-motion and Melody can be moved to another folder in the same item.

Item	Folder		File format	Content
My picture	Inbox		JPEG, GIF, SWF*1	All images can be saved here. Images imported from miniSD memory cards and image transferred using the infrared communication function are saved to the Inbox. Still images shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.
	Camera			
	Decomail-picture		JPEG, GIF, SWF*1	Pre-installed images for Deco-mail Images can be saved here as well as Inbox and Camera folders.
	Pre-installed		JPEG, GIF, SWF*1	Pre-installed images for Standby screen, wakeup images, or animations.
	Secret *2		JPEG, GIF, SWF*1	Images to be kept in secrecy. You cannot store images held in Pre-installed.
	(User-created folder 1 to 20)		JPEG, GIF, SWF*1	Images can be saved here as to Inbox and Camera folders.
	Original animation		-	Animations created from continuous shot and original animations
	miniSD	Picture	JPEG, GIF	Still images you shot, JPEG images/GIF images exported from the FOMA terminal, JPEG images/ GIF images and animations saved from PC to miniSD memory card
		Image Box	JPEG, GIF	GIF animations exported from the FOMA terminal, JPEG images/GIF images and animations saved from PC to miniSD memory card
	Frame		IFM	Pre-installed frames Can save downloaded frames.
	Stamp		IFM	Pre-installed marker stamps Can save downloaded marker stamps.
	Face stamp		FSD	Pre-installed facestamps Can save downloaded facestamps.
i-motion	Inbox		MP4	All the movies or i-motion can be saved here. Movies and i-motion imported from miniSD memory cards and movies and i-motion transferred using the infrared communication function are saved to the Inbox. Movies shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.
	Camera			
	Pre-installed		MP4	Pre-installed i-motion
	Secret *2		MP4	Movies and i-motion to be kept in secrecy. You cannot store i-motion held in Pre-installed.
	(User-created folder 1 to 20)		MP4	Movies and i-motion can be saved here as to Inbox and Camera folders.
	miniSD		MP4, ASF*3	Movies you shot, movies or i-motion exported from the FOMA terminal, movies saved from PC to miniSD memory card
	Playlist*4		-	-

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

Item	Folder	File format	Content
Melody	Inbox	SMF, MFI	All melodies can be saved here. Melodies transferred using infrared communication are saved to Inbox.
	Pre-installed	MFI	Pre-installed melodies and sound effects
	(User-created folder 1 to 20)	SMF, MFI	Melodies can be saved here as well as Inbox.
	Voice announce	-	Voice recorded using Voice announce function
	Playlist ^{*4}	-	-
Chara-den		AFD	Pre-installed Chara-den Can save downloaded Chara-den.

*1 : SWF is a file format for Flash movie.

*2 : Displayed only when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

*3 : ASF format is play-only.

*4 : Playlist is a folder used for playing a playlist. You cannot save data here or delete the folder.

Important

- It is recommended that you copy the data stored in Data box to miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using miniSD memory card or by using the Data Link Software (P.531) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You may lose your data through the damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for this. Please save the data to miniSD memory card, or use Data Link Software to save the data to your PC just in case.

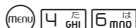
<My picture>

Displaying the Stored Images

Still images shot using the FOMA terminal's camera, downloaded from websites or stored on miniSD memory cards are displayed in My picture of the Data box.

- An image cannot be displayed if it is larger than 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high or if the size exceeds 600K bytes. Also, progressive JPEG image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high cannot be displayed. Progressive JPEG image → P.226

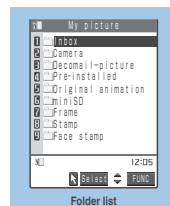
1



The "folder list screen" appears.

The "Secret" folder is also displayed when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

Contents of the My picture folder → P.338



Function menu → P.391

2

Select a folder

The "image list screen (Picture list)" appears.

Image list screen → P.340



Function menu → P.343

3 Select an image

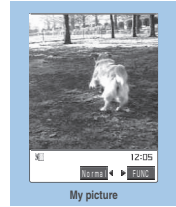
The "My picture screen" appears.
Use  to display the previous or next image.

■ To switch between actual size and large size

▶ Press  (Normal/Zoom)

Images up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high in size can be displayed in the actual size. Images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high in size are zoomed in. Images up to 240 dots wide × 270 dots high in size cannot be resized.

The zoomed-in image can be scrolled by neuropointer.



Function menu▶P.345

NOTE

- While displaying in the actual size or large size, you cannot change to the previous or next image by using  or display the function menu screen.
- Original animation cannot be displayed in the actual size.
- GIF-formatted animation or Flash movie cannot be displayed in the actual size.
- It may take some time to display images if a lot of data are stored on the FOMA terminal or the miniSD memory card.
- Flash movies are played at the volume set in "Phone" in the "Ring volume" settings. If "Step" is set, Flash movies are played at the "Level 2" volume.

Displaying images stored on miniSD memory

1 Folder list screen (P.339)▶"miniSD"▶"Picture" or "Image Box"

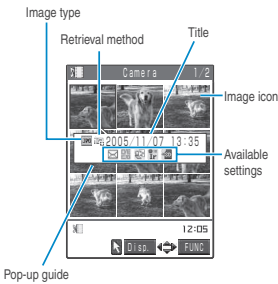
The "miniSD folder list screen" appears.

2 Select a folder▶Select an image



Example: miniSD folder list (Picture)
Function menu▶P.392

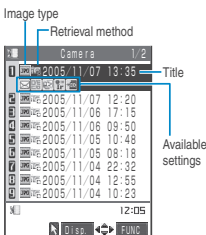
Guide to the Picture list and Title name list



■ Picture list

Nine icons* of images stored on the FOMA terminal appear on the screen, and the title of the selected image is displayed in a popup guide. Popup icons show the image type, the way the image was retrieved, and the settings that can be specified for the image.

*: Four images are displayed simultaneously for the images stored on miniSD memory card (Picture).



■ Title name list

The titles of the nine images are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the image type, the way the image was retrieved, and the settings that can be specified for the image.

Image type icons

Icon	Description
(Pale blue)/ (Blue)/ (Navy blue)	JPEG-formatted image (Can be attached to normal mail/Can be attached to large mail/Cannot be attached to mail)* ¹
(Pale blue)/ (Blue)/ (Navy blue)	GIF-formatted image (Can be attached to normal mail/ Cannot be attached to mail (10,001 to 100K bytes)/Cannot be attached to mail (640 dots wide × 480 dots high or larger, larger than 100K bytes))* ¹
	GIF (IFM) frame, marker stamp* ¹
	FSD facestamp
	SWF Flash movie
	MP4 movie/i-motion* ¹
	MP4 i-motion with sound effect or ASF i-motion* ²
	MP4 i-motion with playback restriction* ³
	AFD Chara-den
	Image to which FOMA card operational restriction applies

*1 : The " " icon is added to the icons of data with file restriction. You cannot send the data by mail or by Infrared data exchange, but can send if you set the restriction to the image or the movie shot by the FOMA terminal.

*2 : When the " " icon is blue, it indicates an i-motion with sound effects. If it is orange, it means that the i-motion can be saved only to miniSD memory card.

*3 : " " turns to " " when the playback period for the i-motion expires.

Retrieval method icons

Icon	Description
No icon	Pre-installed data
	Data downloaded from site, mail or retrieved from i-appli
	Data you shot with camera
	Data retrieved from miniSD memory card, Bar code reader or PC, or by Infrared data exchange
	Chara-den shots
	Downloaded Frame/Marker stamp/Facestamp

Settings icon

Is not displayed when the data is stored on miniSD memory card (Image Box).

Icon	Description
/ /	Can be attached to i-mode mail (larger than 500K bytes/500K to 10,001 bytes/10,000 bytes or smaller) If the data size exceeds 500K bytes, you need to reduce the size to be attached to mail. "Resizing an image to attach to mail" → P.347 "Trimming the movie to be attached to mail" → P.369
	Can be attached to Deco-mail
	Can be set to the screen
	Can be specified as Ring tone
	Can be transmitted via infrared data exchange
	Can be exported to miniSD memory card

■ Titles and file names

Still images or movies shot by the built-in camera or recorded with Chara-den are automatically titled and named.

Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm (Year/Month/Day Time)

File name: yyyyymmddhhmmxxx (xxx (3-digit number) is added for still image.)

_____ Date and time

*Still image: the time when the data is saved Movie: the time when the shooting is finished (Note that the time when the data is saved is used for the title and the file name if the "Auto save set" setting is set to "OFF").

Original titles are assigned to downloaded i-motion and "Chara-den" characters.

The file names and titles are the same for downloaded images.

The title is displayed on the Image list screen of the FOMA terminal.

The file name is displayed when the data is transmitted to PC.

The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.

If the file name contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to "imagexxx" or "movie".

■ Image and movie that can be edited

Folder	Icon	Data	Can be edited?
My picture	(Pale blue) (Blue) (Navy blue)	JPEG image* ¹	Yes
		Chara-den shot* ²	
	(Pale blue) (Blue) (Navy blue)	JPEG image with file restriction* ³	No
	(Pale blue) (Blue) (Navy blue)	GIF image	
	(Pale blue) (Blue) (Navy blue)	GIF image with file restriction	
		Frame, Marker stamp	
		Facestamp	
		Flash movie	
i-motion		Image to which FOMA card operational restriction applies	Yes
		Movie shot with the built-in camera* ³	
		Movie or i-motion retrieved via Infrared data exchange* ⁴	
		Chara-den movie* ²	No
		i-motion downloaded from site	

*1 : Editing Images → P.352

*2 : You cannot edit still images or movies shot on Chara-den if they are file-restricted.

*3 : You can edit still images or movies shot with the built-in camera even if they are file-restricted.

*4 : Some movies or i-motion cannot be edited.

● Setting the Image list display mode <Viewer settings>

● Original animations and miniSD memory cards (Image Box) are always listed by title name.

1 ► **"Display"** ► **"Viewer settings"** ► **Select any item:**

Item	Description
Picture (default)	Changes to the picture list.
Title name	Changes to the title name list.

Function menu (image list screen)

- The available functions vary by the folders, which means that the items listed in the function menu are different.

1 Image list screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description	
Edit image	"Editing Images" → P.352	
Edit title	Edits the title of the image. You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498 As for miniSD memory card (Picture), you can enter up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.	
Display image	Displays the image (displays the My picture screen).	
Set as display	A star ★ is added next to the item specified if it is not specified for a videophone-related screen. ■ To specify for screens such as standby, dialing or incoming call  Select an item ■ To specify for videophone-related screens (except VP Dialing or VP Calling)  Select an item  Check the image   (Set)  "YES"	
Image info	"Image information" → P.346	
Compose message	"Changing image size to compose a mail message" → P.347	
Send Ir data	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.397	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143	
Export	"Copying images stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card" → P.351	
Add image to PB	Saves the image to the phonebook. → P.107	
Size for mail	"Resizing an image to attach to mail" → P.347	
Positioning	"Setting the position when setting an image" → P.348	
Clipping area	"Setting the area when setting an image" → P.349	
Edit file name	Edits the file name of the image. You can enter up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. "Entering Text" → P.498	
File restriction	File unrestricted	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
Move	Selects the destination folder to move the image to another folder.	
Delete this	Deletes one image.	
Delete all	 Enter your security code  "YES" Deletes all the images in the folder. Security code → P.152	
Multiple-choice	"Selecting multiple data" → P.392	
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal or on miniSD memory card.	

Item	Description	
Sort	Sorts images. Note that this function sorts images not only in the selected folder, but also in the following folders in the My picture or i-motion. Inbox/Camera/Deco-mail picture (only My picture)/Secret/User-created folders	
	Chronological ↑ (default)	Displays images in reverse chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	Chronological ↓	Displays images in chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	By title ↓	Displays images in "Number (123)→Alphabet (ABCabc)→Hiragana (あいう)→Kanji" order.
	By title ↑	Displays images in "Kanji→Hiragana (ういあ)→Alphabet (cbaCBA)→Number (321)" order.
	By size ↑	Displays images in ascending order by size.
	By size ↓	Displays images in descending order by size.
	By source	Displays images in order by retrieval method.
Title name*1	Switches between Picture and Title name.	
Composite image	"Making a composite image from 4 images"→P.349	
Facestamp demo*2	Checks the facestamp follow. The image is displayed normally (not mirror). If a stamp can follow the facial movements,  is displayed. If not,  is displayed.	
DPOF setting*3	"Specifying how to print images stored on miniSD memory card"→P.403	
Import*3	"Copying images stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal"→P.352	
Copy*3	Selects the destination folder to copy the image.	
Move*3	Selects the destination folder to move the image to another folder.	
Keep in secret *4	"Preventing others from viewing data"→P.159	

*1 : If you selected the Title name, "Picture" is displayed. By default, Picture is displayed.

*2 : Displayed only when the folder is Face stamp.

*3 : Displayed only for images saved in miniSD memory card.

*4 : Displayed only when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

NOTE
● Icons on the Image list screen show whether an image can be set to the screen, attached to mail, pasted in Deco-mail, transferred by the Infrared data exchange or saved to miniSD memory card.→P.341
<Edit title>
● You may be unable to edit titles if there is too little space available on miniSD memory card. ● You cannot edit the titles of the pre-installed images.
<Set as display>
● The images in Inbox, Camera or User-created folders can be set to the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving, Checking, On hold, Holding, Substitutive image, Record message, Preparing VP Msg., and VP voice memo screens. ● The images in Pre-installed folder can be set to the Stand-by display or to the Wake-up display. ● You cannot specify the following images to the screens: · Images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high · Images whose sizes exceed 100K bytes ● Some images may not be displayed in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set. ● Some images cannot be set to the screens.
<Add image to PB>
● You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and not larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high. ● You cannot use this option while Restrict dialing or Keypad dial lock is set. ● You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.
<Edit file name>
● You cannot edit the names of the following images: · Pre-installed images · Still images of file-restricted Chara-den shots · Images that is prohibited to be output from your FOMA terminal ● You cannot use half-pitch spaces for file names.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

NOTE

<File restriction>

- You cannot restrict the following images:
 - Images other than JPEG or GIF
 - Still images of file-restricted Chara-den shots

<Delete this> <Delete all>

- The pre-installed images cannot be deleted.
- If you try to delete an image that has been set to a screen or original animation or set as a user icon for Schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the image, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:
 - The screens restore to the default.
 - Original animation is released.
 - The alarm notification screen for the schedule switches to the screen on which you set "🕒".
- Even if the original image is deleted, the same one attached to mail is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to mail is also deleted.

<Memory info>

- The approximate amount in the normal mode is displayed. The amount of the "Secret" folder is displayed only when the FOMA terminal is in the Secret mode or Secret only mode.

<Sort>

- "By source" sorts the images in the following order:
 - Downloaded images or images retrieved from i-αpli, etc. → Still images shot by camera → Images retrieved using Infrared data exchange or copied from miniSD memory card → Chara-den shots

Function menu (My picture screen)

- The available functions vary by the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

1

My picture screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Edit image	"Editing Images" → P.352	
Set as display	Selects an item to which the image is set.	
Image info	"Image information" → P.346	
Compose message	"Changing image size to compose a mail message" → P.347	
Send Ir data	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.397	
Set image disp.	Specifies the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	Normal (default)	Displays the image in the actual size.
	Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143	
Export	"Copying data stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card" → P.384	
Add image to PB	Saves the image to the phonebook. → P.107	
Positioning	"Setting the position when setting an image" → P.348	
Clipping area	"Setting the area when setting an image" → P.349	
Delete this	Deletes the image.	
Retry	Replays the displayed animation from the beginning.	
Facestamp demo *1	Checks the facestamp follow. Demo is displayed normally. If a stamp can follow the facial movements, "👤" is displayed. If not, "👤" is displayed.	
DPOF setting *2	"Specifying how to print images stored on miniSD memory card" → P.403	
Import *2	"Copying images stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal" → P.352	

*1 : Displayed only when the folder is Face stamp.

*2 : Displayed only for images saved in miniSD memory card.

NOTE

- Icons on the Image list screen show whether an image can be set to the screen, attached to mail, pasted in Deco-mail, transferred by the Infrared data exchange or saved to miniSD memory card.→P.341

<Set as display>

- Can be set to the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving, Checking, On hold, Holding, Substitutive image, Record message, Preparing VP Msg., and VP voice memo screens.
- You cannot specify the following images to the screens:
 - Images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high
 - Images whose sizes exceed 100K bytes
- Some images may not be displayed in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set.
- Some images cannot be set to the screens.

<Add image to PB>

- You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or less and not larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
- You cannot use this option while Restrict dialing or Keypad dial lock is set.
- You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

<Delete this>

- If you try to delete an image that has been set to a screen or original animation or set as a user icon in Schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select "YES" to delete the image, the corresponding feature (display, etc.) changes as follows:
 - The screens restore to the default.
 - The Original animation is released.
 - The alarm notification screen for the schedule switches to the screen on which you set "".
- Even if the original image is deleted, the same one attached to mail is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to mail is also deleted.

● Image information

You can check the following:

Item		Content
File name		Displays the file name.
Format		Displays the file format. (The format of Flash movies is not displayed.)
File size		Displays the file size by K byte.
Saved at		Displays the date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes) when the file was saved.
File restriction		Displays "File restricted/File unrestricted".
Transfer for Repair*1		Shows whether or not the file can be moved in the case of failure. ("Permitted" is displayed for the downloaded image which is permitted to be moved.)
Show Size		Displays the file display size (wide × high in dots).
Base		Displays from where the file was retrieved.
Set as display*1		Displays where the image is set. (When no image is set, "No set" is displayed.)
DPOF setting*2	prints	Displays the specified number of prints. (When it is not set, "No set" is displayed. When 100 or higher is specified, " * * " is displayed.)
	Date	Displays ON/OFF of Date.

*1 : Is not displayed for miniSD memory card.
*2 : Displayed only for miniSD memory card (Picture).

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

● Resizing an image to attach to mail

Resizes the image so that it can be attached to mail if the JPEG image is larger than 320 dots wide 240 dots high or 240 dots wide 320 dots high, or if the file size exceeds 500K bytes.

● You cannot select this function when JPEG image other than the above or GIF image is selected.

1 Image list screen (P.339) ► (FUNC) ► “Size for mail” ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Attach mail	Reduces the file size to 500 K bytes or less without changing the image size.
QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size to up to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high without changing the aspect ratio. If the file size exceeds 500K bytes, it is reduced to 500K bytes or smaller.
QVGA trim away	After reducing the image size without changing the aspect ratio, this option trims the center of the image to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high. If the file size exceeds 500K bytes, it is reduced to 500K bytes or smaller.

2 Check the edited image ► (Save) ► “YES”

NOTE

- By “QVGA trim away”, you cannot change where to be trimmed, but the center is to be trimmed.
- The resized image is newly saved to the folder where the original is stored.
- The following show the title and file name of the saved image:
 - Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm
 - File name: yyyyymmddhhmmXXX (XXX: 3-digit number)

● Changing image size to compose a mail message

You can attach the saved still image to an i-mode mail message or insert it in a Deco-mail message.

1 Image list screen (P.339) ► (FUNC) ► “Compose message” ► Select any item:

Item	Description						
Attach image	Attaches JPEG image that is 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or smaller, or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller, JPEG image with a file size of 500 K bytes or less, or GIF image with a file size of 10000 bytes or less to an i-mode mail message without resizing the image size and file size. Select any of the following item to attach an image that is larger than the image described above. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Attach mail</td><td>Attaches image by reducing its file size to 500 K bytes or less without changing the image size.</td></tr> <tr> <td>QVGA scale down</td><td>Attaches image by reducing its file size to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high, or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high without changing its aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if its file size is larger than the maximum.</td></tr> <tr> <td>QVGA trim away</td><td>Trims the center of the image to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high after reducing the image size without changing the aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if the file size exceeds the maximum.</td></tr> </table>	Attach mail	Attaches image by reducing its file size to 500 K bytes or less without changing the image size.	QVGA scale down	Attaches image by reducing its file size to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high, or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high without changing its aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if its file size is larger than the maximum.	QVGA trim away	Trims the center of the image to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high after reducing the image size without changing the aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if the file size exceeds the maximum.
Attach mail	Attaches image by reducing its file size to 500 K bytes or less without changing the image size.						
QVGA scale down	Attaches image by reducing its file size to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high, or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high without changing its aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if its file size is larger than the maximum.						
QVGA trim away	Trims the center of the image to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high after reducing the image size without changing the aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if the file size exceeds the maximum.						
Insert image	Inserts the JPEG image that is smaller than 96 dots wide × 128 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high, or JPEG or GIF image with a file size of 9,000 bytes or less without resizing the image size and file size. Select any of the following item to insert the image that is larger than the image described above. <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Insert mail</td><td>Inserts image by reducing its file size to 9,000 bytes or less without changing the image size.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Sub-QCIF scale down</td><td>Inserts image by reducing its image size to 96 dots wide × 128 dots high, or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high without changing its aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if its file size is larger than the maximum.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Sub-QCIF trim away</td><td>Trims the center of the image to 96 dots wide × 128 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high after reducing the image size without changing the aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if the file size exceeds the maximum.</td></tr> </table>	Insert mail	Inserts image by reducing its file size to 9,000 bytes or less without changing the image size.	Sub-QCIF scale down	Inserts image by reducing its image size to 96 dots wide × 128 dots high, or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high without changing its aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if its file size is larger than the maximum.	Sub-QCIF trim away	Trims the center of the image to 96 dots wide × 128 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high after reducing the image size without changing the aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if the file size exceeds the maximum.
Insert mail	Inserts image by reducing its file size to 9,000 bytes or less without changing the image size.						
Sub-QCIF scale down	Inserts image by reducing its image size to 96 dots wide × 128 dots high, or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high without changing its aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if its file size is larger than the maximum.						
Sub-QCIF trim away	Trims the center of the image to 96 dots wide × 128 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high after reducing the image size without changing the aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if the file size exceeds the maximum.						

Continued on next page

2 Check the edited image▶(Set)▶Compose message

Composing and sending i-mode mail→P.253
Composing and sending Deco-mail→P.259

NOTE

- JPEG image from 10,001 bytes to 500K bytes is called Large image. if you send a Large image to the i-mode terminal, the image is converted to the proper size in the i-shot Center so that it can be received by i-mode terminals.
- You cannot select "Attach image" for GIF images with a file size of 10,000 bytes or more.
- You cannot change where to be trimmed with "QVGA trim away" and "Sub-QCIF trim away". The center is to be trimmed.
- If you select "Compose message" during editing an image, you cannot select "Insert image".
- You cannot compose mail messages when:
 - There are already 20 draft mails stored
 - Flash movie is to be attached
 - The image is prohibited to be output from your FOMA terminal

● Setting the position when setting an image

Positions the image when it is smaller than the image display area.

1 Image list screen (P.339)▶(FUNC)▶"Positioning"▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Center	Displays the image in the center of the image display area.
Top	Displays the image at the top of the image display area.
Bottom	Displays the image at the bottom of the image display area.

<Example: The Standby screen>



Displayed in the center



Displayed at the top



Displayed at the bottom

NOTE

- The specified display position is valid for the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving and Checking. However, the specified display position may not function for some image sizes.

● Setting the area when setting an image

Sets the area where the image is displayed when it is larger than the image display area.

- 1 Image list screen (P.339) ► (FUNC) ► “Clipping area” ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Center	Displays the center of the image.
Upper	Displays the upper part of the image.
Lower	Displays the lower part of the image.

<Example: Calling>



Center part displayed



Upper part displayed



Lower part displayed

NOTE

- The specified clipping area is valid for the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving and Checking. However, the specified clipping area may not function for some image sizes.

● Making a composite image from 4 images

- You cannot specify images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

- 1 Image list screen (P.339) ► (FUNC) ► “Composite image”
- 2 Select the position ► Select a folder ► Select an image ► Repeat to select four images in total



■ To cancel the specified image

- Select the image to cancel ► “Release this” on the folder selection screen

- 3 (Finish) ► (Save)

■ To retry creating the composite image

- (Cancel)

NOTE

- The created composite image is saved to the folder used to create the image.
- The four images are integrated without changing the aspect ratio. The original images used for integrating are not resized.
- You can check the framed image by pressing (Play) on the selection screen, but the image cannot be displayed in the actual size.

Creating animations <Original animation>

You can create an animated cartoon made of up to 20 frames using stored images.

● You can create up to 20 animations.

1 "My picture" "Original animation"

The "Original animation list screen" appears.

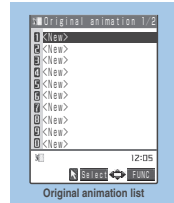
2 "<New>"

3 Select a frame Select a folder Select an image Repeat



■ To cancel the specified image

 Select the frame to cancel  "Release this" on the folder selection screen



Function menu  P.350

4 (Finish)

NOTE

- You can check the framed image by pressing  (Play) on the selection screen.
- Only the frames with an image specified are played in order.
- You can specify JPEG images whose sizes are 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high or smaller.

Function menu (Original animation list screen)

1 Original animation list screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit title	Edits the title of the original animation. You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Org. animation	Newly creates Original animation when "<New>" is highlighted. Edits the original animation when the existing one is highlighted.
Display image	Plays the original animation. (Displays the original animation playback screen)
Set as display	Selects the item to which the original animation is set.
Image info	Checks the settings of the original animation. If there are no settings, "No set" is displayed.
Release animat.	Cancels the original animation.

NOTE

<Set as display>

- Original animations can be set to the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving and Checking.

Playing the original animation

1 Original animation list screen (P.350) ▶ Select an original animation

The "Original animation playback screen" appears.
If there are two original animations or more, use ◀▶ to play the previous or next animation.



Original animation playback
Function menu ▶ P.351

Function menu (Original animation playback screen)

1 Original animation playback screen ▶ ◀▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Set as display	Selects the item to which the image is set.	
Set image disp.	Specifies the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).	
	Normal (default)	Displays the image in the actual size.
	Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
Retry	Plays the animation from the beginning.	

NOTE

<Set as display>

- Original animations can be set to the Stand-by display, Wake-up display, Dialing, Calling, V-phone dialing, V-phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving and Checking.

Copying images stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card

You can export (copy) images stored in the folders to miniSD memory card.

- The exported images are saved to the destination folder specified by "Select storage" (P.393).
- Icons on the Image List screen show which images can be exported.

<Example: Image list screen for Inbox, Camera, Deco-mail picture or User-created folders>

1 Image list screen (P.339) ▶ ◀▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Export" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Export one	Exports one image.
Export selected	▶ Select images ▶ ◀▶ (Finish) ▶ "YES" Exports two selected images or more.
Export all	Exports all the images.

NOTE

- Do not remove miniSD memory card during the export. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- You cannot export the pre-installed images.
- When the specified destination folder is full, a new folder is automatically created and images are saved to the new folder.
- The following shows the file name after exported:
 - File name: NEC_mmmm (mmm = 0001 to 9999)

NOTE

- You cannot export an image when:
 - It is not JPEG or GIF
 - It is a still image of file-restricted Chara-den shot
 - It is prohibited to be output from your FOMA terminal
 - There is too little space available on the miniSD memory card
 - The miniSD memory card is not supported
 - An error occurs on the miniSD memory card
 - The file size exceeds 600K bytes after exported
 - miniSD memory card is being inserted
- When you export images to a miniSD memory card, the file sizes may increase.
- If the clock is not set and you export an image timestamped "----/-- --:--", the file saving time is "2004/01/01 00:00".

Copying images stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

You can import (copy) images stored on miniSD memory card to your FOMA terminal.

- The imported images are saved to the Inbox folder of My picture.

<Example: Image List screen for miniSD memory card (Picture)>

1 Image list screen (P.339) ➡ (FUNC) ➡ "Import" ➡ Select any item:

Item	Description
Import one	Imports one image.
Import selected	➡ Select images ➡ (Finish) ➡ "YES" Imports two selected images or more.
Import all	Imports all the images.

NOTE

- Do not remove miniSD memory card during the import. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- You cannot import Flash movies.
- You cannot import an image whose file size exceeds 600K bytes.
- You cannot import images larger than 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high. Also, progressive JPEG images larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high cannot be imported. Progressive JPEG image → P.226
- The file name of the imported image is used as it is or changed to "yyyymmddhhmmxxx" (date and time, and 3-digit number (xxx)).

<Edit image>
Editing Images

You can edit the images you shot or imported.

- The following are the editing methods:

Type	Details	Size that can be edited	Ref. page
Frame	Frames an image.	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high ^{*1}	P.354
Retouch	Applies special effects such as sepia tones to images.	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high ^{*2} Up to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high ^{*2}	P.353
Marker stamp	Pastes marker stamps such as hearts into images.	1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high ^{*3} 1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high ^{*3}	P.355
Character stamp	Pastes entered text stamps into images.	Up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high ^{*2} Up to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high ^{*2}	P.356
Trim away	Trims an image down to the desired size.		P.356
Brightness	Adjusts the image brightness.		P.353
Rotate	Rotates the image clockwise or counterclockwise by 90 or 180 degrees.		P.353
Change size	Resizes the image.		P.353
Correct backlight	Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight.	Up to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high ^{*2} Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high ^{*2}	P.353
Refresh skin tone	Corrects the skin parts.		P.353

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.380

*1 : You cannot frame an image if the size is not 352 × 288, 288 × 352, 240 × 320, 320 × 240, 240 × 345, 345 × 240, 176 × 144, 144 × 176, 128 × 96 or 96 × 128 (dots wide × dots high).

*2 : Some editing methods may not be performed due to the image size.

*3 : Editable after reducing 640 dots wide × 480 dots high

● Images that can be edited → P.342

● When "Edit image" is selected in the Image checking screen function menu, only the "Frame", "Retouch", "Refresh skin tone" and "Correct backlight" are available.

1 My picture screen (P.340) ► (FUNC) ► "Edit image"

The "Edit image screen" appears.

2 (FUNC) ► Select the editing method → P.353

3 Check the edited image ► (Set)

4 (Save) ► "YES" or "NO"

Selecting "YES" overwrites the original image.

Selecting "NO" saves a new image to the folder where the original is stored.



Function menu ► P.353

NOTE

● Editing an image repeatedly may impair the image quality or increase the file size.

● Some images may hardly reflect the editing effects.

● The edited image is regarded as the one shot by camera.

Function menu (Edit image screen)

1 Edit image screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description	
Frame	"Adding frames" → P.354	
Retouch	Applies effects to the image.	
	Sharp	Sharpens the outline of the image.
	Blur	Softens the outline of the image.
	Sepia	Makes the sepia-tone image.
	Emboss	Brings out the image in relief.
	Negative	Makes the negative image.
	Horizontal flip	Reverses the left and right in the image (mirroring).
Marker stamp	"Pasting marker stamps" → P.355	
Character stamp	"Pasting character stamps" → P.356	
Trim away	"Trimming" → P.356	
Brightness	► Use (FUNC) to adjust the brightness Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from " - 2 to ± 0 to + 2".	
Rotate	90° to right	Rotates the image 90° clockwise.
	90° to left	Rotates the image 90° counterclockwise.
	180°	Rotates the image 180°.

Item	Description	
Change size	Resizes the image to the maximum not larger than the selected size, keeping the aspect ratio.	
	VGA (640 × 480)	640 dots wide × 480 dots high (VGA)
	CIF (352 × 288)	352 dots wide × 288 dots high (CIF)
	QVGA (320 × 240)	320 dots wide × 240 dots high (QVGA)
	QCIF (176 × 144)	176 dots wide × 144 dots high (QCIF)
	Sub-QCIF (128 × 96)	128 dots wide × 96 dots high (Sub-QCIF)
	Stand-by (240 × 320)	240 dots wide × 320 dots high (QVGA Vert.)
	Screen (240 × 345)	240 dots wide × 345 dots high
	VGA Vert. (480 × 640)	480 dots wide × 640 dots high (VGA Vert.)
	CIF Vert. (288 × 352)	288 dots wide × 352 dots high (CIF Vert.)
	QCIF Vert. (144 × 176)	144 dots wide × 176 dots high (QCIF Vert.)
	Sub-QCIF Vert. (96 × 128)	96 dots wide × 128 dots high (Sub-QCIF Vert.)
Correct backlight	Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight.	
Refresh skin tone	Corrects the skin parts.	
Compose message	"Changing image size to compose a mail message" → P.347	
Save	Saves the edited image.	

● Adding frames

- You can use the downloaded frames in addition to the pre-installed ones (P.184).

1 Edit image screen (P.353) ► (FUNC) ► "Frame" ► Select a frame

The image is displayed in the selected frame.
Use  to change to another frame.

■ To cancel the selected frame

►  (Cancel)

NOTE

- The orientation of the downloaded frame is portrait or landscape. The image can be framed only if the size and orientation of the frame are the same as those of the image.
- If the size of the image that was trimmed or resized is the same as that of the frame, the image can be framed. The quality of the resized and framed image may deteriorate.

Pasting marker stamps

- You can use the downloaded marker stamps in addition to the pre-installed ones.
- You can rotate, enlarge or reduce marker stamps.
- The following are the pre-installed marker stamps:

Cross		Heart1		Heart2	
Kiss		Tear		Flame	
Lightning		Sorry		Note	
Flower		Love		Anger	
Right		Below		Left	
Above		Here		No. 1	
No. 2		No. 3		Party	
OK		NG		Person	
Car		Asleep		Question	
Surprise		Shine		Whirlpool	
Punch		Nose			

1 Edit image screen (P.353) ► (FUNC) ► “Marker stamp” ► Select a marker stamp

■ To edit a marker stamp

► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description
90° to right	Rotates the marker stamp 90° clockwise.
90° to left	Rotates the marker stamp 90° counterclockwise.
180°	Rotates the marker stamp 180°.
Scale up	Doubles the size of the marker stamp.
Scale down	Reduces the size of the marker stamp half.

2 Position the marker stamp ► (Put)

or neuropointer is available to position the marker stamp.



■ To use another marker stamp

► (Add) ► Repeat steps 1 to 2

NOTE

- You can only use downloaded stamps measuring 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller. Larger stamps are handled as GIF images.
- You can repeatedly enlarge or reduce a marker stamp.
- You cannot enlarge the marker stamp bigger than the edited image. You also cannot reduce the width or height of the marker stamp to 1 dot or less.

● Pasting character stamps

Default setting	Character color: Black Font: Gothic style Character size: Standard size

- You can enter up to 3-15 full-pitch or 6-30 half-pitch characters as a stamp. The number of characters that can be entered differs depending on the image size and character size.
- You can change the character stamp color, font and size.

1 Edit image screen (P.353)▶ (FUNC)▶“Character stamp”▶Enter the text

■ To edit a character stamp

▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Character input	Enters the text. “Entering text”→P.498
Character color	▶Use  to select the color Sets the color of the character stamp. To use another color palette, press  (Change).
Font	Chooses between “Gothic style” and “Pop style” for the font.
Character size	Chooses the character size among “Enlargement”, “Standard size”, and “Reduction size”.

2 Position the character stamp▶ (Put)

 or neuropointer is available to position the character stamp.



NOTE

- The font thickness is specified in the “Font” setting (P.142).

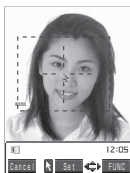
● Trimming

1 Edit image screen (P.353)▶ (FUNC)▶“Trim away”▶Select any item:

Item	Description
CIF (352 × 288)	Trims the image to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high (CIF).
QVGA (320 × 240)	Trims the image to 320 dots wide × 240 dots high (QVGA).
QCIF (176 × 144)	Trims the image to 176 dots wide × 144 dots high (QCIF).
Sub-QCIF (128 × 96)	Trims the image to 128 dots wide × 96 dots high (Sub-QCIF).
Stand-by (240 × 320)	Trims the image to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high (QVGA Vert.).
Screen (240 × 345)	Trims the image to 240 dots wide × 345 dots high.
CIF Vert. (288 × 352)	Trims the image to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high (CIF Vert.).
QCIF Vert. (144 × 176)	Trims the image to 144 dots wide × 176 dots high (QCIF Vert.).
Sub-QCIF Vert. (96 × 128)	Trims the image to 96 dots wide × 128 dots high (Sub-QCIF Vert.).
Background (240 × 270)	Trims the image to 240 dots wide × 270 dots high for the menu background.
Menu icon (64 × 63)	Trims the image to 64 dots wide × 63 dots high for the menu icon.
Chat (80 × 80)	Trims the image to 80 dots wide × 80 dots high for Chat.

2 Determine where to trim▶●(Set)

or neuropointer is available to adjust the clipping frame.



<i-motion>

Playing Movies/i-motion

You can play movies you have shot, i-motion downloaded from i-mode sites or websites and movies stored on miniSD memory cards from the "i-motion" in the Data box.

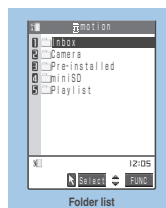
- To download i-motion to the FOMA terminal → P.242
- Playing i-motion (including music data) created with PCs → P.532

1 menu▶▶"i-motion"

The "folder list screen" appears.

The "Secret" folder is also displayed when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

Contents in the i-motion folder → P.338



Function menu▶P.364, 391

2 Select a folder

The "movie list screen (Preview)" appears.

Movie list screen → P.358



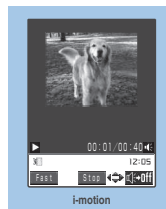
Function menu▶P.358

3 Select a movie

The "i-motion screen" appears and movie playback begins.

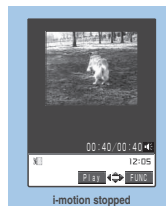
Use ◀▶ to play the previous or next movie.

"Operations available during i-motion playback" → P.361



i-motion

When playback ends, the "i-motion stopped screen" appears.



i-motion stopped

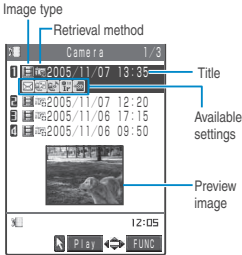
Function menu▶P.362

NOTE

- If you try to play an i-motion or movie with sound when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a message may appear asking whether to play the movie. Selecting "YES" plays the movie with sound. Selecting "NO" plays the video without any sound. If you try to play voice-only i-motion (i-motion without video, e.g. a singer's voice) or if the turn of voice-only i-motion comes around during continuous playback or play list playback, the playback will be canceled or stopped.
- The video or sound in a movie may stop in mid-movie if you receive mail or a Message Request/Free during movie or i-motion playback.
- You may not be able to play movies that were not shot on FOMA N701i.

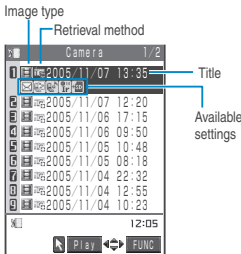
Guide to the Preview screen and Title list

- The icons for image types, retrieval methods and the available settings → P.341, 342
- Titles and file names → P.342



Preview screen

The display shows four movies listed by title and a preview image from the selected movie is displayed below the titles. Icons show the image types, retrieval methods and the options that can be set for each movie. Preview images are not displayed for movies with no video such as a sound only i-motion (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice).



Title list

The titles of the nine movies are listed on the screen. Icons show the image types, retrieval methods, and the options that can be set for each movie.

Function menu (movie list screen)

- The available functions vary by the folders, which means that the items listed in each function menu are different.

1 Movie list screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit i-motion	"Editing Movies" → P.365
Edit title	Edits the title of the movie. "Entering Text" → P.498 Inbox, Camera, User-created folders You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters. miniSD memory card You can enter up to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters.
Set as ring tone	Sets the sound of the movie as the ring tone for voice calls, videophone calls, mail, Chat mail, Message Request or Message Free. → P.126
Stand-by display	Sets the movie to the standby screen.
i-motion info	"i-motion information" → P.360
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the movie attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
Send Ir data	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.397

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.380

Item	Description	
Export	"Copying movies stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card"→P.364	
Move folder	Selects the destination folder to move the movie.	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→P.143	
Edit file name	Edits the file name of the movie. You can enter up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. You can not enter symbols. "Entering Text"→P.498	
File restriction	File unrestricted	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
Reset title	Restores the title to the default.	
Delete this	Deletes one movie.	
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶"YES" Deletes all the movies in the folder. Security code→P.152	
Multiple-choice	"Selecting multiple data"→P.392	
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal or on miniSD memory card.	
Sort	Sorts movies. Note that this function sorts movies and images not only in the selected folder, but also in the following folders in the My picture or i-motion. Inbox/Camera/Deco-mail picture (only My picture)/Secret/User-created folders	
	Chronological ↑ (default)	Displays movies in reverse chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	Chronological ↓	Displays movies in chronological order by retrieval date/time.
	By title ↓	Displays movies in "Number (123) → Alphabet (ABCabc) → Hiragana (あいう) → Kanji" order.
	By title ↑	Displays movies in "Kanji → Hiragana (ういあ) → Alphabet (cbaCBA) → Number (321)" order.
	By size ↑	Displays movies in ascending order by size.
	By size ↓	Displays movies in descending order by size.
Listing	By source	Displays movies in the order by retrieval method.
	Specifies how to list the movies.	
	Title*¹	Changes to the title list.
	Title + image*¹	Changes to the preview display.
	Name*² *³	Changes to the title list (or file name list).
	Name + image*² *³	Changes to the preview display.
Import*³	Title*³ *⁴	Changes to the file name list.
	"Copying movies stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal"→P.365	
Copy*³	Selects the destination folder to copy the movie.	
Move*³	Selects the destination folder to move the movie.	
Keep in secret *⁵	"Preventing others from viewing data"→P.159	

*¹ : Displayed only for the movies or i-motion stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone). (default: Title + image)

*² : The name is either file name or title.

*³ : Displayed only for the movies or i-motion stored on miniSD memory card. (default: Name + image)

*⁴ : If you have selected the title list, the "File name" is displayed.

*⁵ : Displayed only when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".

NOTE

<Set as ring tone>

- You can only set a movie or i-motion with the Set as ring tone "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether it is "Available" or "Unavailable".
- You cannot set the i-motion or movies which are sent from PCs or other FOMA terminals, or imported from miniSD memory cards as a ring tone. → P.127

<Stand-by display>

- Deleting the movie or i-motion that was set to the standby screen or moving the movie or i-motion to the "Secret" folder restores the standby screen to the default settings.
- You cannot set the movie or i-motion to the Standby screen when:
 - The movie or i-motion is voice only, or the i-motion is text only
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- Some movies may not be displayed correctly on the Standby screen.
- You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To functions from the i-motion set to the Standby screen.

<Compose message>

- You cannot compose i-mode mail when:
 - There are already 20 draft mails stored
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
 - It is a movie of file-restricted Chara-den shot
 - The i-motion is prohibited to be output from your FOMA terminal
- Though you cannot compose an i-mode mail message when the file size of the movie exceeds 500 KB, you can trim the movie so that you can attach it. → P.369

<Memory info>

- The approximate amount in the normal mode is displayed. The amount of the "Secret" folder is displayed only when the FOMA terminal is in the Secret mode or Secret only mode.

<Sort>

- "By source" sorts the movies or i-motion in the following order. Movies or i-motion with the same retrieval icon are arranged in the order in which they were shown before you selected "By source".
 - Downloaded i-motion or i-motion retrieved from i-appli, etc. → Movies shot by camera → Movies retrieved using Infrared data exchange or copied from miniSD memory card → Chara-den shots

● i-motion information

You can check the following:

Item	Description	
File name	Displays the file name.	
Format	Displays the file format.	
Default title	Displays the original title.	
Creator	Displays the creator of the file. (If there is no information about the creator, "Unknown" is displayed.)	
Copyright	Displays the copyright of the file. (If there is no information about the copyright, "Unknown" is displayed.)	
Saved at	Displays the date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes) when the file was saved.	
File size	Displays the file size by K byte.	
Display size	Displays the file display size (wide × high in dots).	
Received from	Displays from where the file was retrieved.	
Description	Displays the file description. (If there is no description, "Unknown" is displayed.)	
File restriction	Displays File restricted/File unrestricted.	
Replay restriction	If there are count restrictions	Displays "Remaining play count/Total play count".
	If there are period restrictions	Displays "Date file stored ~ Date of play period".
	If there are span restrictions	Displays "Playable date ~ Date of play span".
	If there are no play restrictions	"Not restricted" is displayed.
Video	Displays "Included/Not included/Unplayable" for video.	
Audio	Displays audio information "AMR/AAC/Not included/Playable/Unplayable (MP4)/Unplayable (ASF)".	
Text	Displays "Included/Not included/Unplayable" for text.	
Ring tone	Displays whether the ring tone is "Available/Unavailable". (When a ring tone is set, the setting is displayed.)	

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.380

Item	Description
Receive display	Displays whether the receive display is "Available/Unavailable". (When a receive display is set, the setting is displayed.)

Operations available during i-motion playback

You can use the operations shown below during i-motion playback:



During playback



When tickers are displayed



When adjusting the volume

Control keys	Action
	Pauses/resumes playback.
	Adjusts the volume.
	Plays the previous or next movie or i-motion.*1
	Fast forward
	Mute (disabled when there is no audio)
	Skip back*2
	Skip forward*2
	Frame advance (moves forward one frame each time it is pressed)
	Slow playback
	End

*1 : You cannot operate these if you play it from the Data acquisition screen (P.242).

*2 : May not be available for some i-motion.

NOTE

- The default i-motion volume is "Level 4". The volume can be chosen between "Level 0" and "Level 6", and the setting is retained next time the i-motion is played.
- The volume set for i-motion does not affect the ring volumes set in "Ring volume".
- Seek (skip back/forward) can be used while movies are playing (including slow playback and fast forward) and while movies are paused. Sound is muted during seeking (skip back/forward).
- Seek (skip back/forward) is unavailable when:
 - The playback is stopped
 - It is an i-motion that can be played during downloading
 - The file has no seek points
 - The interval between seek points is too long
 - The file has a seek point only at the beginning of the file
 - The file is a voice-only ASF file with no seek data
- Tickers cannot be played during seeking (skip back/forward) or during frame advance playback.

Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions

If an underlined phone number, e-mail address or URL is displayed on the screen when the playback ends, you can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To or Web To function (P.229).

If you can use the Phone To/AV Phone To or Mail To function, the data can also be saved to the phonebook. When the playback ends, select "Add to phonebook" from the menu.

- Adding data to the phonebook → P.107, 108



Phone To function



Mail To function



Web To function

Function menu (i-motion stopped (pause) screen)

● The available functions vary by the folders, which means that the items listed in each function menu are different.

1 i-motion stopped screen▶⏮(FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description	
Normal play	If the playback is paused, the i-motion is replayed from the pause.	
Slow	Plays slow. To return to normal playback, press ⏮(Play) or select "Normal play" from the Function menu while the movie is paused.	
Fast	Plays fast. To return to normal playback, press ⏮(Play) or select "Normal play" from the Function menu while the movie is paused.	
Stop	Exits i-motion and returns to the Movies list screen.	
Position to play	▶⏮▶Select the point where the playback is to begin Begins the playback from the specified position.	
Edit i-motion	"Editing Movies"→P.365	
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the current movie attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→P.253	
Set as ring tone	Sets the sound of the movie as the ring tone for voice calls, videophone calls, mail, chat mail, Message Request or Message Free.→P.126	
Stand-by display	Sets the movie to the Standby screen.	
Set repeat play	Specifies whether to play the i-motion continuously in the file order in the folder (to play repeatedly on the FOMA terminal).	
	ON	Plays the i-motion continuously in the file order in the folder.
	OFF (default)	Plays only the selected i-motion.
i-motion info	"i-motion information"→P.360	
Send Ir data	"Transferring one data at a time"→P.397	
Export	"Copying movies stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card"→P.364	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→P.143	
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for the images.	
	Actual size (default)	Displays the image in the actual size.
	Fit in display	Enlarges the image to the display size.
Import*	"Copying movies stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal"→P.365	

* : Displayed only for movies or i-motion saved in miniSD memory card

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

NOTE

<Slow>

- Movies are muted during slow playback.
- You cannot use slow playback with the i-motion that is being played while you are downloading it.

<Fast>

- Movies are muted during fast playback.
- You cannot use fast playback with the i-motion that is being played while you are downloading it.

<Position to play>

- You may not be able to select the playback position for some movies and i-motion.

<Compose message>

- You cannot compose i-mode mail when:
 - There are already 20 draft mails stored
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
 - It is a movie of file-restricted Chara-den shot
 - The i-motion is prohibited to be output from your FOMA terminal
- Though you cannot compose an i-mode mail message when the file size of the movie exceeds 500 KB, you can trim the movie so that you can attach it. → P.369

<Set as ring tone>

- You can only set a movie or i-motion with the Set as ring tone "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether it is "Available" or "Unavailable".
- You cannot set the i-motion or movies which are sent from PCs or other FOMA terminals, or imported from miniSD memory cards as a ring tone. → P.127

<Stand-by display>

- Deleting the movie or i-motion that was set to the standby screen or moving the movie or i-motion to the "Secret" folder restores the standby screen to the default settings.
- You cannot set the movie to the standby screen when:
 - The movie or i-motion is voice only, or the i-motion is text only
 - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- Some movies may not be displayed correctly on the standby screen.
- You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To functions from the i-motion set to the standby screen.

<Set repeat play>

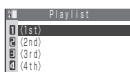
- The Set repeat play settings are retained after playing the i-motion (If "ON" is set, the movie or i-motion is played repeatedly next time it is played).
- Setting Set repeat play to "ON" automatically skips data that cannot be played. Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions are unavailable from i-motion.
- If you try to play i-motion, etc. on which the playback is restricted, a message appears indicating the restriction, and then the repeat play may be stopped.

● Playing movies in your preferred order <Play movie playlist>

You can select and store up to 10 movies to play multiple movies continuously.

1

Folder list screen (P.357)▶Highlight "Playlist"▶ (FUNC) ▶"Edit playlist"▶Select the number to which the movie is to be added▶Select a folder▶Select a movie▶Repeat



■ To release the added movie

▶Select the movie to release▶Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen▶"YES"

2

 (Finish)

The "i-motion Folder list screen" appears.
Selecting the Playlist folder starts the program playback and the stored movie is played repeatedly.

NOTE

- If you delete an i-motion or movie that has been added to a playlist, the playlist is canceled.

Function menu (Playlist folder)

1 Folder list screen of i-motion▶Highlight “Playlist”▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Add folder	Enters a title to add a folder. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.498
Edit folder name	Cannot change the name “Playlist” folder.
Delete folder	Cannot delete the Playlist folder.
Edit playlist	Creates playlist or edits the existing playlist. “Playing movies in your preferred order” → P.363
Release playlist	Releases the movies in the playlist.

Copying movies stored on the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card

You can export (copy) movies stored in the i-motion Inbox folder, Camera folder and user-created folders to miniSD memory card.

- The exported movies are saved to the destination folder specified by “Select storage” (P.393).
- You cannot export a downloaded movie if the file is restricted.

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera or User-created folders>

1 Movie list screen (P.357)▶ (FUNC)▶“Export”▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Export one	Exports one movie.
Export selected	▶Select a movie▶  (Finish)▶“YES” Exports two selected movies or more.
Export all	Exports all the movies.

NOTE	
● It may take long to export depending on the amount of data. Do not remove the miniSD memory card until export is completed. ● When the specified destination folder is full, a new folder is automatically created and movies are saved to the new folder. In this case, the folder name is displayed as popup. ● The following shows the file name after exported: · File name: MOLxxx (xxx = 001 to FFF: hexadecimal) ● You cannot export a movie when: · It is a movie of file-restricted Chara-den shot · It is prohibited to be output from your FOMA terminal · There is too little space available on the miniSD memory card · The miniSD memory card is not supported · An error occurs on the miniSD memory card · miniSD memory card is being inserted ● If the clock is not set and you export a movie timestamped “----/--/-- --:--”, the file saving time is “2004/ 1/ 1 0:00”.	

Copying movies stored on miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

You can import (copy) movies stored on miniSD memory card to your FOMA terminal.

- The imported movies are saved to the Inbox folder of i-motion.

<Example: Movie list screen for miniSD memory card>

1 Movie list screen (P.357) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Import” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Import one	Imports one movie.
Import selected	▶ Select a movie ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Imports two selected movies or more.
Import all	Imports all the movies.

NOTE

- It may take long to import depending on the amount of data. Do not remove the miniSD memory card until the import is completed.
- You cannot import a movie when:
 - It is not MP4
 - It is MP4 but cannot be played
- * You may be unable to import some movies even when none of the above applies.
- Movies larger than 800 K bytes are truncated to the first 800 K bytes.

<Edit movie>

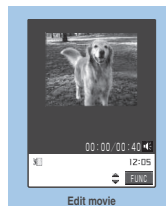
Editing Movies

- You cannot use the Multitask function while editing a movie.
- Movies that can be edited → P.342

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera or User-created folders>

1 Movie list screen (P.357) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Edit i-motion” The “edit movie screen” appears.

2 (FUNC) ▶ Select the editing method → P.366



Function menu ▶ P.366

NOTE

- Editing a movie may impair the movie quality or increase/decrease the file size.
- If you receive a call, fold the FOMA terminal or the battery runs out during confirming the edited movie, the information currently set is saved. However, the information is not saved and is aborted if the FOMA terminal's memory for movies is full.
- The file size displayed during movie editing is only intended as an approximate guide.

Function menu (edit movie screen)

1 Edit movie screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Trim i-motion	"Trimming a part of the movie" → P.366
Trim for image	  (Play)  (Stop) when you want to trim the frame  (Set)  "YES"  Select a folder Trims the selected frame as a still image.
Rerecord sound	Erases the soundtrack so that new sound can be recorded. "Rerecording sound" → P.366
Edit ticker	"Adding tickers to movies" → P.367
Trim for mail	"Trimming the movie to be attached to mail" → P.369
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the edited movie attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
File restriction	File unrestricted Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	File restricted Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- You cannot compose i-mode mail when:
 - The file size of the edited movie exceeds 500K bytes
 - There are already 20 draft mails stored

● Trimming a part of the movie

1 Edit movie screen (P.365) (FUNC) "Trim i-motion" (Start)

Starts trimming.

■ To start trimming at a scene mid-way through the movie

  (Play)  (Stop) when it is the first frame you want to trim   (Start)

2 Press (Stop) when it is the last frame you want to trim (End)

The trimmed section of the movie is played. The playback stops automatically when it ends.

■ To check the trimmed section again

  (Play)

3 (Set) (Save) "YES"

NOTE

- The approximate size of the trimmed file is displayed during the movie trimming.

● Rerecording sound

1 Edit movie screen (P.365) (FUNC) "Rerecord sound" (Start)

Starts rerecording.

■ To rerecord sound mid-way through the movie

  (Play)  Play the movie to the frame you want to record   (Start)

2 Press (End) after recording

The movie playback continues. Press  (Start) and  (End) to record again.

3 Press (Finish) to finish rerecording

■ To check the rerecorded movie

  (Play)

4 (Set) (Save) "YES"

NOTE

- Rerecording sound onto movies with tickers erases the tickers.

● Adding tickers to movies

Default setting	Font color: Black Background color: White Font size: Normal Word alignment: Left Blink/Underline/Scroll: OFF

You can add new tickers to a movie or edit the existing tickers.

- You can edit up to 5 tickers per movie. You can enter up to 20 full-pitch characters for each ticker.
- "Entering Text" → P.498

1 Edit movie screen (P.365) (FUNC) "Edit ticker" "New"

2 (Start) Enter the ticker text

- To start the tickers at a scene mid-way through the movie

  (Play)  (Stop) when you want to add tickers to the frame  (Start)

3 Set the following effects of tickers:

Item	Description	
Font color	 Use  to select the color Sets the text color. To use another color palette, press  (Change).	
Background color	 Use  to select the color Sets the background color. To use another color palette, press  (Change).	
Font size	Chooses between "Normal" and "Large" for the font size.	
Word alignment	Sets the text position.	
	Left	Displays the ticker on the left of the screen.
	Center	Displays the ticker on the center of the screen.
	Right	Displays the ticker on the right of the screen.
Blink	Specifies whether to flash the tickers.	
Underline	Specifies whether to underline the tickers.	
Scroll	Sets the scrolling mode.	
	OFF	Cancels scrolling.
	Scroll in	 Select the scrolling direction among "Right to left", "Left to right", "Bottom to top" and "Top to bottom"
	Scroll out	
	Scroll in&out	
Finish setting	Exits the ticker effects settings.	

4 Set the respective settings "Finish setting"

5 (Play) (Stop) when you want to end the tickers (End)

When you select "Add ticker", if a point is reached during playback at which previously recorded tickers begin, a message appears asking whether to set that point as the end point for the edited tickers. Choosing "YES" adds a new ticker. Choosing "NO" returns the screen to the Ticker list. Repeat Steps 2 to 5 to add another ticker.

■ If the Ticker list appears

▶ (Finish)

To check the movie with the inserted tickers, press (Play).

To edit the tickers, press (Edit).

Editing tickers → P.368

Go on to Step 7.

6 Press (FUNC) when you finish editing the ticker ▶ "Finish editing"

7 (Set) (Save) "YES"

NOTE

- If you edit the ticker, the edited data cannot be specified as the ring tone or the alarm tone.
- The scrolling speed is set automatically to match the time from the start point to the end point.
- If 6 or more tickers are used in a movie that was retrieved using Infrared data exchange or data communication, the 6th and subsequent tickers are deleted during editing. If a ticker contains more than 20 full-pitch characters, the 21st and subsequent characters are deleted and unsupported effects are also deleted.
- Ticker effects that are not supported by the FOMA N701i may be deleted or modified.

● Editing added tickers

- If you attempt to edit tickers in a movie to which tickers have already been added, a message appears warning you that some part of the ticker data may be deleted.

1 Edit movie screen (P.365) (FUNC) "Edit ticker" "YES" "Edit"



The Ticker list screen appears.

■ To check the ticker details

▶ Select a ticker ▶ Check the details ▶ CLR

2 Highlight the ticker you want to edit (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Change text	Edits the ticker text.
Change effect	Changes ticker effects such as the font color, background color and scroll.
Change start po.	Resets the ticker starting point.
Change end point	Resets the ticker ending point.
Add ticker	▶ "<Available>" ▶ Add the ticker
Delete ticker	Deletes one ticker.

3 Press (Finish) when you finish editing

4 (Set) (Save) "YES"

● Trimming the movie to be attached to mail

- 1 **Edit movie screen (P.365) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Trim for mail” ▶ Select any item:**

Item	Description
Mail (L)	Trims a movie larger than 490K bytes to 490K bytes or smaller.
Mail (S)	Trims a movie larger than 290K bytes to 290K bytes or smaller.

- 2 **(Play) ▶ (Stop) when you want to start trimming ▶ (Start)**

Starts trimming.

The playback stops automatically when the size becomes the maximum size to be attached to mail.

■ **To check the trimmed movie**

▶ (Play)

- 3 **(Set) ▶ (Save) ▶ “YES”**

NOTE

- Movies whose sizes are 290 K bytes or larger, which are shot using the FOMA terminal's built-in camera, can be trimmed using “Trim for mail”.
- The movie with ticker cannot be trimmed with ticker added.
- The approximate size of the trimmed file is displayed during the movie trimming.

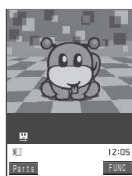
What is Chara-den?

“Chara-den” is a function that allows you to send a cartoon character to your party's FOMA terminal in a videophone call instead of the image from your own FOMA terminal camera.

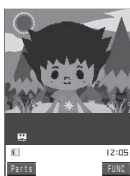
Display Chara-den

Default setting **Set image disp.: Fit in display** **Substitute image: ブンブン (Dimo)**

- Downloading “Chara-den” characters → P.228
- The following are the pre-installed Chara-den characters:



Dimo



Cotto



Natali

- 1 **(menu) ▶ (Chara-den)**

The “Chara-den list screen” appears.

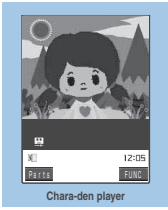


Chara-den list
Function menu ▶ P.371

2

Select Chara-den

The "Chara-den player screen" appears.

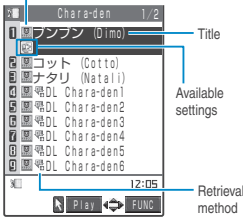


Function menu P.372

Guide to the Chara-den list

- The icons for image types, retrieval methods and the available settings → P.341
- Titles and file names → P.342

Image type (Chara-den)



The titles of the nine Chara-den characters are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the image (Chara-den) type, the way the image was retrieved, and the settings that can be specified for the image.

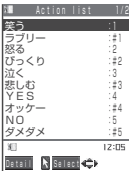
Using Chara-den characters

This function allows you to play a Chara-den character by choosing from pre-installed actions.

1

Chara-den player screen (P.370) ▶ Using Chara-den characters

■ To check the Action list



The actions shown in the list differ depending on the type of character. The number such as "1" or "#1" displayed on the right of the action indicates that pressing that key during the Chara-den playback will perform the corresponding action.

<To check the action details>

▶ Highlight the action ▶ (Detail) ▶ Check the details ▶ (Exit)

■ To change the Action mode

▶ (Parts/Whole)

This command switches to Parts action mode when " " is displayed and to Whole action mode when " " is displayed.

(Whole): The action mode in which the entire Chara-den character moves to express feelings.

(Parts): The action mode in which the parts of the Chara-den character (head, hands, feet, etc.) move.

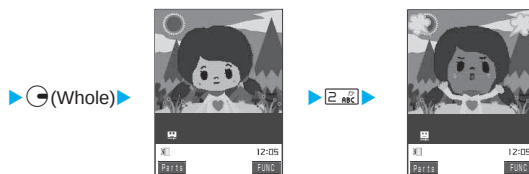
■ To use the keypad to select actions during the Chara-den playback

The keypad keys that can be pressed to make the displayed character perform actions are as follows:

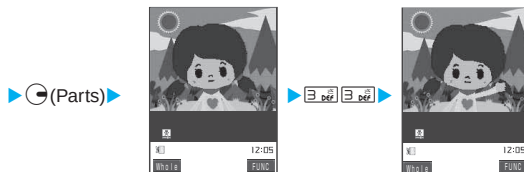
"Whole": One-digit number on the right side of the action name () to () or () to ()

"Parts": Two-digit number on the right side of the action name () to ()

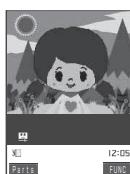
<Example: Anger in Whole action mode>
 *The Chara-den is displayed normally (not mirror).



<Example: Raise the hand of the right side in Parts action mode>



■ To have the character's mouth synchronize your voice



Some Chara-den characters can move the mouth synchronizing your voice as if it were talking.

If you use the Function menu or press one of the keys to make the character perform an action while speaking into the phone, the character performs the selected action rather than moving its mouth.

Function menu (Chara-den list screen)

1 Chara-den list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description	
Chara-den call	▶Enter the phone number▶ (1), (2), or (Dial) Makes a videophone call with the Chara-den character as the substitute image. Pressing (3) on Chara-den call screen allows you to search phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.	
Substitute image	Sets the Chara-den character as the substitute image for videophone calls.	
Rec. Chara-den	"Saving Chara-den character as image or movie" → P.373	
Edit title	Edits the title of the Chara-den. You can enter to 18 full-pitch or 36 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498	
File property	"Chara-den information" → P.372	
Memory info	Displays the amounts of Chara-den data saved and available space.	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143	
Delete this	Deletes one Chara-den.	
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶ "YES" Deletes all the Chara-den. Security code → P.152	
Multiple-choice	"Selecting multiple data" → P.392	
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for the images.	
	Actual size	Displays the image in the actual size.
	Fit in display (default)	Enlarges the image to the display size.
Reset title	Restores the title to the default.	

NOTE

<Memory info>

- The displayed file size is only an approximation.

<Delete this><Delete all>

- If you try to delete a Chara-den character that has been set as the substitute image for videophone calls, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. Selecting "YES" to delete the character replaces the substitute with pre-installed Chara-den "Dimo". If you have already deleted "Dimo", a pre-installed still image is transmitted as your substitute image.
- If you try to delete a Chara-den character stored in the phonebook, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. Selecting "YES" to delete the character also deletes the Chara-den stored in the phonebook.

Function menu (Chara-den player screen)

1 Chara-den player screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Chara-den call	▶Enter the phone number▶  ,  or  (Dial) Makes a videophone call with the Chara-den character as the substitute image. Pressing  allows you to search phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
Substitute image	Sets the Chara-den character as the substitute image for videophone calls.
Rec. Chara-den	"Saving Chara-den character as image or movie"→P.373
Switch Chara-den	Selects the type of the character to display.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→P.143
Action list	Displays the Action list. →P.370
Change action	Changes the Action mode. →P.370
Chara-den info	"Chara-den information"→P.372
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for the images.
	Actual size Displays the image in the actual size.
	Fit in display (default) Enlarges the image to the display size.

● Chara-den information

You can check the following:

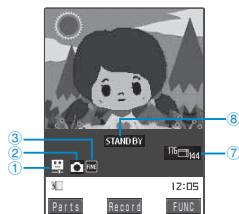
Item	Information provided
Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
Rec. file restriction	"File restricted/File unrestricted" after the image is shot
File restriction	"File restricted/File unrestricted" (Unrestricted Chara-den becomes restricted after it is downloaded.)
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
File size	The file size by K byte
Received from	From where the file was retrieved (The blank is displayed for the pre-installed Chara-den.)
Saved at	The date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes) when the file was saved
Substitute image	The settings of the substitute image (If there are no settings, "No setting" is displayed.)

NOTE

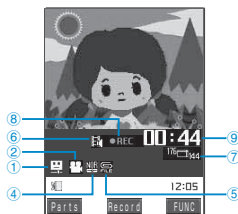
- "Rec. file restriction" indicates whether or not the restrictions apply when an image or movie shot using "Chara-den" is edited, exported to miniSD memory card or attached to i-mode mail.

Saving Chara-den character as image or movie <Rec. Chara-den>

■ Guide to the Rec. Chara-den screen



Recording a still image

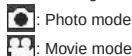


Recording a movie

① Currently selected action mode



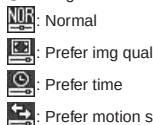
② Recording mode



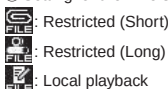
③ Setting for the "Storage setting" (image)



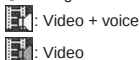
④ Setting for the "Storage setting" (movie)



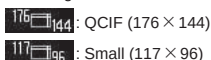
⑤ Setting for the "File size setting"



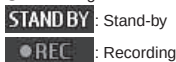
⑥ Setting for the "Movie type set"



⑦ Setting for the "Select size"



⑧ Recording status



⑨ Remaining recording time in the "min:sec" format (not displayed until recording begins).

● Shooting still images

1 Chara-den player screen (P.370) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Rec. Chara-den"

The "Rec. Chara-den screen (Image)" appears.

2 Perform the action ▶ (Record)

Performing the action → P.370

■ To perform the Parts action

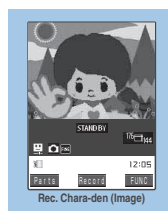
▶ (Parts)

■ To retake the shot

▶ CLR

3 (Save)

The recorded still image is saved to the Camera folder of My picture.



Function menu ▶ P.374

NOTE

● The shooting tone is not emitted when the Ring volume is set to Silent such as when the Manner mode is set.

Function menu (Rec. Chara-den screen)

1 Rec. Chara-den screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description	
Switch Chara-den	Selects a Chara-den character to change the Chara-den character to record.	
Substitute image	Sets the Chara-den character as the substitute image for videophone calls.	
Action list	Displays the Action list. → P.370	
Change action	Changes the Action mode. → P.370	
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for the images.	
	Actual size	Displays the image in the actual size.
	Fit in display (default)	Enlarges the image to the display size.
Movie mode*1	Switches between Photo mode and Movie mode.	
Select size*2	Sets the image size to record.	
	QCIF (176 × 144) (default)	Records the image in 176 dots wide × 144 dots high (QCIF).
	Small (117 × 96)	Records the image in 117 dots wide × 96 dots high.
Movie type set*3	Sets the movie shooting mode.	
	Video + voice (default)	Records movies with both images and sound.
	Video	Records movies without voice.
Storage setting*3	Sets the image quality and duration for the movie shooting.	
	Normal (default)	Records movies in the standard image quality and duration.
	Prefer img qual	Shoots movies in the higher image quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
	Prefer time	Shoots long movies. The image quality is not as high as for Normal.
	Prefer motion spd	Shoots movies with smoother motion. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
Storage setting*2	Sets the file size for storing the image of QCIF (176 × 144) or Small (117 × 96). File size → P.180	
File size setting*3	Sets the file size for shooting movies.	
	Restricted (Short) (default)	You can shoot up to 290K bytes. Select this option to shoot a typical movie and attach it to i-mode mail.
	Restricted (Long)	You can shoot up to 490K bytes. Select this option to shoot a large-sized movie and attach it to i-mode mail.
	Local playback	You can shoot up to 800K bytes.

*1 : When you are using Movie mode, "Photo mode" is displayed here. The default is "Photo mode".

*2 : Cannot be set in Movie mode.

*3 : Cannot be set in Photo mode.

NOTE
<Switch Chara-den> ● If you change the Chara-den character, the Action mode is set to Whole.

● Recording a movie

- During movie shooting, the audio is recorded from the mouthpiece/microphone.

1 Rec. Chara-den screen (Image) (P.373) ► (FUNC)

► “Movie mode”

The “Rec. Chara-den screen (Movie)” appears.

2 (Record) ► Perform the action

Performing the action → P.370

- To perform the Parts action

► (Parts)

- To check the recorded movie

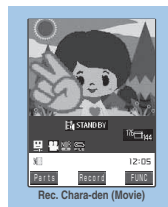
► (FUNC) ► “Check w/ playing”

- To retake the shot

► CLR

3 (Save)

The recorded movie is saved to the Camera folder of i-motion.



Function menu ► P.374

NOTE

- If you perform the action during the shooting, the keypad sounds may be recorded.
- The image size is QCIF (176 × 144) only. The size cannot be changed.
- The shooting tone is not emitted when the Ring volume is set to Silent such as when the Manner mode is set.
- Sounds can be recorded through the earphone/microphone when you use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).

<Melody>

Playing Melodies

You can play the pre-installed melodies, sound effects or the melodies downloaded from the sites in the “Melody” folder of Data box.

1 (Menu) [] [] [] (MNO)

The “folder list screen” appears.

Contents in the Melody folder → P.339



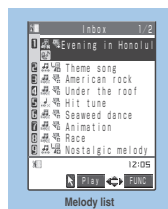
Folder list

Function menu ► P.379, 391

2 Select a folder

The “Melody list screen” appears.

Melody list screen → P.376



Melody list

Function menu ► P.377

3

Select a melody

The "Melody screen" appears and the melody playback begins.
Use  to play the previous or next melody.
"Operation during the melody playback"→P.377



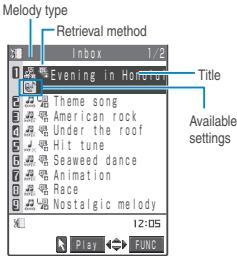
Function menu→P.379

NOTE

- Melodies are played at the volume set in "Phone" in the "Ring volume" settings. Played at "Level 2" when "Silent" or "Step" is set.
- If you try to play the melody when the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a confirmation message appears asking whether to play the melody. Selecting "YES" plays the melody.
- You can select only "Pre-installed" during PIM lock.

Guide to the Melody list

- The " " icon is added to the icons of melodies with file restriction.
- Melodies with " " or " " before the title may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played. When such melodies are set as a ring tone, only the designated part can be played, though the entire melody can be played in "Melody" of Data box. You can also change the file names and titles of these melodies.



The titles of the nine melodies are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the melody type, the way the melody was retrieved, and the settings that can be specified for the melody.

■ Melody type icon

Icon	Description
	MF/SMF melody

■ Retrieval method icons

Icon	Description
No icon	Pre-installed melody
	Melody downloaded from site
	Melody retrieved from Bar code reader or PC, or by Infrared data exchange

■ Settings icon

Icon	Description
	Can be attached to i-mode mail (10,000 bytes or smaller)
	Can be specified as Ring tone
	Can be transmitted via infrared data exchange

■ Titles and file names

Original titles are assigned to downloaded melodies.

The title is listed on the Melody list screen of the FOMA terminal.

The file name is displayed when the data is transmitted to PC.

If the file name contains an inappropriate character, it is turned to "melodyxxx" (xxx: 3-digit number).

The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.

Operation during the melody playback

You can use the operations shown below during the melody playback:

Control keys	Operation
	Plays the previous or next melody
	Adjusts the volume
	Stops the playback
	End

- After adjusting the volume, press (Set) or wait for about two seconds to turn the display to the melody screen.
- Adjusting the volume during the playback is only a temporary change. When the melody is finished, the volume is restored to the level specified in Ring volume.

Function menu (Melody list screen)

The function menu of the Melody list screen varies by the folder containing the melody.

- Melody list screen function menu for Inbox or User-created folders → P.377
- Melody list screen function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announce → P.378
- Changing the settings of "Set as ring tone" also changes the settings of "Select ring tone".

1 Melody list screen (FUNC) Select any item:

■ Melody list screen function menu for Inbox or User-created folders

Item	Description	
Edit title	Edits the title of the melody. You can enter up to 25 full-pitch or 50 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498	
Edit file name	Edits the file name of the melody. You can enter up to 36 half-pitch alphanumeric characters. Symbols cannot be used. "Entering Text" → P.498	
Play melody	Plays the melody (Displays Melody screen).	
Set as ring tone	Select the item to which the melody is set.	
File restriction	File unrestricted	Allows the file to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
	File restricted	Prevents the file from being sent or forwarded by the FOMA terminal to which it is sent.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143	
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail message with the melody attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253	
Send Ir data	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.397	
Melody info	"Melody information" → P.379	
Memory info	Displays the amounts of Melody data saved and available space.	
Reset title	Restores the title to the default.	

Item	Description	
Delete	Deletes melodies stored in the folder.	
	Delete this	Deletes one melody.
	Delete selected	▶Use  to select a checkbox (☐)▶  (Finish)▶ “YES” You can delete multiple melodies.
	Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶ “YES” Deletes all the melodies. Security code → P.152
Sort	Sorts melodies.	
	Chronological ↑	Displays melodies in reverse chronological order by the retrieval date/time.
	Chronological ↓	Displays melodies in chronological order by the retrieval date/time.
	By title ↓	Displays melodies in "Number (123) → Alphabet (ABCabc) → Hiragana (あいう) → Kanji" order.
	By title ↑	Displays melodies in "Kanji → Hiragana (ういあ) → Alphabet (cbaCBA) → Number (321)" order.
	By size ↑	Displays melodies in ascending order by size.
	By size ↓	Displays melodies in descending order by size.
	By source	Displays melodies in order by retrieval method.
Move	▶Select the destination folder▶Use  to select a checkbox (☐)▶  (Finish)▶ “YES” You can move multiple melodies to another folder.	

NOTE

<Edit file name>

- You cannot edit the name of the melody file restricted but the one transmitted by Infrared data exchange or OBEX.

<Compose message>

- MFI-formatted melody (whose melody type icon is " " or " ") cannot be attached regardless of the retrieval method or File restriction.
- You cannot attach melodies whose file size exceeds 10,000 bytes.

<Melody info>

- If you may be unable to attach the melody to mail even if the file is unrestricted.

<Memory info>

- The displayed file size is only an approximation.

<Delete>

- If you try to delete a melody that has been set as Ring tone or Alarm tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the melody. If you select “YES” to delete the melody, the corresponding Ring tone or Alarm tone restores to the default.

<Sort>

- If you exit a sorted Melody List, the melodies are listed in reverse chronological order next time you display the Melody list.
- “By source” sorts the melodies in the following order. Melodies with the same retrieval icon are arranged in the order in which they were shown before you selected “By source”:
 - Melody downloaded from website or melody retrieved from i-appli → Melody retrieved by Infrared data exchange

■ Melody list screen function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announce

Item	Description
Play melody	Plays the melody.
Set as ring tone	Selects the item to which the melody is set.

Function menu (Melody screen)

1 Melody screen ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Set as ring tone	Selects the item to which the melody is set.
Add desktop icon*1	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143
Compose message*1	Composes an i-mode mail message with the melody attached. "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
Melody info*1	"Melody information" → P.379

*1 : Is not displayed for Pre-installed or Voice announce.

Melody information

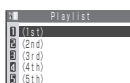
You can check the following:

Item	Information provided
Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File size	The file size by K byte
File restriction	File restricted/File unrestricted
File classification	Melody file type MFI or SMF
Transfer for Repair	Whether or not the file can be moved in the case of a failure
Received from	From where the file was retrieved
Preservation date	The date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes) when the file was saved
Vibrator linkage	"ON/OFF" of Vibrator linkage
Illumination linkage	"ON/OFF" of Illumination linkage
Ring tone set	The settings of the Ring tone (If there are no settings, "No set" is displayed.)

Playing melodies in your preferred order <Melody play playlist>

You can select and register up to 10 melodies, and play them consecutively.

1 Folder list screen (P.375) ► Highlight "Playlist" ► (FUNC) ► "Edit playlist" ► Select the number to which the melody is to be added ► Select a folder ► Select a melody ► Repeat



■ To release the added melody

► Select the melody to release ► Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen

2 (Finish)

The "Folder list screen" appears.

Selecting the Playlist folder starts the program playback and the stored melodies are played repeatedly.

NOTE

- The playlist is released once you change the title and file name of one of the registered melodies or delete data.

Function menu (Playlist folder)

1 Folder list screen of Melody ► Highlight "Playlist" ► (FUNC) ► Select any item:

Item	Description
Add folder	Enter the folder name to add a folder. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Edit folder name	Cannot change the name "Playlist" folder.
Delete folder	Cannot delete the Playlist folder.
Edit playlist	Creates playlist or edits the existing playlist. "Playing melodies in your preferred order" → P.379
Release playlist	Releases the playlist.

miniSD Memory Card

The miniSD memory card is a further miniaturized version of the SD memory card that can be inserted into the FOMA terminal and used as external memory. By loading a miniSD memory card into a miniSD memory card adapter, you can use the card with a PC that supports SD memory cards. The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, you can purchase one at electrical appliance stores, etc. This FOMA terminal supports up to 256M-byte miniSD memory card (on the market). (As of August, 2005)

- You can export data such as phonebook entries, mail, bookmarks and still images or movies shot with the FOMA terminal to a miniSD memory card, or import data that has been stored on a miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal. Still images and movies stored on miniSD memory cards can be viewed on the FOMA terminal.
- When you insert a miniSD memory card into the FOMA terminal, the "SD" icon appears on the screen.
- When you are operating data on a miniSD memory card or importing/exporting data, the incoming call lamp flashes green.
- See the following sites for the latest miniSD memory card (As of August 2005):
i-mode : "iMenu" - "メニューリスト" - "ケータイ電話メーカー" - "みんなNらんど"
PC : NEC mobile website <http://www.n-keitai.com>

Notes

- * Format the miniSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. miniSD memory cards formatted on other mobile phones or on PC may not be usable on the FOMA terminal. → P.388

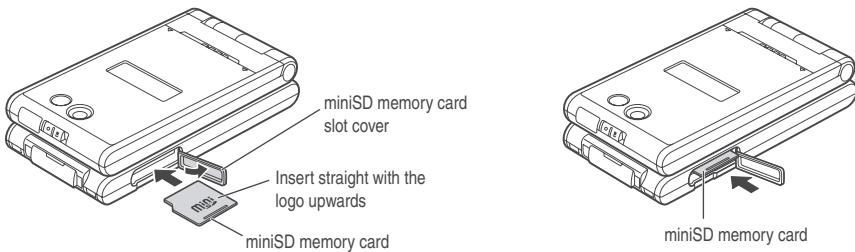
- Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting or removing a miniSD memory card.
- Do not put a label or seal on the miniSD memory card.

Inserting and removing miniSD memory card

Insert the miniSD memory card into the FOMA terminal's card slot.

● Inserting

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting a miniSD memory card.



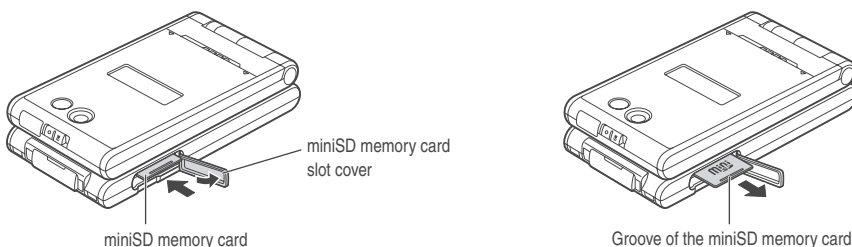
- 1 **Open the miniSD memory card slot cover**
- 2 **Insert the miniSD memory card into the miniSD memory card slot and push it in until it locks into place**
 Insert the miniSD memory card straight and slowly with the printed side upwards.
 When fully inserted, the card will lock into place.
- 3 **Close the miniSD memory card slot cover**
 When you turn the FOMA terminal on after inserting the miniSD memory card, the "SD" icon appears on the screen.

NOTE

- If there is a problem with the miniSD memory card or it is incorrectly formatted, the "SD" icon appears.

Removing

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before removing a miniSD memory card.



- 1 **Open the miniSD memory card slot cover**
- 2 **Gently push the miniSD memory card inwards**
 When you push the miniSD memory card in and then release it, the card pops out slightly.
 Take care that the card does not fly out of the slot.
- 3 **Slowly pull the miniSD memory card out of the slot**
 Grip the groove in the edge of the miniSD memory card and slowly pull the card out.
- 4 **Close the miniSD memory card slot cover**

NOTE

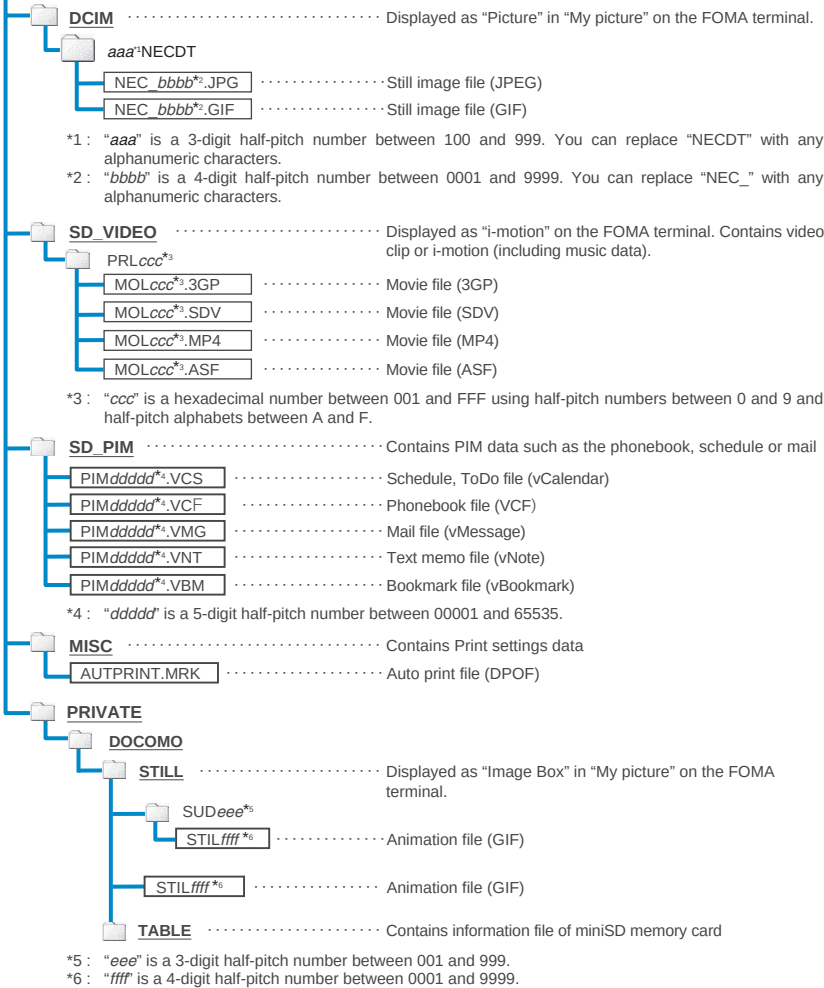
- Do not insert or remove a miniSD memory card while the FOMA terminal is turned on. This could damage the miniSD memory card or destroy data on the card.
- The miniSD memory card could spring out of the FOMA terminal during the insertion or removal.
- After removing a miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal, keep the card in the protective case provided. Storing the miniSD memory card in another case could result in the miniSD memory card being unusable.
- Ensure that the miniSD memory card is facing in the right direction and hold it straight as you insert it into the FOMA terminal (inserting the miniSD memory card at an angle could damage the card).
- It may take long to select or display data on the miniSD memory card.

Folders in miniSD memory card

When data is copied from FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card, the folders shown below are created and data is saved in the corresponding folder. Under the folders, files and folders are automatically named as shown below.

- When copying data from PC or other devices to miniSD memory card, create folders and name files as shown below:

miniSD memory card



NOTE

- The SD_PIM folder is not displayed until you export PIM data such as the phonebook.
- When you export two data or more to the SD_PIM folder, "yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm" (year/month/day hour:minute) is automatically applied to the title name.
- On some PCs, folder names and file names may be displayed in lower case.
- When you save the file edited on PC if it uses the characters different from the folder or file name described on P.382, it may not be displayed or played correctly on FOMA N701i.
- Turning off the FOMA terminal, removing/inserting/formatting/checking miniSD memory card, or using as miniSD reader/writer cancels the settings for the destination folder on the miniSD memory card. The destination will be the newest folder on the miniSD memory card created on the FOMA terminal. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.393).
- Creating or editing miniSD memory card folders on PC may change the destination folder. To change the settings, reset in "Select storage" (P.393).
- Do not use a PC to delete or move folders on the miniSD memory card as this may prevent the FOMA N701i from reading data on the card.
- If you save data that is not supported by the FOMA N701i on a miniSD memory card, the FOMA N701i will be unable to recognize the data.
- You may not be able to display or play data that was saved to a miniSD memory card from another device. Also, you may not be able to display or play on another device the data that was copied from the FOMA terminal to miniSD memory card.
- Before purchasing miniSD reader/writer or PC card adapter for miniSD memory card, ask the manufacturer of the miniSD memory card if it is available for your FOMA terminal.
- The miniSD memory cards formatted on a device other than the FOMA N701i may not operate normally.

● Number of files that can be stored on a miniSD memory card

The number of files that can be stored on a miniSD memory card varies by the memory capacity of the miniSD memory card. The table below shows the maximum number of folders that can be created and the maximum number of files that can be saved to each folder. Adding and changing a folder to export allows the miniSD memory card to contain more files. Note that the maximum number of files that can be stored may vary by the file sizes.

Folder	Max. number of folders	Max. number of files that can be saved to each folder
DCIM	900	9,999
SD_VIDEO	4,095	4,095
SD_PIM	1	65,535
STILL	999	9,999

Use "Categories screen function menu" (P.386) to check the memory capacity and available capacity of the miniSD memory card. The displayed memory capacity will be lower than the one described on the miniSD memory card.

- If there is insufficient space left on the miniSD memory card when you attempt to export phonebook entries, own number, schedule entries, ToDo list entries, text memos, mail or bookmarks, a message appears stating that the data cannot be transferred due to the lack of space. In the cases of images, movies, and i-motion, "Export" on the function menu is grayed out. Insert another miniSD memory card or delete any unnecessary data on the card and export the data again.
- When the number of the files in the folder to which the file is to be exported has already reached the limit and when you try to export:
<Still image or movie/i-motion>
 A new folder is automatically created and the file will be saved to the folder.
<Phonebook or etc. to SD_PIM>
 You receive a message that the folder is full of data, and you cannot export the file to the miniSD memory card.
- Once a miniSD memory card is full, you cannot perform tasks such as adding more folders for images, movies or i-motion, editing titles or copying or moving files. Delete any unnecessary data and then try again.

Data that can be copied between the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card

The following table shows the data that can be copied between the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card:

Data type	Details
Still image	JPEG and GIF data stored in Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture, miniSD or User-created folder
Movie	MP4 data stored in Inbox, Camera, miniSD or User-created folder
Phonebook	Name, reading, phone number, mail address, memo, address, birthday, still image, memory number ^{*1} , Secret store ^{*2} , group number, group name
Schedule	Date (from), date (to), summary, contents, Secret store ^{*2} , Category ^{*3} , alarm, repeat
ToDo	Contents, category ^{*4} , completion date, period, change status, priority, alarm
Text memo	Make date, last update date, category, contents
Received mail ^{*5} , Sent mail ^{*5} , Draft mail, SMS	Unread/read, message type, saved in, sender, receiver, title, receive/send date, message, attach
Bookmark ^{*5} ^{*6}	URL, title

*1 : Cannot be copied by "Import & add one".

*2 : Secret store shows if it is stored as secret data.

*3 : Category is the Icon info setting set in Schedule.

*4 : Category is set in ToDo.

*5 : The folder name remains the same after exporting all of Received mail, Sent mail and Bookmark.

*6 : If a bookmark is copied from the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal, the one for i-mode is saved to the "Bookmark" folder in "i-mode menu".

NOTE

- If you try to export Schedule with User icon, the "Category" info is not transferred.

Copying Data Stored on the FOMA Terminal to miniSD Memory Card

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, you can purchase one at electrical appliance stores, etc. → P.380

You can export (copy) data stored on the FOMA terminal to a miniSD memory card.

"Export this" and "Export all" are the methods to export data stored on the FOMA terminal to a miniSD memory card.

- See P.351 and 364 for exporting still image or movie.

■ To export one data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select "Export this" or "Export" from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to export.

<Example: Export one data stored in the phonebook>

"Export this" in the "Phonebook list screen function menu" → P.113

■ To export all the data stored on the FOMA terminal

"Export" in the "Categories list screen function menu" → P.386

NOTE

- If you export mail that includes the i-appli launch settings, the i-appli launch information in the mail is deleted.
- When you select "Export this", the secret setting for the data in the Phonebook or schedule is canceled to be saved.
- When you select "Export all", the secret data in the Phonebook and schedule are saved, however, the secret data for bookmarks, mail, still images and movies are not saved.
- When all the phonebook data entries are exported, the "Own number" data is also saved.
- When mail is exported, some types of attached file may be deleted.
- While exporting SD-PIM data such as the phonebook, the FOMA terminal status is effectively "Out of service area". You cannot make or receive calls, use i-mode or use data communication.

NOTE

- When one "Own number" item is exported without performing "Display all data", only the name, reading, your own phone number and the mail address registered in the first item are copied in the miniSD memory card as the telephone directory data. When one item is exported with "Display all data", the whole registered data is copied as the telephone directory data.
- If you receive a call or mail message, or an alarm notification works during the export, the export is canceled.

<SD-PIM>

Previewing Data on a miniSD Memory Card

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, you can purchase one at electrical appliance stores, etc. → P.380

You can display and check the data stored on a miniSD memory card.

- Previewing images and movies → P.339, 357

1



"SD-PIM"

The "Categories screen" appears.

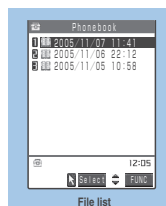


Function menu → P.386

2

Select an item

The "file list screen" appears.



Function menu → P.386

3

Select a file

The "data list screen" appears.



Function menu → P.387

4

Select a data

The "data detail screen" appears.



Function menu → P.387

NOTE

- You cannot view files stored on the miniSD memory card while PIM lock is set.
- When you display Deco-mail with an image attached, the sentences are displayed, describing the image.
- The "📎" icon is displayed for the bookmark added on the site screen.

Function menu (Categories screen)

1 Categories screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
miniSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.
Export from phone	■ With Phonebook, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Text memo and Bookmark: ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" ■ With Schedule ▶ Select an item ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Exports all the data entries for the item to the miniSD memory card. Security code → P.152
miniSD format	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Formats the miniSD memory card. Security code → P.152
Check miniSD	Checks the miniSD memory card. Checking miniSD memory card may fix the problems.

NOTE

<Check miniSD>

- Do not remove miniSD memory card during the miniSD check. This may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- You cannot check unformatted or incompatible miniSD memory cards.
- The incoming call lamp flashes green during the miniSD check.
- If you press (Quit) or (Power) or receive a voice/videophone call, the miniSD check will be canceled and then "📎" will be displayed.
- If the miniSD check is interrupted, some data may remain to be recovered. Check miniSD again.
- It may take long to check the miniSD memory card depending on the amount of data.
- Some data may not be recovered depending on the miniSD memory card.

Function menu (file list screen)

1 File list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit title	Edits the title of the file. You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 31 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Import & add	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Imports and adds the data stored in the file to the FOMA terminal. Security code → P.152
Import & overwrite	■ Phonebook ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" ▶ "YES" ▶ "YES" or "NO" ■ Schedule, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Text memo, Bookmark ▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" ▶ "YES" Imports the data stored in the file to overwrite the corresponding data on the FOMA terminal. Security code → P.152

Item	Description
Export from phone	■ With Phonebook, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Text memo and Bookmark: ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” ■ With Schedule: ▶ Select an item ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” All of the data on the selected item is exported to the miniSD memory card. Security code → P.152
Delete this	Deletes one file.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the files saved for the selected item. Security code → P.152
miniSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

<Delete this> <Delete all>

● If the file is read-only, a message appears asking whether to delete it.

Function menu (data list screen)

1 Data list screen ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Import & add one	Imports and adds the data to the FOMA terminal.
Import & add all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Imports and adds all the data to the FOMA terminal. Security code → P.152
Import & OW all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” ▶ “YES” Imports all the data to overwrite the corresponding data on the FOMA terminal. Security code → P.152
miniSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.

Function menu (data detail screen)

1 Data detail screen ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Import & add one	Imports and adds the data to the FOMA terminal.
miniSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.

Copying Data Stored on miniSD Memory Card to the FOMA Terminal

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, you can purchase one at electrical appliance stores, etc. → P.380

You can import (copy) data stored on miniSD memory card to your FOMA terminal and add or overwrite.

“Import & add” is divided into “Import & add” that adds all the data in the file, “Import & add one” that adds one selected data in the file, and “Import & add all” that adds all the displayed data.

The “Import & overwrite” options consist of “Import & OW all” and “Import & overwrite”, which replace the existing data with all the entries in one file.

■ To add the stored data to one file

“Import & add” in the “Function menu (file list screen)” → P.386

■ **To add one selected data**

- “Import & add one” in the “Function menu (data list screen)”→P.387
- “Import & add one” in the “Function menu (data detail screen)”→P.387

■ **To add all the data**

- “Import & add all” in the “Function menu (data list screen)”→P.387

■ **To overwrite all the existing data on one file**

- “Import & overwrite” in the “Function menu (file list screen)”→P.386
- “Import & OW all” in the “Function menu (data list screen)”→P.387

NOTE

- “Import & overwrite” and “Import & OW all” overwrite the data on the FOMA terminal with the data to import. Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.
- If the memory of the FOMA terminal becomes full of data during the import, the import is canceled. The already imported data are stored.
- The data is added to group 00 of the phonebook when:
 - Group numbers and names on miniSD and on the FOMA terminal are different during the “Import & add all” or “Import & add”
- If you import one received mail when the Inbox is full, it overwrites the oldest unprotected read mail.
- If you import one sent mail when the Outbox is full, it overwrites the oldest unprotected mail.
- When you import a large image or movie that is attached to a mail message, it is saved to the Data box and linked to the corresponding mail. If there is no further storage space available in the Data box, the attached file is deleted when the mail is stored.
- “Import & add all” cannot import:
 - Schedule with the same date, time and repeat settings (repeat disabled/enabled) as those of the existing one
 - Bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one
- You cannot import the data in the phonebook when “Keypad dial lock” or “Restrict dialing” is specified.
- It may take long to read or write the data on the miniSD memory card if there are many files stored.
- The FOMA terminal status is effectively “Out of service” during the import. You cannot make/receive a call, use i-mode or use data communication during the import (except when importing still image, movie or i-motion).

Managing miniSD Memory Card

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, you can purchase one at electrical appliance stores, etc.→P.380

Formatting a miniSD memory card

- * Format the miniSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. miniSD memory cards formatted on other mobile phones or on PC may not be usable on the FOMA terminal.

Format the miniSD memory card so that it can be used on the FOMA terminal.

- Formatting a miniSD memory card erases all the data stored on the card. When you format the card, make sure that the stored data are not important to you.

1 **Categories screen (P.385)▶(FUNC)▶“miniSD format”▶Enter your security code▶“YES”**

NOTE

- Do not remove miniSD memory card during the format. This may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- The data saved to the miniSD memory card is not guaranteed if the format was interrupted.
- During the format, the incoming call lamp flashes green.
- If you press (Quit) or (End) or receive a voice/videophone call, the format is canceled and “SD” is displayed. Format the card again.

Using the FOMA Terminal as a miniSD Reader/Writer

By connecting the FOMA terminal to your PC with miniSD memory card inserted, you can read/write the data on the miniSD memory card.

The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, you can purchase one at electrical appliance stores, etc. → P.380

● To use the FOMA terminal as miniSD reader/writer, you need the following:

Item	Description
Cable	FOMA USB Cable (optional)
PC	PC with USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1 based) supporting FOMA USB Cable (optional)
Operating System	Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese versions)

1 USB mode setting screen (P.390) ▶ “miniSD mode”

Specifying “miniSD mode” displays “”.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC with FOMA USB Cable

“” is displayed when miniSD mode is set, miniSD memory card is inserted and FOMA USB Cable (optional) is connected.

The miniSD memory card appears in the “My Computer” window on the PC as storage memory (external storage device). The miniSD memory card is not recognized by the PC as a reader/writer while data is being transferred between the miniSD memory card and the FOMA terminal.

To remove the FOMA USB Cable (optional), use the method to remove safely on each Operating System.

How to connect and remove the FOMA USB Cable → P.460

NOTE

- You cannot set this function while the data is being read from or written to the miniSD memory card between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card. (“Reset” does not reset the settings.)
- You cannot access the miniSD memory card from the PC while data is being transmitted between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card.
- You cannot access the miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal while data is being transmitted between the PC and the miniSD memory card.

Important

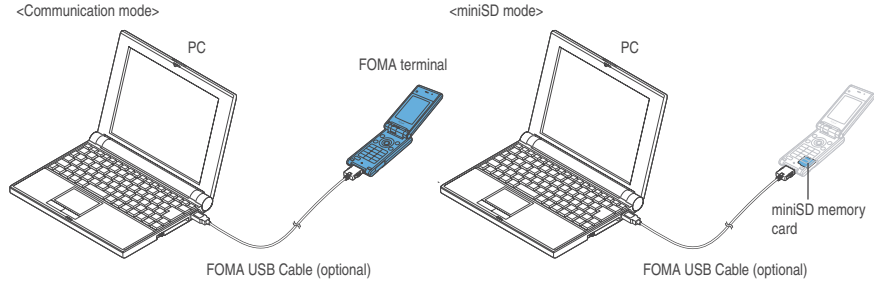
- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and PC are properly connected. An improper connection could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data.
- Attempting to transfer data when the FOMA terminal's battery level is low or empty could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data. Ensure that the FOMA terminal is fully charged and that there is a stable power supply to the PC.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable (optional) while the incoming call lamp is flashing to indicate that data is being copied between the PC and FOMA terminal. Removing the cable could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data.

Setting USB mode <USB mode setting>

Default setting
Communication mode

Set USB mode to use various functions by connecting the FOMA terminal to your PC.

● USB mode is divided into "Communication mode" and "miniSD mode".



1 "External connection" ▶ "USB mode setting"



The "USB mode setting screen" appears.



2 Select any item:

Item	Description
Communication mode	Uses the external connection terminal for packet communication, 64K data communication and data exchange by cable connection. “ ”: The FOMA USB Cable is not connected/The FOMA USB Cable is connected but the data is not ready to be transferred between the FOMA terminal and PC “ ”: The FOMA USB Cable is connected and the data is ready to be transferred between the FOMA terminal and PC
miniSD mode	Uses the external connection terminal for reading and writing the data on a miniSD memory card. You cannot import or export data from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, display data in memory or format the miniSD memory card. “ ” is displayed when the FOMA USB Cable is not connected, and “ ” when the FOMA USB Cable is connected.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

Working With Folders and Files

You can add folders on the folder list screen of My picture, i-motion and Melody for organizing the files. You can also add folders on the miniSD folder list screens of My picture, i-motion.

- My picture folder list screen → P.339
- i-motion folder list screen → P.357
- Melody folder list screen → P.375
- miniSD folder list screen → P.340

Creating, editing and deleting folders

Folder list screen function menu → P.391

Function menu (folder list screen)

- Function menu displayed when the Playlist folder of i-motion or Melody is selected → P.364, 379

1 Folder list screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Example: Folder list screen function menu in My picture

Item	Description
Add folder	Enter the folder name to add a folder. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. You can name the folder the same as the existing one. A folder cannot be added if the folder name is left entirely blank. "Entering Text" → P.498
Edit folder name	Edits the name of the added folder. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Delete folder	 Enter your security code  "YES" You can delete a folder containing data. Security code → P.152
Delete all image^{*1}	 Enter your security code  "YES" Deletes all the images and original animations you saved. Security code → P.152

*1 : Not displayed on the i-motion and Melody folder list screen.

NOTE

<Edit folder name>

- You can edit only the name of the User-created folder.

<Delete folder><Delete all image>

- You can delete only the User-created folders.
- Even if you select "Delete all image", the images in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.
- If you try to use "Delete folder" or "Delete all image" to delete an image or movie that has been set in a display, original animation or user icon of Schedule, or if you try to use "Delete folder" to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm or set in a playlist or random melody, a message appears asking whether to delete the item. If you select "YES" to delete the item, the corresponding feature (display, etc.) changes as follows:
 - The screens restore to the default.
 - The playlist registration and Original animation are erased.
 - The alarm notification screen for the schedule switches to the screen on which you set .
- Even if the original image is deleted by "Delete folder" or "Delete all image", the same one attached to mail is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to mail is also deleted.
- If the original movie is deleted by "Delete folder", the same one attached to mail is also deleted.

Function menu (miniSD folder list screen)

1 miniSD folder list screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit folder name	Edits the folder title. Can contain up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Create folder	Enter a title to create a folder. You can enter up to 31 full-pitch or 63 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498
Delete folder*1	▶ Enter your security code ▶ "YES" Deletes the folder. Security code → P.152
Select storage	Specifies a folder to save the data. "Specifying the destination folder on the miniSD memory card" → P.393

*1 : Only Delete folder is displayed for Image Box.

NOTE

<Create folder>

- You cannot create a folder when the "Picture" in the miniSD memory card contains 900 folders, and when miniSD of i-motion contains 4,095 folders.
- You cannot create a folder in the "Image Box" on the FOMA terminal but on your PC.
- You can enter the same folder name as the one already used as a folder name. A folder cannot be added if the folder name is left entirely blank.

<Delete folder>

- A message appears asking whether to delete the folder if the folder:
 - Is read-only on PC
 - Is the destination folder
 - Contains a file
- If you delete the destination folder, the destination becomes the newest folder created on the FOMA terminal.

Selecting multiple data

You can delete multiple images or movies at the same time, or move them to another folder within the item. You can also copy the images or movies stored on the miniSD memory card to another folder.

<Example: Picture list>

1 Image list screen (P.339) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Multiple-choice"

The "Multiple-choice screen" appears.

2 Use (Select) to move the frame to the image that you want to select ▶ (Select)

The ☒ icon is attached to the selected image.

■ When the title list screen is displayed

▶ (Select) to select a checkbox (☐)

Each time you select a checkbox, ☐ and ☒ switches alternately.



Function menu ▶ P.392

Function menu (Multiple-choice screen)

- The items displayed on the Function menu differ depending on the selected item or folder because the available functions differ.

1 Multiple-choice screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Title name*1	Switches between Picture and Title name.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.380

Item	Description
Delete*2	Deletes the selected images or movies.
Copy*3	Select the destination folder to copy the selected images or movies to another folder.
Move	Select the destination folder to move the selected images or movies to another folder.
Select all*4	Selects all images and movies, and marks the checkboxes (☑).
Release all	Releases all the images and movies, and unchecks the checkboxes (☐).

*1 : If you select the Title name, "Picture" is displayed. Picture is displayed only when the folder is "My picture".
(default: Picture)
*2 : Only this option is displayed for Chara-den.
*3 : Displayed only for the "miniSD" folder.
*4 : This option is not displayed for "miniSD" folder in "My picture".

Specifying the destination folder on the miniSD memory card

Default setting
Most recently created folder

Specify the destination folder to contain images and movies on the miniSD memory card. You can specify any folders under "miniSD" of My picture or i-motion.

- The "📁" icon is displayed for the destination folder.
- Images and movies exported to the miniSD memory card are saved to the respective destination folders.
- Turning off the FOMA terminal, removing/inserting/formatting/checking miniSD memory card, or using as miniSD reader/writer cancels the settings for the destination folder. The destination will be the latest folder created on the FOMA terminal.

1 miniSD folder list screen (P.340) ➡ (FUNC) ➡ "Select storage" ➡ "YES"

NOTE

● You cannot specify a folder in the "Image Box" as the destination folder.

When the memory is insufficient or there are too many stored items

If there is insufficient available memory capacity or if the space available for storing data is already full when you try to save still images or movies you shot to the FOMA terminal or download an image, melody, i-motion or Chara-den character from a site, a message appears asking whether to delete some unnecessary data to save the new data.

- 1 Select "YES" on the message
- Not to save the data
➡ "NO"
- 2 (Select) ➡ Select multiple data to be deleted
- Selecting multiple data → P.41
- 3 (Finish) ➡ "YES"
- (Finish) is not displayed until the memory is allocated enough to save the data.

NOTE

● When you attempt to delete an image or a movie that has been set to screen or a melody that has been set as a ring tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the image, movie or melody. If you select "YES" to delete the image, the corresponding screen or ring tone restores to the default.

<Forwarding image>

Barring Phonebook Image Forwarding

Default setting
ON

When you are exporting phonebook data to a miniSD memory card or using the Infrared data exchange or data exchange (OBEX) to transmit phonebook data, you can prevent still images stored in the phonebook from being sent.

- 1   "Forwarding image" "OFF"
- To forward
- ▶ "ON"

<Infrared data exchange/OBEX>

Forwarding Data by Infrared Data Exchange/Cable Connection

The Infrared data exchange or cable connection allows your FOMA terminal to exchange data such as phonebook entries and received mail with another FOMA terminal or PC.

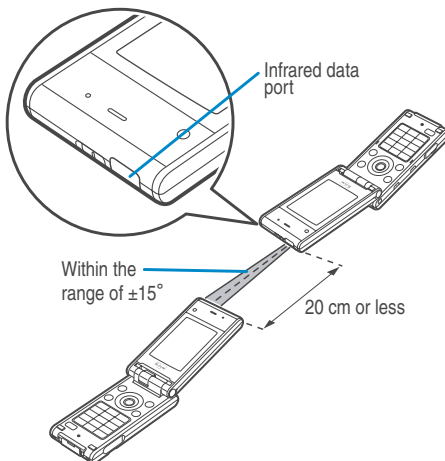
- The Infrared data exchange with another FOMA terminal or PC supporting the feature forwards one data at a time or multiple data at the same time. The "Ir" icon is displayed during the Infrared data exchange.
- Connect your FOMA terminal to PC with the FOMA USB Cable (optional), and you can receive one data at a time from PC using OBEX (protocol for data communication), or exchange multiple data at the same time between FOMA terminal and PC. The "Ir" icon is displayed while the cable is connected.
- You can forward the following:
 - Phonebook
 - ToDo
 - Draft mail
 - Still image*
 - Bookmark
 - Personal data in Own number
 - Sent mail
 - Text memo
 - Movie/i-motion*
 - Schedule
 - Received mail
 - Melody*

* : You cannot send all the data of Melody, Still image or Movie/i-motion by Infrared data exchange.

When you forward data by Infrared data exchange

Note the following when you forward data by Infrared data exchange:

- Set the receiving FOMA terminal ready to receive and position it not longer than about 20 cm from the sending FOMA terminal.
- Place the FOMA terminals on a stable surface, such as a table, so that the infrared data ports are aligned on the same level and facing each other.
- Do not move the FOMA terminals during the exchange.
- Do not place anything between the FOMA terminals or cover the Infrared data ports.
- If the data exchange is finished unsuccessfully, adjust the positions and retry the exchange.
- The FOMA terminals may not communicate successfully if they are placed in direct sunlight, directly under a fluorescent light, or close to other infrared equipment.



When you forward data by cable connection

Note the following when you forward data by cable connection:

- To forward data, you need the software such as "FOMA N701i Data Link Software".
"Data Link Software"→P.531
- Set "Communication mode" to "USB mode setting" before forwarding data.→P.390

Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and PC are properly connected. An improper connection could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data. Install N701i communication settings files (driver).→P.461
- Attempting to transfer data when the FOMA terminal's battery level is low or empty could not only prevent data transfer but could also result in the loss of data. Make sure that the FOMA terminal's battery is charged enough. Also check that the PC is turned off.
- All the data on the FOMA terminal may be erased if an error occurs while forwarding all from PC to the FOMA terminal. Before forwarding all, check the cable connection, the battery level or PC power.

Note on forwarding data

Before forwarding data

- You cannot forward data while another function is running. Start forwarding after exiting all the functions. You cannot run another function while forwarding data.
- You cannot forward data while making/receiving voice/videophone calls, using i-mode, packet communication or 64K data communication.
- You cannot forward data during "PIM lock", "All lock" or "Self mode". You cannot send/receive data in the phonebook during "Keypad dial lock".
- You cannot receive data in the phonebook while "Restrict dialing" is set. However, you can send the data with "Restrict dialing" and the data in "Own number".
- Whether you can forward data depends on the status of the FOMA terminal of your party. If you forward to the terminal different from yours, it may not reflect the settings of the received mail or bookmark folder tree, or may not receive the Deco-mail correctly.
- The data forwarding function by Infrared data exchange or cable connection conforms to the IrMC1.1 standard. You may not be able to exchange data with the terminal or PC that does not support IrMC1.1. Some data may not be forwarded correctly even if the terminal or application of your party supports IrMC1.1.
- When you forward still image, melody, movie or i-motion by cable connection, which does not comply with IrMC, you need the forwarding software supporting FOMA N701i.
- You may not be able to forward data by Infrared data exchange if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is connected.

During the forwarding

- The FOMA terminal is Out of Area, which means you cannot make/receive a voice/videophone call or use i-mode, i-mode mail, packet communication or 64K data communication. However, the FOMA terminal may receive an incoming call immediately after starting the forwarding. If this is the case, the forward will be canceled. After the forwarding is finished, the Out of Area status may continue for some time.
- During the Infrared data exchange, the exchange will be canceled to display a message asking whether to continue the communication when:
 - The receiving device does not receive the data within 30 seconds or so
 - The sending device cannot find the receiving device any more
 Selecting "YES" enables you to retry the communication. Selecting "NO" will cancel the communication. If you do not select "YES" or "NO" within 30 seconds or so, the Infrared data exchange will be automatically finished.
- It may take long to forward depending on the amount of data. The receiving device may not be able to receive a large amount of data. It may take long to forward the phonebook because the stored images are also forwarded. To shorten the sending time, you can set "OFF" to "Forwarding image", so that the images in the phonebook are not forwarded.

Data forwarded

- The data received by this FOMA terminal are saved as follows:

Data	Destination/Order
Still image/image	The first in the Inbox folder.
Movie/i-motion	
Melody	
Phonebook	The lowest number available between "010" and "699". If none of the numbers above is available, it is saved under the lowest memory number available between "000" and "009" ("two-touch dialing" (P.123)).

Data	Destination/Order	
Own number data	The lowest number available between "010" and "699". If none of the numbers above is available, it is saved under the lowest memory number available between "000" and "009" ("two-touch dialing" (P.123)).	
Schedule	In the date order of the received schedules.	
ToDo	The first in the ToDo list.	
Received mail	The Inbox folder in the date order of the received mails.	
Sent mail	The Outbox folder in the date order of the sent mails.	
Draft mail	The Draft box in the date order of the draft mails.	
Text memo	The first <Not recorded>.	
Bookmark	(Receive one)	The first in the Bookmark folder.
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder in the same order as in the sender.*

* : May not be saved in the same order, depending on the sender's phone type.

- If you receive all the still images, all the images stored in the phonebook are deleted.
- If you receive all the entries of the phonebook, the still images stored in the phonebook you received are stored in "My picture". However if the amount of data exceeds the storage limit of "My picture", the exceeding images are deleted, and a message appears indicating that some images could not be saved and the phonebook is created.
- The titles of still images, movies or i-motion can contain up to 9 full-pitch characters or 18 half-pitch characters. The titles of melodies can contain up to 50 half-pitch characters. If the length of the title exceeds the maximum, the exceeding part will be truncated.
- The FOMA terminal may not properly receive some symbols or pictographs entered in mail or phonebook.
- You cannot send or receive:
 - UIM phonebook, SMS
 - Frame data (only capable of receiving data), Flash movie
 - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion with FOMA card operational restriction
 - Data in the "Secret" folder
- You cannot receive:
 - Image other than JPEG or GIF
 - Movie other than MP4 or 3GP
 - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion whose size is beyond the capacity of the FOMA terminal
- A message appears indicating that you cannot save the data when:
 - You receive a bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one
 - You receive a schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
 - You receive a schedule or ToDo data while the clock is not set
 - The number of data stored has already reached the limit or there is no available space on the memory
- Note the following when you forward the phonebook data:
 - The data to be forwarded are name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal code, address, memo, birthday, still image and icon info setting. All the phone numbers and mail addresses are forwarded.
 - The secret code cannot be forwarded.
 - If the phonebook stored as the secret data is forwarded by infrared data exchange, the "Secret mode" or "Secret only" mode is canceled before the forwarding.
 - When all the phonebook entries are forwarded, they are sent in the memory number order.
 - The "Own number" data is sent when all the phonebook entries are forwarded. The personal data of "Own number" stored on the receiving device are overwritten excluding the phone number.
 - Some pictographs or symbols may not be displayed correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
- Note the following when you forward the mail data:
 - A large image that is not retrieved or i-appli launch information is deleted when you send the mail. When a file pasted in a mail is set to "File restricted", the file is deleted. Some still images are deleted depending on the format. However, the file-restricted data can be sent if it is a sent mail or draft mail with still image or movie shot by the built-in camera, or received via cable connection, or imported from miniSD memory card. When you forward the mail using "Forward" or reply to the mail using "Reply with quote", if the data pasted on the original mail has been deleted, the data cannot be quoted.
 - If there is no enough space in the Inbox, mails in the Trash are deleted and the received one is saved to the Inbox. If the size of the received mail is larger than the available space, the mail overwrites the oldest unprotected mail that has been already read.
 - The sent mail overwrites the oldest unprotected sent mail in the Outbox.
 - You cannot forward the folder for the mail-connected i-appli in Inbox. All the mails in the folder are saved to the Inbox.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

- Some pictographs or symbols used in the mail message may not be displayed correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
- If you receive an image or movie larger than 10,000 bytes attached to received/sent mail, the file is saved to the Data box and linked to the corresponding mail. If there is no further storage space available in the Data box, the attached file is deleted when the mail is stored.
- You cannot quote the data attached to i-mode mail.

Transferring One Data at a Time

You can exchange one data at a time between your FOMA terminal and PC/another FOMA terminal.

- You cannot send one data at a time from the FOMA terminal to PC by cable connection.
- The progress bar indicates the sent data size.

Sending one data at a time by Infrared data exchange <Send Ir data>

Select "Send Ir data" from the function menu of Data list screen or detail screen.

- You can send only one data at a time.

<Example: Send one phonebook data>

1 Phonebook detail screen (P.113) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Send Ir data"

Searching in the phonebook → P.111

2 Direct the Infrared data port toward your party ▶ "YES"

Make sure that your party is ready to receive data.

The data starts being sent.

A message appears indicating that the sending is completed.

■ To cancel the sending

▶ "NO"

■ To exit during the sending

▶ (Quit)

Receiving one data at a time by Infrared data exchange <Receive Ir data>

1 The "Receive Ir data screen" appears.

2 "Receive" ▶ Direct the Infrared data port toward your party ▶ Receive data from the FOMA terminal of your party

The data starts being received.

The communication level bar may not be displayed depending on your party.

3 "YES"

A message appears indicating that the received data is saved completely.

The received data will be erased if you do not operate your FOMA terminal at all for about 30 seconds after you receive the data.

■ Not to save the received data

▶ "NO"



Function menu ▶ P.400

NOTE

- Even if you select "Receive", you may receive all Ir data. If this is the case, operate the FOMA terminal following the Receive all instructions.

Receiving one data at a time by cable connection <Write one>

- The method to transfer data varies by the transferring software. Follow the instructions to the software for more details.

1 Follow the procedure to send one data entry by using the transferring software on PC

2 Send data from PC

A large amount of data may slow down the progress indicator showing the communication speed.

3 “YES”

A message appears indicating that the receiving is completed. After the data is received, if you do not operate your FOMA terminal at all for about 30 seconds, the received data is discarded.

■ **Not to save the received data**

▶ “NO”

Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time

You can exchange multiple data at the same time between your FOMA terminal and PC/another FOMA terminal.

- If you receive all, the data previously stored in the FOMA terminal (including the protected mail messages and the secret data in the Phonebook) will be overwritten with the received data. However, frames and Flash images, the secret data in the “Secret” folder are not deleted. Check the stored data before receiving all data.
- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient.
Session number → P.398
- The progress bar shows the communication speed of sending the data. A large amount of data may slow down the progress indicator or it may seem different between the parties even if the data are being transferred successfully.
- Transferring all may change the order of data on the recipient.

Session number

- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient. Before sending or receiving, the sender and recipient should agree on a 4-digit number as the session number and then both enter the same number.

Sending multiple data at the same time by Infrared data exchange <Send all Ir data>

Select “Send all Ir data” from the function menu of Data list screen or detail screen.

<Example: Send all data stored in the phonebook>

1 Phonebook list screen (P.112) ▶  (FUNC) ▶ “Send all Ir data”

Searching in the phonebook → P.111

2 Enter your security code ▶ Enter session number

Security code → P.152

Session number → P.398

3 Direct the Infrared data port toward your party ▶ “YES”

Make sure that your party is ready to receive all data.

All the data start being sent.

A message appears indicating that the sending is completed.

■ **To cancel the sending**

▶ “NO”

■ **To exit during the sending**

▶  (Quit)

Receiving multiple data at the same time by Infrared data exchange <Receive all Ir data>

- 1 Receive Ir data screen (P.397) ▶ “Receive all”**
- 2 Enter your security code ▶ Enter session number**
Security code → P.152
Session number → P.398
- 3 Direct the Infrared data port toward your party ▶ “YES”**
■ **To cancel the receiving**
▶ “NO”
- 4 Receive all data from the FOMA terminal of your party**
All the data start being received.
■ **To exit during the receiving**
▶  (Quit)
- 5 Press “YES” on the Overwrite confirmation screen**
A message appears indicating that the received data is stored completely.
■ **To cancel the receive all Ir data**
▶ “NO”

Sending and Receiving multiple data at the same time by cable connection <Write all/Read all>

- The method to transfer data varies by the transferring software. Follow the instructions to the software for more details.

<Example: Send all data from the FOMA terminal to PC>

- 1 Use the transferring software on PC to send all data from the FOMA terminal**
You need to enter the session number on PC.
Enter a 4-digit number for the session number.
- 2 Enter your security code on the FOMA terminal ▶ Enter session number on the FOMA terminal**
The data are transferred. When the transfer is finished, you receive a message that it is completed.
Security code → P.152
Session number → P.398

<Infrared data exchange mode>

Setting Infrared Data Exchange Mode

By receiving the i-αpli launch settings data from the Infrared data exchange device supporting i-αpli launch, you can run the software.

- You can specify whether the software is activated or not by the “Set i-αpli To”. → P.327
- Download the software from the site in advance. → P.320

- 1 Receive Ir data screen (P.397) ▶ “Receive” ▶ Receive i-αpli launch settings data from the Infrared data exchange device**
Receiving the i-αpli launch settings data runs the software.
The operations after the launch vary by the software.
■ **To cancel the receiving**
▶  (Quit) or 

NOTE

- If the software was not found, a message appears indicating that it was not found.

Function menu (Receive Ir data screen)

1 Receive Ir data screen ➤ (FUNC) ➤ Select the following:

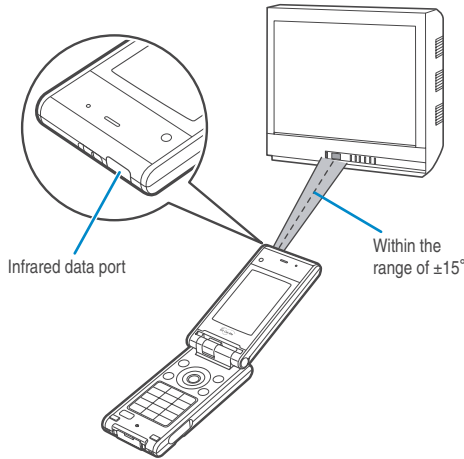
Item	Description
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" → P.143

Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

- Download the appropriate software for the product you want to control. Note that even the correct software may not support the product, which cannot be controlled by the FOMA terminal.
- You can download the remote control software from iMenu site.
- You cannot use the Infrared Remote Control during the Self mode.

Using remote control

- Point the infrared data port of the FOMA terminal directly at the remote control sensor on the TV, etc. while using it as a remote control. The remote control is effective within four meters away from the product. This may vary by the ambient light level.



Using “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE program guide remote control)

“Gガイド番組表リモコン” is a useful monthly-charge-free application containing the program guide and TV remote control function.

You can obtain TV program information easily anywhere at any time. You can know the program title, contents of program and start/end time and G code® according to the locality. If you find an interesting TV program, use the “おすすめメール” function to let your friends know the program title and on-air schedule by mail. Moreover, you can use the FOMA terminal as the TV remote controller. (Note that some models do not support this function.)

- You can select any program easily because it supports Electronic Program Guide (EPG).
- When you use “Gガイド番組表リモコン” for the first time, agree to the license agreement and set the default settings.
- You are charged for the packet communication.
- See “i-mode User's Manual” for details.

Initial settings

1 Run “Gガイド番組表リモコン”▶Set your data

Running an i-appli→P.322

Enter a 7-digit number correctly for the postal code. This will display the program guide of the area of the specified postal code.

— Sets “視聴地域の郵便番号” (a postal code of your region), “生まれた年” (year of birth), “性別” (sex)

2 “TV登録”▶ (Select)▶Select the manufacturer of the product▶ (設定)▶“OK”

If you press after selecting the manufacturer, you can test the remote control function to turn on/off the device.

3 (設定)▶“利用規約を読む”▶Read the agreement▶ (戻る)▶“はい” or (同意)

4 (Select)▶Select the TV station you want to display on the program guide▶ (完了)▶ (設定)

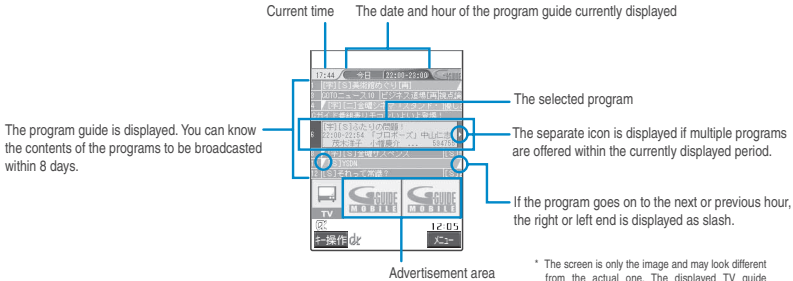
The channels of the checked TV stations are displayed on the program guide.

5 Enter the channels linked to the TV stations▶⊙(設定)



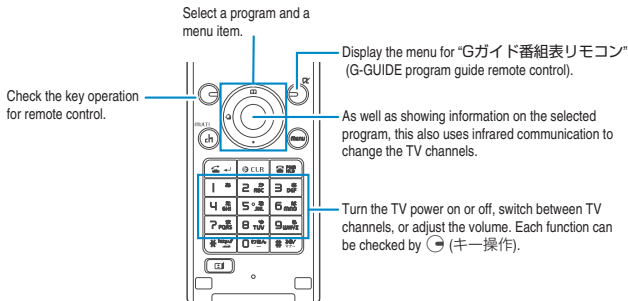
The screen is not displayed if the manufacturers are not specified.

● The main screen of “Gガイド番組表リモコン”



* The screen is only the image and may look different from the actual one. The displayed TV guide corresponds to the area where you live.

● The basic operations for “Gガイド番組表リモコン”



NOTE

- Selecting the ad links may connect to the advertised site with the Web To function, make a call with the Phone To function, or send a mail message with the Mail To function.

“Gガイド番組表リモコン” menu

1 The main screen of “Gガイド番組表リモコン”▶⊙(メニュー)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
番組詳細	Opens communication and retrieves program details when detailed information is provided for the program.
おすすめメール	Composes the i-mode mail to which the information on a program is entered.
HELP	How to use “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE program guide remote control) is displayed.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

Item	Description
最新に更新	Updates a program guide.
バージョン情報	Checks the version of "G ガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE program guide remote control). Press  (更新) to update the "G ガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE program guide remote control) if a new version is available.
視聴チャンネル	Sets the broadcasting station displayed on a program guide.
リモコン登録	Sets the maker of the apparatus operated by "G ガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE program guide remote control).
初期化	 (初期化). Initialize "G ガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE program guide remote control).
リモコンチャンネル設定	Specifies assigned remote control channels to TV stations.

<DPOF setting>

Specifying How to Print Images Stored on miniSD Memory Card

You can set Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) for printing images stored on the miniSD memory card.

- DPOF is a format for specifying the information on printing images shot by digital camera.
- Save still images shot by the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, and specify still images to print and the number of sheets. The images can be printed following the settings with the DPOF-enabled printer or in a print service shop.

- Folder list screen (P.339) ▶ "miniSD" ▶ "Picture" ▶ Select a folder ▶**
Use  to move the frame to the image that you want to specify the print setting ▶  (FUNC) ▶ "DPOF setting" ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
DPOF set One	Specifies the print settings for the image.
DPOF set Choice	Specifies the print settings for the multiple images you select.

- "Print" ▶ Specify "Print Sheets" (2-digit number from 01 to 99) and "a date" (whether to add a date stamp) ▶  (Finish)**

- To cancel the print settings for the current image
▶ "Print OFF"
- To cancel the print settings for all the saved images
▶ "All print OFF"

NOTE

- You can specify DPOF settings for up to 999 images. Note that the number of printed images may not reach the number of specified images depending on the printer's specification.
- You cannot set DPOF for images larger than 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high or of which sizes exceed 600K bytes.
- You may not be able to set the DPOF setting if there is little space available on the miniSD memory card.
- You cannot set DPOF for images stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
- The number of copies specified can be checked in "Image info".

● Other Useful Functions

Multi Access.....	Multi access	406
Multi Tasking	Multi task	408
Setting the Alarm Mode	Alarm setting	410
Using the FOMA terminal as an Alarm Clock	Alarm clock	412
Managing Schedule.....	Schedule	414
Adding ToDo List Entries	ToDo	419
Storing Your Own Name and Image	Own number	422
Recording Your and the Other Party's Voice	Voice memo (during a call)/Voice memo (in Stand-by)	424
Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones	Voice announce	425
Checking Call Times and Charges	Call data	426
Checking and Notifying Upper Limit of Cost	Notify cost limit	428
Using the FOMA terminal as Calculator	Calculator	429
Composing Text Memo	Text memo	430
Using Dictionaries.....	Dictionary	431
Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch	Earphone/microphone with switch	434
Connecting Earphones and Selecting Person to Call	Auto dial setting	435
Connecting Earphones and Answering Calls Automatically	Automatic answer	435
Selecting Your Provider	PLMN setting	436
Resetting the Function Settings.....	Reset	436
Resetting to the Default Settings of FOMA terminal	Initialize	441

Multi Access

Multi Access is a function that allows voice calls, packet communication and SMS to be conducted at the same time. This enables you to receive mail during a voice call or make a voice call while using the i-mode services.

“Multi Access Combination Patterns” → P.528

Communication lines that can be used concurrently

Using the Multi Access function, the FOMA terminal can concurrently use the 3 communication lines listed below.

Type of communication	Lines used
Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-appli, or i-mode mail	1 line for one of the types
Packet communication via PC	
SMS	1 line

NOTE

- Communication charges apply for each of the lines used during multi access communication.
- You cannot use multi access during a videophone call. However, only SMS can be received at the same time.
- You cannot use multi access during 64K data communication. However, only SMS can be sent and received at the same time.

When you receive a call during communication

i-mode mail received during a voice call

When you receive i-mode mail during a voice call, the voice call screen remains on screen while the i-mode mail is received. You can then read the i-mode mail without interrupting your call.

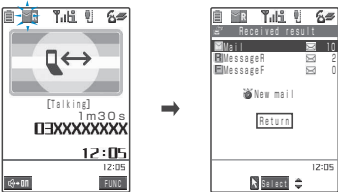
1

ch

▶

 **Transmission**

Using the Task menu to change screens → P.409



2 Checking i-mode mail

Reading i-mode mail → P.282

3

ch

▶

 **Talking**

The screen changes to the voice call screen.

NOTE

- If you receive i-mode mail or a Message Request/Free during a voice call, the “Mail”, “Message R” or “Message F” icon flashes and then lights without a ring tone to notify you of the received message.
- If no operations are performed in the Received result screen, the in-call screen reappears.

● Voice call received during i-mode or packet communication

If you receive a voice call while you are using i-mode, while you are receiving or sending i-mode mail or while you are using packet communication to send data, the screen changes to the voice call reception screen and you can answer the call without ending the i-mode or packet communication.

- You cannot receive videophone calls while using i-mode or while in the packet transmission.

1



The screen changes to the voice call reception screen and you can answer the call.

■ To return to the i-mode display without answering the call

▶ ▶ “Browser”

The caller hears the busy tone with no message.

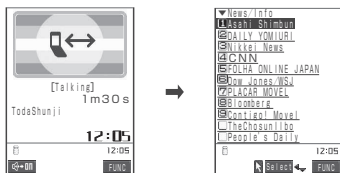
2

When you have finished talking, press

The call is ended and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ To return to the i-mode screen during a voice call

▶ ▶ “Browser”



To use another type of communication while communicating

You can use another type of communication without interrupting your current communications.

- To change the screen during multi access communication, select the function you want to view from the Task menu. → P.409

● Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

During a voice call, you can connect to i-mode by pressing and connecting from the i-mode menu in the Main menu. → P.212

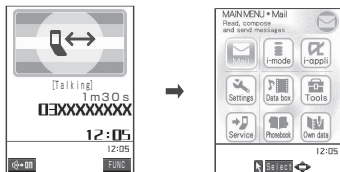
● Sending i-mode mail during a voice call

During a voice call, you can compose and send i-mode mail by pressing and selecting the Mail menu in the Main menu.

1

During a voice call ▶ ▶ Select the Mail menu

Using menu → P.38



2

Composing i-mode mail ▶ Send

Composing/sending i-mode mail → P.253

3

▶ “Talking”

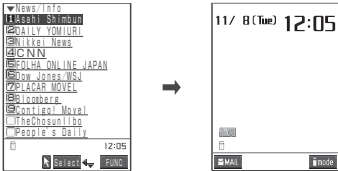
The voice call screen reappears.

● Making a voice call during i-mode

While connecting i-mode or receiving/sending a mail, you can make a voice call without ending i-mode.

1 During i-mode▶[Ⓜ] (for 1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears.



2 Make a voice call

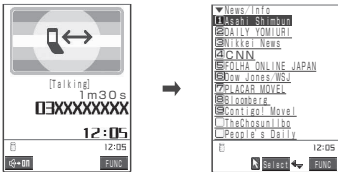
Making voice calls→P.58

3 When you have finished talking, press [Ⓜ] PWR HLD

The call is ended and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ To return to the i-mode screen during a voice call

▶[Ⓜ]▶“Browser”



NOTE
● If you make a videophone call while in i-mode, the “Disconnecting” message appears, after which the FOMA terminal dials the videophone call. When the videophone is ended, the i-mode screen reappears.

<Multi task>
Multi Tasking

Multi task is a function that allows you to use multiple functions at the same time. This allows you to use up to 3 functions at once, one from each of the Main menu groups shown below. Multi Task Combination Patterns→P.528



The running group is enclosed by the frame.

The running tasks are expressed by icons.

Groups	Major functions (tasks)
Mail group	Mail
i-mode group	i-mode, i-appli
Settings group	Settings and Network service
Tools group	Data box, Phonebook, Tools and Own data

● The voice call charge continues to increment while you are concurrently using another communication function during a voice call.

Activating a task (function)

1 While launching a task▶[Ⓜ] (for 1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears. Note that the standby screen is not displayed when voice call function is being used.

2 Select a task from a group that has no tasks currently running

■ To activate a task from the Main menu

▶  ▶ Select a task → P.38

■ To activate a task using a menu option number

▶  ▶ Enter menu number for the desired task → P.520

■ To activate Mail menu

▶  () → P.252

■ To activate i-mode menu

▶  () → P.212

NOTE

- If you attempt to activate tasks from the same group, either a message appears asking whether to switch tasks, or the tasks are automatically switched (when the Mail menu or i-mode menu is being displayed). If the message asking you to switch appears, select "YES" to switch to the newly selected task.
- If you attempt to activate a fourth task when there are already 3 tasks running concurrently, a message appears informing you that no further tasks can be activated. Press  to terminate other functions to perform operations.
- In the following cases, one task is added to compose mail while viewing mail. If 3 tasks are already running and you perform the operation below, a message is displayed, stating that the task cannot run. End a task other than a mail group task and then perform the operation. "Ending a Task" → P.409
 - Compose message
 - Compose an SMS
 - Reply/Reply with quote/Forward on the function menu while viewing mail
 - Function menu "Edit" while viewing the sent mail detail screen
 - Edit draft mail

Switching tasks

When you are running multiple tasks, you can switch between tasks.

- You can also display the Task menu by using the neuropointer to select the Multi task icon ( , ) in the icon display area.

1



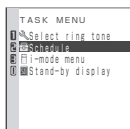
The Task menu list screen appears.

■ To display the Task menu on the Standby screen

▶  (for 1 second or longer).

2

Select a task



The screen for the selected task appears. Note that "Stand-by display" is not displayed in the Task menu when voice call function is being used.

Ending a task

You can end a task in any of the following ways:

- Switch to the task to be ended ▶  
- Highlight the task to be ended in the Task menu ▶  ▶ "YES"
- To end all the active tasks, press  () while the Task menu is displayed ▶ "YES"

NOTE

- Turning the FOMA terminal off ends all the active tasks.
- If you use procedures that access menu functions such as UIM operation or Display design while other menu functions are running, a warning tone sounds and a warning message is displayed. If this occurs, quit the other menu functions before using the procedures that access menu functions.

Setting the Alarm Mode

Default setting
Alarm preferred

You can select either “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred” as the alarm notification setting for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” and “ToDo”.

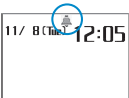
1   **“Clock”** ▶ **“Alarm setting”** ▶ **“Operation preferred”** or **“Alarm preferred”**

When you set to “Operation preferred”, alarm is used only when the screen is standby.
When you set to “Alarm preferred”, alarm is used even when using FOMA terminal or when talking.

Alarm notification actions

When you set an alarm

When you set an “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” alarm, an icon appears on the standby screen.



■ **An alarm set for today (excluding times that have already passed)**

The “” icon is displayed.

■ **An alarm set for tomorrow or later**

The “” icon is displayed.

When the specified time is reached

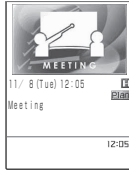
The different alarms notify you as shown below.



Alarm clock



Schedule*



ToDo*

* : The animation displayed for alarm differs depending on selected icon and category. However, if an i-motion is set to the alarm tone, the image will be displayed at the alarm notification time.

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule, ToDo
Standby screen displayed	If “Snooze OFF” is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for the specified time (01 to 10 minutes). If “Snooze ON” is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for 1 minute, and then repeats this up to 6 times at around 5 minute intervals. Animations are also displayed on the display and on the indicator display.	The alarm tone sounds repeatedly for around 5 minutes and animations also appear on the screen and on the indicator display.
FOMA terminal turned off	If “ON” is selected for the “Auto power ON” function, the FOMA terminal automatically turns on and notifies you of the alarm. If the setting is set to “OFF”, the power does not turn on and no alarm notification is provided. The “  ” (Missed alarm) desktop icon is not displayed on the desktop even after the FOMA terminal is turned on.	No alarm notification is provided when the specified time has elapsed. The setting remains effective.
Call in progress*	The clock alarm tone (“pip-pipi...”) sounds through the FOMA terminal’s earpiece 3 times. Animations are also displayed on the screen.	
Receiving or Dialing a call*	During the receiving, the alarm sounds in the same way as “Call in progress” when you answer. During the dialing, the alarm sounds and the animation is played on the screen and the indicator display.	
i-mode or sending/receiving mail*	Alarm notification is the same as for the “Standby screen displayed”.	

Status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule, ToDo
During infrared communication, SD-PIM function operation or data transfer in OBEX	No alarm notification is provided when the specified time has elapsed. When data communication ends, the "Miss" (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. → P.412	
When an earphone/ microphone is connected ("Earphone" set to "Earphone")	The alarm tone sounds through the earphone for around 20 seconds. The alarm sounds through both the earphone and the speaker in 20 seconds. Animations are also displayed on the screen and the indicator display.	
When "PIN1 code entry set" is set to "ON" and the PIN1 code entry screen is shown after the FOMA terminal is turned on*	Alarm notification is the same as for the "Stand-by screen displayed". When the alarm notification screen clears, the PIN1 code entry screen reappears.	Alarm notification is provided after the correct PIN1 code is entered.
During All lock/ PIM lock set	Regardless of the "Alarm setting", no alarm notification is provided when the specified time has elapsed. After the All/PIM lock is released, the "Miss" (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen (P.412). If you turn the FOMA terminal off without releasing the All/ PIM lock and do not turn it back on before the specified time has elapsed, the FOMA terminal is not turned on even when the specified time is reached and no "Miss" (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen after the All/PIM lock is released.	Regardless of the "Alarm setting", no alarm notification is provided when the specified time has elapsed. After the All/PIM lock is released, the "Miss" (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. → P.412

* : Operation for when "Alarm preferred" is set. When "Operation preferred" is set, the desktop icon "Miss" (Missed alarm) is displayed on the standby screen. → P.412

NOTE

- The volume of the "Schedule" and "ToDo" alarms is determined by the "Phone" setting in "Ring volume".
- The Clock Alarm Tone volume during a call is the same as that specified in "Volume".
- Unless "Phone" in "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal uses both vibration and an alarm to notify you of alarms.
- If "Display" in "Clock display" was set to "OFF", or if the Schedule or ToDo entry was stored with "OFF" selected, no icon is displayed.
- Even if you have set an i-motion in the "Alarm tone" setting, i-motion is not played when i-motion cannot be activated such as during a call, the alarm notifies you with the "Clock Alarm Tone" and the animation for the specified icon and category.

<Alarm notification priority sequence>

- If "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarms are set at the same time, alarm priority is assigned as follows. ① has the highest priority:

① Alarm clock

② ToDo

③ Schedule

If alarm notification was not possible, the "Miss" (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

To stop the alarm tone

Alarm clock alarm tone

When "Snooze OFF" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone and freezes the animation or i-motion. If you press any key again, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the display is cleared.

When "Snooze ON" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, freezes the animation or i-motion and displays the "Snooze..." message. After the "Snooze..." message has been displayed for around 5 minutes, the alarm is notified again. If you press  while the "Snooze..." message is displayed, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the snooze setting is cancelled.

Schedule and ToDo alarm tones

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, freezes the animation or i-motion and displays the alarm message. Pressing any key again clears the alarm message. However, if you pressed the side keys when the FOMA terminal was folded, the alarm notification display is not cleared.

If you receive a call during alarm notification

Alarm notification stops and the FOMA terminal receives the call. The "Alarm clock" snooze setting is also cancelled.

NOTE

- Snooze is canceled in the following situations:
 - When you receive a voice call or videophone call
 - When you receive i-mode mail or SMS and "Alarm preferred" is selected in "Receiving display".
 - When you receive Alarm clock, Schedule or ToDo alarm and "Alarm preferred" is selected in "Alarm setting".
- If "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF", the snooze notification release tone does not sound.

Checking alarm details when notification fails

If the FOMA terminal was unable to notify you of an alarm, the "Miss" (Missed alarm) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. You can then check the details of the missed alarm (Missed alarm info) from the desktop icon.

1 On standby screen▶ Select the "Miss" (Missed alarm)



The missed alarm information for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" is displayed.

■ To clear the "Miss"

▶ CLR (for 1 second or longer)

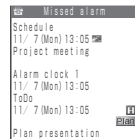
Once you clear the "Miss", you can no longer check the missed alarm information.

2 Check the details▶ CLR

The standby screen reappears and "Miss" (Missed alarm) desktop icon disappears.

NOTE

- If "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarms are set for the same time and the FOMA terminal was unable to notify you, the respective missed alarm information is displayed.



<Alarm clock>

Using the FOMA terminal as an Alarm Clock

Default setting
OFF

- You can store up to 3 alarm settings.

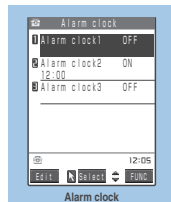
Setting the alarm clock

1 [Menu] [4] [GHI] [4] [GHI]

The "Alarm clock screen" appears.

If you have set the alarm clock before, the details of the last setting are displayed.

2 Highlight an item to be set▶ (Edit)



Function menu▶P.413

3 Select any item:

Item	Description
Time setting	Enters the time at which the alarm will sound.
Repeat	Sets the number of alarm clock repetitions.
	1 time The alarm sounds only once.
	Daily () The alarm sounds every day.
	Select day () ▶ Use to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) The alarm sounds every week on the specified day.
Alarm tone	Selects the alarm tone from the Melody folder or i-motion. → P.338, 357, 375 You can select "Clock Alarm Tone" in the "Pre-installed" folder. Select "OFF" to disable alarm tone.
Volume	▶ Adjust the alarm tone with Sets the alarm tone volume. "Adjusting the Ring Volume" → P.77
Snooze setting	Specifies whether a snooze (repeating) alarm is set or not.
	ON The alarm tone sounds repeatedly for 1 minute and then repeats this up to 6 times at around 5-minute intervals.
	OFF ▶ Enter a ringing time (01-10 minutes) The alarm tone sounds continuously for the specified ringing time. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To use the time already displayed, just press (Set).
Auto power ON	Specifies whether the FOMA terminal is automatically turned on or not when the time for an alarm is reached.

4 Set the respective items ▶ (Finish)

NOTE

- You cannot store or edit alarm clock entries while PIM lock is set.
- When the alarm clock automatically turns the FOMA terminal on to notify you of an alarm and an alarm tone other than "Pre-installed" is selected, the FOMA terminal uses the "Clock Alarm Tone" due to the FOMA card operational restriction function.
- Before entering an area such as an aircraft or hospital where there is electronic equipment that uses extremely precise control systems or very low signal levels and the use of mobile phones is prohibited, set the "Auto power ON" setting to "OFF" and then turn the FOMA terminal off.

Function menu (Alarm clock screen)

1 Alarm clock screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

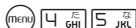
Item	Description
Edit	Edits the Alarm clock.
Display detail	Changes to the detail display when the list display is shown.
Release this	Disables one Alarm clock.
Release all	Disables all Alarm clocks.

Managing Schedule

If you add an event to your schedule, an alarm tone sounds at the specified date and time and the FOMA terminal displays an animation and message notifying you of the details stored for the event. You can also add holidays and anniversaries. Stored schedule events and holidays can be quickly checked on the FOMA terminal's calendar. You can switch between 1-month and 1-week calendar display mode to view the number of scheduled events for a given day and the key points. You can organize your schedule in a variety of ways, such as storing regularly scheduled events such as weekly meetings on a set day every week, setting alarm tones and animations that match the scheduled event, or storing multiple scheduled events for the same day.

- The FOMA terminal supports from January 1, 2004 to December 31, 2037.
- You can store up to 100 schedule events, holiday or anniversaries respectively. Note that the national public holidays stored on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase are not included in this number.
- You can store multiple scheduled events for the same day. You can only set 1 holiday or anniversary per day.
- Schedule alarms → P.410

1



The "Schedule screen" appears.



Function menu → P.414

Function menu (Schedule screen)

1

Schedule screen → (FUNC) → Select any item:

Item	Description	
New	"Adding schedule entries" → P.415	
Weekly display*1	"Changing the Schedule display mode" → P.415	
Icon display	Selects an icon to display scheduled events by icon. Repeating scheduled events (D or W) are displayed as a single item.	
User icon settg.	"Setting your choice of image as your user icon" → P.417	
No. of schedules	Displays the number of stored schedule entries, stored holidays and stored anniversaries. You can also check the number of records kept in secret in Secret mode.	
Send all Ir data	"Transferring multiple data at the same time" → P.398	
Delete past*2	Schedule	Deletes all the scheduled events up to the previous day.
	Holiday	Deletes all the holidays up to the previous day.
	Anniversary	Deletes all the anniversaries up to the previous day.
	All	Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item	
	Security code → P.152	
	Schedule	Deletes all the schedule entries.
	Holiday	Deletes all holidays.
	Anniversary	Deletes all anniversaries.
	All	Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries.
Reset holiday	Resets the holidays to the national public holidays stored initially. (The holidays you stored are not deleted.)	

*1 : If Weekly display is set, it changes to "Monthly display". The default setting is Monthly display.

*2 : "Past" means all the days before the day that the cursor is on on the schedule screen.

NOTE

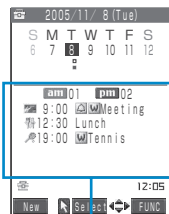
- Selecting "Holiday" or "All" of "Delete all" resets the holidays to the default settings at the time of purchase.

Changing the Schedule display mode

The calendar displayed by the Schedule can be viewed either as a "Monthly display" or a "Weekly display". By pressing  to highlight a particular date, you can check icons and the number of scheduled events stored for the selected date.



Shows icons and the number of scheduled events stored in the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.



Shows the icons, number, and details of scheduled events set for the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.

Blue dates: Saturdays

Red dates: Sunday, public holidays and holidays

 : Anniversaries

 : Today

 : Scheduled event stored for the morning

 : Scheduled event stored for the afternoon

The public holidays are set in accordance with the “国民の祝日に関する法律及び老人福祉法の一部を改正する法律（平成13年法律第59号）” (Revised National Holidays Law (Law No. 59, 2001)). The Spring and Autumnal Equinox Days are determined by the government on February 1st in the previous year and may differ. (As of August, 2005)

Adding schedule entries

By adding the details of a trip or appointment to your schedule, you can have the FOMA terminal notify you using an alarm tone and animation when the specified date and time arrives.

- The scheduled event is not automatically deleted once the specified date and time has passed. If you try to store more than 100 events in your schedule, a message appears saying that the event cannot be stored. Delete some unwanted scheduled events and try again.
- When registering schedule, you must enter "Details". Entries with no details are not added to the schedule.

1 “Schedule screen” (P.414)  (New)  “Schedule”

2 Select each item:

Item	Description	
 Date setting (from)	Enters date and the starting time for the scheduled event.	
 Date setting (to)	Enters date and the finishing time for the scheduled event.	
 Repeat	Sets the scheduled event repetitions.	
	1 time	The event is only set for the specified day.
	Daily ()	The event is set to repeat every day.
	Select day ()	▶ Use  to select a checkbox () ▶  (Finish) The event is set to repeat every week on the specified day.

Item	Description	
 Alarm	Specifies the alarm notification settings used when the starting date and time has elapsed.	
	ON	An alarm notification is used at the starting time.
	ON/Set time	▶Enter an advance notification time (01-99 minutes) Sets how many minutes in advance of the starting time alarm notification is given. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To use the time already displayed, just press  (Set).
	OFF	No alarm notification is given when the starting time has elapsed.
 Alarm tone	Selects the alarm tone from the Melody folder or i-motion. → P.338, 357, 375 You can select "Clock Alarm Tone" in the "Pre-installed" folder. Select "OFF" to disable alarm tone.	
 Summary	Enters the summary of the scheduled event details. You can enter up to 20 full-pitch or 40 half-pitch characters."Entering Text"→ P.498 The entered summary appears on the screen during alarm notification.	
 Schedule	Enters the scheduled event details and selects an icon. You can enter up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text"→ P.498 When no summary is set, the details appear on the screen during alarm notification. If both summary and details are set, the summary is displayed.	

3

Set the respective items▶ (Finish)

NOTE

- You cannot add or edit an event while the PIM lock is set, and the added holidays are not displayed even if the calendar is set to be displayed on the standby screen.
- When the calendar is set to the standby screen, you can set your schedule from the calendar.
- If the "ON/Set time" setting is selected, the FOMA terminal only sounds an alarm at the specified time before the scheduled event (01-99 minutes in advance). The FOMA terminal does not sound an alarm at the date and time set for the scheduled event itself.
- If you attempt to store 2 scheduled events with the same date and time, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing entry.
- Scheduled events can be stored to notify the alarm at the same date and time when the Repeat setting for one is "Daily" or "Select day" and the Repeat setting for the other is "1 time" (no repeats). In this situation, the scheduled event with the "1 time" setting has priority.
- If the day of the week set as the starting time and the day of the week set in the Repeat setting are different, the day set in the Repeat setting has priority and the scheduled event is added on the first specified day after the starting time.
- If you store a scheduled event during a voice call, the alarm normally sounded during alarm tone selection does not sound.
- Scheduled events stored as secret data are only displayed when the FOMA terminal is set to "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".→ P.157

Important

- You should back up the details of stored scheduled events onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P.531) and a FOMA USB Cable (optional) to back up the Schedule data onto your PC.
- Stored Schedule entries can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of scheduled event details as a precautionary measure.

Adding holidays and anniversaries

<Example: Storing a holiday>

1 “Schedule screen” (P.414) ► (New) ► “Holiday”

- To add an anniversary
 - “Anniversary”

2 Select each item:

Item	Description
 Date setting	Enters the date of the added holiday or anniversary.
 Repeat	Sets the holiday or anniversary repetitions.
1 time	The holiday or anniversary is only set for that year.
Annually ()	The holiday or anniversary is set for every year.
 Message	Enters the details of the holiday or anniversary. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.498

3 Set the respective items ► (Finish)

NOTE

- If there is already a holiday or anniversary stored for the specified date, a message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing entry.

Setting your choice of image as your user icon

You can set an image or animation stored in “My picture” as a user icon. Icons set as user icons are shown as “” to “” in the icon selection display. When you set a user icon, the selected image or animation is displayed when the FOMA terminal notifies you of an alarm. Also, “★” is displayed on the indicator display.

- You can store up to 5 user icons.

1 “Schedule screen”(P.414) ► (FUNC) ► “User icon settg.” ► “<Not recorded>”



- To change a user icon that was set previously
 - Choose the items already set

- To clear all the user icon settings

- “Release all” ► “YES”

Settings can only be cleared when user icons have already been set.

2 Select a folder



If there are user-created folders, images can also be selected from those. Selecting images → P.339

- To release the icon that is set to the schedule

- “Release this” ► “YES”

- To release the icon that is not set to the schedule

- “Release this”

3 Select an image

The selected image is zoomed in. The screen returns to the user icon list after a while.

- To display a preview

- Move the frame to the image to be displayed ► (Play)

NOTE

- If you attempt to change or clear a user icon that is being used in a scheduled event, a message appears asking whether to clear the icon. If you change or clear the user icon, or delete the user icon from Data box, the alarm notification screen for the schedule switches to the screen on which you set "🕒".

Checking schedule

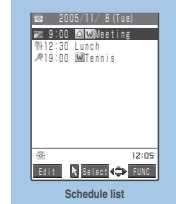
You can view and check the detail display for scheduled events.

1 Schedule screen (P.414)▶Select the date on which the scheduled event is stored

The "Schedule list screen" appears.

The icons used in the list display are described below.

- 🕒 : A scheduled event is stored. (Scheduled event icon is displayed).
- 🏠 : Stored holiday
- 👤 : Stored anniversary
- 🔔 : Alarm set
- 📅 : Daily repeating event set
- 📅 : Weekly repeating event set on a specified day of the week
- 📅 : Annual repeating event set

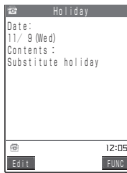


Function menu▶P.418

2 Select an item



Scheduled event detail



Holiday detail



Anniversary detail

Function menu (Schedule list screen)

1 Schedule list screen▶🕒(FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
New	"Adding schedule entries" → P.415
Edit	Edits the schedule.
Copy	Copies schedule entries. When the copied entry is set as a repeating event in the source schedule, the repeat setting is removed when the entry is pasted.
Icon display	Selects an icon and displays scheduled events by icon. Repeating scheduled events (📅 or 📅) are displayed as a single item.
User icon settg.	"Setting your choice of image as your user icon" → P.417
Release secret	Changes the schedule stored in the Secret mode to the normal schedule. → P.159
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
Send Ir data	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.397
Send all Ir data	"Transferring multiple data at the same time" → P.398
Export this	Exports one entry to a miniSD memory card.
Delete this	Deletes one entry.

Item	Description	
Delete past	Schedule	Deletes all the scheduled events up to the previous day.
	Holiday	Deletes all the holidays up to the previous day.
	Anniversary	Deletes all the anniversaries up to the previous day.
	All	Deletes all scheduled events, holidays and anniversaries up to the previous day.
Delete select	▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐)▶ (Finish)▶ “YES” You can delete multiple schedule entries.	

NOTE

- “Delete past” and “Delete select” do not delete the default holidays stored at the time of purchase.
- If you attempt to use “Delete this” or “Delete select” to delete a scheduled event for which repetition (daily or weekly) is set, a message appears asking whether to delete the planned repetitions. Select “YES” and to delete all repeat occurrences of the scheduled events.
- When you use “Delete past”, all past occurrences of repeated scheduled events (daily or weekly) prior to the selected date are deleted, while repeat occurrences from the selected date onwards are left untouched.
- If you select “Delete select” from the Function menu when scheduled events are displayed by icon, the screen changes to show the selective deletion screen in the list display for the date selected on the screen before the scheduled events were displayed by icon. You cannot select “Delete select” when scheduled events are displayed by icon.

<ToDo>

Adding ToDo List Entries

You can control your schedule by adding events to ToDo list. You can also set alarms for events.

- You can store up to 100 entries in the ToDo list.
- For information on ToDo alarms → P.410

Checking the entries

1

The “ToDo screen” appears.

Shows the entry status.
The blue icon turns into red when the specified day has elapsed.

Shows the priority.

ToDo

Function menu▶P.420

2 **Select an entry**

The “ToDo detail checking screen” appears.

■ **To edit an entry**

▶ (Edit)

“Adding and editing entries” → P.420

ToDo detail checking

Function menu▶P.420

Function menu (ToDo/ToDo detail checking screen)

1 ToDo/ToDo detail checking screen▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description	
New	"Adding and editing entries"→P.420	
Edit	"Adding and editing entries"→P.420	
Change status	Chooses an entry from "Plan", "Acceptance", "Request", "Provisional plan", "Confirmation", "Denial", "Completion" or "Substitution". When you select "Completion", set the completion date.	
Category display	Chooses entries from "All", "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" or "Meeting", and shows them by category.	
Sort/Filter	Sorts entries or displays only entries with a specified status.	
	By due date	In the chronological order by due date.
	By completed	In the chronological order by completion date.
	By entered time	In the reverse chronological order in which they were entered.
	Plan ~ Substitution	Displays only entries selected by the Filter function.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→P.143	
Send 1r data	"Transferring one data at a time"→P.397	
Send all 1r data	"Transferring multiple data at the same time"→P.398	
Export this	Exports one entry to a miniSD memory card.	
Delete this	Deletes one entry.	
Delete select	▶Press  to select a checkbox (□)▶  (Finish)▶"YES" Deletes multiple entries.	
Delete completed	Deletes a completed entry.	
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶"YES"	
	Deletes all entries. Security code→P.152	

Adding and editing entries

● Always enter "Details" for an entry. Entries with no "Details" entered are not added to the ToDo list.

<Example: To register a message>

1 ToDo screen (P.419)▶ (FUNC)▶"New"

■ Editing a message

▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit"

■ Selecting a function with 

Soft key  displays (New) when no message is registered and (Edit) when any is registered.  can also be used to select a function when it allows the selection.

2 Select any item:

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

Item	Description	
 ToDo	Enters the details for the entry. You can enter up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters. "Entering Text" → P.498	
 Due date	Sets the due date for an entry.	
	Enter date	Enters the date and time.
	Choose date	Selects a date from the calendar, then enters the time.
	No date	No due date is set.
 Priority	Sets the priority for an entry.	
		Sets a high priority.
		Sets a low priority.
	None	No priority is set.
 Category	Chooses a category of entries from "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" or "Meeting".	
 Alarm	Specifies the alarm notification settings used when the due date is reached.	
	ON	An alarm notification is used at the due date.
	ON/Set time	▶ Enter an advance notification time (01-99 minutes) Sets how many minutes in advance of the due date alarm notification is given. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To use the time already displayed, just press  (Set).
	OFF	No alarm notification is given when the due date has elapsed.
 Alarm tone	Selects the alarm tone from the Melody folder or i-motion. → P.338, 357, 375 You can select "Clock Alarm Tone" in the "Pre-installed" folder. Select "OFF" to disable alarm tone.	
 Completion date*	Sets the completion date for an entry.	
	Enter date	Enters the date.
	Choose date	Selects a date from the calendar.
	No date	No completion date is set.

* : Only displayed when an existing stored entry with a "Status" of "Completion" is edited.

3 Set the respective items▶ (Finish)

NOTE

- You cannot store or edit ToDo list entries while PIM lock is set.
- If the "ON/Set time" setting is selected, the FOMA terminal only sounds an alarm at the set time before the ToDo event (01-99 minutes in advance). The FOMA terminal does not sound an alarm at the date and time set for the ToDo event itself.
- If you store a ToDo list entry during a voice call, the alarm normally sounded during alarm tone selection does not sound.

Important

- You should back up the details of a stored ToDo list onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P.531) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to back up contents of ToDo list onto your PC.
- Stored contents of ToDo list can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss of data and users are advised to make a note of ToDo list as a precautionary measure.

Storing Your Own Name and Image

Default setting
Own number only

You can store your own personal information, including your name, home phone number and e-mail address. Stored personal information provides the FOMA terminal with a way of confirming that you are the owner and can also be quoted in text entry and editing displays.

- You cannot change or delete the FOMA terminal's own phone number.
- The registered data are stored on the FOMA terminal. If you insert the FOMA card (UIM) of another FOMA terminal, the registered data are displayed.

Displaying personal data

When this function runs, it shows only your name, the FOMA terminal's own phone number and the first e-mail address listed.



The "Own number screen" appears.
If you have stored your personal data such as your home phone number or address, you can display all the data by selecting "Display all data" from the function menu and entering security code.



Function menu▶P.422

Function menu (Own number screen)

1 Own number screen▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	"Storing personal data"→P.423
Display all data	▶Enter your security code▶Check the contents with Security code→P.152
Copy name	Copies the name stored in the personal data. The copied name can be pasted into the text entry and other screens. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text"→P.514
Copy phone number ^{*1}	Copies the phone number stored in the personal data. The copied phone number can be pasted into the text entry and other screens. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text"→P.514
Send Ir data	"Transferring one data at a time"→P.397
Export this	Exports one personal data to a miniSD memory card.
Erase phone number ^{*2}	Deletes the phone number stored in the personal data.
Reset	▶Enter your security code▶"YES" Resets (deletes) all the personal data other than your FOMA terminal's phone number and restores the defaults set at the time of purchase. When you use "Display all data" to display the personal data, you do not need to enter your security code. Security code→P.152

^{*1} : Depending upon what you have selected, the following is applicable.
· If you have selected a mail address, "Copy mail add." is displayed.
· If you have selected an address, "Copy address" is displayed.
· If you have selected a birthday, "Copy birthday" is displayed.
· If you have selected a memo, "Copy memorandums" is displayed.

^{*2} : Depending upon what you have selected, the following is applicable.
· If you have selected a mail address, "Erase mail add." is displayed.
· If you have selected an address, "Erase address" is displayed.
· If you have selected a birthday, "Erase birthday" is displayed.
· If you have selected a memo, "Erase memorandums" is displayed.
· If you have selected an image, "Delete image" is displayed.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

Storing personal data

1 Own number screen (P.422) ➤ (Edit) ➤ Enter your security code

Security code → P.152

2 Select any item:

Item	Description
 Name	Enters your name. You can enter up to 16 full-pitch or 32 half-pitch characters which include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and pictographs. "Entering Text" → P.498
 Reading	Enters the reading for your name. The Reading is entered automatically when you enter your name. Change it if necessary. You can enter up to 32 characters which include half-pitch katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. "Entering Text" → P.498
 Phone number	Adds a phone number other than the FOMA terminal's own number and selects an icon. You can enter up to 26 digits for the phone number. When you store a new phone number, the "  <Not stored>" option appears in the personal data edit display. Select this option to store an additional phone number.
 Mail address	Enters the e-mail address and selects an icon. You can enter up to 50 half-pitch alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the "  <Not stored>" option appears on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address. "Entering Text" → P.498
 Address	Enters the postal code and address. Postal codes can consist of up to 7 half-pitch numbers. You can enter up to 50 full-pitch or 100 half-pitch characters which include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs. "Entering Text" → P.498
 Birthday	Enters the contact's birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
 Memorandums	Enters a memo (short note). You can enter up to 100 full-pitch or 200 half-pitch characters which include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs. "Entering Text" → P.498
 Image	Selects/releases the image displayed when you display your personal data.

3 Set the respective items ➤ (Finish)

NOTE

- If you change your own e-mail address or store a secret code, the e-mail address stored in this function does not automatically change.

<Voice memo (during a call) / Voice memo (in stand-by)>

Recording Your and the Other Party's Voice

Voice memo is divided into two types. In-call "Voice memo" allows you to record your party's voice during a voice or videophone call. Standby "Voice memo" allows you to record your own voice while the screen is standby.

- You can record only one In-call Voice memo or Standby Voice memo. Each time you record a voice memo, it overwrites the existing voice memo.
- You can record for about 20 seconds.
- For information on playing and erasing recorded voice memos → P.84

Recording the other party's voice during a call

You can record the other party's voice during a voice call or videophone call. A single key press allows quick and easy recording of important calls.

1 During a call ▶ (Memo/Check) (for 1 second or longer)



The FOMA terminal beeps and recording begins. The FOMA terminal beeps as a warning 5 seconds before the recording time (around 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" display changes back to the in-call screen.

■ To stop recording in progress

▶  (Stop), ,  or  (Memo/Check) (for 1 second or longer)

Pressing  also ends the call.

Pressing  does not stop recording during videophone call.

NOTE

- If you receive a call, use another function or the FOMA terminal notifies you of an "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "ToDo" alarm while you are making a voice memo recording, recording stops.
- You cannot record while a voice call or a videophone call is on hold or while you are using a Function menu option.
- While you are holding a voice call, you can record the call by following the steps below:

▶  ▶  ▶ "Voice memo"

Recording yourself in stand-by mode

1 ▶ "YES" ▶ Record voice memo

When the FOMA terminal beeps, begin speaking into the mouthpiece. The FOMA terminal beeps as a warning 5 seconds before the recording time (around 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" display changes back to the "Tool" list screen.

■ To stop recording in progress

▶  (Stop),  or 

Pressing  returns you to the standby screen but saves the recorded voice.

■ Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of the voice memo.
- Recorded Voice memo (during a call) can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss of data and users are advised to make a note of voice memos as a precautionary measure.

<Voice announce>

Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones

- You can record speech for use as original ring tones and answer messages.
- You can make 2 voice recordings: “Voice announce 1” and “Voice announce 2”.
 - Recordings can be up to around 15 seconds long.
 - Voice recordings made using this function can be set in the following functions:
 - Ring tones
 - Ring tones for Call setting w/o IDs
 - On hold tone
 - Holding tone
 - Answer message of Record message
 - Alarm clock alarm tone
 - Schedule alarm tone
 - ToDo alarm tone
 - Notify cost limit alarm tone
 - Chat mail notification tone

Recording voice

1

▶ Select an item

2

“Record”▶Record voice

Speak into the mouthpiece. The FOMA terminal beeps as a warning 5 seconds before the recording time (about 15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the FOMA terminal gives a short double-beep and the “Recording” display changes back to the original screen.

■ **To stop recording in progress**

▶ (Stop), or

Pressing returns the FOMA terminal to the standby screen but saves the recorded voice.

NOTE

- When there is already a voice recording, a message appears notifying you that there is an existing recording. Select “YES” to make a new recording and overwrite the existing recording.
- If you receive a call, use another function or the FOMA terminal notifies you of an “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “ToDo” alarm while you are making a voice announce recording, the recording stops.

Playing and erasing voice announce recordings

1

▶ Select an item

2

Select any item:

Item	Description
Record	“Recording voice”→P.425
Play	The recorded sound is played.
Erase	The recorded sound is erased.

- **To stop playback in progress**
- ▶ (Stop), or

Checking Call Times and Charges

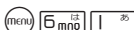
You can check the previous or total call time/charge for voice/videophone calls, etc.

- When you switch between voice call and videophone call, the total call time of voice and videophone calls is displayed in the last duration area, and the charges of voice and videophone calls are displayed separately in the last charge area. The displayed charge may differ from the actual charge.
- The call time is displayed for both voice calls and digital calls and communication (videophone calls and +64K data communication). Times for both calls made and calls received are counted.
- Charges are only displayed for calls made. However, if you call at toll free number such as directory assistance (104), "¥0" or "¥**" is counted.
- As charges are accumulated on the FOMA card (UIM), the accumulated charge (start from December 2004) is displayed on the Charge line even if you change your FOMA card (UIM).

* : Charges are accumulated on FOMA cards (UIM) in FOMA terminals released before the 901i series, but they cannot be displayed.

- You can reset displayed call times and charges.
- Displayed call times and charges may differ from the actual figures. Consumption tax is not included in the call costs.

1



Call data	
Last duration	1h 6m 2s
Last Charge	VXXX
Talk	VXXX
Digital	VXXX
All calls duration	
Talk	34h 23m 48s
Digital	9h 13m 32s
Charge	V495
Calls reset	11/07 12:12
Charge reset	11/07 12:13
	12:05

Last duration: Shows the approximate duration of the last call. The duration is shown regardless of whether the call was incoming or outgoing.

Last Charge: Shows the approximate charge for the last call. "Talk" shows the Last Charge of a previous voice call. "Digital" shows the Last Charge for a videophone call and 64K data communication.

All calls duration: Shows the total duration of all the calls made since the last reset (when the total was reset to "0"). "Talk" shows the total call time for voice calls. "Digital" shows the total call time for videophone calls and 64K data communication.

Charge : Shows the approximate total charges for all the calls made since the last reset and shows the approximate total charges for all the calls including voice calls and digital communications (videophone charge + 64K data communication charge).

Calls reset : Shows the time and date of the last calls reset.

Charge reset: Shows the time and date of the last charge reset.

NOTE

- If the last and accumulated voice or digital call time exceeds 199 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds, the call count returns to 0 seconds.
- The time and charge are not counted for i-mode or packet communication. To check i-mode communication charges, see the "i-mode User's Manual" you received at the time of contract.
- The time taken to pick up a call, or for the other party to pick up a call is not counted.
- If the "Set time" settings are not set or if "Set time" is set and then "Reset call duration" is not executed at least once, the date and time of time reset and charges reset are not displayed.
- If you turn the FOMA terminal off or remove the FOMA card (UIM), the duration and charge shown for the last call reverts to "0" and "¥**" respectively.
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not affect the duration or charge.

Resetting the total call time and total call charges <Reset call duration>

You can reset the "Call data" displayed for the "All calls duration" and "Charge" to zero.

- 1**    ▶ **Enter your security code** ▶ **Select any item:**
Security code → P.152

Item	Description
Reset call duration	Resets accumulated duration.
Reset charge duration	▶ "YES" ▶ Enter PIN2 code Resets accumulated charges. PIN2 code → P.153

Resetting Charges automatically <Auto reset all cost>

Default setting
OFF

You can set so that Charge shown in "Call data" should become zero automatically on the 1st day every month, at 0:00 AM.

- Set date and time at "Set time" in advance. → P.55

- 1**   ▶ **"Call time/Charge"** ▶ **"Auto reset all cost"** ▶ **Enter your security code**
Security code → P.152

- 2** **"Auto reset"** ▶ **"ON"** ▶ **Enter PIN2 code**
PIN2 code → P.153
■ **Not to set Auto reset**
▶ **"OFF"**

NOTE

- Charge will be automatically reset even in a packet communication.
- When the date for auto reset is reached during a talk, auto reset is carried out after the talk ends.
- When it becomes time to reset automatically while the FOMA terminal is turned off, enter PIN2 code next time you turn the power on, and the charge will be reset.
- Setting Auto reset all cost to "ON" and changing the month in "Set time" resets the total call charges.
- Setting Auto reset all cost to "ON" displays the PIN2 code entry screen when you turn on the FOMA terminal.
- The Auto reset all cost is reset to "OFF" when:
 - You turn on the power without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted
 - You press  when the screen is PIN2 code entry
 - When you press  on the PUK code entry screen while PIN2 code is locked.
 - An error occurs on the FOMA card (UIM)

<Notify cost limit>

Checking and Notifying Upper Limit of Cost

Default setting Cost limit: ¥3,000 Notify cost limit: OFF

When accumulated charge shown at “Call data” exceeds the cost limit set in this function, you are notified with standby screen or alarms.

- The alarm notification works only once when the accumulated charge exceeds the amount that is set in advance.
- Exceeding the limit does not prevent you from making a call.

1   **▶ “Call time/Charge” ▶ “Notify cost limit” ▶ Enter your security code**

Security code → P.152

2 **Select any item:**

Item	Description	
Cost limit setting	You can set the cost limit between ¥10 and ¥100,000 by ¥10.	
Notify setting	Notify cost limit	Specifies whether to notify the cost limit.
	Alarm tone	Selects the alarm tone from the Melody folder. → P.338, 375 You can select “Clock Alarm Tone” in the “Pre-installed” folder. Select “OFF” to disable alarm tone.
	Volume	Sets the alarm tone volume with  . “Adjusting the Ring Volume” → P.77

3 **Set the respective items**  **(Finish)**

NOTE

- The alarm volume while in original manner mode is the same as that specified in “Phone vol.” in “Original”.
- The charges for i-mode communication and packet communication are not included in this function. To check i-mode communication charges, see the “i-mode User’s Manual” you received at the time of contract.

Alarm notification actions

After ending a call, the function notifies you with the following methods when accumulated charges exceed the cost limit.

■ When Notify cost limit is set to “ON” and alarm tone is set to other than “OFF”

When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the alarm starts sounding in three seconds after you finished talking, and it lasts about five minutes, which displays the screen notifying that the accumulated charge has exceeded the limit. To stop the alarm tone, press any key. After the notification, pressing  or  displays “” (Call billing) desktop icon on the standby screen.



■ When Notify cost limit is set to “ON” and alarm tone is set to “OFF”

When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, “” (Call billing) desktop icon is shown on the standby screen.

● Checking details of “” (Call billing)

The details of Notify cost limit is displayed by selecting “” (Call billing) desktop icon on the standby screen.

1 On standby screen▶Select “” (Call billing)

The alarm information of “Call billing” is shown.

2 Check the details▶ (OK)

The standby screen reappears and “” (Call billing) disappears.



NOTE

- If the specified limit is lower than the accumulated charge, the alarm of Notify cost limit sounds when you finish making/receiving a call immediately after changing the settings.
- You can set the alarm mode by selecting “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred” in “Alarm setting” (P.410).

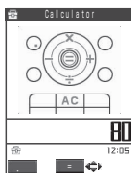
<Calculator>

Using the FOMA terminal as Calculator

You can use your FOMA terminal to perform 4 different types of arithmetical calculations (addition, subtraction, multiplication and division).

- The number can be displayed up to 10 digits. Below the decimal point up to 9 digits can be displayed.
- If the result of a calculation exceeds 10 digits, “.E” is displayed.

1 ▶ Calculate



The FOMA terminal displays the entered numbers and calculation result.

■ To calculate “23 + 57”

2 3 + 5 7 =
     

■ To use negative numbers in a calculation

To calculate using negative amounts, simply insert “-” before the first digit.

- 2 3 + 5 7 =
      

NOTE

-  ( or ) can be used in the following situations.
 - After pressing +, -, ×, ÷ and =,  is shown. You can start calculation from the beginning by pressing .
 - While inputting numbers or decimal points,  is shown. You can delete wrong numbers or decimal points by pressing .

Composing Text Memo

You can write short messages in the form of text memos. You can paste a composed text memo into your schedule or mail message.

- You can store up to 10 text memos.
- You can enter up to 256 full-pitch or 512 half-pitch characters for a text memo.

Storing a text memo

- 1

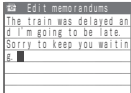
The "Text memo screen" appears.
- 2

Highlight "<Not recorded>"   (Edit)
To edit the content of an existing text memo
▶ Highlight the item to be changed ▶  (Edit)
- 3

Write the memo
"Entering Text" → P.498



Function menu ▶ P.430



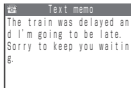
Important

- You should back up the details of stored Text memo onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately. If you own a PC, you can use the Data Link Software (P.531) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to back up the Text memo data onto your PC.
- Stored Text memo entries can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss of data and users are advised to make a note of text memos as a precautionary measure.

Checking the details of text memos

- 1

"Text memo screen" (P.430) ▶ Select the item ▶ Check the memo



Function menu (Text memo screen)

- 1

Text memo screen ▶  (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	Edits the text memo.
Compose message	"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" → P.253
Edit schedule	"Adding schedule entries" → P.415
Send Ir data	"Transferring one data at a time" → P.397
Send all Ir data	"Transferring multiple data at the same time" → P.398
Export this	Exports one text memo to a miniSD memory card.
Text memo info	Displays the creation date/time and category.
Category	Chooses a category of the text memo from "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" or "Meeting".

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.380

Item	Description
Delete this	Deletes one text memo.
Delete selected	▶Use to select a checkbox ()▶ (Finish)▶“YES” Deletes multiple text memos.
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶“YES” Delete all the text memos. Security code → P.152

<Dictionary>

Using Dictionaries

● You can launch the dictionary using the function menu of the text edit screens, in addition to the tool menu described below. → P.433

Activating the dictionary

- 1
- ▶▶“Dictionary”
- The “Dictionary screen” appears.

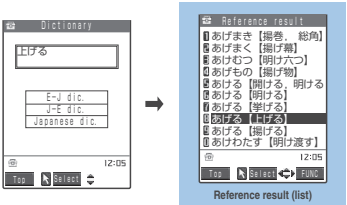


Function menu▶P.432

- 2
- Select any item:

Item	Description
Enter word	Enters a word. You can enter up to 32 full-pitch or 64 half-pitch characters. “Entering Text” → P.498
Access reader	▶“Dic. (Japanese)” or “Dic. (English)”▶Scan the text Enters a word from the access reader. “Scanning Text” → P.198
Reference history	You can search the dictionary using the history of previously retrieved words. “Using reference history” → P.432

- 3
- Select the dictionary type
- The “Reference result (list) screen” appears.
- To display the previous or next list
- ▶“Reference result (list) screen”▶



Function menu▶P.432

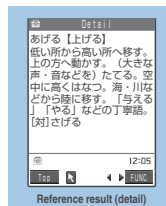
4

Select a word

The "Reference result (detail) screen" appears.

■ To display the previous or next word

▶"Reference result (detail) screen"▶



Function menu▶P.433

Function menu (Dictionary screen)

1

Dictionary screen▶(FUNC)▶Select the following:

Item	Description
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→P.143

Using reference history

1

Dictionary screen (P.431)▶"Reference history"

The "Reference history screen" is displayed.

2

Select a word



Function menu▶P.432

Function menu (Reference history screen)

1

Reference history screen▶(FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Delete this	Deletes one Reference history.
Delete all	Deletes all Reference histories.

Function menu (Reference result (list) screen)

1

Reference result (list) screen▶(FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Copy	Copies the word in [] retrieved from the dictionary. The copied word can be pasted into entry screens, etc. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text"→P.514
Refer dic.	Searches for the retrieved word in another dictionary.

Function menu (Reference result (detail) screen)

1 Reference result (detail) screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
Copy	Copies the word retrieved from the reference result (detail). The copied word can be pasted into entry screens, etc. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.514
Re-reference	"Searching in the Reference result (detail) screen" → P.433
Refer dic.	Searches for the retrieved word in another dictionary.
Refer edit	This option allows you to refer to the retrieval results while editing text. The dictionary is activated from the text edit display and, if the operation display and text edit display cannot be shown, the text edit display from which the dictionary was launched appears (e.g. text memo or phonebook text edit display). "Changing the Active Screen" → P.518

Searching in the Reference result (detail) screen

1 Reference result (detail) screen (P.432) (FUNC) "Re-reference"

2 (Start) on the first character of the string

3 Highlight to the end of the string (End)

4 Select the dictionary type

5 Select a word

Using dictionaries from other functions

Select "Refer dic." from the respective function menus in the following displays:

- Text edit screens
- Detail screens for sent or received mail and while the message entry screen for a new mail is displayed.
- Pages on sites and while a screen memo is displayed

■ When you activate the dictionary from a text edit display

You can choose "Enter word", "Select area" or "Reference history".

Choosing "Select area" allows you to specify the range of the words you want to look up from the text edit display.

■ When you activate the dictionary from the Sent or Received Mail detail screen or from the Message Entry display

You can choose "Enter word", "Select area" or "Reference history".

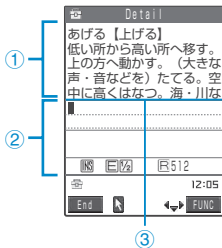
Choosing "Select area" allows you to specify the range of the words you want to look up from a message in sent or received mail or from a new message you are composing.

■ When you activate the dictionary from a site or from a screen memo

You can choose "Enter word", "Site refer (enter)" or "Reference history".

Choosing "Site refer (enter)" allows you to enter the word you want to look up while referring to a screen memo or a page on a site.

● Guide to the dictionary reference screen



When you select “Refer edit” or “Site refer (enter)”, the display is split into top and bottom halves.

Each time you select “Change window” from the Function menu, the window you can use switches between ① and ②.

Moving the neuropointer between the windows also changes the windows.

■ When you selected “Refer edit” from the Retrieval Results screen...

- ① Dictionary Detail screen.
- ② Text edit screen.
- ③ Separation lines.

To exit the dictionary, switch to window ① and press (End).

■ When you selected “Site refer (enter)” from a screen memo or a page on a site...

- ① Site page or screen memo display.
- ② Search term entry display.
- ③ Separation lines.

Enter the search term and press (Set). The dictionary selection display appears with the search term entered.

<Earphone/microphone with switch>

Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch

You can make or receive a call by using a Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional).

- To connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to the FOMA terminal, open the earphone/microphone jack cover and insert the earphone/microphone with switch into the socket. → P.30
- The call connection tone and call end tones always sound regardless of the “Keypad sound” setting.
- Note that connecting the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch while the FOMA terminal is emitting a ring tone may cause the FOMA terminal to accept the call.
- Do not wrap the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch cord around the FOMA terminal. This may interfere with signal reception.

● Using the switch to make calls

1 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer on the Standby screen

The FOMA terminal makes a call to a phone number set at “Auto dial setting” (P.435).

Even if FOMA terminal is folded, you can still make a call to a phone number that is set at “Auto dial setting” by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer.

■ Making a call from the list screen of the Phonebook

▶ Phonebook list screen ▶ Select a phonebook ▶ Press the switch for 1 second or longer

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the first phone number registered at “Phonebook”.

You can also make a call from “Redial/Dialed call screen (list)” or “Received calls screen (list)”.

■ Making a call from the detail screen of the Phonebook

▶ Phonebook detail screen ▶ Select a phone number ▶ Press the switch for 1 second or longer

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to a selected phone number.

You can also make a call from “Redial/Dialed call screen (detail)” or “Received calls screen (detail)” or by holding down the switch for one second or longer on “Phone number input screen”.

2 When you finish talking, hold down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

● Using the switch to accept calls

1 When you receive a call, press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone

You can press the switch with the FOMA terminal folded to answer the call.

■ Receiving voice calls

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers the call.

■ **Receiving videophone calls**

The FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers the call using your substitute image. Press to switch to your own camera image.

2 When you finish talking, hold down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

NOTE

- You can end a call by pressing on the FOMA terminal.
- You can use the "Earphone" setting to make sounds through the earphone and speaker when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected.
- By setting "Automatic answer" to "ON", you can have the FOMA terminal answer calls automatically without having to press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone. → P.435
- If "Silent" is selected for "Phone" in the "Ring volume" setting, or if the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, no ring tone sounds. However, a ring tone does sound if you are using an "Original" manner mode in which the "Phone vol." setting is not "Silent".
- Holding down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer during a call does not switch the FOMA terminal to hands-free mode. Holding down the switch for 1 second or longer actually ends the call.
- If you have subscribed to the "Call Waiting" (P.447), you can answer a call that comes in during another call by pressing the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone. You can switch calls by pressing the switch for 1 second or more. However, pressing the switch does not end the current call.
- Do not repeatedly press and release the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone as this may cause the FOMA terminal to automatically accept a call.

<Auto dial setting>

Connecting Earphones and Selecting Person to Call

Default setting
OFF

When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, this function allows you to have the FOMA terminal automatically make voice calls by holding down the switch for 1 second or more.

- You can set telephone numbers registered in the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (Phone) to this function.
- Even when FOMA terminal is folded, you can still make a voice call automatically by holding down the switch of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer.

1 **"Talk"** **"Auto dial setting"** **"ON"**

■ **Not to use Auto dial setting**
▶ "OFF"

2 Phonebook entry detail screen (P.113) ▶ Display a phone number ▶

(Select)

Searching the phonebook → P.111

NOTE

- The phonebook entry in which no phone numbers are registered or the entry registered to UIM phonebook cannot be set.
- If you delete the phonebook in this function, you can no longer make phone calls by pressing the switch of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch even if this function is set to "ON".

<Automatic answer>

Connecting Earphones and Answering Calls Automatically

Default setting Automatic answer: OFF Ringing time: 6 seconds

When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, this function allows you to have the FOMA terminal automatically answer received voice or videophone calls without having to press the switch.

- When you enable "Automatic answer", the FOMA terminal waits for the specified ring time after the call is received (001-120 seconds) and then automatically answers the call.
- The FOMA terminal does not automatically answer calls during 64K data communication.
- You can receive a call automatically when FOMA terminal is folded.

1



“ON”▶Enter the ringing time

Enter the time as a 3-digit number. To use the time already displayed, just press (Set).

■ To disable Automatic answer

▶“OFF”

NOTE

- When the FOMA terminal automatically answers a videophone call, the caller sees your substitute image. To switch to your own image displayed by FOMA terminal's camera during the videophone call, press .
- You cannot set a ringing time for Automatic answer that is the same as the ringing time for “Record message” or “Remote observation”.
- To give this function priority when it is set at the same time as the “Voice Mail Service” (P.445) or “Call Forwarding Service” (P.448), set a shorter ringing time for this function than those set for Voice Mail and Call Forwarding.
- If the ring start time set in “Ringing time” is longer than the Automatic answer ringing time, the FOMA terminal switches to Automatic answer without ringing when a call comes in. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it switches to Automatic answer, set a ringing time for Automatic answer that is longer than the ring start time.
- If you connect an earphone/microphone with switch to the FOMA terminal while the FOMA terminal is ringing, Automatic answer does not operate. However, Automatic answer will operate if you disconnect the earphone/microphone with switch while the FOMA terminal is ringing.

<PLMN setting>

Selecting Your Provider

Default setting
DoCoMo

* If you are using DoCoMo, there is no need to change this setting.

You can specify your FOMA service provider (PLMN).

- As of August 2005, no service providers other than DoCoMo can be selected.

1



▶“Other settings”▶“PLMN setting”▶“Manual”▶Select

PLMN (service provider)

<Reset>

Resetting the Function Settings

You can reset the FOMA terminal's function settings to the defaults selected at the time of purchase.

Do not mistake “Initialize” for “Reset”.

“Initialize”, and you will lose all the data you have stored. → P.441

- If the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, “USB mode setting” is not returned to its default setting.
- To restore the default settings for the i-mode functions, use “Reset” in “i-mode settings”. → P.231
- To reset the “Last URL” setting, use “Reset last URL”. → P.231
- To restore the default settings for the mail functions, use “Reset” in “Mail settings”. → P.302

1



▶Enter your security code▶ “YES”

Security code → P.152

■ To cancel the reset

▶“NO”

Functions that are reset

Function			Default settings
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume	Phone: Level 4 Video-phone: Level 4 Mail: Level 4 Chat mail: Level 4 MessageR: Level 4 MessageF: Level 4

Function		Default settings
Settings	Incoming call	Select ring tone
		Phone: Pattern 1 Video-phone: Pattern 1 Mail: Pattern 2 Chat mail: Pattern 2 Message R: Pattern 3 Message F: Pattern 3
		SRS_WOW
		OFF
		Vibrator
		Phone: OFF Video-phone: OFF Mail: OFF Chat mail: OFF MessageR: OFF MessageF: OFF
		Illumination
		Phone: Color 5 Video-phone: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1 Set pattern: Standard Color name: Color 1-12 Adjust color tone: Initial setting
		Manner mode set
		Manner mode (Original manner → P.132)
		Disp. PH-book image
		ON
	Talk	Answer setting
		Any key answer
		Fold setting
		End the call (Setting for "Tone on" → P.74)
		Mail/Msg. ring time
		Mail: ON Set ringing time: 5 seconds Chat mail: ON Set ringing time: 5 seconds MessageR: ON Set ringing time: 5 seconds MessageF: ON Set ringing time: 5 seconds
		Ring time
		Set mute seconds: 0 second Missed calls display: Display
		Info notice setting
		Japanese display: 電子音 English display: ON
		Noise reduction
		ON
		Quality alarm
		High tone
		Reconnect control
		No tone
		Illumination in talk
		OFF
		Call response setting
		On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody
		Auto dial setting
		OFF
	Video-phone	Visual preference
		Normal
		Camera image sending
		ON
		Select image
		On hold: Pre-installed Holding: Pre-installed Substitutive image: Chara-den (ブンブン (Dimo)) Record message: Pre-installed Preparing: Pre-installed Voice memo: Pre-installed
		Voice call auto switch
		OFF
		Remote observation
		Other ID: Not recorded Ringing time: 5 sec. Set: OFF
		Disp. setting VP
		Main display: Other image Display screen size: Large

Function		Default settings
Settings	Display	Display setting
		Stand-by display: Stripe Wake-up display: Modern Furniture Wake-up message: It returns to the state when it is not entered. Dialing: Standard Calling: Standard VP Dialing: Standard VP Calling: Standard Mail sending: Standard Mail receiving: Standard Check new message: Standard
		Display light
		Lighting: ON + Saver (5-minute delay) Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys (Normal) Brightness: Level 2
		Display design
		Color pattern: Pattern 1 Background1: OFF Background2: Pattern 1
		Indicator display
		Display information Clock type: Clock 3 (size middle) Phone number: ON Mail: OFF Connection: ON+Display light: OFF (Display clock only settings → P.136)
		Font
		Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium
		Desktop icon
		Camera
		Original menu
		Own number Check new message Ring volume Vibrator Alarm clock Change security code
		Menu display set
		Guidance: Picture & Text Menu display: List Theme: Plain
		Viewer settings
		Picture
		Automatic display
		OFF
	Call time/Charge	Notify cost limit
		Cost limit setting: ¥3000 Notify cost limit: OFF Alarm tone: Clock Alarm Tone Volume: Level 4
		Auto reset all cost
		OFF
		Call time display
		ON
	Clock	Clock display
		Display Japanese display: 日本語 English display: ON Size: Big
		Alarm setting
		Alarm preferred
	Lock/Security	Self mode
		Release
		Keypad dial lock
		Release
		Reject unknown
		Accept
		Call setting w/o ID
		All "Accept" (Same as ring tone)
		Scanning function
		Scan function: ON
		Remote all lock
		OFF Accept phone No.: Reverts to "Not recorded" Monitoring: 3 minutes Received calls: 5 times

Function		Default settings
Settings	Connection setting	Set connection timeout
		60 seconds
		Set check new message
		Mail: ON MessageR: ON MessageF: ON
		Host selection
		i-mode User defined host: Reverts to "Not recorded"
	SMS center selection	DoCoMo User setting: Revert to unrecorded status.
		Certificate
		All valid
		Certificate host
		DoCoMo User setting host: Reverts to "Not recorded"
	i-appli settings	Disp. software info
	External connection	Not display
		USB mode setting
		Communication mode
	Earphone	Earphone
		Automatic answer
		OFF Ringing time: 6 seconds
	Other settings	Keypad sound
		ON
		Charge sound
		ON
		Side keys guard
		OFF
		Character input method
		Input mode: All ON Prior mode: Mode 1 (5-touch) Prediction: ON Guidance: ON T9 change mode: T9 Kanji change mode
		Record display set
		Received calls: ON Redial/Dialed calls: ON
Tool	Camera	Sub-address
		ON
		Prefix setting
		WORLD CALL (009130010) User setting: Revert to "Not recorded"
		Int'l dial setting
		Auto assist setting: Auto IDD prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010) Country code setting: アメリカ (Country code: 1) User setting: Revert to unrecorded status.
		Neuropointer
		Pointer: ON Pointer icon setting: Simple Shape Simple: Normal
		Select icons setting
		ON
		Camera
		Photo mode
		Camera: Rear camera
		Select size: CIF (352 × 288)
		Storage setting: Fine
		Image quality
		Photo mode: Auto
		Color mode set: Normal
		Image tuning: Auto
		Select frame: OFF
		Movie mode
		Camera: Rear camera
		Select size: Large (176 × 144)
		File size setting: Restricted (Short)
		Storage setting: Normal
		Image quality
		Brightness: 0
		White balance: Auto
		Color mode set: Normal
		Photo mode: Portrait
		Image tuning: Auto
		Movie type set: Normal
		Photo mode/Movie mode
		Shutter sound: Shutter 1
		Auto timer: OFF (Seconds: 10 sec.)
		Auto save set: OFF
		File restriction: File unrestricted
		Display size: Actual size
		(Setting Continuous mode → P.181, 182)

Function		Default settings
Tool	Schedule	Monthly display User icon settg.: Reverts to "Not recorded".
	Alarm clock	All OFF
	Record message	OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ringing time: 8 seconds
	Forwarding image	ON
Network service	Arrival call act	Answer
Phonebook	Utilities	All OFF
	Restrictions	All OFF
Own data	Common phrases	Fixed phrases reset (Folder name: Folder 1, 2)
Data box	My picture	Set image disp.: Normal Sort: Chronological ↑
	i-motion	Listing: Title + image (FOMA terminal (Phone)), Name + image (miniSD) Set repeat play: OFF Set image disp.: Actual size Sort: Chronological ↑
	Chara-den	Rec. Chara-den: Photo mode Substitute image: ブンブン(Dimo) Set image disp.: Fit in display Select size: QCIF (176 × 144) Movie type set: Video+Voice Storage setting: Normal
Other functions	Volume	Level 4
	Manner mode	Release
	Driving mode	Release
	Videophone function menu "V-phone settings"	Brightness: 0
	Videophone function menu "Display light"	All time ON
	Phonebook search Last one function ^{*1}	Reading search
	i-motion volume	Level 4

*1 : The "Last one function" provides for the function selected last time an operation was performed to be the pre-selected function next time that operation is performed.

NOTE

- You cannot reset the functions while using other functions. Also, you cannot reset the functions while "All lock" or "PIM lock" is set.

<Initialize>

Resetting to the Default Settings of FOMA terminal

This function deletes stored data and returns the settings for the FOMA terminal's functions to their defaults set at the time of purchase.

"Initialize" deletes all of your important data including phonebook, mail, downloaded images or melodies, i-appli, still images and movies shot by the built-in camera (even protected data).

- If you have deleted the pre-installed Chara-den characters, initializing the FOMA terminal restores them.
- Data that had already been stored at the time of purchase is not deleted.
- For more information on the restored default settings, see "Reset" (P.436).
- The "Initialize" returns the functions that are listed below and that can be reset by the "Reset" function to their default settings set at the time of purchase.

· Mail data	· Mail folders	· Template
· Color palette	· Chat member	· Mail settings
· Bookmark	· Screen memo	· Last URL
· Go to location	· Message	· i-mode settings
· Call response setting	· Auto start set	· i-appli launch information*1
· Call data	· Set time	· Pause dial
· Melody	· ToDo	· Text memo
· Voice announce	· Access reader	· Bar code reader
· Dictionary	· Auto start time	· Software setting
· Standby Voice memo	· Additional service	· Multi number
· Phonebook	· Group setting	· Received calls
· Redial/Dialed calls	· Received address	· Sent address
· Mail member	· Chat group	· Own dictionary
· Changed security code	· "Secret" folder	· Style mode
· i-channel	· Data you have stored*2	

*1 : The launch information on i-appli that had been pre-installed at the time of purchase is not restored to the default (except if it is upgraded or if it is deleted once and then downloaded).

*2 : Saved data, downloaded data, i-appli softwares, still images, video clips shot using the built-in camera or contents you added by scanning the QR code attached to styleplus.

- Group names and folder names, etc. that you have edited revert to their default names.
- Ensure that the battery is fully charged before initializing the FOMA terminal. It may not be possible to initialize the FOMA terminal if the battery is low.
- Do not turn the FOMA terminal off while it is being initialized.
- You cannot use any other functions while the FOMA terminal is being initialized. Also, you cannot receive voice calls, videophone calls or mail.

- You can restore your FOMA terminal to the default settings by using "Initialize".

It is recommended to store your data registered to FOMA terminal by taking memo or using Data Link Software (P.531) or miniSD memory card (P.380).

1 (menu) (settings) ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Initialize" ▶ Enter your security code

Security code → P.152

2 "YES" ▶ "YES"



Initialization begins.

Initialization may take a few minutes.

When the terminal initialization ends, the FOMA terminal is automatically restarted.

■ If initialization is not completed correctly

▶ "OK" after turning the power on

The initialization starts again.

NOTE

- The initialization deletes i-appli if they:

- had been pre-installed at the time of purchase and were upgraded
- had been pre-installed at the time of purchase and were deleted once and then downloaded
- were downloaded after purchase

You can download the i-appli that were pre-installed on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase from the "みんなNらんど" page on the "ケータイ電話メーカー" site. Packet communication charges apply for the download. → P.213

- When you finish "Initialize", "Telop display setting" is set to "ON" and "Indicator display OFF". The telop is displayed automatically on the standby screen by pressing (Ⓜ) to display the channel list or by receiving the latest information.
- The i-channel information may not be received after initialization. You can receive the latest information by pressing (Ⓜ) to display the channel list.
- You cannot initialize the FOMA terminal while another function is running.
- Data saved, stored or set on the FOMA card (UIM) or miniSD memory card are not deleted.
- Data communication settings specified from a PC are not deleted.
- When there are large amounts of data to be deleted, the initialization may take some time.

● Network Services

Available Network Services	444
Voice Mail Service	445
Call Waiting.....	447
Call Forwarding Service.....	448
Nuisance Call Barring Service.....	450
Caller ID Request Service	451
Dual Network Service	452
English Guidance.....	452
Service Dialing Number.....	453
Handling Calls Received During a Call.....	453
Setting Up Remote Access.....	Remote access 455
Multi number <Not currently available>.....	455
Adding and Using Services	Additional services 455

To use the "Voice mail", "Call waiting", "Call forwarding", "Nuisance call barring", "Dual network" and "i-mode" services, you must subscribe beforehand. For further information on the network services, refer to contact information provided on the back cover of this manual. (Check the phone number carefully before dialing.)

You can subscribe to the "Voice mail", "Call waiting", "Call forwarding" and "Nuisance call barring" services via the DoCoMo e-site. See the back cover of this manual for details.

Available Network Services

Your FOMA terminal provides you with access to a range of useful DoCoMo network services. The table below outlines the services and shows pages that describe the service details.

Service name	Description	Subscription	Monthly usage fees	Page
Voice mail service*	Stores caller messages on your behalf.	Required	Charged	P.445
Call waiting*	Allows you to take calls from other people while you are on a phone.	Required	Charged	P.447
Call forwarding service*	Forwards calls to a preset number.	Required	Free	P.448
Nuisance call barring service*	Automatically bars calls from nuisance callers or repeated wrong number calls.	Required	Free	P.450
Caller ID notification service*	Provides your FOMA terminal phone number to callers when you make a call.	Not required	Free	P.56
Caller ID request service*	Plays a message to callers who do not provide his/her caller ID by asking them to call again with their caller ID provided.	Not required	Free	P.451
Driving mode*	Plays a message to callers notifying that you are driving and cannot take the call.	Not required	Free	P.79
Dual network service*	Allows the same phone number to be shared by the FOMA terminal and mova terminal.	Required	Charged	P.452
English guidance*	Allows you to select English as the language used in the spoken guidance messages provided when you make or receive calls or set up network services.	Not required	Free	P.452
SMS (Short Message)*	Provides a simple way to send and receive short text messages.	Not required	Free	P.309
i-mode	Allows you to connect to sites (programs) and use i-mode mail, etc.	Required	Charged	P.206

* : For more details of the network services, see the "Network Services Operation Guide".

- For the service being used when you are connected to the Network Service Center, the service cannot be used when the  icon appears.
- When DoCoMo makes a new network service available, you can add the new service to the menu. →P.455

Voice Mail Service

Subscription
Required

If you receive a voice call when the “” icon is displayed on the FOMA terminal or the FOMA terminal is turned off, this service plays an answer message to the caller and stores the caller's message on your behalf.

You can check your stored messages anywhere in Japan.

- The Voice mail service cannot be used from your FOMA terminal when the “” icon appears. If you set “Remote access” (P.455) to enable remote access beforehand, you can access the Voice mail service from push-key-type ordinary phones or payphones using your “Network security code” (P.152).
- To use the Voice mail service, you must pay a monthly usage fee plus the call charges that apply when you listen to your recorded messages.

Overview of Voice mail service

- The Voice mail service center will store up to 20 Voice mail messages, each of which can be up to approximately 3 minutes long.
- Messages are held at the center for up to 72 hours.
- If you receive a videophone call, the call is not connected to the Voice mail service center even when the Voice mail service is activated. The call is disconnected when the ring time set for the Voice mail service elapses.
- The Voice mail service is automatically deactivated when the “Call forwarding service” (P.448) is activated.
- If you receive a voice call from a caller who has not provided his or her Caller ID while the “Caller ID request” (P.451) is activated, the caller hears a message requesting his or her Caller ID and cannot leave a message at the Voice mail service center.

Basic flow of Voice mail service operation

Voice mail service activated



Your FOMA terminal receives a voice call



You cannot answer the call and it is connected to the Voice mail service center



The caller records a message

If the caller is in a hurry and wishes to leave a message without listening to the voice mail answering message, he or she can interrupt the answer message and switch to message recording mode immediately by pressing .



The Voice mail service center notifies you that you have a recorded message



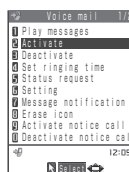
You listen to the recorded message

NOTE

- You can also choose to simply leave a message saying that you cannot answer the call. Select this option in “Setting”.
- You can still make and receive calls while the Voice mail service is activated.
- If you receive a voice call when the Voice mail service is activated, the ring tone specified in “Select ring tone” sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within the specified period of time, it is transferred to the Voice mail service center. Calls are logged in the Received calls records as “Missed calls” and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- Voice calls received while you are talking on the FOMA terminal can also be transferred to the Voice mail service center. → P.454

Activating the Voice mail service

- 1   “Voice mail” ▶ “Activate”
▶ “YES”



2 “YES”▶Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)

If you set 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the “Received calls” record.
If you enter a number outside the 000-120 range, a message appears saying that the entered number cannot be set.

- **To change the ring time only**
▶“Set ringing time”▶Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)
- **To deactivate the Voice mail service**
▶“Deactivate”▶“YES”

NOTE

- To give priority to voice mail when “Record message” is set at the same time, ensure that the ring time set for voice mail is shorter than the ring time set for “Record message”.
- If the mute time set in “Ringing time” is longer than the voice mail ring time, the FOMA terminal transfers the call to voice mail without ringing when a call comes in. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it transfers the call to voice mail, set a ring time for voice mail that is longer than the mute time.

Checking your Voice mail service settings

You can check your settings by inquiring at the Voice mail service center. You can also modify your settings while checking them.

1 [MENU]▶[Voice Mail]▶“Voice mail”▶“Status request”

“Voice mail setting screen” appears.
Check your current Voice mail service settings in this screen.



Function menu▶P.446

Function menu (Voice mail setting screen)

1 Voice mail setting screen ▶[FUNC]▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Activate	Activates the Voice mail service.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Voice mail service.
Set ringing time	Changes the ring time.

Changing your Voice mail service settings using audio guidance

1 [MENU]▶[Voice Mail]▶“Voice mail”▶“Setting”▶“YES”

The FOMA terminal calls the Voice mail service center. Then specify your settings by following the audio instructions.

NOTE

- If you press the FOMA terminal's keys ([0-9], [*], [#]) in response to the audio instructions, note that pressing [END] may not end the call. In this event, press [END] again.

Having the FOMA terminal ring when your recorded messages increase <Message notification>

You can have the FOMA terminal emit a ring tone when the number of recorded messages held at the Voice mail service center increases.

- The FOMA terminal only rings when the standby screen is shown.
- When the messages held at the Voice mail service center increases, the ring tone set to “Mail” in “Select ring tone” rings for approximately 5 seconds.

1 [MENU]▶[Voice Mail]▶“Voice mail”▶“Message notification”▶“YES”

Checking for recorded messages <Check messages>

1 [MENU]▶[2 ABC]▶[5 JKL]

After checking for messages, the FOMA terminal displays a message saying that it has finished checking for messages.

If you have the recorded messages stored at the Voice mail service center, the “” (voice mail icon) and “ VM” (“Voice mail”) desktop icon appear in the standby screen. The number in the voice mail icon changes according to the number of stored messages (“”, “”, “” ... “” (10 messages or more)).

NOTE

- The number of messages shown indicates the number of newly stored messages and does not include saved messages.
- The number of messages that arrive at the Voice mail service center after you check for messages may not be included in the number shown in the voice mail icon.

Playing recorded messages

1 [Menu] [Voice mail] ▶ “Voice mail” ▶ “Play messages” ▶ “YES”

The FOMA terminal calls the Voice mail service center.
Then play your recorded messages by following the audio instructions.

NOTE

- If you press the FOMA terminal's keys ([0-9] to [END], [*] and [#]) in response to the audio instructions, note that pressing [END] may not end the call. In this event, press [END] again.

Clearing the voice mail icons

Use this procedure to clear voice mail icons (i) from the standby screen.

1 [Menu] [Voice mail] ▶ “Voice mail” ▶ “Erase icon” ▶ “YES”

NOTE

- Clearing the icon does not delete the corresponding recorded messages. The voice mail icon appears again when you check for messages.

Activating the Notice call service

When you receive a call while the FOMA terminal is out of service area or is turned off, this service sends you an SMS notifying you of the information about the call (the date and time, and the caller ID) (P.309) once you turn the FOMA terminal back on or move back into the service area.

- Up to 5 calls are notified by one SMS message.
- Even if you set the SMS Rejection setting, the FOMA terminal receives the notification.
- There is no charge for the setting or receiving the notifications (SMS).
- You can set this function regardless of the settings of the “Voice mail service”.

1 [Menu] [Voice mail] ▶ “Voice mail” ▶ “Activate notice call” ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
All calls	Notifies you of all received calls.
Calls with caller ID	Notifies you only of calls with the caller ID provided.

- To deactivate the Notice call service
▶ “Deactivate notice call” ▶ “YES”
- To check the Notice call service setting
▶ “Notice call status”

Call Waiting

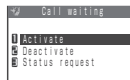
Subscription
Required

The Call waiting enables you to answer another voice call while you are talking on the FOMA terminal. You can also use this service to put your current call on hold while you call someone else.

- The Call waiting cannot be used from your FOMA terminal when the “Call waiting” icon appears.
 - To use Call waiting, select “Answer” in “Arrival call act” (P.453) beforehand. If another setting is selected, you will not be able to answer a voice call received during another voice call when Call waiting is activated.
 - If you receive a voice call from a caller who has not provided his or her Caller ID while the “Caller ID request” (P.451) is activated, the caller hears a message requesting his or her Caller ID and Call waiting is not available.
 - The Call waiting is not available in the following situations:
 - During a call to a 3-digit number such as 110, 119, 118, 117* or 104
 - While signals are sent after dialing or the other party's phone is ringing
 - While you are on a call to a 4-digit phone number to specify network service settings, such as 1411 (activate the Voice mail service) or 1420 (deactivate the Call forwarding service)
 - If you have subscribed to the Voice mail service and are connected to the Voice mail service center to listen to recorded messages, etc.
- * : If you receive a voice call while on a call to 117, you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) but you cannot answer the call.

Activating Call waiting

1 [Menu] [Call waiting] ▶ “Call waiting” ▶ “Activate” ▶ “YES”



- To deactivate the Call waiting
▶ “Deactivate” ▶ “YES”
- To check your Call waiting settings
▶ “Status request”

NOTE

- If you receive a voice call while another voice call is on hold, hold is released and you return to the first call. If you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), pressing [END] or [Answer] automatically puts the first call on hold and connects the second caller.

Putting the current voice call on hold to answer a new received voice call

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a voice call, press  or  (Answer)

Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.



- 2 Switch back to the first call

- To end the call with the second caller
▶   or  (Answer)

This ends the call with the second caller and returns you to your first call.

- To put the second caller on hold
▶ 

This puts the second caller on hold and returns you to your first call.

You can switch back and forth between the 2 calls by pressing .

- To end the voice call on hold
▶  (FUNC) ▶ "End held call"

NOTE

- The caller is charged for the time his or her call is on hold.
- If you receive yet another voice call while the "Multi calling" is shown, a message appears notifying that you can answer the new call by ending either the current voice call or the held voice call. To terminate the holding voice call and receive the incoming call, select "OK", "End held call" from the function menu, and then press  or  (Answer). To terminate the voice call you are talking and receive the incoming call, select "OK", press , and then press  or  (Answer).

Ending the current voice call to answer another voice call

- 1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), press  (Answer)

The first call is ended and the ring tone sounds. If an i-motion is set as the ring tone, "Pattern 1" is played.

- 2  or  (Answer)

The FOMA terminal answers the new voice call.

Putting the current voice call on hold to make a voice call to someone else

You can put your current voice call on hold and make a new voice call to someone else.

- 1 Dial another phone number during your current call ▶  or  (Dial)

Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal switches to the new call. You can also make calls by searching the phonebook.

How to search phonebook → P.111



- 2 Switch back to the first call

- To end the new call
▶   or  (Answer)

This ends the new call and returns you to your first call.

- To put the new call on hold
▶ 

This puts the new call on hold and returns you to your first call.

You can switch back and forth between the 2 calls by pressing .

- To end the voice call on hold
▶  (FUNC) ▶ "End held call"

NOTE

- The caller is charged for the time his or her call is on hold.
- If you receive yet another voice call while the "Multi calling" is shown, refer to the procedure in "Putting the current voice call on hold to answer a new received voice call" (P.448).

Call Forwarding Service

Subscription
Required

If you receive a voice or videophone call when the  icon is displayed on the FOMA terminal or the FOMA terminal is turned off, the Call forwarding service forwards the voice or videophone call to a previously registered forwarding number such as your home or office phone.

- You cannot use Call forwarding service from your FOMA terminal in locations where  is displayed. If you set "Remote access" (P.455) to enable remote access beforehand, you can access the Call forwarding service from push-

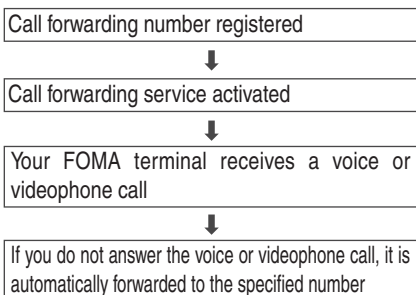
key-type ordinary phones or payphones using your "Network security code" (P.152).

- Some payment plans may be unavailable.

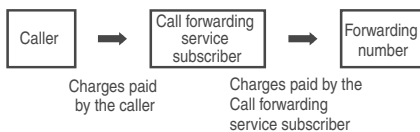
Overview of Call forwarding service

- You can only nominate 1 Call forwarding number.
- Received videophone calls can only be forwarded to a videophone-compatible terminal that conforms to the 3G-324M standard (P.88).
- The Call forwarding service is automatically deactivated when you activate the "Voice mail service".
- If you receive a call from a caller who has not provided his or her caller ID while the "Caller ID request" (P.451) is activated, the caller hears a message requesting his or her Caller ID and the call is not forwarded.

Basic flow of Call forwarding service operation



Call forwarding service call charges



- There is no charge for calls made to register forwarding numbers, to activate or deactivate the service or to specify the ring time.
- When calls are forwarded, charges for calls from the location registration area for the FOMA terminal used to subscribe to the Call forwarding service to the forwarding number are incurred by the service subscriber.

These charges can increase markedly if you leave the FOMA terminal switched off after you have set forwarding in a remote location.

For example, if you set your company's phone number in Tokyo as the forwarding number and activate the Call forwarding service in Osaka when you are there on a business trip, this sets Osaka as the location registration area. If you then leave the FOMA terminal turned off, all forwarded calls are charged at the Osaka-Tokyo rate.

Remember to turn off and on your FOMA terminal when you return from a remote location so that the location registration is updated.

NOTE

- You can still make voice and videophone calls when the Call forwarding service is activated.
- If you receive a voice or videophone call when the Call forwarding service is activated, the ring tone specified in "Select ring tone" sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within the specified period of time, it is transferred to the forwarding number. Calls are logged in the Received calls records as "Missed calls" and the "Missed call" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- Received calls are automatically forwarded without the FOMA terminal ringing if your FOMA terminal is outside the service area or is turned off. You (the service subscriber) are charged for the call from the registered location (where you are in) to the forwarding number.
- Calls received while you are on another call can also be forwarded. → P.454
- When necessary, Call forwarding can be deactivated by a request from the forwarding number instead of the subscriber (you).
- You cannot forward collect calls (calls paid for by the receiver) while call forwarding is activated (in progress).

Activating Call forwarding service

- 1 "Call forwarding" ▶ "Activate"



- To deactivate the call forwarding service ▶ "Deactivate" ▶ "YES"
- To change the forwarding number only ▶ "Change forwarding No" ▶ Enter the new forwarding number ▶ Select "Change No." if the Call forwarding service is already activated, and "Change No.+Activate" if the service is deactivated
- To check your Call forwarding settings ▶ "Status request"

2 Set the forwarding number and the ring time

- To set the forwarding number

▶ "Register fwd number" ▶ Enter the forwarding number

Once you set the number, a star (★) appears next to "Register fwd number".

Use to enter the number from the phonebook.

How to search phonebook → P.111

- To set the ring time

▶ "Set ringing time" ▶ Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)

Once you set the ring time, a star (★) appears next to "Set ringing time".

If you set 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the "Received calls" record.

If you enter a number outside the 000-120 range, a message appears saying that the entered number cannot be set.



3 “Activate” ▶ “YES”

NOTE

- If Call forwarding service is set to “Activate”, a received videophone call can only be forwarded if the designated number is a 3G-324M-compatible (P.88) videophone. Check the forwarding destination phone before setting up call forwarding. Also, no guidance message is sent to the person making the videophone call during call forwarding. (If the caller is using this FOMA terminal model, a forwarding message is displayed.)
- You cannot register toll-free numbers, 3-digit numbers, such as 110, or Quick numbers as forwarding numbers.
- You should provide an explanatory forwarding announcement for callers if you are forwarding calls to an internal company number (PBX), a pager* or fax number.
- If you have already set a forwarding number, you can omit the steps for “Register fwd number” and “Set ringing time”.
- To give priority to Call forwarding when “Record message” is set at the same time, ensure that the ring time set for Call forwarding is shorter than the ring time set for “Record message”.
- To give priority to Call forwarding when “Remote observation” is set at the same time, ensure that the ring time set for Call forwarding is shorter than the ring time set for “Remote observation”.
- If the mute time set in “Ringing time” is longer than the Call forwarding ring time, the FOMA terminal transfers the call to Call forwarding without ringing when a call comes in. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it transfers the call to Call forwarding, set a ring time for Call forwarding that is longer than the mute time.

Setting or canceling the call forwarding guidance message

1 On standby screen▶



- Set the call forwarding guidance message by following the audio guidance message.
- For more information, see “Network Services Operation Guide”.

Forwarding call to Voice mail service center when the forwarding number is busy <At fwd party busy>

When the forwarding number is busy, received voice calls can be transferred to the Voice mail service center.

- You must subscribe to the Voice mail service and set the FOMA terminal to activate the service.

1 [MENU] ▶ [Voice Mail] ▶ “Call forwarding” ▶ “At fwd party busy” ▶ “YES”

Nuisance Call Barring Service

Subscription
Required

The Nuisance call barring service allows you to register specific phone numbers, such as those which make nuisance calls or unwanted sales calls, so that you do not receive any further calls from those numbers. Once you have registered a number, calls from that number are automatically rejected by the network and a call rejected message is sent to the caller.

- You cannot use the Nuisance call barring service when “ ” appears.
- If you receive a videophone call from a barred caller, the call ends without the guidance message notifying that the call has been rejected.
- You can register up to 30 barred numbers.
- If the Nuisance call barring service is activated at the same time as other network services, it operates as shown in the table below.

Network service	Handling of received calls
Voice mail service	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and no recorded message is stored.
Call forwarding	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and the call is not forwarded.
Call waiting	A call rejected message is sent to the caller.
Caller ID request	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and no caller ID request is sent to the caller.
Driving mode	A call rejected message is sent to the caller and no Driving mode message is sent to the caller.

- Calls barred by the Nuisance call barring service are not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears.

Registering the last answered call for call barring <Register caller>

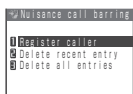
Use this procedure to add the last caller that you answered to your list of barred callers.

- You can register callers who do not provide the caller ID.
- You may be unable to bar international calls.
- You cannot check your list of barred callers. It is recommended to make a written note of the phone numbers you have registered as barred callers.

1 [MENU] ▶ [Nuisance Call Barring] ▶ “Register caller” ▶ “YES” ▶ “OK”

■ If there are already 30 registered numbers

A message appears asking whether to delete the oldest stored number and add the new number. To add the new number to the list, delete the oldest number as instructed by the message and then store the number of the last received nuisance call as a barred caller.



NOTE

- Received calls that were not answered and calls from you cannot be stored.
- You can also specify a phone number by keypad operation and store it as a barred number. To do this, make a voice call to 144 directly from the standby screen and then store the number as directed by the instructions.

Removing numbers from the barred callers list

1 "Nuisance call barring"

2 Delete the barred phone number

- To delete the barred number that was registered last time

▶ "Delete recent entry" ▶ "YES" ▶ "OK"

Only the last stored phone number can be deleted. Repeating this procedure does not delete any of the preceding barred numbers.

- To delete all the barred numbers in the list

▶ "Delete all entries" ▶ "YES" ▶ "OK"

Caller ID Request Service

Subscription
Not required

When you receive a call from a caller who has not provided his or her phone number (caller ID), the Caller ID request service sends the caller an audio message for voice calls and a visual message "Failed to connect" for videophone calls to notify him or her that they could not establish a connection, and then automatically ends the call. This service provides an effective way to prevent problems with calls from unknown callers and makes using the FOMA terminal safer.

- You cannot use the Caller ID request service when appears.
- This service only operates when the caller has deliberately withheld his or her caller ID using the "User unset" setting. Calls where the reason is "Payphone" or "Not supported" are not intercepted by this service.
- There is no charge for activating or deactivating the Caller ID request service.
- Call charges generated while the message is sent to the caller are paid by the caller.
- If the Caller ID request service is set at the same time as "Voice mail", "Call forwarding", "Call waiting" or "Driving mode", the Caller ID request service has priority and intercepts incoming calls.
- If the Caller ID request service is set at the same time as "Nuisance call barring" service, "Nuisance call barring" service has priority and rejects received calls.
- If the Caller ID request service is set at the same time as "Call setting w/o ID" (P.167), the Caller ID request service has priority.

- Calls rejected by the Caller ID request service are not logged in the "Received calls" record and no "Missed call" desktop icon appears.

Activating the Caller ID request service

1 "Caller ID request" ▶ "Activate" ▶ "YES" ▶ "OK"

- To deactivate the Caller ID request service

▶ "Deactivate" ▶ "YES" ▶ "OK"

- To check your Caller ID request service settings

▶ "Status request"



NOTE

- The caller ID request message is not sent to callers in the following situations:
 - When caller IDs cannot be notified, such as calls from an NTT payphone or from overseas.
 - When the caller is using the Call count display service or Charge meter, the call is connected without the caller ID request message being sent.
 - The caller ID request message is not sent for 64 data communication calls.

Dual Network Service

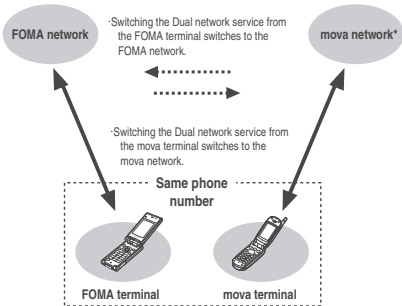
Subscription
Required

The Dual network service allows you to use a FOMA terminal which offers its advanced communications services and a mova terminal which offers an extremely extensive service area in the same phone number.

- You cannot use the Dual network service when “” appears.
- For detailed information on how to access the service from a mova terminal, refer to the “Network Services Operation Guide”.

Overview of Dual network service

- The Dual network service can be selected either from a FOMA terminal or from the mova terminal that is unable to access the services.



- You cannot access the network from both the FOMA terminal and the mova terminal at the same time.

Switching from a mova terminal to a FOMA terminal

- 1   ▶ “Dual network” ▶ “Dual network switching”



- 2 “YES” ▶ Enter your network security code

Network security code → P.152

- To check whether the FOMA terminal can be used
▶ “Status request”

NOTE

- To switch networks, end communication from the terminal that is currently able to access services before making the switch.
- When you switch networks from a terminal that is already able to access the network, you are notified that you are already able to access the network.
- To switch networks so that the mova terminal can be used, switch networks from the mova. You cannot switch to the mova terminal network from a FOMA terminal.

English Guidance

Subscription
Not required

This function allows you to set English as the language used in guidance messages such as the out of area warnings and service information that are given when network services such as “Voice mail” service and “Call forwarding” service are set. This function also sets English as the language used in the guidance messages sent by services such as the Caller ID request service to people who call you. When calls are made to another DoCoMo mobile phone, the settings for the guidance message on the caller's phone when the call is made take priority over the settings on the recipient's phone when the call is received. The table below shows the languages that can be set.

	Setting	Guidance language
Outgoing (including the guidance for the settings of the network services)	Japanese	Japanese
	English	English
Incoming (guidance messages played to callers)	Japanese	Japanese
	Japanese+English	Plays in Japanese first and then in English.
	English+Japanese	Plays in English first and then in Japanese.

- 1   ▶ “English guidance” ▶ “Guidance setting” ▶ Select any item:

- To check the guidance setting
▶ “Status request”



Item	Description
Outgoing + Incoming	Sets the language used for guidance given for outgoing and incoming calls. Set the language for outgoing calls first and then for incoming calls.
Japanese	Sets Japanese as the language used for guidance instructions for outgoing calls.
Japanese	Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese for outgoing calls and incoming calls.
Japanese + English	Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese for outgoing calls and Japanese + English for incoming calls.
English + Japanese	Sets the guidance instructions language to Japanese for outgoing calls and English + Japanese for incoming calls.
English	Sets English as the language used for guidance instructions for outgoing calls.
Japanese	Sets the guidance instructions language to English for outgoing calls and Japanese for incoming calls.
Japanese + English	Sets the guidance instructions language to English for outgoing calls and Japanese + English for incoming calls.
English + Japanese	Sets the guidance instructions language to English for outgoing calls and English + Japanese for incoming calls.
Outgoing call	Selects the language used only for outgoing calls from "Japanese" or "English".
Incoming call	Selects the language used only for incoming calls from "Japanese", "Japanese+English" or "English+Japanese".

NOTE

- To set up or check this function, use a FOMA terminal with your own FOMA card (UIM) inserted. You cannot remotely operate this function from a general phone, payphone or another mobile phone.

Service Dialing Number

This function provides a quick and simple way to contact the DoCoMo general help desk and service counter for information on faults, etc.

1 "Service dialing number"

Item	Description
ドコモ故障問合せ	Calls the DoCoMo service desk.
ドコモ総合案内・受付	Calls the DoCoMo general information desk.

NOTE

- Depending on the FOMA card (UIM), the item numbers for the DoCoMo service desk and DoCoMo general information desk may vary or may not be displayed.
→ P.48
In case those numbers are not displayed, it is recommended to store the data of the DoCoMo service desk ("For inquiries") and DoCoMo general information desk ("For technical inquiries") described on the back cover of this instruction manual.

Handling Calls Received During a Call

You can specify how voice calls, videophone calls and 64K data communication that arrives during a call are handled.

- If you have not subscribed to "Call waiting", "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service, you cannot answer the calls received during calls.

Specifying how calls received during another calls are handled <Arrival call act>

Default setting
Answer

1 "Arrival call act"

Select any item:

Item	Description
Voice mail	Transfers voice calls received during a call to the Voice mail service center regardless of the "Call waiting" and "Voice mail" service settings.
Call forwarding	Transfers voice and videophone calls received during a call to the forwarding number regardless of the "Call waiting" and "Call forwarding" service settings.
Call rejection	Rejects voice and videophone calls and 64K data communication received during a call.

Item	Description
Answer	If "Call waiting" is activated and a voice call is received during another voice call, you can use the "Call waiting" service. If call waiting is not activated or during a videophone call or 64K data communication, call can be handled in any of the following ways: · You can end the current voice or videophone call or 64K data communication, and answer the received voice or videophone call or 64K data communication. · You can use the function menu to manually handle a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication received during a call. → P.454 · If "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service is activated, calls can be handled using those service settings.

Activating the settings for handling calls received during another call <Set arrival act>

● You cannot specify this setting where appears.

1 "Set arrival act"
Select any item:

Item	Description
Activate	Activates "Set arrival act" setting.
Deactivate	Deactivates "Set arrival act" setting.
Status request	Shows the current setting.

NOTE

● When you receive a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication during a call, the incoming call screen may appear before the call is connected to the Voice mail service center or forwarded to a forwarding destination even if "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding" is set.

Ending the current call or 64K data communication to answer a received call

● When the current and incoming calls are the same type

<Example: Ending the current voice call to answer a received voice call>

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), press

This ends the current call and the FOMA terminal starts ringing.

■ For videophone or 64K data communication
A message appears notifying you that you can answer the new call by ending the current call.
▶ "OK"▶

2 or (Answer)

This accepts the incoming voice call.

■ For 64K data communication
▶ Take the call on a PC

● When the current and incoming calls are different types

If you receive a videophone call or 64K data communication during a voice call, if you receive a voice call or 64K data communication during a videophone call, or if you receive a voice or videophone call during 64K data communication, use the procedure below to end your current call or 64K data communication so that you can answer the incoming call.

<Example: Ending an active videophone call to answer an incoming voice call>

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call and a message* appears, select "OK"

When you receive a 64K data communication, the message appears instead of the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps).

* : A message appears notifying you that you can answer the new call by ending the current call.

2 "Connecting V-phone"▶

3 or (Answer)

NOTE

● If you have activated the "Voice mail" service or "Call forwarding" service and the specified ring time elapses while you can still hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), the call is connected to the Voice mail center or the forwarding number.

Manually rejecting calls or transferring calls to Voice mail or Call forwarding

<Example: When "Set arrival act" is set to "Activate" and "Arrival call act" is set to "Answer">

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), press (FUNC)

■ When you receive a call other than a voice call during a voice call
▶ "OK"▶ (FUNC)

2 Select how the received call will be handled

- **To reject a received call**
▶“Call rejection”
- **To forward a received call to the forwarding number**
▶“Call forwarding”
- **To transfer a call to the Voice mail service center**
▶“Voice mail”

With any of the above procedures, you can return to your initial call.

<Remote access>

Setting Up Remote Access

You can use the “Voice mail” service and “Call forwarding” services from a remote location such as a payphone.

Activating remote access

Please read “Network Services Operation Guide” about the details of the method of operating a network service from a payphone etc.

- 1  ▶  ▶ **“Remote access”**
“Activate” ▶ **“YES”**

- **To deactivate remote access**
▶“Deactivate” ▶“YES”
- **To check your remote access settings**
▶“Status request” ▶“OK”

NOTE

- You can set this function and confirm the setting using the FOMA terminal for which you want to set this function or using the mova terminal which is subscribed to the Dual network service. You cannot set the remote access function from the general phones, pay phones or other mobile phones.
- This function is deactivated after you apply for the “Voice mail” service and “Call forwarding” service.

Multi number <Not currently available>

This service has yet to begin as of August 2005.

<Additional services>

Adding and Using Services

When DoCoMo provides new and additional network services, this function allows you to add the new network services on your FOMA terminal. When a new network service is provided, you will be notified of the “number” and “service code” that you need in order to use the new service. You should store the number and code on your FOMA terminal along with the service name.

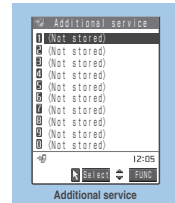
- You can add up to 10 new network services.

- Enter the service code in the “Enter USSD number” field in the screen for adding new services.

Adding a new service

- 1  ▶  ▶ **“Additional service”**
“Additional service”

“Additional service screen” appears.



Function menu ▶ P.456

- 2 Highlight **“<Not stored>”**
- 3  (FUNC) ▶ **“Add new service”**

- **To change the setting**
▶  (FUNC) ▶ **“Edit”**

- 4 **Enter the service name**

You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for the service name.

“Entering Text” → P.498

- 5 **Select the connection method**

Item	Description
Enter number	▶ Enter the number ▶ “YES” Uses the number to connect. The number can consist of up to 20 digits.
Enter USSD number	▶ Enter the code ▶ “YES” Uses the service code to connect. The code can consist of up to 40 digits.

NOTE

- To use this service, you must confirm or enter the “number” or “service code” provided by DoCoMo. The “number” is the number used to connect to the service center, while the “service code” (USSD) is the code used for notifying the service center.

Using the newly added service

- 1  ▶  ▶ **“Additional service”**
“Additional service”

- 2 **Select a service** ▶  (Send)

Function menu (Additional service screen)

- 1 Additional service screen▶
⌂(FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Add new service	Adds a setting.
Edit	Changes the setting.
Delete this	Deletes one service.
Delete all	Deletes all services.

Adding response message

When you use your service code (USSD) to access an added service, you can use this procedure to store response messages for commands posted from the network.

- You can store up to 10 response messages.

- 1 ⌂(FUNC)▶⌂▶“Additional service”▶
“Additional guidance”

“Additional guidance screen” appears.



Function menu▶P.456

- 2 Highlight “<Not stored>”
- 3 ⌂(FUNC)▶“Add new guidance”
■ To change the setting
▶⌂(FUNC)▶“Edit”

- 4 Enter a command

You can enter up to 20 digits for a command.

- 5 Enter a response message▶
“YES”

You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for a respond message.

“Entering Text” → P.498

Function menu (Additional guidance screen)

- 1 Additional guidance screen▶
⌂(FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Add new guidance	Adds a message.
Edit	Edits the message.
Delete this	Deletes one message.
Delete all	Deletes all messages.

● Data Communication

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA terminal	458
Before Using	459
Checking the Procedure	459
Setting the PC.....	460
About the FOMA PC Setting Software.....	464
How to Set Various Settings	465
Executing Set Data Communication	469
W-TCP Settings	471
Access Point Name (APN) Settings.....	472
Setting up Dial-up Network	473
Setting up Dial-up	478
AT Command List	484

● Operations on Windows XP

The contents of this chapter are based on Windows XP with Service Pack 2. The procedures or screens may vary by your environment.

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA terminal

Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and PCs is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

● Packet communication

Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received (Max. 384 kbps (receive), Max. 64 kbps (send)) regardless of the time it takes or the distance. Be informed that the communication charge can become very expensive when large files are sent and received. It is also possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.

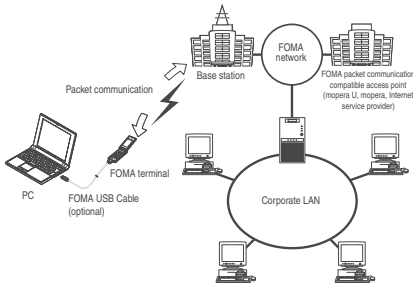
● 64K data communication

Data can be sent or received at the stable speed of 64kbps. This type of communication is charged according to the length of time the line is connected, regardless of the amount of data.

■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

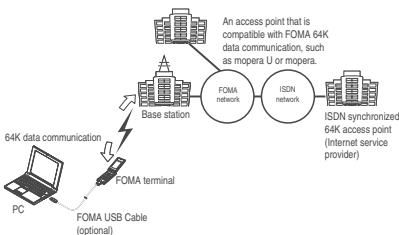
Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera".



■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.

Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera".



Notice before using

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the Internet service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details. DoCoMo Internet connection service "mopera U" or "mopera" is available. "mopera U" is a pay service for which you need to apply. "mopera" is a free service for which you do not need to apply.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIASF.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the provider or administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

When using FirstPass compliant sites on your PC's browser, FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization is needed. Install the FirstPassPC software included on the CD-ROM packaged with this product and conduct the setting. For details, refer to "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) stored in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder included on the CD-ROM. (The "FirstPassManual" is in Japanese only.) To view the PDF-format "FirstPassManual", you will need Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended).

If this software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the Adobe Systems Incorporated website (Additional communication charges will apply). Refer to the Adobe Systems Incorporated website for details.

Before Using

Operational environment

The PC operation environment to use data communication is as shown below:

Item	Description
PC unit	- PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive - USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) - Display resolution of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended
OS	Windows 98^{*1}, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese versions)
Required memory	- Windows 98, Windows Me: 32M bytes or more^{*2} - Windows 2000: 64M bytes or more^{*2} - Windows XP: 128M bytes or more^{*2}
Hard disk space	5M bytes or more^{*2}

*1 : The FirstPass PC software is not compatible with Windows 98.

*2 : The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.

NOTE

- To transmit data with the FOMA terminal connected to the DoCoMo PDA "musea" or "sigmarion II", update "musea" or "sigmarion II". For how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.

Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, are required.

- FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Bundled CD- ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA N701i"

NOTE

- Purchase the specified "FOMA USB Cable". The USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.

Checking the Procedure

In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

■ About the "CD-ROM for FOMA N701i" provided

- The CD-ROM contains the communication setting file (drivers), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
- The N701i Communication setting file is software (driver) needed for connecting the FOMA terminal with a PC via a FOMA USB Cable (optional) to carry out packet

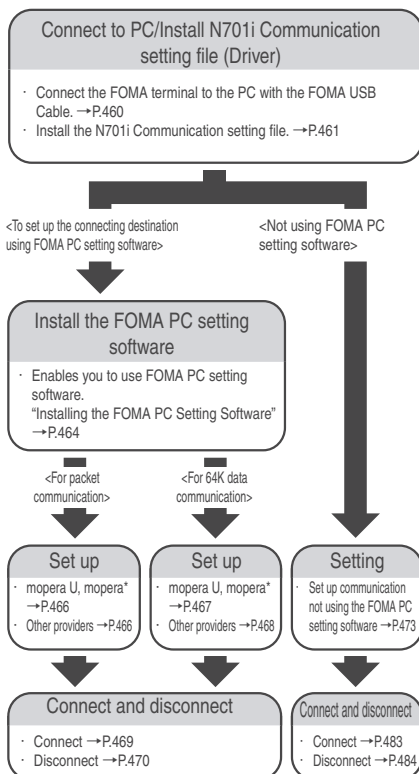
communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX). Installing the N701i Communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows.

Using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication and create a dial-up connection.

- Using FirstPassPC software allows you to set up FirstPass (user certification) easily and therefore it will be helpful for gaining authentication when you try viewing FirstPass-compliant sites on the PC browser. For details, refer to "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) stored in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder included on the CD-ROM. (The "FirstPassManual" is in Japanese only.)

Flow Chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



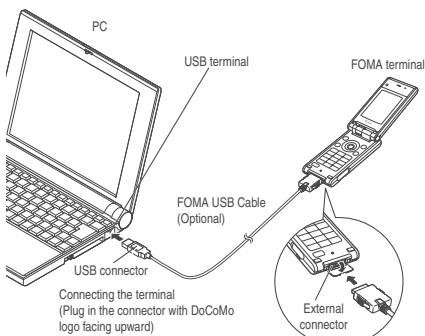
* : To use Internet on the FOMA terminal, "mopera U" (you need to apply for) is useful, which supports broadband connection, international roaming (not supported by this FOMA terminal), etc. Consider the plan in which you are charged only in a month when you use the service. If you use "mopera" for which you do not need to apply, you can access Internet immediately.

For more information, visit the DoCoMo website.

Connecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).

- Before connecting it, set "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode". → P.390



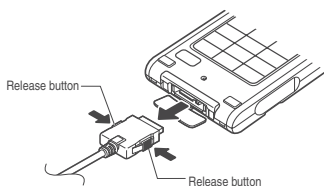
- 1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal
- 2 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of your PC
- 3 Check the orientation of the external connector of the FOMA terminal, then insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable straight until you hear a click
" " changes to " " on the FOMA terminal when the FOMA USB Cable is connected.

NOTE

- " " appears on the FOMA terminal display when a communication setting file for data communication is installed and the connection with a PC is recognized. Before a communication setting file is installed, the connection is not recognized and " " appears.

Disconnecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to disconnect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



- 1 Pull it out straight while pressing the release buttons of the external connector of FOMA USB Cable
- 2 Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the USB terminal of the PC
- 3 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

NOTE

- Do not repetitively connect and disconnect the FOMA USB Cable. After you have connected and disconnected once, wait for a while before doing so again.

Setting the PC

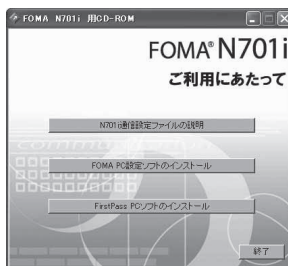
This section describes the steps from connecting to PC to installing the N701i communication setting file (drivers).

Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of the PC
- 2 Start up Windows and insert the "CD-ROM for FOMA N701i" in the CD-ROM drive of your PC
- 3 Click "終了" (Exit) to exit from the "FOMA N701iご利用にあたって" (To use FOMA N701i) screen

This screen usually appears automatically when the "CD-ROM for FOMA N701i" is inserted in the drive. If it does not appear, simply proceed to Step 5.

If this screen appears while you are installing the N701i communication setting file, click "終了" (Exit) as well.



④ Click “終了” (Exit) to close “お問い合わせ先” (Inquiries) screen

⑤ Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the PC to your FOMA terminal

For Windows 98/Me

“新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード”
(Add new hardware wizard) screen appears.

For Windows 2000/XP

“新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード”
(Find new hardware wizard) screen appears.

Installing the N701i communication setting file (drivers)

- When installing N701i communication setting file in Windows 2000 / Windows XP, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.
- The installation procedure for the N701i communication setting file differs depending on the OS. Refer to the description for the OS on your PC.

For Windows 98 and Windows Me refer to the following.

For Windows 2000, proceed to P.461. For Windows XP, proceed to P.462.

For Windows 98/Windows Me

① Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable (optional) has been connected to the FOMA terminal in Step 5 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC” (P.460), the screen “新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード” (Add new hardware wizard) is automatically displayed.

For Windows 98

Click “次へ” (Next).

② Select “ドライバの場所を指定する (詳しい知識のある方向け)” (Specify driver location (for advanced users)), then click “次へ” (Next)

For Windows 98

Select “使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)” (Search for the optimal driver for the device in use (recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next).



③ Select “使用中のデバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)” (Search for the optimal driver for the device in use (Recommended)), check “検索場所の指定” (Specify the search location) and click “参照” (Reference) to specify the folder to search, and “次へ” (Next) The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>:¥USB Driver¥Win98”. The CD-ROM drive differs depending on the PC used.

For Windows 98

Check the “検索場所の指定” (Specify search location) box and click “次へ” (Next). Select “更新されたドライバ (推奨)” (Updated driver (Recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next).

④ Confirm the driver name and click “次へ” (Next) “FOMA N701i” appears here.

⑤ When the message “新しいハードウェアのインストールが完了しました。” (Installation of the new hardware is now complete) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

For Windows 98

The message “新しいハードウェアデバイスに必要なソフトウェアがインストールされました。” (The software needed to install a new hardware device is installed) appears.

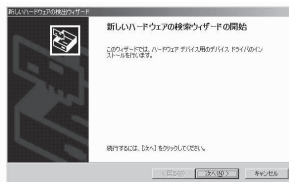
⑥ Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 5 and install all other 6 drivers (P.463). If the “新しいハードウェアの追加ウィザード” (Add new hardware wizard) screen stops appearing after the completion of Step 5, installation of the drivers is complete. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (P.462).

For Windows 2000

① Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable (optional) has been connected to the FOMA terminal in Step 5 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC” (P.460), the screen shown below is automatically displayed.



② Click “次へ” (Next)

③ Select “デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する (推奨)” (Search for the optimal driver for the device (recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next)

Continued on next page

- 4 Check the “場所を指定” (Specify search location) box and click “次へ” (Next)

- 5 Specify the folder to search and click “OK”

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>:\\$USB Driver¥Win2000”:
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC you are using.

- 6 Confirm the driver name and click “次へ” (Next)

“FOMA N701i” appears here.

- 7 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

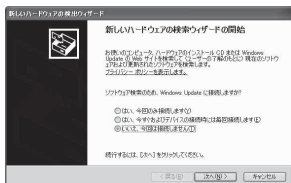
- 8 Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 7 and install all other 3 drivers (P.463). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen stops appearing after the completion of Step 7, installation of the drivers is complete. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (P.462).

For Windows XP

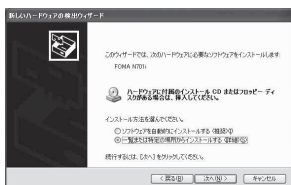
- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable (optional) has been connected to the FOMA terminal in Step 5 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC” (P.460), the screen shown below is automatically displayed.



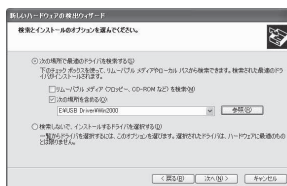
- 2 Select “いいえ、今回は接続しません” (No, I will access Windows Update later on) and click “次へ” (Next)

- 3 Select “一覧または特定の場所からインストールする (詳細)” (Install from the list or a certain location (Advanced)) and click “次へ” (Next)



- 4 Select “次の場所で最適なドライバを検索する” (Search for the most compatible driver in the next location), uncheck “リムーバブルメディア (フロッピー、CD-ROMなど) を検索” (Search a removable media such as floppy disk or CD-ROM) and check “次の場所を含める” (include the next location) and specify a folder to search, click “次へ”(Next)

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>:\\$USB Driver¥Win2000”.
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC you are using. In the example below, the CD-ROM drive is “E”.
The driver is common with Windows 2000.



- 5 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

- 6 Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 4 and install all other 3 drivers (P.463). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen stops appearing after the completion of Step 4, installation of the drivers is complete.

When all the drivers have been installed, the task bar indicator displays the message “新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。” (New hardware is installed and ready for use) for several seconds. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (P.462).

Checking the installed driver

Check that the N701i communication setting file has been correctly installed.

- 1 Open the Control Panel of Windows

For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000
Select “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel).

For Windows XP

Select “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel).

- 2 Open “システム” (System) in the “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

For Windows Me

If the “システム” (System) icon does not appear in “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel), click “すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する” (Display all Control Panel options).

For Windows XP

Click the “システム” (System) icon in “パフォーマンスとメンテナンス” (Performance and maintenance).

3 Open the device manager

For Windows 98/Me

Click the “デバイスマネージャ” (Device manager) tab.

For Windows 2000/XP

Click the “ハードウェア” (Hardware) tab and click “デバイスマネージャ” (Device manager).

4 Click each device to check the installed driver name

Check that all the driver names are displayed under “ポート (COMとLPT)” (Ports (COM& LPT)), “ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ” (Universal Serial Bus controller) and “モデム” (Modems). Check the driver name and proceed to “About the FOMA PC Setting Software” (P.464).



Device name	Driver name
ポート (COMとLPT)	・ FOMA N701i Command Port ・ FOMA N701i OBEX Port
モデム	・ FOMA N701i
ユニバーサルシリアルバスコントローラ or USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ	・ FOMA N701i ・ FOMA N701i Command* ・ FOMA N701i Modem* ・ FOMA N701i OBEX*

* : Windows 98/Me only

NOTE

- When you check the above, if not all the driver names appear or if you have installed an improper communication setting file for your Operating System, follow the uninstall instructions (P.463) to delete the N701i communication setting file and install the proper file.

Uninstalling the N701i communication setting file

If necessary (when Windows has been upgraded, etc.), uninstall the drivers as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows

XP machine is described as an example.

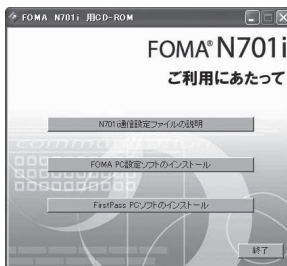
- If you attempt to execute the uninstalling program while connecting to the FOMA terminal, the uninstall program does not run and a message appears notifying that the FOMA terminal is connected.
- When uninstalling N701i communication setting file from Windows 2000 / Windows XP, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the file with another account, you can not uninstall the file properly. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 If the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected by the FOMA USB Cable, remove the FOMA USB Cable

2 Start up Windows and insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N701i” in the CD-ROM drive of your PC

3 Click “終了” (Exit) to exit from the “FOMA N701iご利用にあたって” (To use FOMA N701i) screen

This screen usually appears automatically when the “CD-ROM for FOMA N701i” is inserted in the drive, but it may not appear depending on the PC settings. In this case, simply proceed to Step 5.



4 Click “終了” (Exit) to close “お問い合わせ先” (Inquiries) screen

5 Specify and run the uninstall program

Open “スタート” (Start)→“マイコンピュータ” (My Computer), right-click the CD-ROM icon and select “開く” (Open) to open the “UnInst” folder under the “USB Driver” folder on the CD-ROM.

6 Double-click “n701i_un.exe” to execute the uninstall program

“N701i_un” may appear instead depending on the setting of the PC you use.



7 Click “OK” to uninstall

To cancel uninstallation, click “キャンセル” (Cancel).

8 Click “はい” (Yes) to restart Windows

Now the uninstallation is completed.

If you have clicked “いいえ” (No), restart Windows manually.

About the FOMA PC Setting Software

By using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up the following:

- You can also set up packet communication and 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. → P.473
- If the modem port of the FOMA terminal is recognized as a larger number than COM20, “FOMA PC Setting Software” does not run.



See P.460 for the connection between the FOMA terminal and PC.

かんたん設定 (Easy settings)

The menu walks you through the procedures for “Making a new dial-up connection for FOMA data communication” and “W-TCP setting” easily.

W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP Settings)

This settings optimize the communication settings of a PC before using “FOMA packet communication”.

To get the most out of communication performance, it is necessary to optimize communication settings by making W-TCP settings.

接続先 (APN) の設定 (Access Point Name (APN) Settings)
Sets the access point name (APN) required for packet communication.

Unlike 64K data communication, a normal phone number is not used for FOMA packet communication access point. Before you connect, register the APN (Access Point Name) of each access point in the FOMA terminal and assign its registration number (cid) to the connection point phone number field. For using mopera, APN: mopera.ne.jp is registered as the first cid, and APN: mopera.net are registered as the third cid at the time of purchase. When connecting to other providers or corporate LAN, you will need to make the APN settings.

cid [Context Identifier] ... a number corresponding to a packet communication connection point (APN). It is set when registering the APN in the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

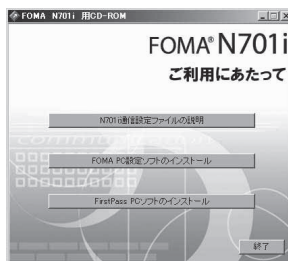
- If the FOMA terminal is recognized as the larger number than COM20 in the communication settings, you cannot get APN information or write it during setting APN. In this case, set APN using “Hyper terminal”. “Setting up the access point (APN)” → P.476

Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software

- Check operating environment prior to install the FOMA PC setting software. → P.459
- When installing the “FOMA PC setting software” in Windows 2000/Windows XP, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Insert the supplied CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the PC and click “FOMA PC 設定ソフトのインストール” (Installation of the PC setting software)

The “FOMA N701iご利用にあたって” (To use FOMA N901iS) screen will automatically be displayed. If for some reason the CD-ROM is not automatically started, right-click the CD-ROM icon in “マイコンピュータ” (My Computer), select “開く” (Open) and double-click “start.exe”. Then click “FOMA PC 設定ソフトのインストール” (Installation of the FOMA PC setting software).



2 Click “次へ” (Next)

Before starting the setup process, make sure that no other program is currently running or resident. If there is any program running, click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to exit the program and resume installation. If a message appears indicating that “Previous W-TCP setting software” or “Previous APN setting software” is installed, proceed to P.465.

3 Upon confirming the user agreement of “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), click “はい” (Yes) to agree to it

If you click “いいえ” (No) and then click “はい” (Yes), the installation is canceled.

4 Click “次へ” (Next)

Select whether or not you want “W-TCP settings” to reside in the Task Tray.

This is a function to set up / cancel optimization of “W-TCP communication”, we recommend you to

choose to let it reside in the Task Tray.

If there is no problem in particular, click “次へ” (Next) with “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the Task Tray) checked ☒ to continue with the installation. Even if you do not check “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the Task Tray) here, you will be able to change the settings by selecting “メニュー” (Menu), “W-TCP 設定をタスクトレイに常駐させる” (Let W-TCP settings reside in the Task Tray) on the FOMA PC setting software.

(Note): This option is disabled when the “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Reside in the task tray) setting is in effect.



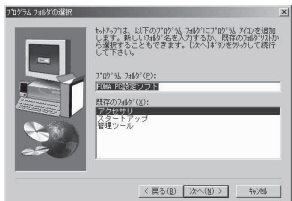
The W-TCP setting will appear in the task tray that is usually located at the bottom right corner of the desktop.

5 Select the installation location and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change the destination, click “参照” (Browse), specify the location and click “次へ” (Next). You can select another drive if you do not have enough hard disk space, but generally the default setting is recommended.

6 Check the name of program folder and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change it, enter a new folder name and click “次へ” (Next).



7 Click “完了” (Finish)

When the setup process has been completed, the “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) screen will automatically appear. You can specify other settings at this point.

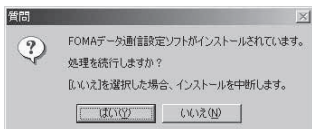
Notes on installation of the FOMA PC setting software

<If the “Previous W-TCP setting software” is installed>



- Open “アプリケーション (プログラム)” の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs) and delete the old W-TCP setting software.

<If the “Previous APN setting software” is installed>



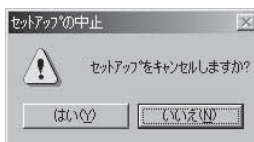
- When you click “はい” (Yes), the previous APN settings software is automatically uninstalled, and the FOMA PC settings software will be installed.

<If the “FOMA PC setting software” is already installed>



- Click “OK”, and the install is interrupted. Open “アプリケーション (プログラム)” の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs), uninstall the already installed “FOMA PC 認定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), and then reinstall the software.

<If the “キャンセル” (Cancel) button is clicked during installation>



- When you want to continue the installation, click “いいえ” (No). When you want to stop the procedure, click “はい” (Yes).

How to Set Various Settings

The FOMA terminal needs to be connected to your PC via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and the Communication setting file needs to be properly recognized on the device of your PC.

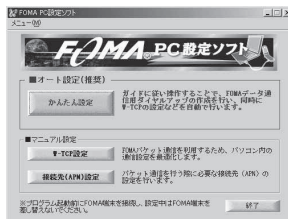
- If the FOMA terminal is recognized as a larger number than COM20, the “FOMA PC setting software” does not run.

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Program) → “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

For Windows XP

Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software).

The following operation display appears when the FOMA PC setting software is started.



Easy settings: “Packet communication setting by using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to make settings for a packet communication of 384kbps maximum. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider. Packet communication: Enables high-speed packet communication of up to 384kbps for receiving and up to 64kbps for sending (there are exceptions for some machine types). Since you will be charged according to the amount of data transferred, you can enjoy data communication without worrying about time.
- Note that the communication charge can become high if packet communication is used to communicate large volumes of data such as to view sites and websites containing images or to download files.

- 1 Click “**かんたん設定**” (Easy settings)
- 2 Select “**パケット通信**” (Packet communication) and click “**次へ**” (Next)
- 3 Select “**「mopera U」への接続**” (mopera U access) or “**「mopera」への接続**” (mopera access) and click “**次へ**” (Next)

See P.466 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

- 4 Click “**OK**”
- 5 Enter the connection name and click “**次へ**” (Next)

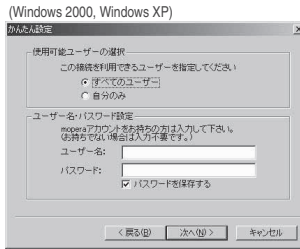
You can specify the name of the access point. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection Name) column.

Enter the correct, case-sensitive connection name. You cannot use the following reserved characters:
¥/: * ? ! < > | ” (half-pitch only).



- 6 Specify a user name and password and click “**次へ**” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.

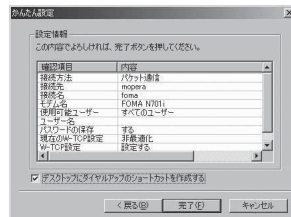


Select any user for Windows 2000/XP. When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

- 7 Check “**最適化を行う**” (Optimize the setting) and click “**次へ**” (Next)
- 8 Check the setting information and click “**完了**” (Finish)

The contents that were set will be listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon. To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



- 9 Click “**OK**”
- You need to reboot the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the reboot screen appears, click “はい” (YES). The communication set up is carried out on the next step. → P.469

Easy settings: “Specifying Packet communication settings using other providers”

- 1 Click “**かんたん設定**” (Easy settings)
- 2 Select “**パケット通信**” (Packet communication) and click “**次へ**” (Next)
- 3 Select “**その他**” (Other) and click “**次へ**” (Next)
- 4 Click “**OK**”

The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal that is connected to the

PC.
Wait a while.

5 Specify the packet communication settings

After the terminal setting has been completely acquired, the screen “パケット通信設定” (Packet communication setting) will appear.

Enter a name in “接続名” (Connection name).
Enter the correct, case-sensitive connection name.
You cannot use the following reserved characters:
¥: * ? ! < > | “ (half-pitch only).

If “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify Caller ID) is checked on, the Caller ID will be notified when communication is carried out.

APN:mopera.net is specified for the mopera U connection and APN:mopera.ne.jp for the mopera connection by default in “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).

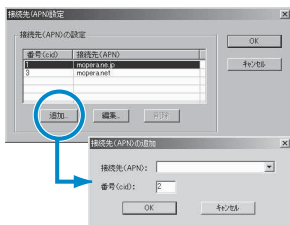


6 Click “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Specify the access point (APN))

“mopera.ne.jp” is specified in “番号 (cid)” 1 by default and “mopera.net” in 3 at the time of purchase therefore, set the cid to 2 or between 4 and 10.

Open the “接続先 (APN) の追加” (Add the access point (APN)) screen by clicking the “追加” (Add) button, specify an access point name that supports FOMA packet communication and click “OK”. Return to the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Specify the access point (APN)) screen.

Half-pitch alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) and dots (.) can only be entered for the access point.



7 Specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Set up detail information) on “パケット通信設定” (Packet Communication settings) displays the setup screen for “IP address”/“Name Server”. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

8 Select the Access point (APN) and click “OK”

It returns to the screen in Step 5.

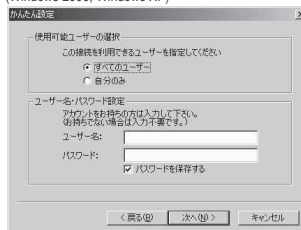
The access point (APN) entered in the Step 6 is displayed on “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).

9 Confirm the Access point (APN) on “接続先 (APN) の選択” (Select the access point (APN)) and click “次へ” (Next)

10 Specify a user name and password and click “次へ” (Next)

Select any user for Windows 2000/XP.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

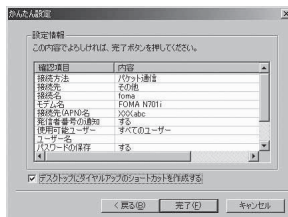
11 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next)

Optimize “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) required for “Packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen will not be displayed and proceed to Step 12.

12 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents that were set will be listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイアルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon. To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



13 Click “OK”

You need to reboot the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the reboot screen appears, click “はい” (YES).

The communication set up is carried out on the next step. → P.469

Easy settings: “64K communication setting by using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to specify settings for 64K data communication at 64k bps. The

DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider.

- 64K Data Communication: The charges are based on the amount of time you are connected. With stable 64K bps communication speed, comfortable Internet access can be realized.

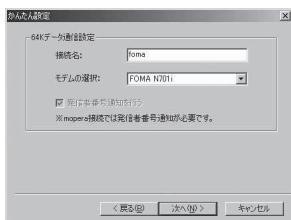
- 1 Click “**かんたん設定**” (Easy settings)
- 2 Select “**64K データ通信**” (64K data communication) and click “**次へ**” (Next)
- 3 Select “**「mopera U」への接続**” (mopera U access) or “**「mopera」への接続**” (mopera access) and click “**次へ**” (Next)

See P.468 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

- 4 Enter the access point name and modem, and click “**次へ**” (Next)

The “64K データ通信設定” (64K data communication setting) screen appears. You can specify the name of the access point. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection Name) column.

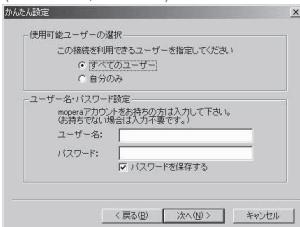
Enter the correct, case-sensitive connection name. You cannot use the following reserved characters:
 ¥/: * ? ! < > | " (half-pitch only).
 When using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), confirm that modem name is set to “FOMA N701i”.



- 5 Specify a user name and password and click “**次へ**” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)



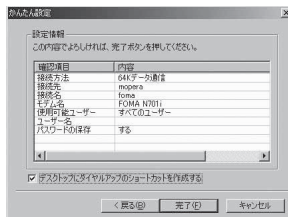
Select any user for Windows 2000/XP.

When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

- 6 Check the setting information and click “**完了**” (Finish)

The contents that were set will be listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon. To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



- 7 Click “OK”

The communication set up is carried out on the next step. → P.469

Easy settings: “Specifying 64K communication settings using other providers”

- 1 Click “**かんたん設定**” (Easy settings)
- 2 Select “**64K データ通信**” (64K data communication) and click “**次へ**” (Next)
- 3 Select “**その他**” (Other) and click “**次へ**” (Next)
- 4 Enter the dial-up information and click “**次へ**” (Next)

Register the following items in order to connect to a service provider with ISDN synchronous 64K access points other than mopera U or mopera when creating a dial-up;

- “接続名” (Connection Name) (optional)
- “モデムの選択” (Modem Selection) (FOMA N701i)
- Phone number

Enter the correct, case-sensitive connection name. You cannot use the following reserved characters:
 ¥/: * ? ! < > | " (half-pitch only).



Enter the correct information according to the provider information. Enter the correct, case-sensitive phone number in half-pitch.

If “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify Caller ID) is checked on, the Caller ID will be notified when communication is carried out.

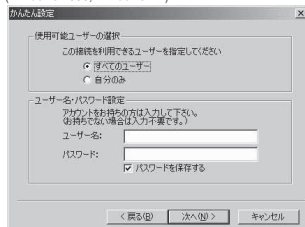
<To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP)>

When you click “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings), the screen for the “IP address” and “Name server” settings will appear. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

5 Specify a user name and password and click “次へ” (Next)

Select any user for Windows 2000/XP.

(Windows 2000, Windows XP)

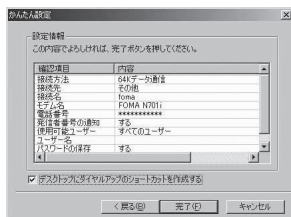


When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

6 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents that were set will be listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.

Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon. To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”

Executing Set Data Communication

- When executing data communication by using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), dialing from the dial-up icon is only valid for the FOMA terminal used at the time of icon creation.

To connect to another FOMA terminal, therefore the communication setting file must be installed again.

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



If the connection icon does not appear on the desktop, use the following procedure:

Windows 98/Me

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dialup network) and open the host.

Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and dialup connection) and open the host.

Windows XP

Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connection) and open the host.

2 Click “ダイヤル” (Dial) and execute access operation

If you select moper U or moper A, leave the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) text boxes blank. If you select an Internet service provider other than moper A, moper U or you use dial-up connection, enter the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) and click “ダイヤル” (Dial).

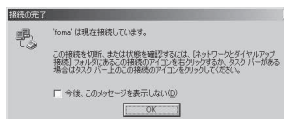
Check “パスワードを保存する” (Save the password) to skip entry of the password at subsequent connections.



3 Check that the line is connected properly, and click “OK”

Normally, the screen as shown below will appear when the dial-up connection is made.

This “接続” (Connection) message does not appear if it has been set to be disabled.



- During packet communication, a different icon appears on the FOMA terminal depending on the communication conditions.



- ✈ (Communicating, sending data)
- ⬆ (Communicating, receiving data)
- 📶 (Communicating, no data transfer)
- 📶 (Sending, or disconnecting)
- 📶 (Receiving, or disconnecting)
- 📶 appears on the FOMA terminal during 64K data communication.

How to disconnect

Since just closing the browser on your PC may not disconnect, be sure to disconnect by the following procedure:

1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the Task tray

The connecting screen will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)



NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

When this happens

- Check the following if you cannot connect to the network or dial-up successfully.

Problem	Points to check
"FOMA N701i" is not recognized by the PC.	· See if your PC satisfies the operational environment required (P.459). · See if the N701i communication setting file has been installed. · See if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on. · See if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected. · See if the USB mode setting (P.390) is set to "Communication mode".

Problem	Points to check
Unable to connect with the access point.	· See if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct. · See if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected. · If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that "184" is not added to the phone number. · See if the box of “フロー制御を使う” (Use the flow control) of the modem property is checked. · See if the APN is set correctly. · If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, consult with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setting Software

This section describes uninstallation instructions for FOMA PC setting software.

- When uninstalling the “FOMA PC setting software” from Windows 2000/Windows XP, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Before uninstalling

Before starting the uninstallation process of the “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), the various changes made for FOMA must be returned to their original settings.



Right-click

(1) Disable the “W-TCP settings” in the task tray

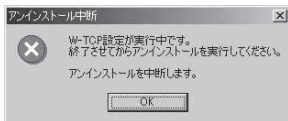
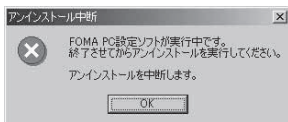
Right-click the “W-TCP icon” in the task tray located at the right-bottom of the desktop and select “常駐させない” (Disable resident).



Click

(2) Exit any running program

If you try to begin uninstallation while the “FOMA PC setting software” or “W-TCP settings” is in operation, the screen as shown below will appear. Stop the uninstallation program and exit the respective programs.



2 Start “アプリケーションの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications)

For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000

Click “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel) → “アプリケーションの追加と削除” (Add/deleting applications).

“アプリケーションの追加と削除のプロパティ” (Property of Add and remove applications) appears for Windows 98 and Windows Me.

For Windows XP

Click “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel) → “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add or remove programs).

3 Select “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) and click “変更と削除” (Change and delete)

Select NTT DoCoMo “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)



Click here

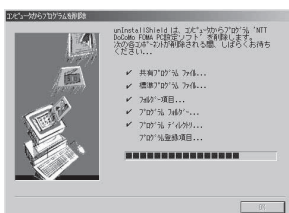
4 Check the program name to be deleted and click “はい” (Yes)

Uninstallation starts.



5 Click “OK”

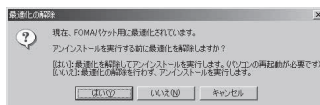
Uninstallation of the “FOMA PC setting software” is completed.



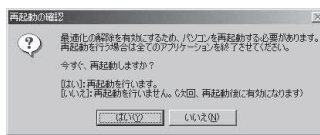
NOTE

● Cancel “W-TCP 最適化” (Optimize W-TCP).

The screen shown below appears if “W-TCP 最適化” (Optimize W-TCP) is done. Click “はい” (YES) to cancel the optimization and uninstall. Click “いいえ” (NO) only when you want to uninstall without canceling the optimization.



W-TCP optimization will be canceled after reboot.



W-TCP Settings

“W-TCP settings” is a “TCP parameter setup tool” to optimize the transmission capability of TCP/IP when “Packet communication” is carried out on the FOMA network. The communication settings by this software are required to make the most of communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

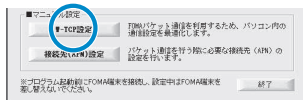
Setting up and canceling optimization

<For Windows XP>

Optimization settings for each dial-up are possible for Windows XP.

1 Start the program

- If you are operating from “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)
Click “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP Settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



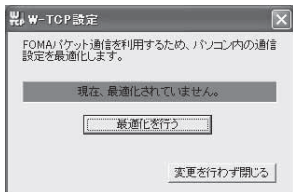
- If you are operating from the Task Tray
Click the “W-TCP icon” in the Task Tray located on the lower right-hand side of the desktop to start the program.



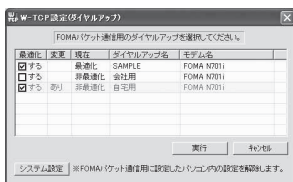
2 Proceed with the following

Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to reboot the PC. The optimized system settings become valid after the reboot.

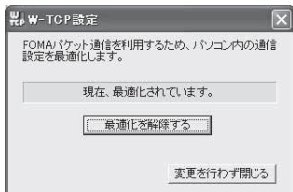
- (1) If the system settings have not been optimized
Click “最適化を行う” (Optimize).
“W-TCP (ダイヤルアップ) 設定” (W-TCP (dial-up) Settings) screen appears. If you select the dial-up to be optimized and click “実行” (Execute), system and dial-up settings will each be optimized.



- (2) If the system settings have been optimized
“W-TCP (ダイヤルアップ) 設定” (W-TCP (dial-up) Settings) screen appears.
If there are some changes, make changes to the settings.



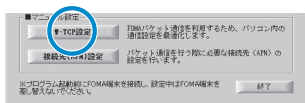
- (3) To cancel optimization
Click “システム設定” (System settings).
“W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP Settings) screen appears.
Click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization).



<For Windows 98/Windows Me/Windows 2000>

1 Start the program

- (1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC 設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)
Click “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP Settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



- (2) If you are operating from the Task Tray
Click the “W-TCP icon” in the Task Tray located on the lower right-hand side of the desktop to start the program.



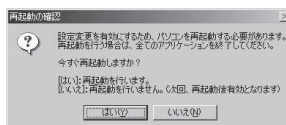
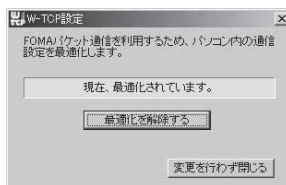
2 Proceed with the following

- (1) If not optimized

Click “最適化を行う” (Optimize) on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP Settings) screen, close all the PC programs open and reboot the PC to enable the optimized settings.

- (2) If optimized

A message saying “現在、最適化されています。” (Already optimized) appears on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP Settings) screen. To cancel the optimization settings if connecting to a terminal other than a FOMA terminal, click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization). Close all the programs open and reboot the PC to enable the cancellation of the optimization.

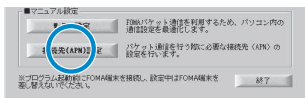


Access Point Name (APN) Settings

Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 destinations and administer them by registering them into cid (Registration Numbers) 1 through 10.

- The APN setting (the access point for FOMA packet communication) is stored in the FOMA terminal. If you connect to another FOMA terminal, therefore the APN must be registered again.
- When continuously using an APN on a PC, register the same APN setting (cid setting) number with the FOMA terminal.
- The APN “mopera.ne.jp” to connect to “mopera” has already been assigned to cid1 and the APN “mopera.net” to connect to “mopera U” has been assigned to cid3 at the time of purchase.

1 After starting “FOMA PC setting software”, click “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN))



2 Click “OK” on the FOMA terminal settings acquisition screen

Automatically accesses the FOMA terminal connected and reads the Access point (APN) information registered.

It does not start if no FOMA terminal is connected.

3 Set up the access point (APN)



Adding/Editing/Removing the Access point (APN)

• To add an access point (APN)

Click “追加” (Add) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

• To edit a registered access point (APN)

Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “編集” (Edit) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

• To delete a registered access point (APN)

Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “削除” (Delete) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.

You cannot delete the host assigned to cid1 and cid3 (Even if you select cid3 and click “削除” (Delete), the host is not deleted and remains “mopera.net”).

Saving in File

If you want to back up the access point (APN) settings registered on the FOMA terminal and/or save the access point (APN) settings being edited, you can save the access point (APN) settings by setting from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Reading from File

If you want to edit the saved access point (APN) settings and/or write into the FOMA terminal, you can read the access point (APN) settings saved on the PC by setting from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Writing Access point (APN) information into FOMA terminal

Clicking “FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write settings into FOMA terminal) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen allows you to write the displayed access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal.

Dial-up creating function

Select the added/edited access point (APN) on the “接続先 (APN) 設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen and click “ダイヤルアップ作成” (Create dial-up).

When the screen for writing into the FOMA terminal appears, click “はい” (Yes). After finishing writing into the access point (APN), the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) appears.

Enter any connection name you want and click “アカウント・パスワードの設定” (Set up Account/Password). This is not needed for mopera U or mopera.

Enter the user name and password (select an available user for Windows 2000 or Windows XP) and click “OK”.

If your provider has given you instructions for setting IP and DNS information, click “詳細情報の設定” (Enter detail information) on the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) screen, register necessary information and click “OK”.

After entering the settings, click “FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write the settings to the FOMA terminal), confirm overwriting and start writing.

Setting up Dial-up Network

This section describes how to set up a dial-up connection for packet communication / 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. The flow of operation is described below.

About AT commands

- AT commands are commands for modem control. The FOMA terminal complies AT commands and supports some enhanced commands and its own AT commands.
- Entering an AT command allows you to confirm (display) the detail settings and the contents of the settings for the “Data communication” and FOMA terminal.
- It is unnecessary to set up the dial-up network for 64K data communication. Go on to “Setting up Dial-up” (P.478).

Checking the COM port

- To set up the access point (APN), you need to specify the COM port number assigned to “FOMA N701i” (Modem) built in after installing the N701i Communication setting file. This section describes how to confirm the COM port number. The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (P.476).

Access points <APN/cid>

- Normal telephone numbers are not used for access points for packet communication unlike 64K data communication. Set up APN (P.476) instead of a telephone number for connection.

- The APN setting is just like registering a Phonebook for packet communication from a PC. Assign registration numbers (cid) 1 through 10 to register, which are used part of the access point number.*1
- APN is administered by "cid (administration numbers 1 through 10)". Connected to the access point with the cid number if the access point number is set to " * 99 * * <cid number> # ".
- The APN "mopera.ne.jp" to connect to "mopera" has already been assigned to cid1 and the APN "mopera.net" to connect to "mopera U" has been assigned to cid3 at the time of purchase. Specifying " * 99 * * 1 # " as the access point number for the mopera connection or " * 99 * * * 3 # " for the mopera U connection enables you to use mopera or mopera U easily.*2
- The APN setting registers the access point to the FOMA terminal just like registering other parties' information (telephone number, etc.) on a mobile phone. The following are comparisons with the Phonebook of the mobile phone:

		APN Setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
Data to be registered		APN	Phone number
		cid	Memory number of Phonebook
		—	Other party's name
How to register	Register using PC	☐ (FOMA PC setting software, etc.)	☐ (Dedicated software required)
	Register using Mobile phone	☒ (Cannot even confirm)	☐
How to use		Specify cid to connect	Look up Phonebook to call
		—	Enter the telephone number directly from the dial key on the FOMA terminal to call.

*1 : Set up the APN setting for the access point (Internet service provider) on the FOMA terminal in advance instead of entering APN in the Telephone Number column of "ダイヤルアップネットワーク" (Dial-up Network) for connection.

*2 : To connect to other Internet service provides, set the APN and assign the host to cid2 or cid4 to cid10. How to set up APN and make registration → P.476

● Preparation

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal
- 2 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to your PC

● To check COM port on Windows 98/Me

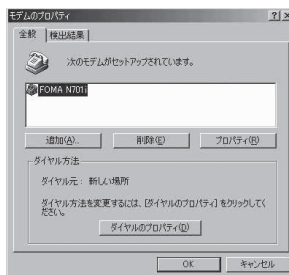
- 1 Open "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel)

- 2 Open "モデム" (Modem) in Control Panel

If the "モデム" (Modem) icon does not appear in Control panel, click "すべてのコントロールパネルのオプションを表示する" (Display all Control Panel options).



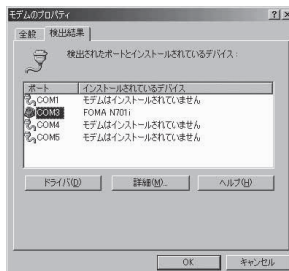
- 3 Confirm that "FOMA N701i" has been set and click the "検出結果" (Diagnostics) tab



- 4 Confirm the COM port for which "FOMA N701i" is set up and click "OK"

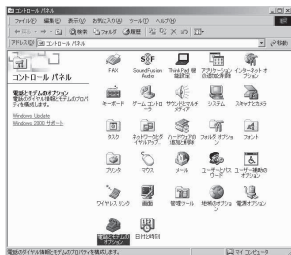
The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (P.476).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.



● To confirm the COM port on Windows 2000

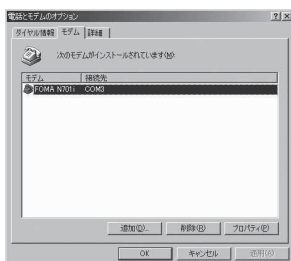
- 1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)
- 2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) in Control Panel



- 3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”
- 4 Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N701i” and click “OK”

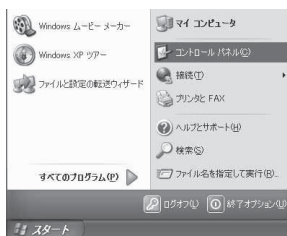
The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (P.476).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.

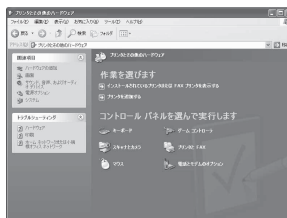


● To confirm the COM port on Windows XP

- 1 Open “スタート”(Start)→“コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)



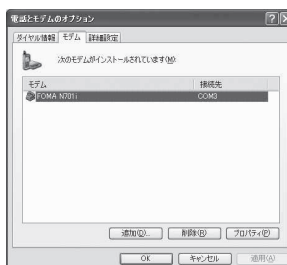
- 2 Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) from “プリンタとその他のハードウェア” (Printers and other hardware) in Control Panel



- 3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen is displayed, enter “市外局番／エリアコード” (Area code) and click “OK”
- 4 Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N701i” and click “OK”

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (P.476).

The contents displayed on the Properties screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC you are using.



Setting up the access point (APN)

Default setting	cid1 : mopera.ne.jp cid3 : mopera.net cid2, 4 to 10 : not set

Communication software to enter AT commands is required for settings. This section describes how to set it up using "Hyper terminal" that comes with Windows.

- Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 access points (APN) up by assigning registration numbers cid1 through cid10 (P.473).
- Assign the cid to 2 or between 4 and 10. "mopera.ne.jp" has been assigned to cid1 and "mopera.net" has been assigned to cid3 at the time of purchase.
- Registered cid will be connection numbers in the dialup connection settings.
- Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for an access point (APN) other than mopera U or mopera.
- The AT commands entered in "Hyper terminal" may not be shown after Step 7 on P.477. In this case, if you enter ATE1 , AT commands you enter from then on are shown.

<Example: For Windows XP>

- 1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the FOMA terminal
- 2 Power the FOMA terminal on and connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to the PC
- 3 Click "スタート" (Start) → "すべてのプログラム" (All programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal) to start Hyper terminal

For Windows Me, Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal).

For Windows 98

After opening "ハイパーターミナル" (Hyper terminal), double-click "Hypertm.exe".

- 4 Select the "今後、このメッセージを表示しない" (Do not display this message again) checkbox and then click "はい" (Yes)
- 5 Enter any name in the "名前" (Name) column and click "OK"

"sample" is entered here as an example.



- 6 Select "FOMA N701i" from "接続方法" (Connection method), and click "OK"

Click "Cancel" after the connection screen is displayed.

If a COM port of "FOMA N701i" can be selected

When Properties of the COM port is displayed, click "OK".

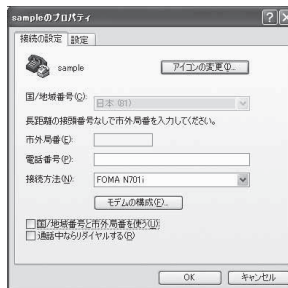
In this example, "COM3" is selected. See "Checking the COM port" on P.473 to confirm the actual COM port number of "FOMA N701i" to be selected in "接続方法" (Connection method).



If a COM port of "FOMA N701i" cannot be selected

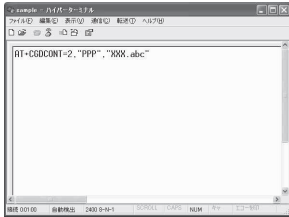
Click "キャンセル" (Cancel) to close the "接続の設定" (Connection Settings) screen and then follow the steps:

- (1) Select "ファイル" (File) menu → "プロパティ" (Properties)
- (2) Select "FOMA N701i" in the "接続方法" (Connection method) column of the "接続の設定" (Connection Settings) tab on the "sampleのプロパティ" (sample Properties)
- (3) Uncheck "国/地域番号と市外局番を使う" (Use the Country/Region Code and Area Code)
- (4) Click "OK"



7 Enter the access point (APN) and press

Enter in the format of AT+CGDCONT=<cid>, "PPP", "APN".
 <cid>: Enter any number from 2 or between 4 and 10.
 Please be cautious because if cid has been already set, the setting will be overwritten.
 "APN": Put " " around the access point (APN) to enter.
 "PPP": Enter "PPP" as it is.
 If "OK" is displayed, the settings for the access point (APN) are completed.
 (Example: To enter APN named XXX.abc in cid Number2)
 Enter AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","XXX.abc"



8 Confirm that "OK" is displayed and click "ハイパーターミナルの終了" (Close Hyper terminal) in the "ファイル" (File) menu

A message asking whether to save the session or not is displayed. There is no need to save it.

NOTE

To reset the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
 · If reset, the access point (APN) setting with cid=1 will return to "mopera.ne.jp" (Default value) and cid=3 to "mopera.net" (Default value), and cid=2, 4 through 10 will be unregistered.
 <How to enter>
 AT+CGDCONT= (to reset all cid)
 AT+CGDCONT=<cid> (to reset a certain cid only)
To confirm the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
 · Display the current settings.
 <How to enter>
 AT+CGDCONT?
If entering the AT command displays nothing on the screen
 <How to enter>
 AT+E1

Specifying Caller ID

Default setting
Notify

- You can set whether to notify the other person of your caller ID when "Packet communication" is carried out. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.
- You can set up the Notify or not notify Caller ID setting using the AT command prior to a dial-up connection.
- Use the * DGPIR command (P.486) to notify or not notify the caller ID or change back to "Not set" (Default value).

1 Start Hyper terminal

2 Set up Notify (186) or Not notify (184) Caller ID for packet communication

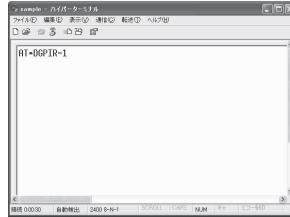
Enter in the format of "AT * DGPIR=<n>".

To automatically attach 184 (Not notify) for dialing an outgoing call/ answering an incoming call
 Enter the following:

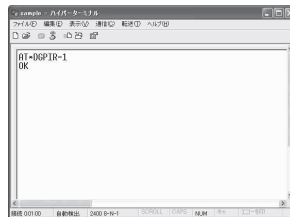
AT * DGPIR=1

To automatically attach 186 (Notify) for dialing an outgoing call/ answering an incoming call
 Enter the following:

AT * DGPIR=2



3 Confirm that "OK" is displayed and click "ハイパーターミナルの終了" (Close Hyper terminal) in the "ファイル" (File) menu



About 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) in Dial-up Network

You can attach 186/184 to the access point number in the Dial-up network settings as well.
 The table below shows what happens if you have set 186/184 both for the * DGPIR command and the Dial-up network setting.

Dial-up network setting (for cid=1)	Notify/Not notify setting by * DGPIR command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
* 99 * * * 1#	Not set	Notify
	Not notify	Not notify
	Notify	Notify
184*99 * * * 1#	Not set	Not notify (Dial-up network notification 184 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	
186*99 * * * 1#	Not set	Notify (Dial-up network notification 186 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	

NOTE

- The Caller ID needs to be set to "Notify" to use DoCoMo's internet connection service mopera U or mopera.

Setting up Dial-up

- This section takes accessing mopera by packet communication for example.
- To connect using packet communication, enter "* 99 * * 3#" as the number of access point for mopera U or "* 99 * * 1#" for mopera. To connect using 64K data communication, enter "* 8701" as the number of access point for mopera U or "* 9601" for mopera.

Setting up dial-up on Windows 98, Windows Me

- 1 Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ダイヤルアップネットワーク" (Dial-up Network)

- 2 When the "ダイヤルアップネットワークへようこそ" (Welcome to Dial-up Network) screen appears, click "次へ" (Next)

This screen appears only when the dial-up network is started for the first time. Click "次へ" (Next) to proceed to Step 4.

This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the "Dial-up Network" screen in Step 3 does instead.



- 3 Double-click "新しい接続" (New connection) in the Dial-up Network



- 4 Enter any name you want in the "接続名" (Connection Name) and click "次へ" (Next)

Confirm that the "モデムの選択" (Modem selection) column has "FOMA N701i". If "FOMA N701i" is not selected, select "FOMA N701i".



- 5 Enter the number of the access point in the "電話番号" (Telephone Number) column and click "次へ" (Next)

Leave the "市外局番" (Area Code) column blank.



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

- 6 Confirm the Connection name (any name) and click "完了" (Finish)



- 7 Open "スタート" (Start) → "プログラム" (Programs) → "アクセサリ" (Accessories) → "通信" (Communication) → "ダイヤルアップネットワーク" (Dial-up Network)

- 8 Select the icon of the dial-up created and open "プロパティ" (Properties) in the "ファイル" (File) menu



- 9 Confirm "電話番号" (Telephone number) and "接続方法" (Connection method) on the "全般" (General) tab

Uncheck "市外局番とダイヤルのプロパティを使う" (Use the Properties of the Area Code and Dial).

Confirm that the "接続方法" (Connection method) column has "FOMA N701i". If "FOMA N701i" is not selected, select "FOMA N701i".



10 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select “PPP: インターネット, Windows 2000/NT, Windows Me” in the “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the Dial-up server to call).

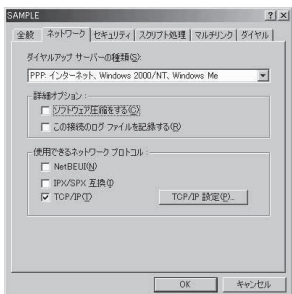
Check only “TCP/IP” in “使用できるネットワーク プロトコル” (Supported network protocols) field.

For Windows 98

Click the “サーバーの種類” (Type of server) tab and set up each setting.

Select “PPP: インターネット, Windows NT Server, Windows 98” in “ダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the Dial-up server to call).

Check only “TCP/IP” in the “使用できるネットワーク プロトコル” (Supported network protocols) field.



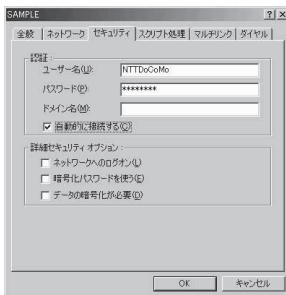
11 Click the “セキュリティ” (Security) tab and click “OK” after checking settings

You can leave user name and password blank for moper a U or moper a connection.

To use a provider other than moper a U or moper a, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns.

For Windows 98

Click “OK”.



Setting up dial-up on Windows 2000

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and Dial-up connections)

2 Double-click “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) in Network and Dial-up Connections



3 If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”

The “所在地情報” (Address Information) screen appears only when “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) is started for the first time in Step 2. This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen does instead, proceed to Step 5.

4 When the “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and Modem options) screen appears, click “OK”

5 When the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)

6 Select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する” (Connect to the Internet via dial-up) and click “次へ” (Next)

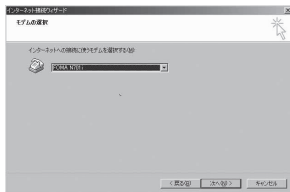
- 7 Select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク(LAN)を使って接続します” (Set up an internet connection manually or connect using Local Area Network (LAN)) and click “次へ” (Next)

- 8 Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します” (Connect to the internet using a telephone line and a modem) and click “次へ” (Next)

- 9 Confirm that the “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する” (Select the modem used to connect to the internet) has “FOMA N701i” and click “次へ” (Next)

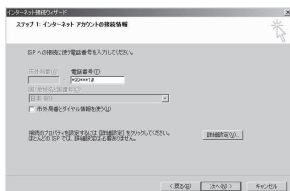
If “FOMA N701i” is not selected, select “FOMA N701i”.

If no other modem than “FOMA N701i” has been installed, this screen does not appear.



- 10 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone number) column and click “詳細設定” (Advanced settings)

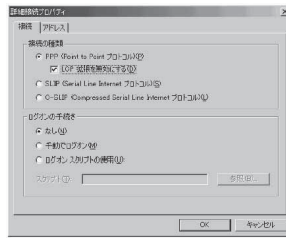
Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Area Code and Dial information).



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

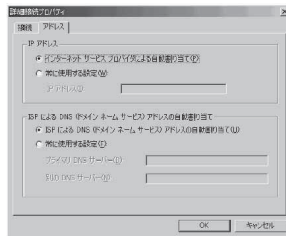
- 11 Set up the “接続” (Connection) tab as shown below and click the “アドレス” (Address) tab

To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “接続の種類” (Connection Type) and “ログオンの手続き” (Logon Procedure).



- 12 Set up the IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address on the “アドレス” (Address) tab as shown below and click “OK”

To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “IP アドレス” (IP address) and “ISPによるDNS (ドメインネームサービス) アドレスの自動割り当て” (Automatically assign DNS (Domain Name Service) by ISP).

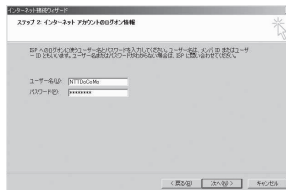


- 13 When the screen returns to Step 10, click “次へ” (Next)

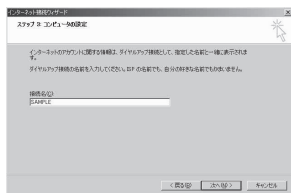
- 14 Click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.

To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, as shown in the screen below enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns.



- 15** Enter any name you want in the “接続名” (Connection Name) and click “次へ” (Next)



- 16** Select “いいえ” (No) and click “次へ” (Next)

- 17 Click “完了” (Finish)**

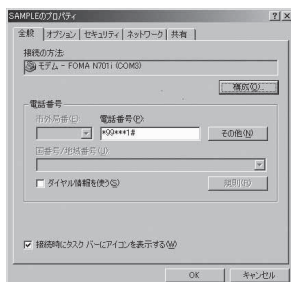
- 18 Select the icon of the dial-up created and click “プロパティ” (Properties) of the “ファイル” (File) menu



- 19** Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that “モデム－FOMA N701i” (Modem - FOMA N701i) is checked in the “接続の方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.

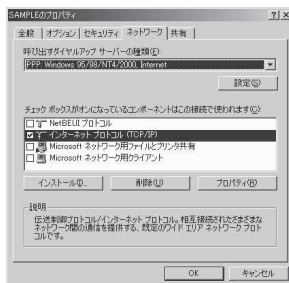


The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

- 20** Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

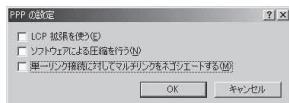
Select "PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet" in the "呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類" (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Check only “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for components.



- 21 Click “設定” (Settings)

-  **Clear all the boxes and click “OK”**

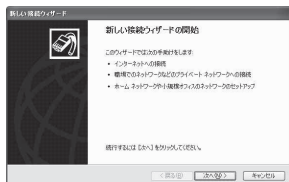


- 23** When the Step 20 screen reappears, click “OK”

Setting up dial-up on Windows XP

- ① Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “新しい接続ウィザード” (New connection wizard)

- 2** When the “新しい接続ウィザード” (New Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)



- 3** Select “インターネットに接続する” (Connect to the Internet) and click “次へ” (Next)

- 4** Select “**接続を手動でセットアップする**” (Set up the connection manually) and click “**次へ**” (Next)

- 5** Select “**ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する**” (Connect using a dial-up modem) and click “**次へ**” (Next)

6 If the “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears, select only “モデム – FOMA N701i (COMx)” (Modem – FOMA N701i (COMx)), and click “次へ” (Next)

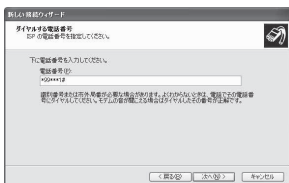
The “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears only if there are multiple modems. (COMx) is a number of COM port displayed in “Checking the COM port” (P.473).



7 Enter any name you want in the “ISP 名” (ISP Name) and click “次へ” (Next)



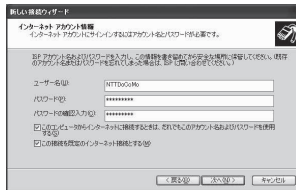
8 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone Number) column and click “次へ” (Next)



The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

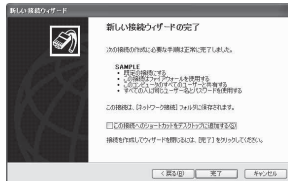
9 Click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection. To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name), “パスワード” (Password) and “パスワードの確認入力” (Confirm Password) columns as shown in the screen below.



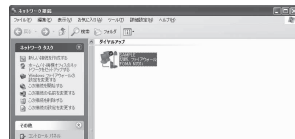
10 Click “完了” (Finish)

The newly created connection wizard appears.



11 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

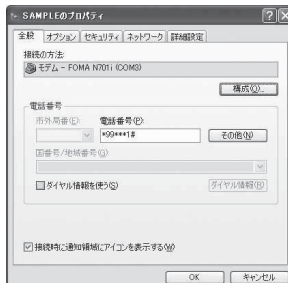
12 Select the icon of the dial-up created and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



13 Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that “モデム – FOMA N701i” (Modem – FOMA N701i) is checked in the “接続の方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If it is checked, clear it.

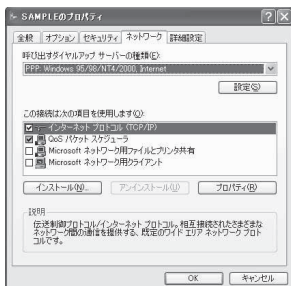


The screen above shows an example of accessing mopera by packet communication.

14 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

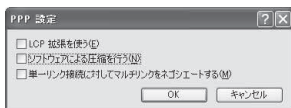
Select “PPP:Windows 95/98/NT4/2000,Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Select “インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) in the “この接続は次の項目を使用します” (Use the following items for this connection). Since the setting of “QoS パケットスケジューラ” (QoS Packet Scheduler) cannot be changed, leave it as it is.



15 Click “設定” (Settings)

16 Clear all the boxes and click “OK”



17 When the Step 14 screen reappears, click “OK”

Running dial-up connection

This section describes how to make a dial-up connection for packet communication by using the dial-up setting.

<Example: For Windows Me>

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC with the FOMA USB Cable

“How to connect” → P.460

2 Click the “スタート” (Start) menu, select → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) and open “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network)

3 Select the icon of the access point to connect and open “接続” (Connect)

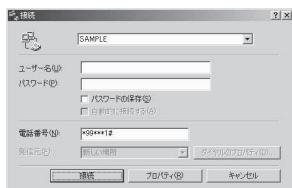


4 Confirm each item and click “接続” (Connect)

The telephone number of the access point set up in Dial-up Network is displayed in “電話番号” (Telephone number).

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.

To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password specified by the provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns.



<The Connecting screen appears>

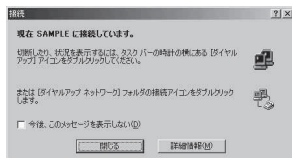
Meanwhile, the user name/password confirmation and login processes are performed.



<Completion of the connection>

You can start browser software to browse sites and websites, and to use e-mail.

If the following screen does not appear, check “Setting up Dial-up Network” (P.473) and “Setting up Dial-up” (P.478).



<Example: For Windows XP>

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC with the FOMA USB Cable

“How to connect” → P.460

2 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

3 Open Access point

Select the dial-up access point icon with the ISP name set in Step 7 on P.482 to select “ネットワークタスク” (Network task) → “この接続を開始する” (Start this connection) or double-click the icon of the access point.

Continued on next page



4 Confirm the settings and click “ダイヤル” (Dial)

The following screen shows an example for mopera connection. You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.



<The Connecting screen appears>

While this screen is displayed, the log-on process such as confirmation of the user name and password is performed.



<Completion of the connection>

When the connection is complete, a message as shown below is displayed from the indicator of the taskbar located on the lower right of the desktop for a few seconds. You can start browser software to browse sites and websites or to use e-mail.

If the following messages does not appear, check “Setting up Dial-up Network” (P.473) and “Setting up Dial-up” (P.478).

See P.469 for communication conditions.



How to disconnect

Just closing the Internet browser may not disconnect the communication line. Follow the instructions below to disconnect for sure. This section describes an example using Windows XP.

1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the Task tray

The connecting screen will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)



NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

AT Command List

AT commands available on FOMA terminal

- The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list;
 - [&F] : Command of which setting is initialized by AT&F command.
 - [&W] : Command of which setting is saved by AT&W command. The setting can be retrieved by ATZ command.

Modem port command list

The following are the usable commands for “FOMA N701i (モデム)” (modem):

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
A/	Executes the last executed command again. No carriage return is necessary.	—	A/ OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT	—	The modem function of a FOMA terminal is controllable by adding the command of this table after this command. * OK is answered even when only AT is entered.	AT OK
AT%V	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&C <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the operating condition of the circuit CD signal to DTE.	<i>n</i> = 0 : CD is always ON. <i>n</i> = 1 : CD changes according to the carrier of the other party's modem (initial value).	AT&C1 OK
AT&D <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the operation to take place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE transits between ON and OFF.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Ignores ER status (always assumed to be ON). <i>n</i> = 1 : When ER changes from ON to OFF, it becomes an on-line command status. <i>n</i> = 2 : If ER changes from ON to OFF, a connection is disconnected and it will be in an off-line command status (initial value).	AT&D1 OK
AT&E <i>n</i>	Selects how to display the connection speed.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Displays the wireless network transmission speed. <i>n</i> = 1 : Displays the DTE serial transmission speed. (initial value)	AT&E0 OK
AT&F <i>n</i>	Restores all of registers to their defaults. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	Only <i>n</i> = 0 can be specified (can be omitted).	At the time of on-line command mode AT&F NO CARRIER (Change to off-line mode) At the time of off-line mode AT&F OK AT&F? ERROR AT&F = ? ERROR
AT&S <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Sets the Data Set Ready signal to be output to DTE.	<i>n</i> = 0 : DR is always ON (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : DR signal is ON when the line is connected (when the communication call is established).	AT&S0 OK
AT&W <i>n</i>	Stores the current settings.	Only <i>n</i> = 0 can be specified (can be omitted).	AT&W0 OK AT&W OK AT&W? ERROR AT&W = ? ERROR
AT * DANTE	Displays the FOMA terminal signal reception level.	0 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is out of area. 1 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 1 bar. 2 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 2 bars. 3 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 3 bars.	AT * DANTE * DANTE:3 OK AT * DANTE = ? * DANTE:(0-3) OK
AT * DGANSM= <i>n</i>	Sets the reject/permit mode setting for the packet incoming call. This command is effective for those incoming packet calls after the setting command is input.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Disables the incoming call reject (AT * DGARL)/permit setting (AT * DGAPL) (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : Enables the incoming call reject setting. <i>n</i> = 2 : Enables the incoming call permit setting. AT * DGANSM? : Displays the current setting.	AT * DGANSM=0 OK AT * DGANSM? * DGANSM:0 OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT * DGAPL= <i>n</i> [, <i>cid</i>]	Sets APN, which permits incoming packet calls, by using < <i>cid</i> > parameter defined by +CGDCONT	<i>n</i> =0 : Adds the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > to incoming call permission list. <i>n</i> =1 : Deletes the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > from incoming call permission list. If < <i>cid</i> > is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT * DGAPL? : Displays incoming call permission list.	AT * DGAPL =0,1 OK AT * DGAPL? * DGAPL:1 OK AT * DGAPL =1 OK AT * DGAPL? OK
AT * DGARL= <i>n</i> [, <i>cid</i>]	Sets APN, which rejects incoming packet calls, by using < <i>cid</i> > parameter defined by +CGDCONT	<i>n</i> =0 : Adds the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > to incoming call rejection list. <i>n</i> =1 : Deletes the APN defined by < <i>cid</i> > from incoming call rejection list. If < <i>cid</i> > is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT * DGARL? : Displays incoming call rejection list.	AT * DGARL =0,1 OK AT * DGARL? * DGARL:1 OK AT * DGARL =1 OK AT * DGARL? OK
AT * DGPIR= <i>n</i>	This command validates the setting for notifying Caller ID when sending/ receiving packet communication. Even in the dial up network setting, you can also add 186 (notify) or 184 (not notify) to the access point number. (P.477)	<i>n</i> =0 : Uses APN as it is (initial value). <i>n</i> =1 : Uses APN by adding "184". (Caller ID is always not sent.) <i>n</i> =2 : Uses APN by adding "186". (Caller ID is always sent.) AT * DGPIR? : Displays the current setting.	AT * DGPIR =0 OK AT * DGPIR? * DGPIR:0 OK
AT * DRPW	Displays the indicator value of the receiving power of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT * DRPW * DRPW:0 OK AT * DRPW=? * DRPW:(0-75) OK
AT+CEER	Displays the reason for disconnection of the previous call.	<report> List of disconnection reasons (P.495).	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.	P.492	P.492
AT+CGEQMIN	Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.	AT+CGEQMIN=[parameter] (P.493) AT+CGEQMIN=? : Displays a list of values that can be set. AT+CGEQMIN? : Displays the current setting.	P.493
AT+CGEQREQ	Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.	AT+CGEQREQ=[parameter] (P.493) AT+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of values that can be set. AT+CGEQREQ? : Displays the current setting.	P.493
AT+CGMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGMR 12345xxxxxxxxxxx OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CGREG= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether to notify the network registration condition. The returned notification shows whether you are inside or out of service.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Not informed (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "Inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is completed. AT+CGREG? : Displays the current setting. +CGREG: < <i>n</i> >, <stat> <i>n</i> : Set value stat : 0: Out of packet area 1: Within packet area 4: Unknown 5: Within packet area	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CGREG? +CGREG: (1,0) OK AT+CGREG=? +CGREG: (0,1) OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from "outside the service area" to "inside the service area".) +CGREG:1
AT+CGSN	Displays the product number of FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGSN 12345xxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CLIP= <i>n</i>	Displays the other party's Caller ID on a PC when a 64K data communication call is received.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Not display the result (initial value) <i>n</i> = 1 : Display the result Result: +CLIP(<i>n</i> , <i>m</i>) <i>m</i> = 0 : NW setting not notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. <i>m</i> = 1 : NW setting notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. <i>m</i> = 2 : Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP=? +CLIP:(0,1) OK (A call is received when +CLIP=1 is set) RING +CLIP: "090XXXXXXXX",177,"123" ,136
AT+CLIR= <i>n</i>	Sets whether or not to notify the other party of the phone number when originating a 64K data communication call.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Complies with the CLIR service contract. <i>n</i> = 1 : Not notify the other party of the caller's phone number. <i>n</i> = 2 : Notify the other party of the caller's phone number (initial value). Result: +CLIR(<i>n</i> , <i>m</i>) <i>m</i> = 0 : CLIR is not started (Caller ID is always sent) <i>m</i> = 1 : CLIR is started (Caller ID is always not sent) <i>m</i> = 2 : Unknown <i>m</i> = 3 : CLIR temporary mode (default is not notify) <i>m</i> = 4 : CLIR temporary mode (default is notify) * Without the #31# or *31#, CLIR setting takes priority	AT+CLIR=0 OK AT+CLIR? +CLIR:0,1 OK AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:(0-2) OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CMEE= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Sets whether the error report of the FOMA terminal is present.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Use the ERROR result (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and a numeral value is used for <err>. <i>n</i> = 2 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and characters are used for <err>. AT+CMEE? : Displays the current setting. The command shown on the right is the execution example for cases when there is a FOMA terminal problem or a connection error. +CME ERROR result code is as follows. 1 : no connection to phone 10 : SIM not inserted 15 : SIM wrong 16 : incorrect password 100 : unknown	AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:10 AT+CMEE=2 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:SIM not inserted
AT+CNUM	Displays the own number of the FOMA terminal.	number: phone number type : 129 or 145 129 : International access code (+) is not included. 145 : International access code (+) is included.	AT+CNUM +CNUM: "+8190XXXX XXXX",145 OK
AT+CPIN	Enters the PIN code in the FOMA terminal.	Format: AT+CPIN="<pin>","<newpin>" This command is to enter the PIN1, PIN2, or PUK code - depending on the state of the result code returned when AT+CPIN? is entered - of the FOMA terminal. Even if PIN code entry or the PUK code is requested on the screen, depending on the state of the result code when AT+CPIN? is entered, you may not be able to use this command to enter the PIN. Do not use this command to change PIN code. Put <pin> and <newpin> in ". AT+CPIN? result +CPIN : READY : PIN1 code, PIN2 code Cannot enter the PUK1 or PUK2 code +CPIN: SIM PIN:PIN1 entry standby +CPIN: SIM PIN2 : PIN2 entry standby +CPIN: SIM PUK : PIN1 blocked (Can enter PUK1 code) +CPIN: SIM PUK2:PIN2 blocked (Can enter PUK2 code) The command shown on the right is an entry sample of PIN code "1234" and PUK code "12345678".	(The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PIN is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN1 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK2 is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN2 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK AT+CPIN? +CPIN:READY OK AT+CPIN=? OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT+CR= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	When the line is connected, display the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code is displayed.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Not display (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : Display. <serv> : Displays only "GPRS", which means packet communication. (Displaying "SYNC", "AV32K" or "AV64K" depending on the line type.) AT+CR?: : Displays the current setting.	AT+CR=1 OK ATD * 99 * * * 1# +CR : GPRS CONNECT
AT+CRC= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Sets whether to use the extended result code for the incoming call.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Not use +CRING (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : Use +CRING.<type>. Format of +CRING: +CRING : SYNC +CRING : AV64K : GPRS "PPP" ,,, "<APN>" AT+CRC?: : Displays the current setting.	AT+CRC=0 OK AT+CRC? +CRC : 0 OK (PPPOverUD received) +CRING : SYNC (AV64K received) +CRING : AV64K (PPP packet received) +CRING : GPRS "PPP" ,,, <APN>"
AT+CREG= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result display is present regarding the inside/outside the service area information display. ● This setting may not be available depending on the Operating System.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Not informed (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : Informed. Informed when switching between "Inside the service area" and "Outside the service area" is complete. AT+CREG?: : Displays the current setting. +CREG : < <i>n</i> >,<stat> <i>n</i> : Set value stat: 0: Outside voice call area 1: Inside voice call area 4: Unknown 5: Inside voice call area	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CREG? +CREG : 1,0 OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from outside the service area to inside the service area.) +CREG : 1
AT+GMI	Displays the manufacturer name (NEC).	—	AT+GMI NEC OK
AT+GMM	Displays the FOMA terminal product name (FOMAN701i).	—	AT+GMM FOMAN701i OK
AT+GMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK
AT+IFC= <i>n</i> , <i>m</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the flow control method.	<i>n</i> : DCE by DTE <i>m</i> : DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control 1 : XON/XOFF flow control. 2 : RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. initial value: <i>n</i> , <i>m</i> =2, 2 AT+IFC?: Displays the current setting.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK AT+IFC? +IFC : 2,2 OK AT+IFC=? +IFC : (0,1,2) ,(0,1,2) OK
AT+WS46= <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Displays the wireless communication network of the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> = 22 : Only W-CDMA (Wideband CDMA) can be specified (initial value).	AT+WS46=22 OK

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
AT¥S	Displays the contents of commands and S registers currently set.	—	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT¥V <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects the response code specification for connecting the line.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Not use extended result code (initial value). <i>n</i> = 1 : Use extended result code.	AT¥V0 OK
ATA	Handles the incoming call process according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
ATD	Handles the automatic calling process for the FOMA terminal according to the specified parameters and dial parameters.	ATD * 99 * * * <cid># : Packet communication <cid> 1 to 10: displays APN with +CGDCONT setting. AT+CBST=116,1,0 ATD<phone number> : 64K communication AT+CBST=131,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV32K communication AT+CBST=134,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV64K communication	<Packet communication> ATD * 99 * * * 1# CONNECT <64K communication> AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV32K communication> AT+CBST=131,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV64K communication> AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT
ATE <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Selects whether the echo back is present for DTE in the command mode.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Echo back not present. <i>n</i> = 1 : Echo back present (initial value).	ATE1 OK
ATH <i>n</i>	Performs on-hook operation for the FOMA terminal.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Disconnect the line (can be omitted).	(During packet communication) +++ ATH NO CARRIER
ATI <i>n</i>	Displays the ID code.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Displays "NTT DoCoMo". <i>n</i> = 1 : Displays the product name (same with +GMM). <i>n</i> = 2 : Displays the version of the FOMA terminal (same with +GMR).	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMAN701i OK
ATO <i>n</i>	Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Returns from online command mode to online data mode (can be omitted).	ATO CONNECT

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
ATQ n [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether or not to display the result code for DTE.	$n=0$: Displays the result code (initial value). $n=1$: Not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 (At that time, OK is not returned.)
ATS0= n [&F] [&W]	Specifies how many times the FOMA terminal rings before it automatically receives a call.	$n=0$: No automatic reception (initial value). $n=1-255$: A call is automatically answered after the specified number of rings. ATS0?: Displays the current setting.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
ATS2= n [&F]	Sets an escape character.	$n=43$: Initial value. $n=127$: Escapes processing is invalid. ATS2? : Displays the current setting.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
ATS3= n [&F]	Sets a carriage return (CR) character.	$n=13$: Initial value (Only $n=13$ can be specified). ATS3? : Displays the current setting.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
ATS4= n [&F]	Sets a line feed (LF) character.	$n=10$: Initial value (Only $n=10$ can be specified). ATS4? : Displays the current setting.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
ATS5= n [&F]	Sets a backspace (BS) character.	$n=8$: Initial value (Only $n=8$ can be specified). ATS5? : Displays the current setting.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
ATS6= n [&F]	Sets the pause time (second) until a dial starting.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS6=5 OK ATS6? 005 OK ATS6=? ERROR
ATS7= n [&F] [&W]	Disconnects the line if the connection cannot be established within a specified period after making a call.	$n=1$ to 120 (The initial value is 60) (second). 121 to 255 will be regarded as 120. ATS7?: Displays the current setting.	ATS7=60 OK ATS7? 060 OK
ATS8= n [&F]	Sets the pause time (second) by using the comma dial.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS8=3 OK ATS8? 003 OK ATS8=? ERROR
ATS10= n [&F][&W]	Automatic disconnection delay time setting. (1/10 second)	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS10=1 OK ATS10? 001 OK ATS10=? ERROR
ATS30= n [&F]	Disconnects the line when there is no user data exchange for the time set in this command.	$n=0$: Inactive timer off (initial value) $n=0$ - 255 Where n is the number of minutes.	ATS30=0 OK ATS30? 000 OK ATS30=? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Description of parameters	Command execution example
ATS103= <i>n</i> [&F]	Sets the called subaddress character.	<i>n</i> = 0 : * <i>n</i> = 1 : / (initial value) <i>n</i> = 2 : ¥ (¥ mark or back slash)	ATS103=0 OK ATS103? 000 OK ATS103=? ERROR
ATS104= <i>n</i> [&F]	Sets the calling subaddress character.	<i>n</i> = 0 : # <i>n</i> = 1 : % (initial value) <i>n</i> = 2 : &	ATS104=0 OK ATS104? 000 OK ATS104=? ERROR
ATV <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result code is returned in numeral or alphabetical characters.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Returns the result code in numeral value. <i>n</i> = 1 : Returns the result code in characters (initial value).	ATV1 OK
ATX <i>n</i> [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the speed indication is present in the CONNECT display when connecting the line. Also detects a busy tone or a dial tone.	<i>n</i> = 0 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; without speed display. <i>n</i> = 1 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> = 2 : With dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> = 3 : Without dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. <i>n</i> = 4 : With dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. (initial value)	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Resets the current setting to the contents of the non-volatile memory. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	—	(Online command mode) ATZ NO CARRIER (Offline command mode) ATZ OK
+++	In response to the escape sequence, the online data mode changes to the online command mode while maintaining the line connection.	—	(Online data mode) +++ (No display) OK

● Supplementary explanation of AT command

■ Commands which do not function

The following commands do not generate errors but will not function as a command:

- ATT (Tone setting)
- ATP (Pulse setting)

■ Command name: +CGDCONT

• Outline

Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination. Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

• Format

+CGDCONT=[<cid>[, "PPP"[, "<APN>"]]]

• Explanation of the parameters

Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination. See the following command execution example:

<cid>*: 1 ~ 10

<APN>*: Any value

* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. Assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10. "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" is assigned to <cid>=3.
<APN> is an arbitrary character string showing each access point name.

- **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**
 +CGDCONT=: Sets the initial value to all <cid>.
 +CGDCONT=<cid>: Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.
 +CGDCONT=: Displays a list of values that can be set.
 +CGDCONT?: Displays the current setting.

- **Command execution example**

Command for registering an APN name of abc (when cid is 2).

```
AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc"
OK
```

■ **Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]**

- **Outline**

Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.

The 4 setting patterns as described in the following command execution example can be used.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- **Format**

```
+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[ „<Maximum bitrate UL>
[ „<Maximum bitrate DL>]] ]
```

- **Explanation of the parameters**

<cid>*: 1~10

<Maximum bitrate UL>*: None (initial value) or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>*: None (initial value) or 384

*: <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. Assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10. "mopera.ne.jp" is assigned to <cid>=1 and "mopera.net" is assigned to <cid>=3. <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> set the minimum communication speed (kbps) of uplink and downlink between the FOMA terminal and base station. When it is set to "None" (initial value), all speeds will be permitted, but when set to 64 or 384, a connection at a speed of other values will not be permitted, at which time a packet communication may not be connected.

- **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

+CGEQMIN=: Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGEQMIN=<cid>: Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

- **Command execution example**

Only the following 4 patterns can be set. (1) is set as an initial value to each cid.

- (1) Command for permitting all speeds of both uplink and downlink (when cid is 2)
 AT+CGEQMIN=2
 OK

- (2) Command for permitting only the speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 4)
 AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384
 OK
- (3) Command for permitting uplink 64kbps and all speeds of downlink (when cid is 5).
 AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64
 OK
- (4) Command for permitting all speeds of uplink and only 384kbps of downlink (when cid is 6)
 AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384
 OK

■ **Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]**

- **Outline**

Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.

For setting, only the pattern shown in the command execution example can be set, which is also set as an initial value.

Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- **Format**

```
+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]
```

- **Explanation of the parameters**

<cid>*: 1 to 10

*: <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. <cid>=1 is set to "mopera.ne.jp" and <cid>=3 is set to "mopera.net" at the time of purchase. Therefore, the cid should be set to 2 or between 4 and 10.

- **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

+CGEQREQ=: Set the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGEQREQ=<cid>: Set the specified <cid> to the initial value.

- **Command execution example**

Only the following 1 pattern can be set. This is set to each cid as an initial value.

Command for requesting a connection at a speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 2).

```
AT+CGEQREQ=2
OK
```

Saving modem port command setting value

The values set by AT commands are initialized every time the power of FOMA terminal is turned on or off, except the access point name (APN) set by AT+CGDCONT command (P476), QoS setting by AT+CGEQMIN/AT+CGEREQ command, permit or reject incoming call setting by AT *DGAPL/AT *DGARL/AT *DGANSM command and the setting for specifying sending/not sending caller ID of packet

communication set by AT *DGPIR command. However, you can save the values set by commands with [&W] if you enter

AT&W 

after the setting. In this case, other set values with [&W] will also be saved. These values can be retrieved by entering

ATZ 

even after the power is turned on or off.

Result codes

■ Result codes related with data communication

Number indication	Character indication	Description
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected.
2	RING	Incoming call.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not acceptable.
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dialing tone.
7	BUSY	Busy tone detected.
8	NO ANSWER	Time out in connection completing.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted.

■ Extended result codes

• &E0

Number indication	Character indication	Description
121	CONNECT 32000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 32,000 bps.
122	CONNECT 64000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 64,000 bps.
125	CONNECT 384000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 384,000 bps.

• &E1

Number indication	Character indication	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 1,200 bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 2,400 bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 4,800 bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 7,200 bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 9,600 bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 14,400 bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 19,200 bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 38,400 bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 57,600 bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 115,200 bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 230,400 bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 460,800 bps.

■ Communication protocol result code

Number indication	Character indication	Description
1	PPPOverUD	Connected by PPPoverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
2	AV32K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [32K]

Number indication	Character indication	Description
3	AV64K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected by PACKET

NOTE

- The result code appears as character indication (default value) when ATV $\overline{n}$ command (P.492) is set to $\overline{n}=1$, and as number indication when the command is set to $\overline{n}=0$.
- Though the communication speed appears in order to maintain a compatibility with the modem connected by traditional RS-232C, it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal and PC are connected via FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- "RESTRICTION" (Number indication: 100) indicates that the network is congested. If this is displayed, wait for a while and then try again.

Result code display example**■ When ATX0 is set**

Regardless of the AT $\overline{Vn}$ command (P.490) setting, only CONNECT appears when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT

Number indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1

■ When ATX1 is set**• ATX1, AT $\overline{V0}$ are set (default)**

Display in CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> format is made when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800

Number indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1 21

• ATX1, AT $\overline{V1}$ are set *

The following format appears when the connection is completed:

CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <Connecting party's APN>/ <Upstream (the FOMA terminal → Wireless base station) maximum rate>/<Downstream (the FOMA terminal ← Wireless base station) maximum rate >

The following sample indicates that a connection was made to mopera.ne.jp at maximum 64kbps for sending, and maximum 384kbps for receiving.

Character indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
CONNECT 460800

PACKET mopera.ne.jp /64/384

Number indication example: ATD * 99 * * * 1#
1 21 5

- * : If both ATX1 and AT $\overline{V1}$ are set simultaneously, a dial-up connection may not be correctly made. The single setting of AT $\overline{V0}$ is recommended.

List of disconnection reasons

Disconnection reasons regarding the content of requests are the following:

■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
26 27	Missing or incorrect APN.
30	Activation rejected by the network.
33	Requested service option not subscribed.
36	Disconnected successfully.

■ 64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	The number specified does not exist.
16	Disconnected successfully.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party's line is busy.
18	Dialed, but no response within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is ringing.
21	The other party has rejected the communication.
63	The service or option of the network is not valid.
65	A transmission capacity not provided has been specified.
88	Sent to a terminal with different terminal attributes or received call.

● Entering Text

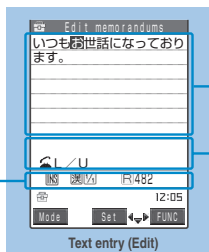
Entering Text	498
Modifying and Storing Common Phrases . Store common phrase	513
Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text.....	514
Entering Kuten Codes.....	515
Storing Frequently Used Words Own dictionary	516
Resetting the Learning Record Clear learning record	517
Selecting the Dictionaries Download dictionary	517
Changing the Active Screen	518

Entering Text

You can enter text on the FOMA terminal by using the keypad, the access reader or bar code reader, or by retrieving words from a dictionary.

Text entry (edit) screen

The Text entry (edit) screen is made up of the text entry area, operation guidance area, and information display area.



Function menu→P.511

Text entry area

- : The cursor. Text is entered at this location.
- ◀ : End mark. Text can be entered up to this mark.
The location of the end mark varies depending on the function being used.

Operation guidance area

- ▲▼ CHG: Indicates that () can be used for character conversion.→P.502
- ▲▼ All/▲▼ Find: Indicates that () can be used to search in the Search phonebook display. →P.111
- ✕ Fix mode/✕ Fix END: Indicates that you can use Fix mode in Mode 3 (T9 input)→P.504
- ◀▶ ▲▼ Area: Displayed when you copy (or cut) text.→P.514
- LU: Displayed when you can switch the entered character between upper case and lower case by pressing (↕).→P.507
- LONG CR: Indicates that you can insert a line-feed symbol (↵) by holding down (↵) for 1 second or longer.→P.508
- ホームBack: Displayed when you can return to the previous reading assigned to the same key by pressing () (Home) when the text entry method is "Mode 1 (5-touch)".

Information display area

- ② / ② : Displayed when the text entry method is "Mode 3 (T9 input)" (P.502) or "Mode 2 (2-touch)" (P.501). No icon is displayed in "Mode 1 (5-touch)".
- FIX : Displayed when "Fix mode" is selected in Mode 3 (T9 input). → P.504
- INS / OVR : The INS icon denotes Insert mode and the OVR icon denotes Overwrite mode. → P.507
- E / ⑫ / ⑬ / ⑭ : Shows the current input mode when the text entry method is "Mode 1 (5-touch)" or "Mode 3 (T9 input)".
- ✕ : Displayed in "Kuten code input mode".→P.515
- 1/2 / 1/4 : The 1/2 icon is displayed during half-pitch character input and 1/4 is displayed during full-pitch character input.→P.500, 501
- Sm : Displayed when lower case character is being entered.→P.507
- R : Shows the remaining number of characters that can be entered in bytes. Half-pitch characters count as 1 byte while full-pitch characters each count as 2 bytes. In other words, full-pitch characters use twice as many bytes as half-pitch characters.
- In : Shows the number of characters that have been entered when you are composing an SMS or adding entries to the UIM phonebook. No distinction is made between full-pitch and half-pitch characters.

NOTE

- Pressing a keypad key while you are entering the text of an i-mode mail message displays the Text entry (edit) screen and allows you to use functions such as kuten code input, word prediction and input mode selection.

■ The number of characters remaining and the number entered

Characters shown in the Text entry (edit) screen are counted according to the rules listed below. In the Text entry (edit) screen, the end mark "◀" shows the end of the text that can be entered using the current function. Use the end mark as an approximate guide to how many more characters you can enter.

- When the number of characters is counted, each full-pitch character is counted as 2 bytes and each half-pitch character is counted as 1 byte.
- Full-pitch character occupy twice as many bytes as half-pitch characters.
Full-pitch: A B C D E = 5 characters (counted as 10 bytes).
Half-pitch: A B C D E F G H I J = 10 characters (counted as 10 bytes).

■ Character combinations

Take care with character combinations when entering text.

<Example> Entering “ト コロ” in half-pitch kana input mode and “の携帯電話” in Kanji/hiragana input mode

ト コロ の 携 帯 電 話 (9 characters when shown on the display)
1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 (counted as 14 bytes, equivalent to 14 half-pitch characters)

- The half-pitch dakuten “” and han-dakuten “” are each counted as 1 character.

■ Scrolling

In the Text entry (edit) screen, use to scroll up and down one line at a time, and (Memo/Check) and (Home) to scroll 1 page at a time.

In the candidates list screen for kanji conversion, you can also use to scroll up and down one line at a time, and (Memo/Check) or (Home) to scroll 1 page at a time.

Selecting the text entry method

Default setting	Input mode: All selected	Prior mode: Mode 1(5-touch)

There are three ways to enter text:

- Mode 1 (5-touch input) → P.500
Several characters are assigned to each key and the assigned character changes each time you press the key.
- Mode 2 (2-touch input) → P.501
Enters characters using 2-digit numbers.
- Mode 3 (T9 input) → P.502
Each time you press a key, the characters assigned to that key appear as a list of candidates from which you can select the desired character.

1 ▶ “Input mode” ▶ Use to select a checkbox (☐)
▶ (Finish)

Select at least 2 modes.

2 Select your preferred mode

A mode not selected in step 1 cannot be selected in this step.

● Changing the text entry method while entering text

When the Text entry (edit) screen is shown, your preferred text entry method is selected. There are 2 ways to switch to a different text entry method.

A change to the text entry method only applies to the current Text entry (edit) screen. When you exit text entry and then return to a Text entry (edit) screen later, your preferred text entry method will again be selected.

- In displays used for entering (editing) specific text, such as postal codes, it may not be possible to change the text entry method.

■ Changing from the Function menu

“CHG input method” in “Function menu (Text entry (edit) screen)” → P.511

■ Holding down (Mode) for 1 second or longer

The text entry method changes to the next method each time you hold down (Mode) for 1 second or longer, in the following sequence: “Mode 1 (5-touch)” → “Mode 2 (2-touch)” → “Mode 3 (T9 input)”.

Entering text in mode 2 (2-touch input)

Changing the input mode

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ▶ (Mode)

The input mode switches between "Full pitch" and "Half pitch" each time you press (Mode).

Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ▶ (FUNC)▶ "Half pitch/Full pitch"

When you change to "Full pitch", "1/1" appears in the information display area. When you change to "Half pitch", "1/2" appears.

Characters that can be entered in mode 2

<Example>To enter "う", select Full-pitch input mode and press 1 2 3 4.

To enter a full-pitch "B", select Full-pitch input mode and press 1 2 3 4.

To enter a half-pitch "B", select Half-pitch input mode and press 1 2 3 4.

Full-pitch input mode

Key	2nd key input									
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key input	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D E
		あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I J
		か	き	く	け	こ	f	g	h	i j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N O
		さ	し	す	せ	そ	k	l	m	n o
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S T
		た	ち	つ	て	と	p	q	r	s t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X Y
		な	に	ぬ	ね	の	u	v	w	x y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	- /
		は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	z			
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		☎
		ま	み	む	め	も				
	8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	*	#		☎
		や		ゆ		よ				
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4 5
		ら	り	る	れ	ろ				
	0	わ	を	ん			6	7	8	9 0
		わ	を	ん						

Half-pitch input mode

Key	2nd key input									
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key input	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D E
		ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d e
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I J
		カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	f	g	h	i j
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N O
		サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	k	l	m	n o
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S T
		タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	p	q	r	s t
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X Y
		ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	u	v	w	x y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	- /
		ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	z			
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&		☎
		マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ				
	8	ヤ	(	ユ	)	ヨ	*	#		☎
		ヤ		ユ		ヨ				
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4 5
		@	/	-	_	:	.ne.jp	.co.jp	.ac.jp	@docomo.ne.jp
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン			6	7	8	9 0
		ワ	ヲ	ン						

During reading input when you are storing entries in the UIM phonebook, Full-pitch input mode becomes katakana input.

- *1 : Pressing (1/2) switches between upper case input mode (top) and lower case input mode (bottom). You can also enter upper case text and then change it to lower case by pressing (1/2).
- *2 : These can also be used only when pictograph input is possible, such as "Text memo" or storing "Common phrases". Note that these icons are always entered as full-pitch characters. "Pictograph" is not possible when you are composing an SMS, but "☎" and "☎" can be entered.
- *3 : In "Full-pitch input mode", dakuten "゛" and han-dakuten "゜" are only displayed for characters with which dakuten can be used. Dakuten entered with other characters appear as spaces.
 ■ : Spaces are entered.

NOTE

- You may not be able to use mode 2 input. If this is the case, use mode 1 input instead.

Entering text in mode 3 (T9 input)

This mode allows you to enter text without pressing keys many times.

For example, to enter the “あした” reading, you only have to press the     for the respective line character to be input once each, then select the desired reading from the displayed list of candidates.

Mode 3 also features 2 input helper functions:

"Yomi edit" and "Fix mode". Yomi edit" enables you to edit the entered reading candidates, while you can use "Fix mode" to directly enter the desired reading. Mode 3 (T9 input) also works in tandem with the FOMA terminal's word prediction function (P505) to allow faster and easier text entry.

In Alphabetic (full-pitch and half-pitch) and Numeric (full-pitch and half-pitch) input modes, text entry automatically uses mode 1.

● Changing the input mode

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ► (Mode)

The input mode changes to the next mode each time you press  (Mode) in the following sequence: Alphabetic (half-pitch) → Numeric (half-pitch) → Kanji/hiragana (full-pitch) → Katakana (half-pitch). (Selecting "Full pitch" from the function menu enables you to use full-pitch when changing the input mode.)

Mode 3 (T9 input) operates in the Kanji/hiragana (full-pitch) and Katakana (full-pitch and half-pitch) input modes.

In Alphabetic (full-pitch and half-pitch) and Numeric (full-pitch and half-pitch) input modes, text entry automatically uses mode 1.

■ Characters that can be entered in mode 3

Key	Kanji/hiragana Input mode	Kana input mode
	あ column, 1	ア column, 1
	か column, 2	カ column, 2
	さ column, 3	サ column, 3
	た column, 4	タ column, 4
	な column, 5	ナ column, 5
	は column, 6	ハ column, 6

- For the characters assigned in "Alphabetic input mode" and "Numeric input mode", refer to the character assignments for "Mode 1 (5-touch)". → P.500
- Numeric character candidates are not displayed when you are entering reading to store entries in the UIM phonebook or entering Own dictionary readings.

- *1 : Changes the conversion candidate readings with dakuten "゛" and han-dakuten "゜" during reading input.
- *2 : Just like 5-touch input (mode 1), "゛", "ゝ", "ゞ", "゚", "ゝ", "ゞ", "ゟ", "゠", "ァ", "ア", "イ", "ゥ", "ウ", "ェ", "エ", "ォ", "ヰ", "ヱ", "ヲ", "ン", "ヴ", "ヵ", "ヶ", "ヷ", "ヸ", "ヹ", "ヺ", "・", "ー", "ヽ", "ヾ", "ヿ", "ヰ", "ヱ", "ヲ", "ン", "ヴ", "ヵ", "ヶ", "ヷ", "ヸ", "ヹ", "ヺ", "・", "ー", "ヽ", "ヾ", "ヿ" are displayed after readings and characters have been confirmed, but the dakuten "゛" and han-dakuten "゜" only appear when they are preceded by characters that can take dakuten or han-dakuten. (except for when the input mode is set to Katakana (half-pitch)).
- *3 : The lower case "㇏" can be entered in full-pitch character input.

● Entering Text

<Example: Entering “戸田” in T9 Kanji change mode>

1 (Mode) “Kanji/hiragana input mode”

 Enter characters



4 た **GHI** (た column) , **4** た **GHI** (た column) , **#** ダクテン **マ** (dakuten)

The predicted candidates for “ t^-t^+ ” are displayed.

■ If you press the wrong key

▶ Press CLR to delete the character. ▶ Press the key again.

■ If the entered texts has no recognized candidates

▶ Characters that cannot be recognized are displayed in gray. ▶ Use  to change the range of characters to be converted.

■ To change the conversion candidate display mode (kanji-kana)



- To view the word prediction conversion candidates



Press  to return to the conversion candidates shown before the word-prediction conversion candidates appeared. → P.505

3 Press to select a conversion candidate



The selected conversion candidate appears in the text entry area.

■ To return to entering characters

▶  (CLR)

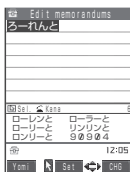
■ To convert directly to characters other than the displayed conversion candidates

▶  (CHG) ▶ Use  to select a candidate.

● Editing the conversion candidates

<Example: Entering “らわらわた” and converting to “爛々と”>

1 Enter characters



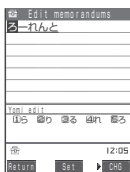
 (ら column),  (わ column),  (ら column),  (わ column),  (ら column)

The predictable conversion candidates for “らわらわた” are displayed. Candidates for “らんらんと” do not appear.

2 (Yomi)

The FOMA terminal switches to candidate editing mode and the cursor moves to the first candidate. The “ら” column characters appear in the conversion candidate display area.

3 Press the number on the keypad for the character you want to enter



In this case, press  (ら).

After you correct the character, the cursor moves to the next character. Use the same procedure to correct that character.

■ If you do not want to correct a conversion candidate

▶ Use  to move the cursor to the next character to be corrected.

■ To exit edit mode in mid-operation

▶  (Return)

The characters corrected so far are displayed as the conversion candidate.

4 Press to select “爛々と”



From next time, if “らわらわた” is input, “爛々と” will be displayed at the top of conversion candidates.

Entering Text

Using word prediction

Default setting
ON

The FOMA terminal's word prediction function works by automatically storing character strings that you enter so that the stored character string is included in your list of candidates as well as common phrases the next time you enter the same character string.

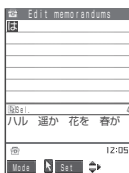
1 ► “Prediction” ► “ON”

- To inactivate the word prediction
► “OFF”

Using word prediction to enter text

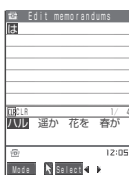
The word prediction function displays predictive candidates and historical candidates based on text you have entered in the past.

1 Enter the reading



The predictive candidates appear in the guidance area.

2 (1 second or longer)



The cursor appears in the guidance area and you can choose from the predictive candidates.

- To return to reading entry

►  CLR

- If no predictive candidates appear or there are no predictive candidates for the text you want to enter

► Enter the next reading with the entered text unchanged

3 Select a predictive candidate



Once you confirm the text, candidates to follow the text will appear.

4 Select a candidate

- If no candidates appear or if you do not want to enter any of them
► Enter the next section of text with the entered text unchanged

Displaying guidance

Default setting
ON

You can specify whether guidance (P.498) is displayed in the Text entry (edit) screen.

1 ► “Guidance” ► “ON”

- Not to display the guidance
► “OFF”

<Example: Entering “戸田俊司”>

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ▶ Enter the hiragana



■ If you press the wrong key

▶ Press **CLR** to delete the character. ▶ Press the key again.

■ If you press a key too many times

▶ **0** (Home)

The previous character assigned to that key appears.

■ When the next character to be entered is assigned to the same key

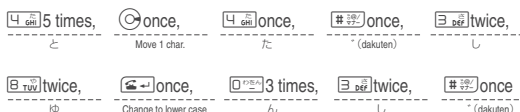
▶ **0** or press the key again and hold for one second or longer

Cursor moves and the following character can be entered now.

■ To confirm the hiragana

▶ **0** (Set)

<Mode 1>



<Mode 2>



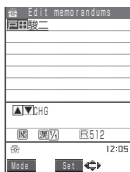
In mode 2, entering a single digit and then confirming the input deletes the text. Always enter 2 digits.

<Mode 3>



In mode 3, use **0** to highlight sections of text so that the candidates for the desired characters appear and use **077** to switch to Yomi edit mode.

2 Press **0** to convert the reading to kanji



The kanji candidate for the first phrase is highlighted and the kanji candidates for the remaining phrases are underlined ().

■ If the kanji candidate is the desired kanji

▶ **0** (Set)

The kanji are confirmed and the next phrase is highlighted.

■ To change the conversion range

▶ Use **0** to change the conversion range.

The kanji candidate changes as the conversion range changes. If there is no available kanji for the selected range, the hiragana are displayed.

3 Use **0** to display the conversion candidates



A list of conversion candidates for the highlighted phrase appears. Hiragana and katakana are included in the conversion candidates.

■ If the readings in the conversion range consists entirely of “あ” -level characters

Numbers are also included in the conversion candidates.

4 Select kanji

NOTE

- You can convert readings (hiragana) up to 20 characters long to kanji and convert up to 6 phrases at once.
- If the text is not converted to the desired kanji, changing the character reading to the "on" or "kun" reading may make the desired kanji appear.
- Where 2 or more characters cannot be converted at the same time, convert one character at a time.
- You can use kuten codes to enter kanji that cannot be entered by conversion. → P.515
- Some particularly complex kanji characters may be partly modified or abbreviated.
- If the converted characters exceed the limit on the number of characters that can be entered, a confirmation message appears asking whether to confirm the characters that do not exceed the limit.

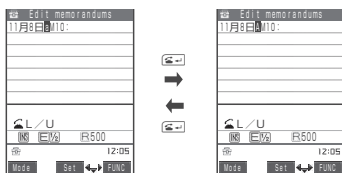
Switching between upper case and lower case

Use either of the following 2 methods to switch between upper case and lower case.

■ Pressing to switch the cases of entered characters

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ► Move the cursor to the character to be changed and press

The character switches between upper case and lower case each time you press the key. This method can only be used when  L/U" is displayed in the operation guidance.



■ Using the function menu to switch before entering

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ► (FUNC) ► "Lower case"/"Upper case"

When you change to "Lower case",  "sm" appears in the information display area. No icon appears when "Upper case" is selected.

Switching between Insert mode and Overwrite mode

When you enter text in "Insert", the new text is inserted into the existing text. In "Overwrite", the new text replaces the existing entered text.

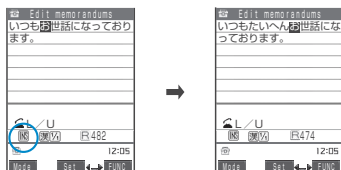
1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ► (FUNC) ► "Insert"/"Overwrite"

When you change to "Insert",  "INS" appears in the information display area, and  "OVR" appears when you select "Overwrite".

When the Text entry (edit) screen first appears, Insert mode is always selected.

Inserting text

Select "Insert" and use  to move the cursor to the position immediately to the right of the character, where you want to insert text. When you enter text, it is inserted to the left of the cursor.



● Overwriting text

Select "Overwrite" and use  to move the cursor to the text you want to overwrite. When you enter a character, it replaces the character in the cursor position.



● Inserting a space (blank)

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Space"

A full-pitch space is inserted in full-pitch input and a half-pitch space is inserted in half-pitch input.

NOTE

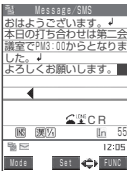
- A space (blank) is counted as a one full-pitch or half-pitch character.

● Inserting a line feed

You can begin a new line by entering a line feed symbol "↵". There are 2 ways to insert a line feed "↵".

■ Holding down for 1 second or longer

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ▶ Move the cursor to the point where you want to insert the line feed and hold down (1 second or longer)



A line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

■ Using the Function menu

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Line feed"

A line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

NOTE

- The line feed symbol can be deleted and overwritten in the same way as normal text.
- The line feed symbol is counted as 1 full-pitch character. However, in the SMS message body, it is counted as 2 characters in Japanese input mode and as 1 character in English input mode.
- You may not be able to insert a line feed in an i-mode text box.
- You cannot enter line feed symbols in a "Text memo" (P.430).

● Inserting symbols

You can enter symbols such as brackets, Greek characters and units.

Note that you cannot enter full-pitch symbols in the e-mail address storage display, i-mode mail address input display or URL input display.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ▶ (FUNC)▶ “Symbols” ▶ Select symbols

“Symbols and Special Character List”→P.522

■ Entering symbols

Entering and converting “きごう” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays the symbol candidates. You can also enter symbols by entering and converting a symbol name such as “かつこ” or “さんか”.

“Symbols in Japanese conversion”→P.522

NOTE

- Only half-pitch symbols are displayed when you can enter half-pitch characters only.

● Entering face symbols

You can enter the stored face symbols by selecting on the list.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ▶ (FUNC)▶ “Face Mark” ▶ Select face symbols

“Smiley Face Symbols List”→P.523

■ Entering Face symbols

Entering and converting “かお” or “かおもじ” in “Kanji/hiragana input mode” displays the face symbol candidates. You can also enter face symbols by entering and converting a face symbol name such as “ありがとう” or “さよなら”.

NOTE

- If you select the download dictionary for face symbols in “Download dictionary”, the face symbols stored in the download dictionary are also displayed.
- The selected face symbol is displayed at the top next time the face symbol list is displayed.

● Entering pictographs

You can enter pictographs such as a face, the weather or an animal in the Text Entry (Edit) display for items such as i-mode mail messages, text memos and common phrases.

- Up to 12 previously entered pictographs are stored in Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 respectively. The stored pictographs are displayed at the start of each row in the respective Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 displays. Pictographs are also stored when they are entered in “PI•SB input mode”.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ▶ (FUNC)▶ “Pictograph” ▶ Select a pictograph

“Pictographs List”→P.523

● Entering symbols and pictographs continuously

You can continue to display symbol and pictograph candidate displays so that symbols and pictographs can be entered until the candidates display is cleared.

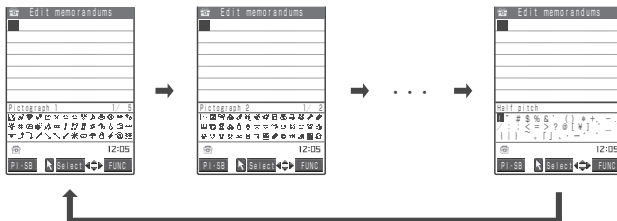
- Entering symbols→P.522
- Pictographs→P.523

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ▶ (FUNC)▶ “PI•SB input mode”

The Pictograph 1 candidates appear in the guidance area. The “current page/total pages” figures are displayed in the top-right corner of the guidance area.

2 Press (PI+SB) to switch to a different candidate display

Each time you press  (PI+SB), the candidate display changes in the following sequence: "Pictograph 1" → "Pictograph 2" → "Full pitch 1" → "Full pitch 2" → "Half pitch".



3 Select a symbol or pictograph



The selected symbol or pictograph is entered. You can then continue on directly to enter other symbols or pictographs.

4 When you have finished entering symbols and pictographs, press

Continuous pictograph/symbol input ends.

Deleting text

Use  to move the cursor to the text you want to delete and hold down  briefly (less than 1 second). The character in the cursor position is deleted.

■ When there is no character in the cursor position

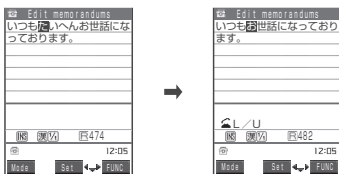
The character to the left of the cursor is deleted.

■ If you hold down for 1 second or longer

The character in the cursor position and all the characters to the right of the cursor are deleted.

■ If you hold down for 1 second or longer when there are no characters to the right of the cursor

All the text is deleted.



Data protection during text entry and editing

When you are entering text in the Text entry (edit) screen and the battery fails or you receive a voice call, the entered text is stored and not cleared from the screen.

■ If the battery fails

If the low-voltage alarm sounds during text entry, the Text entry (edit) screen is replaced by the "Recharge battery" message screen. When this happens, the entered text is automatically confirmed and saved so that you can continue entering the text when you power the FOMA terminal back up and retrieve the function. However, in some functions the entered data is not saved. Also, unconfirmed text that is being converted is not saved.

Re-editing the phonebook → P.109

■ If you press



If you press  while entering text, a message appears asking whether to exit text entry. However, this message does not appear if no text is entered.

<To quit without saving the text>

Select "YES". The FOMA terminal redisplay the previous screen or standby screen without saving the entered text.

You can also exit the text entry display without saving the entered text by pressing .

<To continue entering text>

Select "NO". The FOMA terminal returns to the Text entry (edit) screen with the entered text still displayed.

You can also return to the Text entry (edit) screen by pressing .

■ When you receive a voice call

If you receive a voice call while entering text, you can answer the call without disturbing the text being entered. When the call ends, the Text entry (edit) screen reappears. In the case of a voice call, you can return to the Text entry (edit) screen during the call by pressing  to display the Task menu. →P.409

Function menu (Text entry (edit) screen)

1 Text entry (edit) screen (FUNC) Select any item:

Item	Description
PI-SB input mode	"Entering symbols and pictographs continuously" → P.509
Face Mark	"Entering face symbols" → P.509
Lower case^{*1}	"Switching between upper case and lower case" → P.507
Half pitch^{*2}	"Switching between full-pitch and half-pitch characters" → P.500, 501
Copy	"Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.514
Cut	"Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.514
Paste	"Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text" → P.514
Common phrases	"Entering common phrases" → P.512
Space	"Inserting a space (blank)" → P.508
Line feed	"Inserting a line feed" → P.508
Symbols	"Inserting symbols" → P.508
Pictograph	"Entering pictographs" → P.509
Kuten code	"Entering Kuten Codes" → P.515
Overwrite^{*3}	"Switching between Insert mode and Overwrite mode" → P.507
Quote phonebook	"Entering text by quoting personal data or the phonebook entries" → P.512
Quote own number	"Entering text by quoting personal data or the phonebook entries" → P.512
Access reader	Pastes text data scanned in by the Access reader. "Scanning Text" → P.198
Bar code reader	Pastes text information acquired with the "Bar code reader". "Using the Bar Code Reader" → P.194
Refer dic.	Starts the dictionary. "Using Dictionaries" → P.431
Prediction OFF^{*4}	"Using word prediction" → P.505
CHG input method	Changes the text entry mode to "Mode 1 (5-touch)", "Mode 2 (2-touch)" or "Mode 3 (T9 input)".
T9 Kana CHG mode^{*5}	When you are entering text in T9 input mode, you can specify whether to convert entered characters to kanji or to kana. You can switch conversion modes only in the Text entry (edit) screen that is currently displayed. Once text entry exits and the Text entry (edit) screen reappears, it returns to the setting specified in "Character input method".
Jump	Moves the cursor quickly to the beginning or end of sentence.
Change window	When the operation display for a function and the Text Entry (Edit) display are shown concurrently in different windows on the FOMA terminal's display, this option switches between windows. "Changing the Active screen" → P.518

^{*1}: If you have selected the lower case, "Upper case" is displayed.

- *2: If you have selected the Half pitch, "Full pitch" is displayed.
 *3: If you have selected the Overwrite mode, "Insert" is displayed.
 *4: If you have selected the Prediction OFF, "Prediction ON" is displayed.
 *5: If you have selected the T9 Kana CHG mode, "T9 Kanji CHG mode" is displayed.

● Entering common phrases

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ► (FUNC) ► "Common phrases" ► Select a folder

List of common phrases → P.514

2 Select a common phrase ► (Select)

NOTE

- Common phrases can be used in the following Text Entry (Edit) displays:
 - Text memo
 - Common phrases
 - Common phrase folder name
 - Schedule
 - ToDo
 - Wake-up message
 - i-mode mail subject
 - i-mode mail message
 - i-mode mail header
 - i-mode mail signature
 - i-mode mail quotation marks
 - i-mode mail reply with ref
 - Enter auto sort setting subject
 - Enter mail search subject
 - Edit i-mode text box
 - Edit i-appli text
 - Dictionary
- Fixed common phrases are displayed (represented) differently depending on the input mode as shown below. Original common phrases and fixed common phrases that have been modified are displayed as stored regardless of the input mode.
 - Modes 1 and 3 : Displayed as kanji/hiragana in Kanji/hiragana input mode.
 Displayed as half-pitch katakana in other input modes.
 - Mode 2 : Displayed as kanji/hiragana in full-pitch input mode.
 Displayed as half-pitch katakana in half-pitch input mode.
- If the acceptable number of characters is exceeded when you enter a common phrase, a message appears saying that the limit has been exceeded. If you select "YES", the common phrase is entered and the excess text from the end of the common phrase onwards is truncated.

● Entering text by quoting personal data or the phonebook entries

In the Text Entry (Edit) display for an e-mail message or "Text memo", you can use this procedure to enter the name, reading, phone number, e-mail address, street address, birthday or memo stored in the phonebook or in "Own number".

- Data cannot be quoted from some Text entry (edit) screen.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ► (FUNC) ► "Quote phonebook" or "Quote own number"

■ When "Quote phonebook" is selected

- Select "Group search" or "Column search". ► Search the phonebook for the entry to be quoted.
 Searching the phonebook → P.111

■ When "Quote own number" is selected

- Enter your security code.

Security code → P.152

2 Use (Select) to select a checkbox (☐).



Quoting a phonebook entry

NOTE

- You cannot quote data when PIM lock is set.
- When you quote a street address, the postal code “〒” symbol and “-” are not quoted.
- By selecting “Access reader”, “Bar code reader” or “Refer dic.” from the Text Entry (Edit) display function menu (P.511), you can also use those functions to quote data.

<Store common phrases>

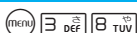
Modifying and Storing Common Phrases

This function allows you to store common phrases in advance so that they can be retrieved from the Text entry (edit) screen later.

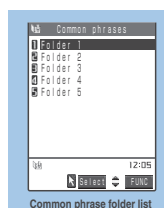
Common phrases are stored in 5 folders. Folders 1 and 2 each contain 10 preset fixed common phrases. You can modify preset common phrases. Folders 3 to 5 will each hold up to 10 original common phrases. You can also rename the folders to suit the uses of the common phrases they contain.

Composing a new common phrase

1



The “Common phrase folder list screen” appears.



Function menu▶P.513

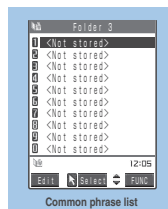
2

Select a folder

The “Common phrase list screen” appears.

3

Highlight “<Not stored>”▶(Edit)▶ Enter the common phrase



Function menu▶P.514

NOTE

- Common phrases can contain up to 64 full-pitch or 128 half-pitch characters.
- When you create an original common phrase to be used in mail subjects, messages, headers, signatures or as a quotation symbol, do not use “half-pitch katakana” or “pictographs” as these may not be displayed correctly. (Pictographs can be used when i-mode mail is exchanged.)
- Fixed common phrases are retrieved as kanji/hiragana when the text entry method is “Kanji/hiragana input mode” in mode 1 (5-touch) or mode 3 (T9 input) or “full-pitch character input” in mode 2 (2-touch), and as “half-pitch katakana” when another text entry method is used.

Function menu (Common phrase folder list screen)

1

Common phrase folder list screen▶(FUNC)▶Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit folder name	Edits the folder name. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch characters and 20 half-pitch characters.
Reset name	The folder name returns to the default folder name.

NOTE

- If there are no characters in the folder name when you set it, the folder name returns to the default folder name.

Function menu (Common phrase list screen)

1 “Common phrase list screen” ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	Edits the common phrase.
Delete this	Deletes one common phrase.
Delete all	▶Enter your security code▶ “YES” Deletes all the common phrases. Security code → P.152

NOTE

- If you delete one of the fixed common phrases, it reverts to the default common phrase set at the time of purchase.

■ Folder 1 (fixed common phrases)

No	Message
1	Sorry
2	Thank you
3	Congratulations!
4	It's time
5	Wait a minute
6	Just arrived
7	Schedule change
8	Where are you?
9	Do your best
0	What are you doing?

■ Folder 2 (fixed common phrases)

No	Message
1	All right
2	I hope you are well
3	Well done
4	Emergency
5	How do you think?
6	Please call
7	I will be late
8	Leave a message on voice mail
9	E-mail me via i-mode
0	Thank you for your help

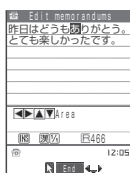
Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text

- Only one item of copied or cut data can be stored. Copying or cutting a new item overwrites the previously stored text.

Copying (or cutting) text

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ “Copy” or “Cut”

2 Move the cursor to the beginning of the text to be copied or cut ▶ (Start)



3 Move the cursor to the end of the text to be copied or cut▶⊙(End)

The selected text is stored. You can store up to 5,000 full-pitch characters or 10,000 half-pitch characters.

■ If the text was cut

The selected text is deleted, but it is stored in the FOMA terminal.

■ If you select a range that includes no text

The range is stored as half-pitch spaces.

Pasting text

Once you have cut or copied text, you can paste that text as many times as you like until you cut or copy other text next time or turn the FOMA terminal off.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498)▶Move the cursor to the position to paste▶⊙(FUNC)▶“Paste”

■ If the text to be pasted includes characters that cannot be entered in the intended Text Entry (Edit) display

A message appears notifying you that the characters will be replaced by spaces when the text is pasted.

NOTE

- If the acceptable number of characters is exceeded when you paste cut or copied text, a message appears saying that the limit has been exceeded. If you select “YES”, the text is pasted and the excess text from the end of the pasted text onwards is truncated. If you select “NO”, the text is not pasted and the original display reappears.

Entering Kuten Codes

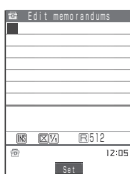
This function provides a way of entering kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols and alphanumeric characters using 4-digit “kuten” codes.

- Kuten code and characters that can be entered by using kuten codes →P.524

- The display of a screen may differ from the character or a symbol in the Kuten Code List.

<Example: Entering “慶” (kuten code 2336)>

1 Text entry (edit) screen (P.498)▶



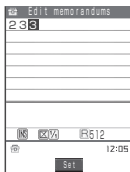
The input mode changes to Kuten code input and  appears in the information display area.

■ When the text entry mode is Mode 3 (T9 input)

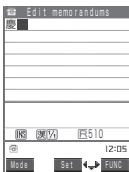
▶Text entry (edit) screen▶⊙(FUNC)▶“Kuten code”

2 Enter kuten code

The character (“慶”) for the entered code appears and the FOMA terminal reverts to the original input mode.







■ If there is no corresponding character for the entered kuten code

A space is entered.

NOTE

- When the text entry mode is “Mode 1 (5-touch)” or “Mode 2 (2-touch)”, you can still switch to kuten code input by selecting “Kuten code” from the function menu.

Storing Frequently Used Words

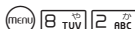
Default setting
Not stored

You can store frequently used words in the own dictionary under your preferred reading and recall those words by entering and converting the reading in the Text entry (edit) screen.

- You cannot enter pictographs, line feeds or common phrases as the words or their readings. A space is automatically omitted before it is stored.
- Symbols other than dakuten and han-dakuten “、。・！？” cannot be stored.

Adding a new word

1



The “Own dictionary screen” appears.

2

“<New>” ▶ Enter the word ▶ Enter the reading



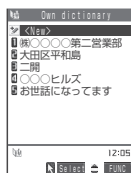
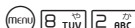
Function menu ▶ P.516

NOTE

- Own dictionary will hold up to 100 words.
- Words can include up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters. Readings can be up to 10 full-pitch hiragana.

Checking words

1



2

Select a word

■ To edit a word

▶ Highlight the word you want to change ▶ (Edit)

Function menu (own dictionary screen)

1

Own dictionary screen ▶ (FUNC) ▶ Select any item:

Item	Description
Edit	Edits the stored word.
Delete this	Deletes one word.
Delete selected	▶ Use () to select a checkbox () ▶ (Finish) ▶ “YES” Deletes multiple own dictionaries.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the own dictionaries. Security code → P.152

Resetting the Learning Record

The learning record contains character strings that were entered in the past and automatically stored as candidates for character conversion. This procedure resets the learning record to its default status at the time of purchase.

- 1**     ▶ **“Clear learned”** ▶ **Enter your security code** ▶ **Select any item:**

Item	Description
T9/Expect words/Pic.	Clears the learning records stored for “Mode 3 (T9 input)”, “Prediction” and “Pictographs”.
Kana/Kanji change/face	Clears the learning record stored for kana-kanji conversion and the sorting order of the face mark screen.

Selecting the Dictionaries

Default setting
Not stored

This function enables you to download dictionaries for Japanese text conversion from i-mode sites and specify them for use in conversion.

- The FOMA terminal will hold up to 5 downloaded dictionaries, 2 of which can be active.
- For information on downloading dictionaries → P.228

- 1**   ▶ **“DL dictionary”**

“Download dictionary screen” appears.

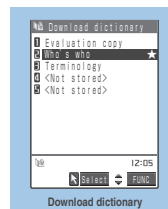
- 2** **Select a dictionary**

A star “★” appears next to the selected dictionary.

■ To deselect the selected dictionary

▶ **Select a dictionary marked with a star “★”.**

The dictionary is deselected and the star “★” disappears.



Function menu▶P.517

NOTE

- If you set the download dictionary for face symbols, up to 550 face symbols (including the pre-installed 50 face symbols) can be displayed on the face mark screen when you select “Face Mark” from the function menu during text input.
- If you add two download dictionaries for face marks and activate both, the face symbols stored in the first-activated download dictionary are displayed as a list.

Function menu (download dictionary screen)

- 1** **Download dictionary screen** ▶  (FUNC) ▶ **Select any item:**

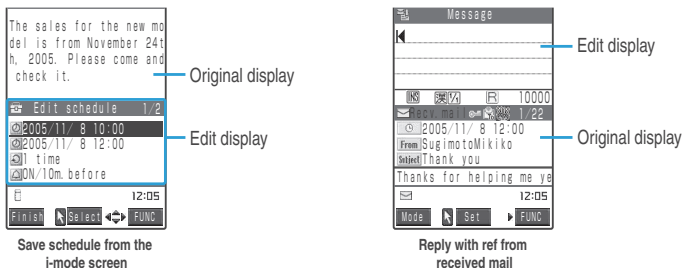
Item	Description
Edit title	Edits the title of the downloaded dictionary. You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters.
Set dictionary	Sets the downloaded dictionary or cancels the setting.
Dictionary info	Displays information for the downloaded dictionary.
Delete this	Deletes one download dictionary.
Delete all	▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES” Deletes all the download dictionaries. Security code → P.152

NOTE

- If you try to edit a dictionary name and try to set the name when it is completely blank, it reverts to the original title.

Changing the Active Screen

Some screens, such as that for replying to received mail while referring to the original message (Reply with ref), are split into 2 windows showing the function operation screen and the Text entry (edit) screen at the same time.



- The function operation screen and Text entry (edit) screen are displayed at the same time in the following situations:
 - Replying to i-mode mail while referring to the message
 - Adding schedule entries from i-mode mail
 - Adding schedule entries while referring to an i-mode screen
 - Entering words to search by activating dictionaries from an i-mode screen
 - Chat screen for Chat mail
 - Editing text while referring to the results of a dictionary search

Procedure for changing the active screen

When a function operation screen and the Text entry (edit) screen are displayed at the same time, you can use any of the 3 methods described below to switch between screens.

■ Hold down **[F]** for 1 second or longer

The active display changes each time you hold down **[F]** for 1 second or longer.

■ Select the active screen using the function menu

Select "Change window" from the function menu to change the active screen.

■ Select the active screen using the neuropointer

Slide the neuropointer key to display the neuropointer and then use it to select the active screen.

NOTE

- When you switch to the other screen, the entered text or cursor location in the current screen remain unchanged.
- You cannot change screens while you are entering a character reading.
- If you switch to using a received mail screen or i-mode screen while an edit screen is shown, you can only scroll the mail or i-mode screen. However, in the case of Received mail only, you can also copy text and set the character size.
- You cannot switch screens in the Chat screen for chat mail.

● Appendix/ Using the FOMA Terminal with External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Menu Function List	520
Symbols and Special Characters List	522
Pictographs Lists	523
Smiley Face Symbols List	523
Kuten Code List	524
Multi Access Combination Patterns	528
Multi Task Combination Patterns	528
Services Available for the FOMA terminal	529
Styleplus	530
Options and Accessories	530
■ Using the FOMA Terminal with External Devices	
Data Link Software	531
Movie Playing Software	532
■ Playing music	
Playing i-motion (including music) created on PC on the FOMA terminal	532
■ Troubleshooting	
Malfunction Checklist	533
If Any Error Message Appears	538
Warranty and After-Sales Service	545
Updating software	Software update 547
Protecting the FOMA terminal from Harmful Data	Scanning function 551
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones	553

Menu Function List

High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Mail				P.252
i-mode				P.212
i-appli				P.318
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume		P.77
		Select ring tone		P.126
		SRS_WOW		P.128
		Vibrator		P.128
		Illumination		P.141
		Manner mode set		P.131
		Disp. PH-book image	—	P.135
		Answer setting		P.73
		Fold setting		P.74
		Mail/Msg. ring time		P.130
		Ringing time		P.168
		Info notice setting		P.81
	Talk	Noise reduction		P.69
		Quality alarm		P.129
		Reconnect control		P.69
		Illumination in talk	—	P.142
		Call response setting	—	P.78
		Auto dial setting	—	P.435
	Video-phone	Visual preference	—	P.97
		Camera image sending	—	P.97
		Select image	—	P.98
		Voice call auto switch	—	P.97
		Remote observation	—	P.102
		Disp. setting VP	—	P.100
		Indicate V-phone	—	P.101
	Display	Display setting		P.133
		Display light		P.136
		Display design		P.137
		Indicator display		P.135
		Font		P.142
		Desktop icon		P.143
		Select language		P.54
		Original menu		P.139

High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Settings	Display	Menu display set		P.137
		Viewer settings	—	P.342
		Automatic display		P.123
		Icons		P.33
	Call time/ Charge	Call data		P.426
		Notify cost limit	—	P.428
		Reset call duration		P.427
		Auto reset all cost	—	P.427
		Call time display		P.142
	Clock	Set time		P.55
		Clock display		P.143
		Alarm setting	—	P.410
	Lock/ Security	All lock	—	P.155
		PIM lock	—	P.161
		Self mode	—	P.169
		Keypad dial lock	—	P.163
		Reject unknown	—	P.168
		Call setting w/o ID		P.167
		Change security code		P.152
		PIN setting	—	P.153
		Secret mode		P.157
		Secret only mode		P.158
		Scanning function	—	P.551
		Remote all lock		P.155
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	—	P.232
		Set check new message	—	P.301
		Host selection		P.232
		SMS center selection	—	P.313
		Certificate	—	P.238
		Certificate host	—	P.241
	i-appli settings	Disp. software info	—	P.321
		End stand-by display	—	P.329

High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Settings	External connection	USB mode setting	—	P.390
		Earphone	 [5] [1] [3]	P.130
		Automatic answer	 [9] [3] [4] [6]	P.435
	Other settings	Style mode	—	P.147
		Keypad sound	 [3] [6] [7]	P.129
		Charge sound	—	P.129
		Battery level	 [2] [3] [1] [3]	P.53
		Side keys guard	 [6] [7] [1] [3]	P.162
		Character input method	 [3] [6] [3] [6]	P.499
		Record display set	—	P.163
		Pause dial	 [9] [3] [4] [6]	P.67
		Sub-address	—	P.69
		Prefix setting	—	P.68
		Int'l dial setting	—	P.62
		PLMN setting	—	P.436
		Neuropointer	—	P.140
		Select icons setting	—	P.146
		Reset	 [2] [6] [3] [6]	P.436
		Initialize	—	P.441
		Software update	—	P.547
Data box	My picture		 [4] [6] [3] [6]	P.339
	i-motion		—	P.357
	Melody		 [1] [3] [6] [3]	P.375
	Chara-den		—	P.369
Tool	Camera	(In the Standby mode) 	P.178, 186	
		(Memo/Check) 		
	Schedule		 [4] [6] [3] [6]	P.414
	Alarm clock		 [4] [6] [3] [6]	P.412
	ToDo		 [9] [3] [4] [6]	P.419
	Text memo		 [4] [6] [2] [6]	P.430
	Calculator		 [6] [3] [4] [6]	P.429
	Play/Erase msg.			P.84
			(Memo/Check)	
	Record message		 [5] [6] [3] [6]	P.82
	Voice memo (in stand-by)		 [4] [6] [3] [6]	P.424
	Voice memo (during a call)	(During a call) 	P.424	
		(Memo/Check) 		
	Voice announce		 [9] [3] [4] [6]	P.425
	Receive Ir data		 [2] [6] [3] [6]	P.397, 399
	UIM operation		—	P.116
	Forwarding image		—	P.394
	Access reader		—	P.198
	Bar code reader		—	P.194
	SD-PIM		—	P.385
	Dictionary		—	P.431

High level item	Middle item	Detail item	Menu No. (Key operation)	See page
Network service	Check messages		 [2] [6] [3] [6]	P.446
	Caller ID notification		 [1] [3] [2] [6]	P.56
	Voice mail		—	P.445
	Call waiting		—	P.447
	Call forwarding		—	P.448
	Nuisance call barring		—	P.450
	Caller ID request		—	P.451
	Arrival call act		—	P.453
	Set arrival act		—	P.454
	Remote access		—	P.455
	Dual network		—	P.452
	English guidance		—	P.452
	Additional service		—	P.455
Phonebook	Service dialing number		—	P.453
	Multi number*		—	P.455
	Add to phonebook		—	P.107
	Search phonebook		—	P.111
	No. of phonebook		 [2] [6] [2] [6]	P.119
	Utilities		 [5] [3] [6] [3]	P.122
	Restrictions		 [1] [3] [2] [6]	P.166
Own data	Group setting		 [2] [6] [3] [6]	P.110
	Own number		 [6] [3]	P.56, 422
	Received calls		 [2] [6] [4] [6]	P.74
	Dialed calls		—	P.64
	Mail member		 [9] [3] [6] [3]	P.271
	Chat group		—	P.306
	Common phrases		 [3] [6] [3] [6]	P.513
	Own dictionary		 [6] [3] [2] [6]	P.516
	DL dictionary		—	P.517

* : This service is not provided as of August, 2005.

Appendix/Using the FOMA Terminal with External Devices/Troubleshooting

、 ° ´ ¨ · ∴ ∵ ? ! " ° ´
、 ° ´ ¨ · — — \ ∇ > // 全 ヲ
✕ ○ — — — / \ ~ || | … …
' ' " " () [] [] { }
< > 《 》 「 」 『 』 【 】 + -
± × ÷ = ≠ < > ≤ ≥ ∞ ∴ ∴
° ° ´ ° " ° ℃ ¥ \$ € £ % # &
* @ § ☆ ★ ○ ● ◎ ◇ ◆ □ ■
△ ▲ ▽ ▼ ※ 〒 → ← ↑ ↓ ■ ∈
≡ ≦ ≧ ≪ ≫ U ∩ ∧ ∨ ⇌ ⇒ ⇔
∇ ∃ ∠ ⊥ ^ ∂ ∇ ≡ ≐ ≪ ≫ √
∞ ∞ ∴ ∫ Å ‰ # b ♯ † ‡
¶ ○ む ん ゑ わ 卅 エ ヱ カ ケ A

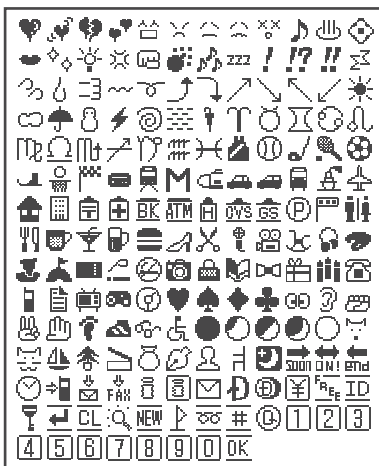
① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑩ ⑪ ⑫
⑬ ⑭ ⑮ ⑯ ⑰ ⑱ ⑲ ⑳ I II III IV
V VI VII VIII IX X ^キ ^ク ^ケ ^コ ^カ ^キ ^ク ^ケ ^コ
^ケ ^コ ^カ ^キ ^ク ^ケ ^コ ^カ ^キ ^ク ^ケ ^コ mm cm
km mg kg cc m² 平成 “ ” No. KK. Tel. ㊦ ㊧
㊨ ㊩ ㊪ ㊫ (株) (有) 明治 大正 昭和 ㊬ ㊭

! " # \$ % & ' () * + ,
- . / : ; < = > ? @ [¥
] ^ _ ` { | } ~ 。 「 」 、
· — °

You can enter symbols by entering and converting “きこう” to display the symbol candidates, and then selecting from the symbol candidates. You can also enter the name of a symbol in hiragana as follows and then convert the text into the desired symbol.

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
ひしがた	◇◆
ほし	☆★
まる	○●◎
むげん	∞
めす	♀
やじるし	↔↕↴
ゆうびん	〒
るーと	√
わる	÷

List of Pictographs 1



● Pictograph in a mail message may not be displayed properly on the receiving phone when sending to a mobile phone or PC that is not compatible with the pictograph. Even if the receiving phone is an i-mode terminal, Pictograph 2 may not be displayed properly if it is not compatible with Pictograph 2.

Smiley Face Symbols

You can enter smiley face symbols by entering and converting “かお” or “かおもじ” to display the smiley face symbol/candidates, and then selecting from the smiley face symbol candidates. You can also enter the meaning of a smiley face symbol in hiragana as follows and then convert the text into the desired smiley face symbol.

Characters to enter (meaning)	Face symbol
あせあせ (Sweat! Sweat!)	(: ^ _ ^ A
おは (Ah hal)	(o ^ o ^ o)
ありがとう / ありがとう (Thank!)	m (_) m
いかり (Angry)	(^)
いたた (Ouch!)	> <
いっぶく (Take a break)	(^) y ~
いっぶく (Take a break)	(^) y ~~~~~
ういんく (Wink)	(^ _)
うん (Yeah)	(^ ^) (^ ^)
え (What?)	(@ _ @)
えーん (Crying)	(: _)
えへん (Ahem!)	(^)
おーい (Hey!)	(^) /
がーん (Shocked!)	(_ □ _) !!
がんば (Cheer up!)	p (_) q
がんばい (Cheers!)	(^) / \ (^)
きこえない (Can't hear)	(^ _)

Characters to enter (meaning)	Face symbol
ぎゃはは(Ha-ha!)	(〇〇) /
きらーん(Twinkle, twinkle)	(☆. ☆)
こあら(Koala)	(-Q-)
こそこそ(Whisper)	(~・~)
こころにんじ(With goodpress)	(~ ~) ㊤
さよなら(Good-bye!)	(~) / ㊤
さよなら(Good-bye!)	(T T) /
じーつ(Gaze)	(-_-)
しくしく(Sob, sob)	(T T)
ちゅ(Kiss!)	(^3) /
ちゅ(Kiss! Kiss!)	(^ε^)-☆Chu!!
どき(Shocked!)	(◎-◎:)
ども(Well, well)	\ (_) (_) /
なぜ(Why?)	(? ?)
にこ(Smile)	(^-^)
にこ(Smile! smile)	(* ~ *)
ねIsn't it?)	(~) b

Characters to enter (meaning)	Face symbol
ねてる (Zzz...)	(-_-)ZZ
ねむい (I'm sleepy)	＼(〇)／
はてな (Wait a minute!)	(. . ?)
ばんざい (Hurrah)	＼(〇)／
びっくり (Twitcl)	(*・*)
ひやあせ (Cold Sweat)	(〇・)
ぶい (Vvvv!)	(~~~~)v
ぶたー (Pig)	) 〇 (
ほし (Star)	☆彗
ぼりぼり (Scratch, scratch)	(~~~)
む (Sullen)	(__-__)
むか (Offended)	(;_-+_
めがてん (W'H'A'T?)	(. . ;)
めも (Memo)	Φ(.)
わーい (Wow!)	∩()
わくわく (I'm excited)	o(=^=)o

● Face symbols can be entered from “Face Mark” in the function menu of Text entry (edit) screen.

Kuten Code List

<Guide to the kuten code table>

First enter "digits 1-3 of the kuten code" and then enter "digit 4".

● The kuten code actually displayed may differ from the table shown here.

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	
010 ! (7~9)	0	075 б	0	191 蟹	0
011 ! > 3	1	076 к	1	192 慨	1
012 ! > 3	2	077 л	2	193 概	2
013 ! > 3	3	078 м	3	194 概	3
014 ! > 3	4	080 ю	4	195 開	4
015 ! > 3	5	081 —	5	196 開	5
016 ! > 3	6	082 —	6	197 開	6
017 ! > 3	7	083 —	7	198 開	7
018 ! > 3	8	083 —	8	199 開	8
019 ! > 3	9	083 —	9	200 開	9
020 ! > 3	0	130 ①	0	201 開	0
021 ! > 3	1	131 ②	1	202 開	1
022 ! > 3	2	132 ③	2	203 開	2
023 ! > 3	3	133 ④	3	204 開	3
024 ! > 3	4	134 ⑤	4	206 開	4
026 ! > 3	5	135 ⑥	5	207 開	5
027 ! > 3	6	136 ⑦	6	208 開	6
028 ! > 3	7	137 ⑧	7	209 開	7
029 ! > 3	8	138 ⑨	8	210 開	8
031 ! > 3	9	139 ⑩	9	211 開	9
032 ! > 3	0	160 —	0	212 開	0
033 ! > 3	1	161 —	1	213 開	1
034 ! > 3	2	162 —	2	214 開	2
035 ! > 3	3	163 —	3	215 開	3
036 ! > 3	4	164 —	4	216 開	4
037 ! > 3	5	165 —	5	217 開	5
038 ! > 3	6	166 —	6	218 開	6
039 ! > 3	7	167 —	7	219 開	7
040 ! > 3	8	168 —	8	220 開	8
041 ! > 3	9	169 —	9	221 開	9
042 ! > 3	0	170 —	0	222 開	0
043 ! > 3	1	171 —	1	223 開	1
044 ! > 3	2	172 —	2	224 開	2
045 ! > 3	3	173 —	3	225 開	3
046 ! > 3	4	174 —	4	226 開	4
047 ! > 3	5	175 —	5	227 開	5
048 ! > 3	6	176 —	6	228 開	6
050 ! > 3	7	177 —	7	229 開	7
051 ! > 3	8	178 —	8	230 開	8
052 ! > 3	9	179 —	9	231 開	9
053 ! > 3	0	180 —	0	232 開	0
054 ! > 3	1	181 —	1	233 開	1
055 ! > 3	2	182 —	2	234 開	2
056 ! > 3	3	183 —	3	235 開	3
057 ! > 3	4	184 —	4	236 開	4
058 ! > 3	5	185 —	5	237 開	5
060 ! > 3	6	186 —	6	238 開	6
061 ! > 3	7	187 —	7	239 開	7
062 ! > 3	8	188 —	8	240 開	8
063 ! > 3	9	189 —	9	241 開	9
064 ! > 3	0	190 —	0	242 開	0
065 ! > 3	1	191 —	1	243 開	1
070 ! > 3	2	192 —	2	244 開	2
071 ! > 3	3	193 —	3	244 開	3
072 ! > 3	4	194 —	4	244 開	4
073 ! > 3	5	195 —	5	244 開	5
074 ! > 3	6	196 —	6	244 開	6
075 ! > 3	7	197 —	7	244 開	7
076 ! > 3	8	198 —	8	244 開	8
077 ! > 3	9	199 —	9	244 開	9
078 ! > 3	0	200 —	0	244 開	0
079 ! > 3	1	201 —	1	244 開	1
080 ! > 3	2	202 —	2	244 開	2
081 ! > 3	3	203 —	3	244 開	3
082 ! > 3	4	204 —	4	244 開	4
083 ! > 3	5	205 —	5	244 開	5
084 ! > 3	6	206 —	6	244 開	6
085 ! > 3	7	207 —	7	244 開	7
086 ! > 3	8	208 —	8	244 開	8
087 ! > 3	9	209 —	9	244 開	9
088 ! > 3	0	210 —	0	244 開	0
089 ! > 3	1	211 —	1	244 開	1
090 ! > 3	2	212 —	2	244 開	2
091 ! > 3	3	213 —	3	244 開	3
092 ! > 3	4	214 —	4	244 開	4
093 ! > 3	5	215 —	5	244 開	5
094 ! > 3	6	216 —	6	244 開	6
095 ! > 3	7	217 —	7	244 開	7
096 ! > 3	8	218 —	8	244 開	8
097 ! > 3	9	219 —	9	244 開	9
098 ! > 3	0	220 —	0	244 開	0
099 ! > 3	1	221 —	1	244 開	1
100 ! > 3	2	222 —	2	244 開	2
101 ! > 3	3	223 —	3	244 開	3
102 ! > 3	4	224 —	4	244 開	4
103 ! > 3	5	225 —	5	244 開	5
104 ! > 3	6	226 —	6	244 開	6
105 ! > 3	7	227 —	7	244 開	7
106 ! > 3	8	228 —	8	244 開	8
107 ! > 3	9	229 —	9	244 開	9
108 ! > 3	0	230 —	0	244 開	0
109 ! > 3	1	231 —	1	244 開	1
110 ! > 3	2	232 —	2	244 開	2
111 ! > 3	3	233 —	3	244 開	3
112 ! > 3	4	234 —	4	244 開	4
113 ! > 3	5	235 —	5	244 開	5
114 ! > 3	6	236 —	6	244 開	6
115 ! > 3	7	237 —	7	244 開	7
116 ! > 3	8	238 —	8	244 開	8
117 ! > 3	9	239 —	9	244 開	9
118 ! > 3	0	240 —	0	244 開	0
119 ! > 3	1	241 —	1	244 開	1
120 ! > 3	2	242 —	2	244 開	2
121 ! > 3	3	243 —	3	244 開	3
122 ! > 3	4	244 —	4	244 開	4
123 ! > 3	5	244 —	5	244 開	5
124 ! > 3	6	244 —	6	244 開	6
125 ! > 3	7	244 —	7	244 開	7
126 ! > 3	8	244 —	8	244 開	8
127 ! > 3	9	244 —	9	244 開	9
128 ! > 3	0	244 —	0	244 開	0
129 ! > 3	1	244 —	1	244 開	1
130 ! > 3	2	244 —	2	244 開	2
131 ! > 3	3	244 —	3	244 開	3
132 ! > 3	4	244 —	4	244 開	4
133 ! > 3	5	244 —	5	244 開	5
134 ! > 3	6	244 —	6	244 開	6
135 ! > 3	7	244 —	7	244 開	7
136 ! > 3	8	244 —	8	244 開	8
137 ! > 3	9	244 —	9	244 開	9
138 ! > 3	0	244 —	0	244 開	0
139 ! > 3	1	244 —	1	244 開	1
140 ! > 3	2	244 —	2	244 開	2
141 ! > 3	3	244 —	3	244 開	3
142 ! > 3	4	244 —	4	244 開	4
143 ! > 3	5	244 —	5	244 開	5
144 ! > 3	6	244 —	6	244 開	6
145 ! > 3	7	244 —	7	244 開	7
146 ! > 3	8	244 —	8	244 開	8
147 ! > 3	9	244 —	9	244 開	9
148 ! > 3	0	244 —	0	244 開	0
149 ! > 3	1	244 —	1	244 開	1
150 ! > 3	2	244 —	2	244 開	2
151 ! > 3	3	244 —	3	244 開	3
152 ! > 3	4	244 —	4	244 開	4
153 ! > 3	5	244 —	5	244 開	5
154 ! > 3	6	244 —	6	244 開	6
155 ! > 3	7	244 —	7	244 開	7
156 ! > 3	8	244 —	8	244 開	8
157 ! > 3	9	244 —	9	244 開	9
158 ! > 3	0	244 —	0	244 開	0
159 ! > 3	1	244 —	1	244 開	1
160 ! > 3	2	244 —	2	244 開	2
161 ! > 3	3	244 —	3	244 開	3
162 ! > 3	4	244 —	4	244 開	4
163 ! > 3	5	244 —	5	244 開	5
164 ! > 3	6	244 —	6	244 開	6
165 ! > 3	7	244 —	7	244 開	7
166 ! > 3	8	244 —	8	244 開	8
167 ! > 3	9	244 —	9	244 開	9
168 ! > 3	0	244 —	0	244 開	0
169 ! > 3	1	244 —	1	244 開	1
170 ! > 3	2	244 —	2	244 開	2
171 ! > 3	3	244 —	3	244 開	3
172 ! > 3	4	244 —	4	244 開	4
173 ! > 3	5	244 —	5	244 開	5
174 ! > 3	6	244 —	6	244 開	6
175 ! > 3	7	244 —	7	244 開	7
176 ! > 3	8	244 —	8	244 開	8
177 ! > 3	9	244 —	9	244 開	9
178 ! > 3	0	244 —	0	244 開	0
179 ! > 3	1	244 —	1	244 開	1
180 ! > 3	2	244 —	2	244 開	2
181 ! > 3	3	244 —	3	244 開	3
182 ! > 3	4	244 —	4	244 開	4
183 ! > 3	5	244 —	5	244 開	5
184 ! > 3	6	244 —	6	244 開	6
185 ! > 3	7	244 —	7	244 開	7
186 ! > 3	8	244 —	8	244 開	8
187 ! > 3	9	244 —	9	244 開	9
188 ! > 3	0	244 —	0	244 開	0
189 ! > 3	1	244 —	1	244 開	1
190 ! > 3	2	244 —	2	244 開	2

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
245 桐順御之効	袴鼓鯉鰯	315 雇後働功	377 誦水随杉	377 石盜客	棟等
246 桐順御之効	袴鼓鯉鰯	316 雇後働功	378 誦水随杉	378 島淘箇	桃東
247 桐順御之効	袴鼓鯉鰯	317 雇後働功	379 誦水随杉	379 嶗湯糖	桃東
248 桐順御之効	袴鼓鯉鰯	318 雇後働功	380 誦水随杉	380 嶗湯糖	桃東
249 桐順御之効	袴鼓鯉鰯	319 雇後働功	381 誦水随杉	381 嶗湯糖	桃東
250 桐順御之効	袴鼓鯉鰯	320 雇後働功	382 誦水随杉	382 嶗湯糖	桃東
251 巧拘江紅航	袴鼓鯉鰯	321 雇後働功	383 誦水随杉	383 嶗湯糖	桃東
252 巧拘江紅航	袴鼓鯉鰯	322 雇後働功	384 誦水随杉	384 嶗湯糖	桃東
253 巧拘江紅航	袴鼓鯉鰯	323 雇後働功	385 誦水随杉	385 嶗湯糖	桃東
254 巧拘江紅航	袴鼓鯉鰯	324 雇後働功	386 誦水随杉	386 嶗湯糖	桃東
255 巧拘江紅航	袴鼓鯉鰯	325 雇後働功	387 誦水随杉	387 嶗湯糖	桃東
256 巧拘江紅航	袴鼓鯉鰯	326 雇後働功	388 誦水随杉	388 嶗湯糖	桃東
257 巧拘江紅航	袴鼓鯉鰯	327 雇後働功	389 誦水随杉	389 嶗湯糖	桃東
258 巧拘江紅航	袴鼓鯉鰯	328 雇後働功	390 誦水随杉	390 嶗湯糖	桃東
259 巧拘江紅航	袴鼓鯉鰯	329 雇後働功	391 誦水随杉	391 嶗湯糖	桃東
260 巧拘江紅航	袴鼓鯉鰯	330 雇後働功	392 誦水随杉	392 嶗湯糖	桃東
261 巧拘江紅航	袴鼓鯉鰯	331 雇後働功	393 誦水随杉	393 嶗湯糖	桃東
262 佐詐哉災	叉鎖塞	332 雇後働功	394 誦水随杉	394 嶗湯糖	桃東
263 佐詐哉災	叉鎖塞	333 雇後働功	395 誦水随杉	395 嶗湯糖	桃東
264 佐詐哉災	叉鎖塞	334 雇後働功	396 誦水随杉	396 嶗湯糖	桃東
265 佐詐哉災	叉鎖塞	335 雇後働功	397 誦水随杉	397 嶗湯糖	桃東
266 佐詐哉災	叉鎖塞	336 雇後働功	398 誦水随杉	398 嶗湯糖	桃東
267 佐詐哉災	叉鎖塞	337 雇後働功	399 誦水随杉	399 嶗湯糖	桃東
268 佐詐哉災	叉鎖塞	338 雇後働功	400 誦水随杉	400 嶗湯糖	桃東
269 佐詐哉災	叉鎖塞	339 雇後働功	401 誦水随杉	401 嶗湯糖	桃東
270 佐詐哉災	叉鎖塞	340 雇後働功	402 誦水随杉	402 嶗湯糖	桃東
271 佐詐哉災	叉鎖塞	341 雇後働功	403 誦水随杉	403 嶗湯糖	桃東
272 佐詐哉災	叉鎖塞	342 雇後働功	404 誦水随杉	404 嶗湯糖	桃東
273 佐詐哉災	叉鎖塞	343 雇後働功	405 誦水随杉	405 嶗湯糖	桃東
274 使子施詔	刺屍官	344 雇後働功	406 誦水随杉	406 嶗湯糖	桃東
275 使子施詔	刺屍官	345 雇後働功	407 誦水随杉	407 嶗湯糖	桃東
276 使子施詔	刺屍官	346 雇後働功	408 誦水随杉	408 嶗湯糖	桃東
277 使子施詔	刺屍官	347 雇後働功	409 誦水随杉	409 嶗湯糖	桃東
278 使子施詔	刺屍官	348 雇後働功	410 誦水随杉	410 嶗湯糖	桃東
279 使子施詔	刺屍官	349 雇後働功	411 誦水随杉	411 嶗湯糖	桃東
280 使子施詔	刺屍官	350 雇後働功	412 誦水随杉	412 嶗湯糖	桃東
281 使子施詔	刺屍官	351 雇後働功	413 誦水随杉	413 嶗湯糖	桃東
282 使子施詔	刺屍官	352 雇後働功	414 誦水随杉	414 嶗湯糖	桃東
283 使子施詔	刺屍官	353 雇後働功	415 誦水随杉	415 嶗湯糖	桃東
284 使子施詔	刺屍官	354 雇後働功	416 誦水随杉	416 嶗湯糖	桃東
285 使子施詔	刺屍官	355 雇後働功	417 誦水随杉	417 嶗湯糖	桃東
286 使子施詔	刺屍官	356 雇後働功	418 誦水随杉	418 嶗湯糖	桃東
287 使子施詔	刺屍官	357 雇後働功	419 誦水随杉	419 嶗湯糖	桃東
288 使子施詔	刺屍官	358 雇後働功	420 誦水随杉	420 嶗湯糖	桃東
289 使子施詔	刺屍官	359 雇後働功	421 誦水随杉	421 嶗湯糖	桃東
290 使子施詔	刺屍官	360 雇後働功	422 誦水随杉	422 嶗湯糖	桃東
291 使子施詔	刺屍官	361 雇後働功	423 誦水随杉	423 嶗湯糖	桃東
292 使子施詔	刺屍官	362 雇後働功	424 誦水随杉	424 嶗湯糖	桃東
293 使子施詔	刺屍官	363 雇後働功	425 誦水随杉	425 嶗湯糖	桃東
294 使子施詔	刺屍官	364 雇後働功	426 誦水随杉	426 嶗湯糖	桃東
295 使子施詔	刺屍官	365 雇後働功	427 誦水随杉	427 嶗湯糖	桃東
296 使子施詔	刺屍官	366 雇後働功	428 誦水随杉	428 嶗湯糖	桃東
297 使子施詔	刺屍官	367 雇後働功	429 誦水随杉	429 嶗湯糖	桃東
298 使子施詔	刺屍官	368 雇後働功	430 誦水随杉	430 嶗湯糖	桃東
299 使子施詔	刺屍官	369 雇後働功	431 誦水随杉	431 嶗湯糖	桃東
300 使子施詔	刺屍官	370 雇後働功	432 誦水随杉	432 嶗湯糖	桃東
301 使子施詔	刺屍官	371 雇後働功	433 誦水随杉	433 嶗湯糖	桃東
302 使子施詔	刺屍官	372 雇後働功	434 誦水随杉	434 嶗湯糖	桃東
303 使子施詔	刺屍官	373 雇後働功	435 誦水随杉	435 嶗湯糖	桃東
304 使子施詔	刺屍官	374 雇後働功	436 誦水随杉	436 嶗湯糖	桃東
305 使子施詔	刺屍官	375 雇後働功	437 誦水随杉	437 嶗湯糖	桃東
306 使子施詔	刺屍官	376 雇後働功	438 誦水随杉	438 嶗湯糖	桃東
307 使子施詔	刺屍官	377 雇後働功	439 誦水随杉	439 嶗湯糖	桃東
308 使子施詔	刺屍官	378 雇後働功	440 誦水随杉	440 嶗湯糖	桃東
309 使子施詔	刺屍官	379 雇後働功	441 誦水随杉	441 嶗湯糖	桃東
310 使子施詔	刺屍官	380 雇後働功	442 誦水随杉	442 嶗湯糖	桃東
311 使子施詔	刺屍官	381 雇後働功	443 誦水随杉	443 嶗湯糖	桃東
312 使子施詔	刺屍官	382 雇後働功	444 誦水随杉	444 嶗湯糖	桃東
313 使子施詔	刺屍官	383 雇後働功	445 誦水随杉	445 嶗湯糖	桃東
314 使子施詔	刺屍官	384 雇後働功	446 誦水随杉	446 嶗湯糖	桃東
315 使子施詔	刺屍官	385 雇後働功	447 誦水随杉	447 嶗湯糖	桃東

[illegible]

First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes	First to third digit of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9		0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	
640 爲	燐	716 船	臘	792 鑿	鐳
641 犛	爛	717 艸	臘	793 鑿	鐳
642 犛	爛	718 艸	臘	794 鑿	鐳
643 犛	爛	719 艸	臘	795 鑿	鐳
644 犛	爛	720 艸	臘	796 鑿	鐳
645 犛	爛	721 艸	臘	797 鑿	鐳
646 犛	爛	722 艸	臘	798 鑿	鐳
647 犛	爛	723 艸	臘	799 鑿	鐳
648 犛	爛	724 艸	臘	800 鑿	鐳
649 犛	爛	725 艸	臘	801 鑿	鐳
650 犛	爛	726 艸	臘	802 鑿	鐳
651 犛	爛	727 艸	臘	803 鑿	鐳
652 犛	爛	728 艸	臘	804 鑿	鐳
653 犛	爛	729 艸	臘	805 鑿	鐳
654 犛	爛	730 艸	臘	806 鑿	鐳
655 犛	爛	731 艸	臘	807 鑿	鐳
656 犛	爛	732 艸	臘	808 鑿	鐳
657 犛	爛	733 艸	臘	809 鑿	鐳
658 犛	爛	734 艸	臘	810 鑿	鐳
659 犛	爛	735 艸	臘	811 鑿	鐳
660 犛	爛	736 艸	臘	812 鑿	鐳
661 犛	爛	737 艸	臘	813 鑿	鐳
662 犛	爛	738 艸	臘	814 鑿	鐳
663 犛	爛	739 艸	臘	815 鑿	鐳
664 犛	爛	740 艸	臘	816 鑿	鐳
665 犛	爛	741 艸	臘	817 鑿	鐳
666 犛	爛	742 艸	臘	818 鑿	鐳
667 犛	爛	743 艸	臘	819 鑿	鐳
668 犛	爛	744 艸	臘	820 鑿	鐳
669 犛	爛	745 艸	臘	821 鑿	鐳
670 犛	爛	746 艸	臘	822 鑿	鐳
671 犛	爛	747 艸	臘	823 鑿	鐳
672 犛	爛	748 艸	臘	824 鑿	鐳
673 犛	爛	749 艸	臘	825 鑿	鐳
674 犛	爛	750 艸	臘	826 鑿	鐳
675 犛	爛	751 艸	臘	827 鑿	鐳
676 犛	爛	752 艸	臘	828 鑿	鐳
677 犛	爛	753 艸	臘	829 鑿	鐳
678 犛	爛	754 艸	臘	830 鑿	鐳
679 犛	爛	755 艸	臘	831 鑿	鐳
680 犛	爛	756 艸	臘	832 鑿	鐳
681 犛	爛	757 艸	臘	833 鑿	鐳
682 犛	爛	758 艸	臘	834 鑿	鐳
683 犛	爛	759 艸	臘	835 鑿	鐳
684 犛	爛	760 艸	臘	836 鑿	鐳
685 犛	爛	761 艸	臘	837 鑿	鐳
686 犛	爛	762 艸	臘	838 鑿	鐳
687 犛	爛	763 艸	臘	839 鑿	鐳
688 犛	爛	764 艸	臘	840 鑿	鐳
689 犛	爛	765 艸	臘		
690 犛	爛	766 艸	臘		
691 犛	爛	767 艸	臘		
692 犛	爛	768 艸	臘		
693 犛	爛	769 艸	臘		
694 犛	爛	770 艸	臘		
695 犛	爛	771 艸	臘		
696 犛	爛	772 艸	臘		
697 犛	爛	773 艸	臘		
698 犛	爛	774 艸	臘		
699 犛	爛	775 艸	臘		
700 犛	爛	776 艸	臘		
701 犛	爛	777 艸	臘		
702 犛	爛	778 艸	臘		
703 犛	爛	779 艸	臘		
704 犛	爛	780 艸	臘		
705 犛	爛	781 艸	臘		
706 犛	爛	782 艸	臘		
707 犛	爛	783 艸	臘		
708 犛	爛	784 艸	臘		
709 犛	爛	785 艸	臘		
710 犛	爛	786 艸	臘		
711 犛	爛	787 艸	臘		
712 犛	爛	788 艸	臘		
713 犛	爛	789 艸	臘		
714 犛	爛	790 艸	臘		
715 犛	爛	791 艸	臘		

Multi Access Combination Patterns

Communication newly started Current communication status	Voice calls		Videophone calls		i-mode	i-αppli	i-mode mail	
	Outgoing	Incoming	Outgoing	Incoming			Send	Receive
During a voice call	△ ^{*1}	△ ^{*2}	×	△ ^{*3}	○	×	○	○
During a videophone call	×	△ ^{*3}	—	△ ^{*3}	×	×	×	×
During i-mode	○	○	○ ^{*5}	×	—	—	○	○
During packet communication with PC	○	○	×	×	×	△ ^{*6}	×	×
During 64K data communication	×	△ ^{*3}	×	△ ^{*3}	×	×	×	×

Communication newly started Current communication status	SMS		Packet communication		64K data communication	
	Send	Receive	Outgoing	Incoming	Outgoing	Incoming
During a voice call	○	○	○	○	×	△ ^{*3}
During a videophone call	×	○	×	×	×	△ ^{*3}
During i-mode	○	○	×	×	×	×
During packet communication with PC	○	○	—	—	×	×
During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×	×	△ ^{*3}

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated. △: Can be activated depending on situation. —: Functionally incompatible.

- *1 : If you have subscribed to a network service called "Call waiting", new calls can be originated by holding a current voice call.
- *2 : If you have subscribed to a network service called "Call waiting", calls can be answered by holding a current voice call. If you have subscribed to a network service called "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding", a new call can be answered after disconnecting a current call.
→ P.453
- *3 : If you have subscribed to a network service called "Call waiting", "Voice mail" or "Call forwarding", a new call can be answered after disconnecting a current call. → P.447
- *4 : The i-mode mail, Message Request and Message Free are not received and are stored in the i-mode Center instead. You can receive those stored i-mode mail, Message Request and Message Free by "Check new message" after the current communication ends.
- *5 : Start Video-phone after ending the current i-mode connection.
- *6 : The i-αppli software communication is unavailable.

Multi Task Combination Patterns

Function to use Current status	Mail	i-mode menu/ i-channel list	i-αppli	Settings	Data box	Tool	Network service	Phone book	Own data	Original menu
During starting Mail group	○ ^{*1}	○	○	○ ^{*2}	○	○ ^{*3}	○	○ ^{*4}	○	○
During starting i-mode group	○	×	×	○ ^{*2}	○	○ ^{*3}	○	○ ^{*4}	○	○
During starting Settings group	○	○	○	×	○	○ ^{*3}	×	○ ^{*4}	○	○
During starting Tool group	○	○	○	○ ^{*2}	×	×	○	×	×	○
During a videophone call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	
During a voice call	○ ^{*6}	○ ^{*6}	×	×	×	×	○ ^{*6} ^{*9}	○ ^{*4} ^{*6}	○ ^{*6} ^{*10}	○ ^{*6}
During packet communication with PC, etc.	○	○ ^{*11}	○	○ ^{*2}	○	○ ^{*3}	○	○ ^{*4}	○	○
During 64K data communication	○	○ ^{*11}	×	×	×	×	○ ^{*9}	○ ^{*4}	○ ^{*10}	○

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated.

- *1 : "Compose message" and "Compose SMS" cannot be used simultaneously.
- *2 : Unavailable depending on a function.
- *3 : "Voice announce", "Receive Ir data", "UIM operation" and "SD-PIM" are unavailable.
- *4 : "Restrictions" is unavailable.
- *5 : Holding down  (Memo/Check) for one second or longer allows you to use "Voice memo (during a call)", which is unavailable while switching between voice call and videophone call.
- *6 : It is not available while switching between voice call and videophone call.
- *7 : Only "Set time", "Keypad sound" and "Pause dial" are available.
- *8 : Only "Camera", "Schedule", "ToDo", "Text memo", "Calculator", "Voice memo (during a call)", "Access reader", "Bar code reader" and "Dictionary" are available. However, "Voice memo (during a call)" is not available during 64 data communication. While the lists and details of data scanned by the "Access reader" and "Bar code reader" can be displayed, new scans cannot be performed. Only "Photo mode" and "Continuous mode" are available in "Camera".
- *9 : "Voice mail" cannot be played. Special numbers (P.455) cannot be dialed (but can be dialed using USSD).
- *10 : "Common phrases", "Own dictionary" and "DL dictionary" are unavailable.
- *11 : When you change the "i-Channel host" by "Host selection", i-channel list may be unavailable.
- *12 : Only "Indicate V-phone" is available.

Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Available service		Phone number
Collect call (calls charged to the recipient)		(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay) (Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)		(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay)	8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (pay)		(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (pay)		Area code of an area you want to know + 177
Emergency call to the police		(No area code) 110
Emergency call for a fire engine or an ambulance		(No area code) 119
Emergency call for help with maritime accidents		(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (pay)		(No area code) 171

NOTE

- When you use the Collect Call Service (106), the receiver will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge for each call (90 yen (94.5 yen tax included)). (As of August, 2005)
- When you use the Directory Assistance Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 100 yen (105 yen tax included). A free service is available for persons with sight or upper-limb handicaps. For details, call 116 (NTT Sales) from a general phone. (As of August, 2005)
- You cannot be specified the location from which you are calling when you dial 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal. Because you may be asked to receive a confirmation call from the relevant service (police, fire service, etc.), state that you are calling from a mobile phone and provide your current location. Also, to prevent the call from dropping out before it is completed, stand still while talking. Do not turn the FOMA terminal off immediately after making the call, but leave it turned on for at least 10 minutes so that you can receive calls.
- Depending on your location, you may not be connected to the police or the fire department for the area you are in. If this happens, call from the nearest pay phone or general phone.
- If you are using a "Call forwarding" service from a general phone and a mobile phone is set as the forwarding number, depending on the settings of a general phone or a mobile phone, the caller may simply hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy with another call, outside the service area or turned off.
- You cannot use services such as 116 (NTT Sales), Dial Q2, Message Dial or Credit Call. (Automatic credit calls can be made to the FOMA terminal from a general phone or payphone.)

Styleplus

You can change the color of styleplus of the FOMA terminal by using the styleplus N02 other than the supplied styleplus.

- Color variations of the styleplus → P.147
- By scanning QR codes attached to styleplus, you can add contents. → P.194
- You can set Style mode contents all at once by using the added contents. → P.148
- Do not use the FOMA terminal without styleplus. It reduces robustness of the FOMA terminal and may cause breakage or malfunction.

Removing/Attaching the styleplus

Note that when you try to attach or remove the styleplus, keep the FOMA terminal folded and held in your hand.

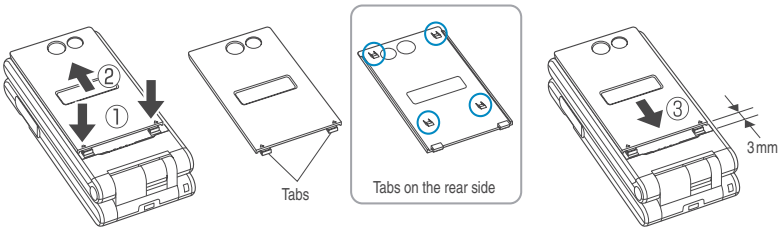
1 Remove the styleplus

Press the styleplus in the direction ① and slide the styleplus in direction ②.

2 Attach the styleplus

Put the styleplus spacing about 3 mm and align 6 tabs of the styleplus into the groove in the FOMA terminal (Phone), and slide the styleplus in direction ③ until the catch clicks shut.

* : If you put the 2 tabs without spacing about 3 mm, the 4 tabs on the rear side do not match to the groove. Note that using excessive force in this state may damage the styleplus.



NOTE

- Note that using excessive force to remove/attach the styleplus could damage the tabs of the styleplus.
- Note that removing/attaching the styleplus frequently could loose the grip of the mounting of the styleplus.
- For more details, refer to the instructions of the styleplus N02.

Options and Accessories

By combining various options and accessories sold separately, your FOMA terminal can support a wide range of applications to meet both your personal and professional needs. Note that some products may not be available depending on the area you are in. For more information, contact an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.

For details of options and accessories, refer to relevant User's Manual.

- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001^{*1}/P002^{*1}
- Stereo Earphone Set P001^{*1}
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- FOMA USB Cable
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Desktop Holder N08
- Battery Pack N10
- Back Cover N08
- Styleplus N02
- In-Car Holder N07
- Carry Case N09
- Data Communications Adapter N01

- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01^{*2}
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01

*1: To connect to FOMA N701i, the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is necessary.

*2: FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is needed to connect to the FOMA N701i.

Data Link Software

By using "FOMA N701i Data Link Software", you can transfer data such as Phonebooks, schedule, mail, melodies, pictures (still images), movies and i-motion.

You can download the Data Link Software for the FOMA N701i from the NEC website:

- NEC ワイワイもばいる (WaiWai Mobile)
<http://www.n-keitai.com/>

* "FOMA N701i Data Link Software" is in Japanese only.

Visit the website above or help of the Data Link Software for the detailed description for downloading method, transferable data, operating environment, operating method and restricted items.

(You cannot download it using the site connection function of the FOMA terminal via i-mode. Use a PC to download. You can use it for free of charge. You will be separately charged for communication fees when downloading.)

- Setting environment and note

A "FOMA USB Cable (optional)" is required to connect to a PC. You cannot use it for infrared exchange. For the other operation environments and supported OS refer to the download page "ソフトウェアのご紹介".

Since the Data Link Software uses OBEX (Object Exchange) for data transfer, refer to "Forwarding data by Infrared data exchange/Cable connection" (P.394) as well.

You cannot transfer information downloaded using i-mode/i-appli to anywhere other than the FOMA terminal even using the Data Link Software according to the Copy Right Laws. You cannot transfer data prohibited to be output from your FOMA terminal, either.

■ Supported OS

Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese versions)

* PC/AT compatible model on which one of the Operating Systems above runs

■ Before using the product

- NEC Corporation (hereafter referred to as "our company") does not guarantee to users regarding licensed programs operation, intended purpose compatibility, compatibility or reliability regarding result of use, that this software is free from defects whatsoever. Any problems or difficulties arising with regard to the licensed programs are the responsibility of the user and any costs will be borne by the user.
- Our company does not take any responsibility about the damage based on the reparations responsibility of having been made to the users from the damage (the case where our company foresees per damage generating, or it may foresee being included.) produced from a user's lost profits and the special situation, and the third person in any cases. Moreover, a user shall not perform any claim to our company, either.

Inquiries about Data Link Software

NEC (NEC NTT DoCoMo Terminals Marketing and Sales Division)

■ From an ordinary(landline) phone:

 **0120-102-001** (Japanese only)

Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm

(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)

* Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phone or PHSSs.

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Movie Playing Software

- To play a movie (MP4-formatted file) on PC, install QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP) of Apple Computer, Inc.
- Download QuickTime from the following website:
<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>
 - To download, you need PC to access Internet. You are charged for the Internet communication fee to download the software.
 - See the website above for more details on the environment, how to download or how to operate.

Playing i-motion (including music) created on PC on the FOMA terminal

You can convert songs on CD you purchased to i-motion data and play them on the FOMA terminal.

- You can enjoy i-motion stored on the miniSD memory card (P.380) using the FOMA terminal or PC.
 - The replay continues even if you fold the FOMA terminal during the replay. Use side keys () to adjust the volume.
 - You can play all songs in the folder continuously (played repeatedly on the FOMA terminal). → P.362

- The miniSD memory card is an optional accessory. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, you can purchase one at electrical appliance store, etc.

- * You can enjoy the music stored on the miniSD memory card within personal use. Take great care not to infringe on the third party's intellectual property right such as copyright, etc.
- * Do not copy or move the music stored on the miniSD memory card to PC or other media.



1 Use the conversion software to convert a song or movie to play on the FOMA terminal into the AAC-format, and then save it to PC

For information on how to use the software, check with the manufacturer.

2 Copy the converted file to the miniSD memory card

Copy the converted file using PC equipped with the reader/writer of the miniSD memory card. The FOMA terminal is also available as the reader/writer of the miniSD memory card using the FOMA USB Cable (optional). → P.389

■ To copy the converted file to the miniSD memory card

- ① Rename the converted file to "MOLaaa.3gp"*

* : "aaa" is a hexadecimal number between 001 and FFF using half-pitch numbers between 0 and 9 and half-pitch alphabets between A and F.

<Example: The file name is "Music data.xxx">

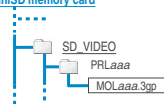
"Music data.3gp" (Change the extension to "3gp")



"MOLaaa.3gp" (Change the file name to "MOLaaa")

- ② Make the "PRLaaa" folder under the "SD_VIDEO" folder on the miniSD memory card as shown on the right, and then copy the file to the "PRLaaa" folder
 - If the miniSD memory card does not contain the "SD_VIDEO" folder, create the folder tree as shown on the right on PC.
 - Folder structure of the miniSD memory card → P.382

miniSD memory card



3 Insert the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal and then play the music

Select the file copied in Step 2.

Setting "Set repeat play" (P.362) to "ON" plays all songs repeatedly in the display order starting with the selected file in the folder.

How to play i-motion → P.357

NOTE

- If the mail "Receiving display" (P.299) is set to "Alarm preferred", receiving mail, Message Request/Free while playing music stops the playback and change the screen to the receiving screen.

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. → P.380

Malfunction Checklist

- Check first whether the software update is required. If it is required, update the software.
Updating software → P.547

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
The FOMA terminal does not turn on. (The FOMA terminal cannot be used.)	● Is the battery pack properly attached? ● Has the battery run out?	P.48 P.53
The animation shown on the right appears and an alarm tone sounds.	● The battery has run out. Charge the battery pack. 	P.53
The "📶" icon appears and I hear a busy tone.	● Are you outside the service area or in a location with poor radio wave reception? 	P.54
I cannot make a call by pressing the dial keys.	● Is Keypad dial lock set? ● Is Self mode set? ● Is Restrict dialing set?	P.163 P.169 P.165
I dialed a number and initiated the call, but all I hear is a busy tone.	● Did you start dialing without waiting for the dial tone first? ● Did you dial the area code? ● Is the "📶" icon displayed? ● Is "Please wait" displayed?	P.58 P.58 P.54
I cannot receive calls. Or I cannot hear the ring tone.	● Are any of the following functions set? - In Restrictions · Call rejection · Call forwarding · Set mute seconds - Reject unknown - In Call setting w/o ID · Not supported: Reject · User unset: Reject · Call acceptance · Voice mail · Payphone: Reject ● Is the FOMA terminal set to Manner mode? ● Is the FOMA terminal set to Driving mode? ● Is All lock set? ● Is Self mode set? ● Is the start time of voice mail or call forwarding service set to 0? ● Is caller ID request set to Activate? ● Is mova valid with the dual network service? ● Is the Ring volume set to "Silent" ?	P.165 P.168 P.168 P.167 P.130 P.79 P.155 P.169 P.445 P.449 P.451 P.452 P.77
Mail ring tones and alarm tones sound but no ring tone sound when a call comes.	● Is "Set mute seconds" of "Ringing time" set to longer time (such as 99 seconds)? Set "Set mute seconds" to shorter time.	P.168
The records of dialed calls/ received calls, redial, received address /sent address disappear automatically.	● Is "Keypad dial lock" set? ● Is "PIM lock" set?	P.163 P.161
The Neuropointer does not move quickly.	● Adjust the slide setting.	P.140

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
A different ring tone sounds from what is set up when you receive a call.	● Priority is assigned as follows for a ring tone when incoming call settings of each function are duplicated. ① has the highest priority. ① Ring tone for phonebook utilities ② Ring tone for group utilities ③ Ring tone of "Select ring tone"/Ring tone of "Style mode" The following priority sequence is applied to the ring tone for the phonebook or group utilities. ① has the highest priority. ① i-motion for the Ring tone ② i-motion for Image ③ i-motion (without movie) or melody for the Ring tone	P.126 P.147 P.119
A different ring tone sounds from what is set up when you receive mail.	● Priority is assigned as follows for a ring tone when mail settings of each function are duplicated. ① has the highest priority. ① Mail ring tone for phonebook utilities ② Mail ring tone for group utilities ③ Mail for Select ring tone/Mail ring tone for Style mode	P.119 P.126 P.147
A different image is displayed from what is set up when you receive a call.	● Priority is assigned as follows for image display when incoming call settings of each function are duplicated. ① has the highest priority. ① Phonebook utilities image ② Group utilities image ③ Add to phonebook image ④ i-motion for Select ring tone ⑤ Image for Display setting/Image for Style mode The phonebook or group utilities priority order is as follows. ① has the highest priority. ① i-motion for Ring tone ② i-motion or image for Image	P.107 P.126 P.133 P.135 P.147 P.119
A different incoming call lamp by the color or flashing pattern from what is set up glows when you receive a call.	● Priority is assigned as follows when illumination settings of each function are duplicated. ① has the highest priority. ① Illumination for phonebook utilities ② Illumination for group utilities ③ Illumination	P.119 P.141
The incoming display or ring tone is the default setting.	● Depending on the combination of receiving display, ring tone and precedence setting, either the receiving display or the ring tone may revert to the default set at the time of purchase.	—
The ring tone I hear when I receive mail is not the tone I set for mail.	● If a distinctive mail ring tone is set for the mail address, that ring tone sounds instead. ● If a distinctive ring tone is set for the group, that ring tone sounds instead. ● If a distinctive ring tone is set for the mail address and the group, the ring tone set to the mail address sounds instead. ● If you have received multiple mails and a distinctive ring tone was set for the last mail to be received, the tone set for that mail address sounds. ● When you receive multiple items of mail that includes chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for chat mail. ● If the sender's mail address is in the "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp" format, store only that phone number as mail address and set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address. ● Is the sender's mail address (the mail address shown in the received mail details screen) stored in the Phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address? ● If you receive SMS, a distinctive mail ring tone set for the phone number in the Phonebook sounds.	P.119 P.107 P.119
Characters are displayed instead of images or i-motion.	● If one of the following is displayed, the image or i-motion is one that cannot be selected by the function in use. Select an image or i-motion for which the following is not displayed. "Not available", "Expired file", "No preview data". However, "No preview data" is also displayed for i-motion other than 176 dots wide × 144 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high, and only the audio may playback. ● If "ASF" is displayed, the preview display is not displayed but the image or i-motion can be played.	P.339 P.357 P.357

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
When illumination flashes for incoming mail, the color is not the color I specified.	● The incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the mail illumination that is set to the mail address. ● The incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the mail illumination that is set to the group. ● If you set the mail illumination to the group and the mail address, the incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the mail illuminations that is set to the mail address. ● If you receive two mails or more, the incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the mail illumination that is set to the last received mail address. ● If the sender's mail address is in the "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp" format, store only that phone number as the mail address and set a distinctive mail illumination for that mail address. ● Is the sender's mail address (the mail address shown in the received mail details screen) stored in the Phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive mail illumination for that mail address? ● If you receive SMS, a distinctive illumination set for the phone number in the Phonebook flashes.	P.119 P.107 P.119
The mail ring tone sounds but no mail is received.	● Is "Message notification" set? The mail ring tone sounds to notify that the number of voice mails increases when 1 or more additional voice mails were recorded while you were outside the service area or the FOMA terminal was powered off, and then you come in the service area again or turn on the FOMA terminal.	P.446
The FOMA terminal cannot be charged (The charge lamp is not turned on).	● Is the battery pack properly attached to the FOMA terminal? ● Is the adapter firmly plugged into the electrical outlet or cigarette lighter socket? ● Is the adapter properly attached to the FOMA terminal? (If you are using the AC adapter, make sure that the AC adapter connector is firmly plugged into the FOMA terminal or desktop holder).	P.48 P.51 P.52
The key does not sound when I press it (No key tone).	● Is "Keypad sound" set to "OFF"? ● Is the FOMA terminal set to Manner mode?	P.129 P.130
I cannot answer voice call/ videophone calls using Any key answer.	● Is "Answer setting" set to "Quick silent" or "OFF"? ● You cannot answer videophone calls using Any key answer.	P.73
The other party's voice is difficult to hear during calls.	● Is the earpiece speaker placed properly against your ear? ● Is anything such as seal obstructing the earpiece speaker? ● Is anything obstructing the speaker during hands-free? ● Did you change the "Volume" setting? Try changing this setting until you can hear the other party easily.	P.30 P.77
The other party's voice is too loud during calls.	● Did you change the "Volume setting"? Try changing this setting until you can hear the other party easily.	P.77
The other party cannot hear me.	● Is anything obstructing the mouthpiece?	P.30
The message "All lock" and the "  " mark appear.	● Enter your security code, and cancel All lock.	P.157
I cannot operate the FOMA terminal using the side keys when it is folded.	● Is "Side keys guard" set to "ON"?	P.162
I cannot check missed calls using  when the FOMA terminal is folded.	● Is "Info notice setting" set to "OFF"? ● Is "Side keys guard" set to "ON"?	P.81 P.162
The date is displayed in Japanese.	● Is Japanese selected in "Select language"?	P.54
The display is dim.	● Is the brightness setting of the display light set to "Level 1"?	P.136
The display, indicator display and display light of the keypad do not turn on.	● Is Lighting of the display light set to "OFF"? ● Hold down  for 1 second or longer to turn the display light on or off. Please note that the display light turns off when you hold down  for 1 second or longer during operation such as creating a mail.	P.136
The motion of the screen during a videophone call is not smooth.	● Is "Display screen size" of "Disp. setting VP" set to "Large"? Set it to "Normal".	P.100

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
When I receive an incoming call immediately after turning on the power, the phone number is displayed but the name stored in the Phonebook is not.	● The FOMA terminal may be reading the FOMA card (UIM) immediately after turning on the power. The Phonebook function may not be available during that time.	—
It takes some time for the power to turn on after  has been held down for 1 second or longer.	● When Phonebook, etc. has reached full capacity, data verification takes some time.	P.119
The call does not finish even if I press  .	● This may happen when you perform operations using keys ( to  ,  , and ) according to the recorded announcement. In this case, press  again.	—
Nothing appears on the display and  and  are flashing.	● The FOMA terminal is in Power saver mode. Press any keys to cancel Power saver mode.	P.136
No incoming call reaction (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) happens when a call comes.	● No incoming call reaction (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) happens until the set time has passed when you receive a call from a phone number not stored in the Phonebook or from a caller who does not notify its caller ID if "Set mute seconds" of "Ringing time" is set to other than 0 second.	P.168
The figure of the accumulated charge does not increase.	● The figure stored in the FOMA card (UIM) has reached the limit (approx. 16.77 million yen). You can reset the figure to 0 yen.	P.427
When I receive SMS, the name stored in the Phonebook is not displayed.	● Did you correctly store the phone number of the sender on the phone number line () of the Phonebook?	P.107
Mails are not automatically filtered.	● If the other party's mail address is "Telephone Number@docomo.ne.jp", register the telephone number only in the Auto-sort settings. ● If the other party's mail address is other than "Telephone Number@docomo.ne.jp", register the complete address including the domain name in the Auto-sort settings to be automatically allocated.	P.290
Mails are not automatically received.	● If you have set "Receive option setting" to "ON", set it to "OFF".	P.276
N701i communication setting file (driver) cannot be installed or data communication is not available.	● If you have set USB mode setting to "miniSD mode", set it to "Communication mode".	P.389
i-mode, i-mode mail or i-appli cannot be used.	● Is "PIM lock" set?	P.161
i-mode, i-mode mail or i-appli are not accessible.	● If you have not set "Host selection" to "i-mode", set it to "i-mode" to use the i-mode. ● If you started subscribing to the i-mode Service after purchasing the terminal, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	P.232 —
Even if mail has been received, no incoming call notification operation (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp) is performed.	● Haven't you set "Mail/Msg. ring time" to "OFF"? ● Haven't you set "Receiving display" to "Operation preferred"?	P.130 P.299
Sent mail does not remain in the Outbox.	● Haven't you set "Sort all" to the folder of a mail-connected i-appli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-appli and then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm.	P.290
Received mail does not remain in the Inbox and  does not disappear.	● Doesn't  appear on the folder of a mail-connected i-appli in the Inbox? Or, haven't you set "Sort all" to the folder of a mail-connected i-appli? Highlight the folder of mail-connected i-appli and then select "Open folder" from the function menu to confirm.	P.282 P.290
"添付ファイル削除" (Attached file deleted) is displayed in mail.	● You cannot receive attached files that are not supported by i-mode mail. Such attached files are automatically deleted at the i-mode Center and you receive only the message.	P.250
Files attached to mail sent from a PC was deleted.	● If the image file is GIF-formatted, which was attached to mail sent from a device other than the FOMA terminal, only up to 10,000 bytes can be received.	—
When I take pictures with the built-in camera, the images are flickered.	● When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. The flickering may be suppressed by changing the "Image tuning" setting.	P.194

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

Problem	Points to check	Ref. page
Still images or movies shot with the built-in camera look too bright.	● You may shoot them outside or in a bright place with "Image tuning" set to "Mode 1 (50Hz)" or "Mode 2 (60Hz)". Check the tuning and make sure it is reset to "Auto".	P.194
Still images or movies look blurred.	● Switch the lens selector switch of the rear lens to the ● position (standard lens) for normal shooting or to the 🌸 position (macro lens) to take a close-up photo. ● Set modes suited to the scene being shot.	P.172 P.193
When I attempt to display an image, "❌" appears. Or When I attempt to play for demonstration or see a preview, "❌" appears.	● "❌" may appear when the image data is corrupted.	—
The terminal operates slowly when any keypads are pressed.	● It may occur if a large amount of data is stored on the terminal or if you exchange large data by using the miniSD reader/writer function.	—
When I record using Chance capture, the recording time has decreased.	● When you record using Chance capture, the control data will be saved with the movie data. It may shorten the recordable time.	—

If Any Error Message Appears

- Numbers in parentheses contained in i-mode error messages are codes used by the i-mode Center as separators between transmitted errors.

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Accept call Already set full" "Call forwarding Already set full" "Reject unknown Already set full" "Restrict dialing Already set full" "Voice mail Already set full"	● These messages are displayed if you attempt to add the Restrictions to Phonebook when 20 items have already been set in the Restrictions. Perform the desired setting again after canceling the unnecessary Phonebook settings.	P.165
"Activating keypad dial lock"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when keypad dial lock is set.	P.165
"Activating mail security Cannot delete"	● You cannot delete the mail-connected i-appli or its folder because security is set to the Inbox/Outbox or a folder used for the mail-connected i-appli. To delete both the mail-connected i-appli and its folder, release the mail security. To delete the mail-connected i-appli only, select "NO" when you receive a message asking whether to delete the folder used for the mail-connected i-appli.	P.164
"Activating mail security Cannot download"	● Since security is activated for the Inbox/Outbox or folders used with the mail-connected i-appli, you cannot download or upgrade the mail-connected i-appli. To download or upgrade the mail-connected i-appli, deactivate the security.	P.164
"Activating PIM lock"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when PIM lock is set.	P.161
"Activating record display OFF"	● Because "OFF" is selected in "Record display set", you cannot use "Received calls", "Redial/Dialed calls", "Received address" or "Sent address". To access these records, select "ON" in "Record display set".	P.163
"Activating restrict dialing"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when "Restrict dialing" is set.	P.163
"Activating self mode"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform prohibited operation when self mode is set.	P.169
"Already saved"	● This message appears when you attempt to save i-motion consecutively with the data acquisition screen.	—
"Attached file is deleted"	● This message appears if i-mode mail received that you attempt to quote to send a reply has any file attached. It also appears if the file attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded is only the one which is prohibited to be attached to mail or output from your FOMA terminal. Press  to delete the attached file.	—
"Authentication canceled (401)"	● This message appears when you press the "Cancel" button on the "Authentication" screen.	—
"Authentication type is not supported (401)"	● This message appears when authentication did not go through. Press  to return to the screen displayed before the message appeared.	—
"Calling now Cannot operate"	● This message appears when you display the task menu during a call and select an unavailable function.	P.406 P.409 P.528
"Cannot edit message"	● The text cannot be edited because the size of the attached file has reached 5000 full-pitch characters' worth.	P.269
"Cannot save attached file"	● Displayed when you receive mail with an attached file that cannot be stored using infrared communication, OBEX communication or importing from the miniSD memory card.	—
"Cannot set this schedule"	● This message appears when you attempt to import a schedule entry that has the same date and time as an existing entry by "Import & add one", Infrared data exchange or OBEX communication.	—
"Cannot use network transmission"	● This message appears while starting up software when "Network setting" is set to "OFF". Set the "Network setting" to "Check every start" or "ON".	P.323

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Certificate is rejected (tampered)"	This message appears when an altered SSL certificate has been received. SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—
"Check new message is set all OFF"	"Check new message" cannot be done because "Set check new message" is set for "Do not check" for all. Set the item to check in "Set check new message".	P.301
"Connection failed (403)"	The attempt to connect to a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
"Connection failed"	- This message appears when the host setting is not correct. Set the host correctly in "Host selection" of "Connection setting". - The attempt to connect to i-mode has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	P.232 —
"Connection failed"	Set "Caller ID notification" to "ON" and try again.	P.56
"Connection interrupted"	- The i-mode connection was lost due to poor reception. Move to a location with stronger reception to resume using i-mode. - If this message appears when reception is strong and "T" is indicated, the site you are trying to connect to is busy. Try connecting again later.	P.212 —
"Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion"	This message appears when an i-motion cannot be obtained because the i-motion size exceeds 500K bytes.	P.241
"Could not read"	Cannot import data due to some kind of error. Replace with a new miniSD memory card and import again.	—
"Data is too long A part is deleted"	The address, subject or text or more than one data exceeds the maximum size and the New mail screen is displayed with the excess part deleted.	—
"Data is too long Please delete message"	The total length of the message text and quotation mark characters in the i-mode mail to be quoted in a reply exceeds 5,000 full-pitch characters. Delete some of the text to reduce the character count to 5,000 full-pitch characters or fewer.	—
"Deleting data"	When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "OK" to delete the erroneous data. If the erroneous data is protected, a message is displayed so select "OK".	P.552
"Desktop icon is full"	This message appears if you attempt to paste a new desktop icon when there are already 15 desktop icons pasted on the standby display. Delete desktop icons that you no longer need and retry pasting.	P.143 P.144
"Downloading interrupted" "Unable to download"	Displayed if a communication error occurs or data contains an error when trying to download data such as a melody, Chara-den, DL dictionary template for Deco-mail or Face stamp.	—
"Draft mail is full"	New mail and SMS cannot be composed because there are already 20 draft messages. Edit and send a draft message or delete some draft messages and try again.	P.270
"Editing now Cannot delete"	This message appears if you attempt to delete a message that is in the Draft and being edited.	—
"Enter correct network security code"	This message is displayed when an incorrect Network security code is entered for a function that requires the Network security code. Enter the correct Network security code. Note that if you forget your network security code, you must visit an NTT DoCoMo outlet with your FOMA terminal, your FOMA card (UIM) and some form of identification (driver's license, etc.) proving that you are the subscriber.	P.152
"Error in image Does not work correctly"	This message appears when the Flash movie cannot be displayed due to an error found in the data.	—
"Failed to export all"	Due to an error, the data could not be exported. Insert a new miniSD memory card and try exporting again.	—
"Failed to export one"	Due to an error, the data could not be exported. Insert a new miniSD memory card and try exporting again.	—
"Failed to set some data"	Some images, i-motion or melodies downloaded from sites or those attached to mail may not be stored in "My favorite" or be set with other contents all at once.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Format miniSD for your phone"	This miniSD memory card is abnormal such as an unformatted card. Format the miniSD memory card again.	P.388
"Function cannot operate any more"	Press  and quit another function before proceeding.	P.408
"i-appli stand-by display terminated due to security error" "Software terminated due to security error"	The i-appli or the i-appli stand-by display (including the i-appli DX) terminated because you attempted to execute unauthorized operation.	P.324 P.329
"Input error (205)"	This message appears after you enter data on a site or website and send the data. Pressing  resets the entered text (the setting or entry made is sent and this operation does not cancel sending).	P.217
"Insert miniSD"	The miniSD memory card may not be inserted in the FOMA terminal or may not be inserted correctly. Insert the miniSD memory card correctly.	P.380
"Insert UIM"	This message appears when FOMA card (UIM) is not correctly inserted or may be damaged. Make sure that FOMA card (UIM) is correctly inserted.	P.46
"Invalid address"	- The addresses contain a "," and are invalid. Delete any ",". - The addresses of the received mail contain more than 50 half-pitch characters and not valid for send replies. - SMS cannot be sent because the addresses contain a character other than numerals, "#", and "X" and space. Delete excessive digits or any character other than "#", "X", and space.	—
"Invalid UIM auto start not possible"	This message appears if you attempt to perform auto start i-appli that is restricted by FOMA card operational restriction function.	P.47
"Invalid UIM requested service not available"	- This message appears when you select the desktop icon for data protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function and attempt execution. - This message appears when you select a screen memo, Message Request or Message Free protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function and attempt execution.	P.47
"Invalid UIM requested software can't start"	This message appears if you attempt to specify and perform i-appli that is restricted by FOMA card operational restriction function.	P.47
"Invalid URL"	This message appears if you select "OK" without entering a URL, or after you enter a URL incorrectly (a URL that does not start with "http://" or "https://") when setting the Home URL in the "Home URL" setting or another URL. Enter a URL correctly.	P.220 P.231
"Memory full" "Not enough memory"	The miniSD memory card is full. Delete unnecessary data in the miniSD memory card and export again.	P.386
"Memory full Cannot move"	Displayed when you move data from the "Secret" folder and the destination folder is full. Delete or move any data in the destination folder and then move the data again.	—
"Memory is full Cannot receive no more"	Inbox is full and no more i-mode mail or SMS can be received. Delete or cancel protection for mail that you no longer need until  (red) disappears and perform Check new message and Check new SMS.	P.277 P.292 P.313
"Memory No. XXX: Cannot overwrite"	- This message is displayed when you attempt to add Phonebook to the same number as a memory number for Phonebook added as secret data when the Secret mode or Secret only mode is not set. - This message is displayed when you attempt to add Phonebook to the same number as a memory number for Phonebook set to Automatic display. Press  to return to the Phonebook edit screen. Select , and enter a vacant memory number to add it.	P.157 P.115
"Memory shortage Return and edit again"	You can insert up to 10 images to Deco-mail. However, in some operations, this message may be displayed even when less than 10 images are inserted. Select "YES" and display the compose message display, and then re-edit the message.	—
"Memory shortage Return to i-mode menu"	Process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press  to return to the i-mode menu.	—
"Memory shortage"	The software program cannot be run due to memory shortage.	—

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Message too long to add header & signature"	● The header/signature cannot be automatically added when you forward i-mode mail because the character count exceeds 5,000 full-pitch with the header/signature added.	—
"Message too long to add header"	● The size of the text and header combined exceeds 5000 full-pitch characters worth and the header cannot be pasted.	—
"Message too long to add signature"	● The size of the text and signature combined exceeds 5000 full-pitch characters worth and the signature cannot be pasted.	—
"Movie is too big to attach Cannot compose"	● This message appears if the size of a movie shot with the built-in camera in the "Movie mode" has turned out to be too large to attach to i-mode mail when you select "Compose message" from the function menu.	P.269
"No content is available (204)"	● This message appears when there is no data to display on the connected site, etc.	—
"No data"	● This message is displayed when there is no Phonebook that matches the search conditions when performing Phonebook search.	P.111
"No requested Chara-den"	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted Chara-den and attempt to execute.	—
"No requested i-motion"	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a movie/i-motion that was deleted and attempt to execute.	—
"No requested image"	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted image and attempt to execute.	—
"No requested melody"	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted melody and attempt to execute.	—
"No requested software"	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for a deleted i-appli program and attempt to execute.	P.144
	● Displayed if there is no corresponding software when the i-appli is started from mail, the infrared exchange function or the bar code reader.	P.327
"No response (408)"	● No response has been received from a site and the communication is interrupted. Retry connection.	—
(During infrared exchange) "No response Retry?"	● The receiving terminal cannot be found/detected. Place the terminals so that their infrared data ports are aligned on the same level. Select "YES" and press  to try again.	P.394
"No Switch"	● This message is displayed when switching between voicephone and videophone is not possible during a call because other party is in a packet communication (including i-mode). Retry switch again after checking the status of the other party.	P.60 P.93
"Not correspond contents"	● Information read by the Bar code reader cannot be recognized because there are some contents incompatible with the FOMA terminal.	—
"Operation may not run properly Cancel operation?"	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "YES" to stop the operation. Select "NO" to continue with start up.	P.552
"Operation may not run properly Canceling operation"	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "OK" to stop the operation.	P.552
"Operation may not run properly Delete data?"	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "YES" to delete the erroneous data. If the erroneous data is protected, a message is displayed so select "OK". Select "NO" to stop the operation.	P.552
"Operation may not run properly"	● When the program was starting, data causing an error was found. Select "OK" to continue with start up.	P.552
"Other function active Cannot operate"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform operation that is unavailable when another function is running.	—
"Out of service area"	● This message appears when you try to use the i-mode service outside the service area or in a location where radio waves do not reach you. Move to a location where  appears on the display to use the i-mode service.	P.212
"Page is not found (404)"	● The site is not found. It may not exist.	—

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Password is not correct (401)"	● This message appears when authentication did not go through on the "Authentication" or "Re-authentication" screen. To re-authenticate, select "YES".	—
"Phonebook is full"	● This message is displayed when you attempt to add the 701st phone number or mail address to a FOMA terminal (Phone) Phonebook. Delete an unneeded phone number or mail address already stored in the Phonebook before adding the new one.	P.116
"PIN1 code blocked"	● This message is displayed when the power is turned on during PIN1 code lock. Press  to display the PUK code entry screen. Then, enter the PUK code properly to cancel the lock.	P.154
"Please set time to obtain data"	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain i-motion data with replay period restriction when the "Set time" setting is not made. Set the "Set time".	P.55
"Please wait"	● Dialing is restricted. Try using voicephone, videophone or i-mode later. You can still make calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118). However, a connection may not be established depending on conditions.	—
"PUK code blocked"	● This message appears if you attempt to power on or perform operation related to FOMA card (UIM) when PUK code is locked. Contact a DoCoMo service counter.	P.153
"Reading UIM Cannot operate"	● This message appears when you attempt to perform operation related to FOMA card (UIM) while FOMA card (UIM) is being read. Retry later.	—
"Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion"	● This message appears when retrieving an i-motion cannot be completed because the i-motion size exceeds 500K bytes.	P.241
"Receiving failed Channel information cannot display"	● This message appears when i-channel information is not received even if you attempt to display the channel list screen: · for the first time after the purchase. · after changing the URL for i-channel host. · after performing "Initialize" of the FOMA terminal. · after replacing the FOMA card (UIM). Move the FOMA terminal to the place where the  icon is displayed and try to display the channel list screen again.	—
"Register the forwarding number"	● This message is displayed when you have subscribed to the "Call forwarding service" and try to forward an incoming call by selecting "Call forwarding" from the Function menu without setting the forwarding destination.	P.448
"Replace with a new one or check the disk"	● Check the disk of the miniSD memory card.	P.386
"Replay period has expired Cannot play"	● The i-motion cannot be replayed because the replay period is expired.	—
"Replay period has expired Delete?"	● Displayed when you try to play an i-motion after you have reached the limit on the number of plays or the valid playback period. Select "YES" to delete the i-motion.	—
"Replay period has expired"	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for an i-motion for which replay period or number expired, and attempt to execute.	—
"Replay period has not yet started"	● This message appears when you attempt to replay i-motion with a replay period set before the period.	—
"Requested software unavailable"	● Displayed if the specified software was not able to be started when trying to start the software with the infrared exchange function or the bar code reader.	—
"Requested software unavailable"	● Displayed if the software was not able to be started when trying to start the software from a site or mail.	—

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Root certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● This message appears when the SSL root certificate in the terminal is expired. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise select "NO". ● This message appears if you attempt to connect to an SSL-compatible site or website when the "Set time" setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting. ● This message appears if you are asked to send a client certificate while connecting to an SSL-compatible site or website.	P.238 P.55 P.215
"Root certificate is not valid"	● This message appears when an SSL certificate with the "Certificate" setting set to "Invalid" is received. Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect.	P.238
"Secret data"	● This message is displayed when you try to search for a memory number specifying a secret data number during the mode other than secret mode or secret only mode. ● This message is displayed when you try to dial secret data with two-touch dialing during the mode other than secret mode or secret only mode.	P.157
"Service is not registered"	● The i-mode service is not available because you do not subscribe to the i-mode service. Subscription is necessary to use the i-mode service. ● If you started subscribing to the i-mode service after purchasing the terminal, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	—
"Service unavailable"	● This message is displayed if you perform network service operation when you are outside the service area or where radio waves cannot reach. Perform network service operation after moving to an area where "TII" is displayed.	—
"Set time"	● This message appears if you attempt to perform operation requiring the "Set time" setting when the setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting before operation.	P.55
"Size of this page is not supported"	● The data received from a site or website has exceeded the maximum size of one page. Reception is interrupted and the data obtained up to that point is displayed. ● This message appears when the maximum size has been exceeded while downloading a melody, download dictionary or Chara-den, etc.	—
"SMS in UIM filled"	● The FOMA card (UIM) is full and no more SMS can be stored on the FOMA card (UIM). To store SMS, delete unwanted SMS from the FOMA card (UIM) until " " disappears.	P.292
"Software for this folder deleted Refer to Open folder"	● Since the mail-connected i-appli compatible with the selected mail folder is deleted, the software program cannot run. Refer to the mail of the folder from the function menu.	P.289
"Software is stopped because of error"	● This message appears when you are running a program and an error occurs preventing further operation.	—
"Software upgraded"	● Displayed when the latest software is used and there is no need of upgrading the version.	—
"Some addresses is invalid"	● This message appears if not all addresses are valid when you attempt to send reply i-mode mail to two or more addresses.	—
"Some attached file will be deleted"	● The file which is prohibited to be attached to mail or output from your FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail that you attempt to forward. Press  to delete the file that cannot be attached to mail or output from your FOMA terminal.	—
"SSL session cannot be established"	● This message appears if connection to an SSL-compliant site or webpage was not established. Retry connection.	—
"SSL session failed"	● This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error in the communication of the authentication for an SSL connection.	—
"Syntax error (XXX)" "URL address is not valid" "URL address is not valid (XXX)"	● The received data contains an error and cannot be displayed. The received data is discarded. A number indicating the contents of an error may appear in XXX.	—
"Talking now Cannot operate"	● This message is displayed when you try to operate a function that cannot be performed during calls is attempted.	P.408 P.528

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Terminal and UIM ID will be sent"	● This message may appear while you are viewing a site or website. Select "YES" to send your mobile phone manufacturer number. Otherwise, select "NO". * : The transmitted "mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers" are used by your IP (information service provider) to identify you and to provide information tailored to your needs. It is also used to determine whether content provided by your IP can be used on your mobile phone. This procedure does not provide personal information such as your phone number, address, age or gender to your IP.	P.216
"The data may not be replayed"	● This message appears when i-motion in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) has been obtained.	—
"This certificate has expired Do you connect?"	● This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise select "NO". ● This message appears if you attempt to connect to an SSL-compatible site or website when the "Set time" setting is not made. Make the "Set time" setting.	P.238 P.55
"This certificate is not valid for this URL Do you connect?"	● This message appears when the CN of an SSL certificate does not match. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise select "NO".	P.238
"This data can no longer be replayed Delete?"	● This message appears when you attempt to replay i-motion with no replay count remaining. Select "YES" to delete the i-motion.	—
"This data can no longer be replayed"	● This message appears when you select the desktop icon for an i-motion that completed replay number and attempt to execute.	—
"This data is not supported by this phone"	● This message appears when you attempt to obtain unsupported i-motion or data other than i-motion.	—
"This site is not certified Do you connect?"	● This message appears when you receive an unsupported SSL certificate. To connect, select "YES". Otherwise select "NO".	P.238
"This software contains an error Unable to download"	● There is an error in the software data and you cannot download or upgrade the software.	—
"This software contains an error"	● There is an error in the software data and you cannot download or upgrade the software.	—
"This software is not supported by this phone"	● The software you attempt to obtain is not supported by the FOMA terminal and cannot be downloaded.	—
"This UIM cannot be recognized"	● Displayed if a FOMA card (UIM) that cannot be used on this FOMA terminal may be inserted. Make sure that the correct FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.	P.46
"Time out"	● Connection to a site, mail sending process, etc. is interrupted due to the connection timeout time set in "Set connection timeout" is up. Retry connecting to the site or sending the mail later.	P.232
"Too many files Cannot move"	● Displayed when you move data from the "Secret" folder and the number of files in the destination folder has reached the maximum. Delete or move any data in the destination folder and then move the data again.	—
"Too much data was entered"	● Too many characters are entered into the text box, as a URL, etc. and the data cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters before trying to resend.	P.217
"Unable to display because of Memory shortage"	● The operation will be interrupted because of memory shortage. When composing an i-mode mail, the number of characters to input may be limited up to 5,000 full-pitch characters depending on conditions such as the number of activated tasks or combination of character types.	—
"Unable to download Data exceeds maximum size (452)"	● This message appears when the data to be received exceeds the maximum size and cannot be received.	—
"Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error"	● This i-motion cannot be obtained because the i-motion replay restriction data contains an error.	—
"Unable to receive"	● This message appears when you try to obtain i-motion and communication error occurs.	—
"Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)"	● The attempt to connect to a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—

* The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal.→P.380

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Ref. page
"Unable to support this card"	This miniSD memory card is not compatible with the FOMA terminal. Use an appropriate miniSD memory card.	P.380
"URL address changed (301)"	The site has been moved and the URL has been changed. Reregister if it is bookmarked or registered as a desktop icon or Home URL.	P.143 P.221 P.231
"URL is too long to add"	The URL exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be pasted and cannot be pasted onto a desktop icon or i-mode mail.	—
"URL is too long to register"	The URL exceeds the maximum number of characters and cannot be bookmarked or stored as the Home URL.	—
"Wrong security code" "Security code is 4 to 8 digits"	This message appears when a wrong security code has been entered for a function requiring entry of the security code. Enter the correct security code. Note that if you forget your security code, you must visit an NTT DoCoMo outlet with your FOMA terminal, your FOMA card (UIM) and some form of identification (driver's license, etc.) proving that you are the subscriber.	P.152
"You have no certificate Do you connect?"	Cannot display a FirstPass-compatible site because no user certificate is downloaded.	P.239
"Your certificate has expired Do you connect?"	Cannot display a FirstPass-compatible site because your user certificate has expired.	P.239
"Your certificate is requested Send your certificate?"	- Cannot display an SSL-compatible site because the DoCoMo CA certificate is set to be invalid. - Cannot display an SSL-compatible site because the CA certificate or the DoCoMo CA certificate has expired.	—
"i-appli To" function is not set"	When trying to start the software from a site, mail, the infrared exchange function or the bar code reader, it does not start because the specified software is not permitted to be interfaced.	P.327

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check the contents, the information about "the shop or date of purchase", etc. and keep the card in a safe place. If the card does not contain necessary information, immediately contact the shop and request them to fill in the card. The warranty period is one year from the date of purchase.
- The whole or part of the product, including its accessories, is subject to improvement without notice.
- The stored data such as phonebook entries may be altered or lost through the damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to take notes of the stored data just in case. If you have a PC (Windows98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, Windows XP), you can transfer the data to your PC by using the dedicated Data Link Software (P.531) and then back up the data on the PC. Repairing the FOMA terminal cannot transfer most of the data downloaded via i-mode or i-appli, complying with the copyright law.

After-sales service

● If you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Before having your FOMA terminal repaired, see the "Malfunction Checklist" in this manual. If you still have problems, call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

● If, after contacting DoCoMo, you are informed that your FOMA terminal is in need of repairs

Take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Remember to take your warranty card with you.

■ During the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired free of charge in accordance with our written warranty policy.

- Be sure to take the warranty card with you when having your FOMA terminal repaired. Even during the warranty period, a charge will be made for the repair if you cannot show the warranty card or if the malfunction or damage has resulted from improper use.
- Even during the warranty period, a charge will be made for the repair if the malfunction has resulted from the use of devices or consumables that are not specified by NTT DoCoMo.

■ The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired

The FOMA terminal may be unable to be repaired if the water reaction is found on the seal, if corrosion is found to result from water exposure, condensation or perspiration, or if the internal board is damaged or deformed. Even if the FOMA terminal can be repaired, a charge will be made as the repair is not under warranty.

■ After the warranty period has expired

You can request to have your FOMA terminal repaired, although a charge will be made for the repair.

■ Stock period of parts

Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock for a minimum of 6 years following the termination of production. The repair can be performed during the stock period. The repair may still be able to be performed even after the stock period has expired. Call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

■ Important

- Do not attempt to adapt the FOMA terminal or its accessories by yourself.
 - Doing so may cause fire, injury or malfunction.
 - To prevent the cross talk or network failure, the technical standard of the FOMA terminal or FOMA card is provided by law. You are not allowed to use the FOMA terminal or FOMA card that does not comply with the standard.
 - If you have adapted the FOMA terminal (a part has been replaced, adapted, coated, etc.) by yourself, the repair can be accepted only if you restore the FOMA terminal to the default (the factory settings). You may be rejected depending on the adaptation.
 - Even during the warranty period, a charge will be made for the repair if the malfunction or damage has resulted from adaptation.
- Do not peel off the model name seal attached to the FOMA terminal.

The model name seal plays the part of the certificate verifying that the FOMA terminal complies with the technical standard. If the seal cannot be confirmed because it has been peeled off or replaced, the conformity to the technical standard cannot be judged, and then the repair may be unable to be accepted.
- The settings of the functions or the information about total call time may be cleared (reset) due to the malfunction or repair of the FOMA terminal. If this is the case, specify the settings again.
- Magnetic components are used for neuropointer key, speaker and earpiece speaker of the FOMA terminal. A cash card, bank card, etc, which is easily affected by the magnetism, may become unusable if it is kept close to the components.
- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or moist, immediately turn it off, remove the battery pack, and take the FOMA terminal to the repair shop as soon as possible. Note that the FOMA terminal may be unable to be repaired depending on the condition.

Memory dial (phonebook function) and downloaded information

- It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for alteration or loss of data.
- The data you created, stored or downloaded etc. may be modified or erased when you change the mobile phone model or send your mobile phone to repair. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the data. We may send you a replacement of your mobile phone, instead of renovation, however, those data are not moved to the replacement, barring exceptions. The images and melodies downloaded from the i-mode official sites to the FOMA terminal are transferred to the replacement when the FOMA terminal is repaired. (Some contents are not transferred.)

Updating software

Check whether it is necessary to update software on the FOMA terminal. Download and update the software via packet communication if necessary.

You will be notified of the update in the DoCoMo website or in “お知らせヘルプ” (News & Help) of iMenu.

- A charge will not be made for the packet communication to update the software.
- There are two ways to update:
 - Now update : Updates immediately.
 - Reserved update : Updates automatically on the date and time you specified.
- You can update the software if the i-mode host is set as the user defined host.
- Updating the software (downloading and installing) may take some time.
- When you update the software, an SSL connection is established with the server (the software update server managed by DoCoMo). Validate the certificate beforehand (default setting: Valid. Setting procedure → P.238).
- Before updating the software, charge the battery to the full.
- It is recommended that you update the software without moving in a place where the reception is good (the signal strength indicator shows three bars).
 - * If the reception becomes poor and then the download is interrupted, try to update again in a place where the reception is good.
- Updating the software with the “PIN1 code entry set” set to “ON” displays the PIN1 code entry screen in the automatic restart after installing the software. You cannot receive a phone call or mail if you do not enter the correct PIN1 code.
- You cannot update software:
 - When FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
 - When FOMA card (UIM) is incorrect
 - When PIN lock is set
 - When PUK code is locked
 - When date and time is not set
 - When you receive a call
 - While receiving mail/SMS/Message
 - During a voice call
 - During a videophone call
 - During i-mode connection
 - During 64K data communication
 - During packet communication
 - During All lock is set
 - When Self mode is set
 - When PIM lock is set
 - When you are out of service area
 - When packet dialing is restricted
 - While using mova terminal with dual network service
 - When miniSD reader/writer function works
 - While other functions are running
- You cannot use other functions while updating the software. However, you can receive voice calls during downloading.
- If the software has already been updated, “No update is needed Please continue to use as before” is displayed when you check for new software updates.
- After updating the software, the displayed i-mode center storage status icon disappears. Also, if the receive option is set to “ON” and mail is received while updating the software, the mail notification screen may not be displayed after the software has been updated.
- When you update the software, information specific to your FOMA terminal (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software updates managed by DoCoMo). The information sent to DoCoMo is not used for any other purpose than updating the software.
- You can update the software without affecting data such as the phonebook, camera images, and downloaded data. However, be aware that depending on the state of your FOMA terminal (malfunction, damage or exposure to water), you may not be able to protect data.
- It is recommended that you back up important data. (Note that there is some data, such as downloaded data, that cannot be backed up.)
- If the software download fails, “Rewrite failed” is displayed and you cannot operate the FOMA terminal. If that happens, take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop.

NOTE

- Do not remove the battery pack while updating the software. Doing so may cause the update to fail.
- When the software update is completed without operation for confirmation, you will see the desktop icon “” (Update complete) on the standby screen. Select “” and enter the security code to see the detail results of the update.

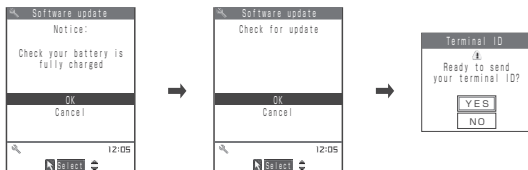
Checking whether you need software update

1 ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Software update” ▶ Enter your security code

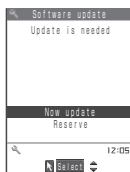
Security code → P.152

2 Check the notices ▶ Check whether you need to update the software

At this point, information specific to your mobile phone must be sent to the server.



3 “Check result screen” is displayed

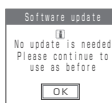


■ When the display is “Update is needed”

▶ Select “Now update” or “Reserve”

Select “Now update” to update the software immediately. → P.548

Select “Reserve” to update on a specified time. → P.549



■ When the display says “No update is needed”

▶ “OK”

Continue using your FOMA terminal as there is no need to update the software.

Updating software immediately <Immediate update>

1 “Check result screen” (P.548) ▶ “Now update” ▶ Select “OK” when “Start download” is displayed

Downloading will start immediately.

Download will begin after a while, even if you do not select “OK”.



2 After the download is finished and then the message “Download is complete Rewrite software” appears, select “OK”

The software will begin rewriting.

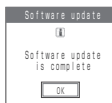
Rewrite will begin after a while, even if you do not select “OK”. It may take time to start rewriting.



All keys are disabled during software rewriting. You cannot stop rewriting either.

When the software is rewritten, the FOMA terminal will reload automatically.

After reloading, the terminal will automatically connect to the server to check the update has been completed. After the message "Software update is complete" is displayed, select "OK". Software update is complete.



NOTE

- If you stop downloading before the download is completed, the data that has been downloaded until then is deleted.
- Once you start downloading, the update begins automatically without having to select any items such as menu.
- The display on the right may be shown if the server is busy.

In that case, select "Reserve" to perform the reserved update.



Selecting the reservation date and time to update software <Reserved update>

If it takes a long time to download or when the server is busy, you can select the time to startup Software update by communicating with the server beforehand.

<Example: Reserving at 7:30 on November 25 (Friday)>

1 "Check result screen" (P.548) ▶ "Reserve" ▶ Select the date and time

■ If you do not want to reserve any of the times displayed

▶ "Others" → P.550



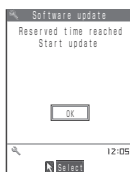
2 Check the selected date and time ▶ "YES"



The software update is reserved.

■ To change the date and/or time

▶ "NO"



The screen on the left appears at the reservation time and the FOMA terminal starts the software update automatically. Charge the battery fully, put the FOMA terminal at a location with strong radio wave reception and show the standby screen before the reservation time. The rest of operation is same as "Updating software immediately <Immediate update>" (P.548).

NOTE

- The reservation time for the software updates will be based on the server's time.
- When the reservation time for the software update is the same as the alarm notification time, the software update is given priority.

Continued on next page

- Note that software updating may not start up at the scheduled time if another function is being used.
- If the scheduled time has passed when you are on the phone or receiving mail, the software update is launched after you finish talking or receiving mail.
- If you perform "Initialize" (P.441) after the reservation procedure is complete, the software update does not start at the scheduled time. Reschedule the time for update.

You can select the desired date and period of time after communicating with the server if you select "Others" at step 1 in P.549.

○: Available
△: Almost full
None: Full

Software update 1/3

Select your preferred time-slot

0:00 - 0:59	○
1:00 - 1:59	△
2:00 - 2:59	○
3:00 - 3:59	○
4:00 - 4:59	△
5:00 - 5:59	△
6:00 - 6:59	×
7:00 - 7:59	△

Notes Select →

12:05

○: Available
△: Almost full
×: Full

Software update
 ?
 Reserve for
 11/27 (Sun) 0:23?
 YES
 NO

● Checking the reservation

<Example: Canceling the reservation after checking it>

Security code → P.152

▶ “OK”

► “Change”

Once information specific to your mobile phone has been sent to the server, follow the procedure used when "Others" is selected. → P550

At this point, information specific to your mobile phone is sent to the server.

NTT DoCoMo will never disclose or forward your mobile phone information (model and manufacturer number) to a third party.

After the message "The reservation is canceled" is displayed, select "OK". The reservation is canceled.



<Scanning function>

Protecting the FOMA terminal from Harmful Data

Firstly update the pattern data.

When the FOMA terminal is downloading external files or programs from sites or i-mode mail, this function scans the data and deletes any data or cancels program activation where the data or the program could cause a fault.

- Pattern data is used for the check. Update the pattern data when it is upgraded because a problem has been detected. → P.551
- The Scanning function prevents the data that causes some fault from invading your FOMA terminal when viewing sites and websites or receiving mail. If the pattern data that fixes the error is not installed on your FOMA terminal or if the pattern data that fixes the fault does not exist, the Scanning function cannot prevent the error from occurring.
- The pattern data varies by the model of the FOMA terminal. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may discontinue to distribute the pattern data for the model if three years have passed since it was first released.

Setting the scanning function <Scanning function>

Default setting
ON

When the Scanning function is set to "ON", data and programs are automatically checked when they are executed.

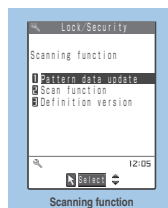
1. Press the **Menu** key and then the **Settings** key. "Lock/Security" ▶ "Scanning function"

The "Scanning function screen" appears.

2. Press the **Scan function** key. "ON"

- If a message appears asking whether to change the settings
▶ "YES"

* If you enable the Scanning function and it detects potentially harmful data, the event is displayed using one of 5 warning levels. → P.552



Updating pattern data <Pattern data update>

1. Press the **Scanning function screen** (P.551) ▶ "Pattern data update" ▶ "YES" ▶ "YES"



* If no pattern data update is required, the "Pattern definitions are up-to-date" message appears. Continue using your current pattern data.

NOTE

- When you update the pattern data, information specific to your mobile phone (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (Scanning function server managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo will not use that information for any purpose other than scanning function.
- Ensure that the correct date (year, month and day) is set on the FOMA terminal.
- Update of pattern data will be suspended if a voice call is received or the terminal moves out the service area while updating the pattern data.

The scanning results display

■ Displaying problems detected by scanning



A list of up to 5 problems detected by the Scanning function is displayed, starting with the highest-level problem. If 6 or more problems were detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problems are omitted.

The rest of the problem elements (sixth and later), of which names are omitted, are displayed as follows:

1 - 9998 : The remaining count is displayed as it is.
9999 or more : "Other:9999" is displayed regardless of the count.

■ Results of scanning

Warning level 0	Warning level 1	Warning level 2	Warning level 3	Warning level 4
A screenshot of a warning message screen for Warning level 0. The text says "Operation may not run properly". At the bottom, there are "OK" and "Detail" buttons.	A screenshot of a warning message screen for Warning level 1. The text says "Operation may not run properly. Cancel operation?". At the bottom, there are "YES", "NO", and "Detail" buttons.	A screenshot of a warning message screen for Warning level 2. The text says "Operation may not run properly. Canceling operation". At the bottom, there are "OK" and "Detail" buttons.	A screenshot of a warning message screen for Warning level 3. The text says "Operation may not run properly. Delete data?". At the bottom, there are "YES", "NO", and "Detail" buttons.	A screenshot of a warning message screen for Warning level 4. The text says "Deleting data". At the bottom, there are "OK" and "Detail" buttons.
A warning message is displayed.	A warning message is displayed and you can choose whether to cancel the operation.	A warning tone sounds, a warning message is displayed and the operation ends.	A warning tone sounds, a warning message is displayed and you can choose whether to delete the data.	A warning tone sounds, a warning message is displayed and the data is deleted.

Checking the Pattern Data Version <Definition version>

1 “Scanning function screen” (P.551) ▶ “Definition version”



Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones

This model phone FOMA N701i meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP***.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.730 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO): <http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>

ICNIRP: <http://www.icnirp.de/>

MIC: <http://www.soumu.go.jp/english/index.html>

TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm

NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/product/> (Japanese only)

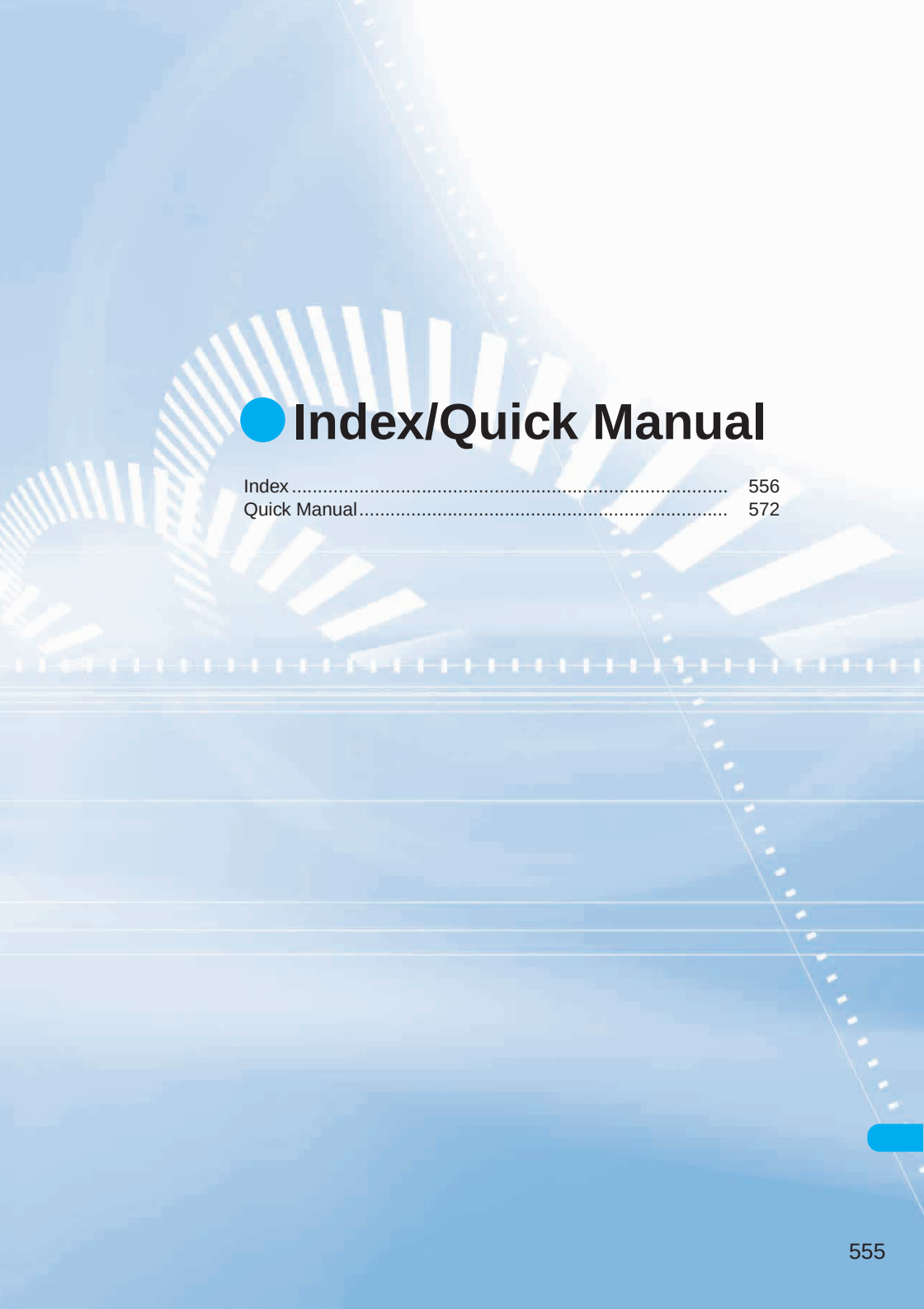
NEC: <http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup/> (Japanese only)

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses: <http://www.arib-emf.org/index.html> (Japanese only)

* Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

** The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

*** International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection



Index/Quick Manual

Index	556
Quick Manual	572

How to refer to the index

- This index functions as an alphabetical list of contents. The index contains not only the terms described in this manual, but also the abstracts of the descriptions. If you cannot find an item, try another keyword.

<Example 1: When you want to edit a movie>

Movie	
Data that can be edited	342
Delete	359
Edit	365
Move	359
Number of images	174

Edit	
Draft mail	271
Image	352
Movie	365
Phonebook	115
Still image	352

<Example 2: When you cannot answer a received call immediately>

On hold	78
Operations during playback (i-motion)	361
Operations during playback (Melody)	377

Holding (Answer)	78
Holding (In-call)	60
Home page	220

- The index for “Function menu” is supplied after the index by “Kana”. Refer to it when to find the descriptions for function menus (P.42).

* Not all function menus are included in the index by “Alphabetical”.

Alphabetical			
A	AC adapter	51	Adjusting volume (Earpiece volume) 77
	Access reader	198	Adjusting volume (Ring tone) 77
	Accessories and options	530	After-sales service 545
	A-Continuous mode (Auto)	181	Alarm
	Activating a function (Multi task)	408	Priority 411
	Activating a task (function)	408	Quality 129
	Add to phonebook (Storing site phone number and mail address)	219	Reconnect 69
	Adding a new word (Own dictionary)	516	Alarm clock 412
	Adding desktop icons	143	Alarm setting 410
	Additional services (Network service)	455	All lock setting 155
	Address → Mail address		Answer setting 73
	Add/Delete folder		Any key answer 73
	Bookmark	222	AT command 484
	Data box	391	Attached file setting (Mail) 300
	Mail	288	Attaching/removing the styleplus 530
	miniSD	392	Auto dial setting 435
	Adjust zoom	191	Auto melody play setting (i-mode) 231
	Adjusting the earpiece volume	77	Auto melody play setting (Mail) 299
			Auto receive mail 273
			Auto reset all cost 427
			Auto start (i-appli) 326
			Auto start time setting (i-appli) 326
			Auto timer 192
			Automatic answer 435
			Automatic display 123
			Automatic replay (i-motion) 244
			Auto-sort (Mail) 289
			B
			Bar code reader 194
			Basic operations 40
			Battery
			Attaching/removing the battery pack 48
			Battery life 50
			Charging the battery pack 51
			Checking the battery level 53
			Getting the best out of your battery pack 50
			Power saver mode 136
			Recharge battery screen 53
			Usage time 50
			Blocking out ambient noise (Noise reduction) 69
			Bookmark 221
			Brightness (Camera) 177

Brightness (Edit image)	353	Character stamp (Edit image)	356	Restrictions	166
C		Chara-den		Continuous mode	181
CA certificate	215	Chara-den list	370	Continuous standby time	50
Cable connection (USB)	394	Display	369	Continuous talk time	50
Cache	211	Download	228	Converting readings to kanji	506
Calculator	429	Operations	370	Copy (Text)	514
Calendar (Standby screen)	134	Videophone call	96	Copyright	25
Call acceptance (Restrictions)	165	What is Chara-den	369	Correct backlight (Edit image)	354
Call forwarding (Restrictions)	165	Chara-den info	372	Cost limit setting	428
Call forwarding service	448	Charge sound	129	Create original menu	139
Call rejection (Restrictions)	165	Charging the battery	51	Creating animation	350
Call response setting	78	Chat member		Creating original animation	350
Call time display	142	Change	304	Cut (Text)	514
Call waiting	447	Details setting	308	D	
Call without ID setting	167	Registering chat group	306	Data box	
Caller ID (Indicator display)	135	Setting	303	Add/Delete folder	391
Caller ID notification	56	Chat settings	308	Edit folder name	391
Caller ID notification 186(Provide)/184(Withhold)	66	Check new message		Folder structure	338
Caller ID request service	451	Mail	277	Data communication	457
Camera		Message	235	Data forwarded (Forwarding data)	395
Launch	178	Setting	301	Data Link Software	531
Notes	174	Check new message display setting	134	DC adapter	51
Shooting settings	191	Check new SMS	313	Deco-mail	
Using the camera	172	Checking an address list	298	Composing and sending (Templates)	266
Camera mode	177	Checking call times and charges	426	Composing and sending Deco-mail	259
Cancel		Checking i-mode settings	231	Picture list	265
Driving mode	79	Checking mail settings	300	Decoration	100
i-appli standby screen	329	Checking missed calls	81	Default setting (Initial setting)	55
Manner mode	131	Checking the i-appli information	323	Definition version (Pattern data)	552
CD-ROM for FOMA N701i	459	Checking the security error history (i-appli)	324	Delete	
Chaku-motion/Chaku-Uta	208	Clear learning record	517	Bookmark	223
Chance capture	189	Clear learning record (Entering text)	517	Delete all (Bookmark)	222
Change receiver type (Mail)	255	Client certificate	215	Delete all images (My picture)	391
Change security code	152	Clipping area (Editing image)	349	Deleting all messages (Read/Received/Sent)	289
Change size (Edit image)	354	Clock display	143	Desktop icon	144
Changing i-mode password	220	Clock display (Indicator display)	135	Dialed call record	65
Changing menu icons	137	Clock display (Standby screen)	143	i-appli	330
Changing password (i-mode)	220	CLR (㊟㊟㊟)	42	Image	343, 345
Changing security codes used on the FOMA terminal	152	Column search in Japanese phonetics (Phonebook)	112	Melody	378
Changing the certificate host	241	Common phrases list	514	Message	237, 238
Changing the text entry method (5-touch/2-touch/T9)	499	Component names and functions	30	Movie/i-motion	359
Channel list	334	Composing i-mode mail from the phonebook screen	253	Phonebook	113, 116
Character assignments		Composing/sending chat mail	302	Received calls	76
T9 input	502	Composite images (4 images)	349	Received mail	292, 296
2-touch input	501	Composite 4 images (Editing image)	349	Redial	65
5-touch input	500	Confirm settings		Screen memo	225
Character size (Mail)	299	Mail	247	Sent mail	295, 297
Character size setting (i-mode)	231	Phonebook utilities	122	Text	510

Voice	425	Image	226	English guidance	452
Delete receiver	255	i-melody	227	Entering a blank (Space)	508
Description (Operation)	43	i-motion	242	Entering an address from Mail member	253
Description of operations	43	Templates	228	Entering an address from the address list	253
Description of operations in this manual	43	Download dictionary setting	517	Entering common phrases	512
Desktop holder	52	Downloading dictionaries	228	Entering face symbols	509
Dialed calls	64	Downloading face stamps	228	Entering Kuten codes	515
Dialed call record display setting	163	Downloading i-anime	226	Entering pictographs	509
Dialing display setting	133	Downloading i-melody	227	Entering readings in fix mode (T9 input)	504
Dictionary	431	Driving mode	79	Entering symbols and pictographs continuously	509
Disabling the side keys	162	Dual network service	452	Entering text	497
Disp. setting VP	100	E		Clear learning record	517
Display		Earphone	130	Display guidance setting	505
Color + Background	137	Earphone/microphone connection	30	Download dictionary setting	517
Display light	136	Earphone/microphone with switch	434	T9 input	502
How to view the display	33	Edit		2-touch input	501
Text setting	142	Draft mail	271	5-touch input	500
Display and keypad lighting setting	136	Image	352	Entering text by quoting (Personal data/phonebook)	512
Display design	137	Movie	365	Entering text in mode 1 (5-touch input)	500
Display guidance setting (Entering text)	505	Phonebook	115	Entering text in mode 2 (2-touch input)	501
Display light (Backlight)	136	Edit (Mail)	296	Entering URL	220
Display setting	133	Edit file name		Entering/adding an address	253
Displaying animation	351	Image	343	Erase	
Displaying mail		Melody	377	Recorded messages and voice memos	84
Indicator display	135	Movie/i-motion	359	Voice	425
New i-mode mail	274	Edit folder name		Error message list	538
Read mail	282	Bookmark	222	Export	
Displaying menu	137	Data box	391	Movie	364
Displaying pages	213	Mail	289	Other than still images and movies	384
Bookmark	222	miniSD	392	Still image	351
i-channel	334	Edit ticker (Edit movie)	367	F	
Last URL	217	Edit title		File size setting	177
My Menu	219	Bar code reader	197	Filter	
Screen memo	224	Bookmark	223	Mail	292, 294
Sites	213	Chara-den	371	ToDo	420
URL history	221	Desktop icon	144	FirstPass	239
URL on site pages/mail messages	230	Download dictionary	517	Fixed common phrases	514
Websites	220	Image	343	Flash movies	219
Displaying shot images	339	Melody	377	Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch	434
Displaying software info (i-αappli)	321	miniSD	386	Fold setting	74
Displaying the main menu	38	Movie/i-motion	358	FOMA card (UIM)	
Displaying the original menu	42	Original animation	350	Add to phonebook	108
DoCoMo CA certificate	215	Screen memo	224, 225	Functional differences	48
Download		Templates	267	Insert/Remove	46
Chara-den	228	Editing the conversion candidates (T9 input)	503	Manufacturer numbers	216
Dictionaries	228	Emotion-expressing mail	274	Operational restriction function	47
Face stamps	228	Emotion/keyword notice setting	302	PIN (Personal Identification Number) codes	47
i-αappli	320	English display	54	Versions	48

FOMA PC setting software	464	Cancel	329	i-mode info	
FOMA USB Cable	460	Checking exit information	329	Displaying SSL pages	215
Font setting	142	Setting	328	Going to previous/next page	218
Format (miniSD)	388	i-appli To setting	327	Image display	217
Forward mail (Mail)	280	i-channel	332	iMenu in English	216
Forwarding phonebook image	394	i-Channel setting	335	Operations	217
Frame (Edit image)	354	Icon description		Scroll function	216
Framed photography	184	Desktop	145	Starting/exiting	212
Front camera	172	Display	33	Viewing the iMenu screen	212
Full pitch	500, 501	Emotion-expressing mail	274	What is i-mode	206
Function menu	42	Image/Movie	341	i-mode mail → Mail	
Fw	280	Indicator display	35	i-mode menu	212
G		Mail detail screen	286	i-mode password	152
Gガイド番組表リモコン	400	Mail folder list screen	283	i-mode settings	231
Group search (Phonebook)	112	Mail list screen	284	i-motion	241
Group utilities (Phonebook)	121	Melody	376	Add/Delete folder	391
Guide to the Rec. Chara-den screen	373	Message screen	234	Automatic replay setting	244
Guide to the shooting screen (Camera)	176	Phonebook utilities	120	Delete	359
H		Received/missed calls	75	Download	242
Half pitch	500, 501	Rec. Chara-den screen	373	Edit folder name	391
Handling with care	23	Redial/dialed call record	66	Move	359
Hands-free calls	70	Shooting menu	176	Operations during playback	361
Header/signature	301	Shooting screen	176	Play	357
Header/signature setting	301	Text entry screen	498	Play (i-motion created on PCs)	532
Holding	60	Icon operation		Save (Mail)	282
Holding (In-call)	60	Desktop	144	Save (Sites)	243
Holding (On hold)	78	ID notification	56	Sound effect	128
Home page	220	Illumination	141	Trim (Edit movie)	366
Home URL (i-mode)	231	Illumination in talk	142	What is an i-motion?	241
Host selection (i-mode)	232	Image		i-motion information	360
How to return to the standby screen	42	Data that can be edited	342	Import	
How to view the indicator display	36	Delete	343, 345	Movie	365
I		Display (My picture)	339	Other than still images and movies	387
i-appli	317	Display (Sites)	217	Still image	352
Auto start setting	326	Download	226	Inbox	282
Auto start time setting	326	Edit	352	In-car Hands-free	70
Checking the security error history	324	Move	343	In-car messaging function	79
Delete	330	Save (Mail)	281	Incoming call lamp flashing mode setting (During a call)	142
Download	320	Size	173	Incoming call lamp flashing mode setting (incoming calls)	141
Launching i-appli from sites, mail etc.	327	Store (i-mode, messages)	226	Indicate V-phone	101
Software list	325	Switching list display	342	Indicator display setting	135
Upgrade	330	Titles and file names	342	Info notice setting	81
i-appli info		Image display setting (i-mode)	231	Infrared data exchange	394
i-appli DX	318	Image info	346	Infrared data exchange mode	399
Launch/Quit	322	Image storage setting	177	Infrared remote control function	400
Mail-connected i-appli	319	iMenu	207, 213	Initialize	441
What is an i-appli?	318	i-mode	205	Initialize → Reset	
i-appli standby screen		i-mode host	232	Insert mode (Entering text)	507

Inserting a line feed	508	Memory info	289, 292, 295	Phone number on site page/mail message	229
Inserting a space (Blank)	508	Preview	255	Phonebook	111
Inserting symbols	508	Receive option	276	Received calls	74
Instructions for menu operations	43	Reply to mail	278	Redial/Dialed call record	64
Intellectual property right	25	Resend	296	Two-touch dialing	123
International dialing service	61	Restricting mail from mass i-mode mail senders	247	Videophone call	89
Internet	220	Save i-mode mail	270	Malfunction checklist	533
Internet connection	220	Saving images	281	Manner mode	130
Int'l dial setting	62	Saving i-motion	282	Manner mode set	131
i-shot	250	Saving melody	281	Marker stamp (Edit image)	355
ISP connection	232	Secret code registration (Your secret code)	247	Marking a checkbox	41
J		Sending draft i-mode mail	271	M-Continuous mode (Manual)	181
JAN code	194	Mail accept/reject settings	247	Melody	
K		Mail address		Add/Delete folder	391
Key operation		Change (Your mail address)	246	Delete	378
Holding down	32	Confirm (Your mail address)	247	Download	227
Names and functions	30	Search (Phonebook)	112	Edit folder name	391
Software keys	32	Storing (Mail address/sender's address)	280	Move	378
Keypad dial lock	163	Mail info		Operations during playback	377
Keypad lighting setting	136	Changing the mail character size	287	Play	375
Keypad sound	129	Changing the mail list screen display mode (Line)	287	Play playlist	379
Kuten code list	524	Changing the mail list screen display mode (Name/Address/Subject)	288	Save (Mail)	281
L		Composing and sending i-mode mail	253	Store (i-mode)	227
Large images	269	Detail screen	286	Titles and file names	377
Last URL	217	Displaying mail menu	252	Melody info	379
Launching i-appli from a mail	327	Folder list screen	283	Melody linkage (Vibrator)	128
Launching i-appli from a site	327	If the FOMA terminal cannot receive mail	249	Memory info	
Launching i-appli from the bar code reader	328	Kind of mail you can send/receive	248	Chara-den list	371
Launching i-appli with the Infrared data exchange function	327	List screen	284	Image list	343
Leaving a message saying that you cannot answer (Voice mail service)	445	Numbers of characters that can be sent/received	248	Mail	289, 292, 295
Lens selector switch	172	Screen shown when you enter an i-mode mail message	254	Melody list	377
Limit mail size	247	Viewing new i-mode mail	274	Movie list	359
Lower case	507	What is i-mode Mail?	246	Movie mode	188
M		When you receive i-mode mail	273	Still image • Continuous mode	179
Macro lens	172	Mail list display setting	299	Templates	267
Mail	245	Mail security	164	Memory number search (Phonebook)	112
Add/Delete folder	288	Mail sending/receiving display setting	133	Menu display setting	137
Attaching files	269	Mail settings (FOMA terminal)	299	Menu function list	520
Auto receive mail	273	Mail settings (i-mode)	246	Menu functions	44
Auto sort	289	Mail To function	230	Message	233
Change receiver type	255	Mail with attached file	269	Adjusting the ring tone volume	77
Check new message setting	301	Mail-connected i-appli	283	Check new message setting	301
Confirm settings	247	Mail/Msg. ring time	130	Delete	237, 238
Delete receiver	255	Making phone calls	58	Number of messages	237
Edit	296	Automatic display	123	Protect ON/OFF	237, 238
Edit folder name	289	Dial input	58	View (Read message)	236
Forward mail	280	Earphone/microphone with switch	434	View (Received new message)	233
Large images	269	International calls	61	Message auto display setting (i-mode)	231

Message display setting (Mail)	299	Mute second setting	168	Paste (Text)	515
Message info		My Menu	219	Pattern data update	551
Icon description	234	My picture	339	Pause dial	67
Message Request/Free	210	Add/Delete folder	391	Petit message (Videophone)	101
Viewing received new messages	233	Edit folder name	391	Phone number	
When you receive a message	233	N		Checking your own phone number	56
Message list display setting (i-mode)	231	Name search (Phonebook)	112	Correct numbers	59
miniSD		Network security code	152	Search (Phonebook)	112
Add/Delete folder	392	Network service		Phone To function	229
Data that can be copied	384	Call forwarding service	448	Phonebook	105
Edit folder name	392	Call waiting	447	Add to phonebook (Phone)	107
Folders structure	382	Caller ID request service	451	Add to phonebook (UIM)	108
Format	388	Dual network service	452	Adding phonebook entries on other screens	110
Insert/Remove	380	English guidance	452	Call acceptance	165
Number of files that can be stored	383	Nuisance call barring service	450	Call forwarding	165
miniSD memory card → miniSD		Voice mail service	445	Call rejection	165
miniSD reader/writer	389	Network services	443	Compose message	254
Missed calls	74	Neuropointer	32, 140	Delete (Details screen)	116
Missed calls display	168	Noise reduction	69	Delete data (List screen)	113
Mobile phone manufacturer numbers	216	Normal type i-motion	241	Differences between the FOMA terminal and UIM	106
Mode 1 (5-touch input)	500	Notes on shooting	174	Edit	115
Mode 2 (2-touch input)	501	Notice call service (Voice mail service)	447	Reject unknown	168
Mode 3 (T9 input)	502	Notify cost limit	428	Release secret	159
Move		Nuisance call barring service	450	Renaming groups	110
Bookmark	223	Number of memos		Restrict dialing	165
Image	343	Screen memo	225	Search	111
Melody	378	Number of messages		Secret code setting (Other party)	114
Movie/i-motion	359	Message	237	Secret mode	157
Received mail	291, 295	O		Secret only mode	158
Sent mail	294, 296	OBEX	394	Storage status	119
Move to trash box (Mail)	292, 296	OFF		Stored data	106
Movie		Vibrator	128	Storing from a site page	219
Data that can be edited	342	One-touch dialing	123	Voice mail	165
Delete	359	On hold	78	Phonebook group utilities	121
Edit	365	Operations during playback (i-motion)	361	Phonebook image display setting	135
Move	359	Operations during playback (Melody)	377	Phonebook restrictions	165
Movie playing software	532	Optional equipment	27	Phonebook utilities	119
Number of movies	174	Options	530	Checking the settings	122
Play	357	Options and accessories	530	Release	122
Playing movie playlist	363	Original manner	132	Photo → Image	
Shooting	186	Out of service area	54	Photo mode	177
Titles and file names	342	Outbox	282	Pictographs lists	523
Movie file size setting	177	Overwrite mode (Entering text)	507	Picture list	340
Multi access	406	Own dictionary	516	Picture voice	189
Multi access combination patterns	528	Own number	422	PIM lock	161
Multi number (Network service)	455	Display	422	PIN code (PIN1/PIN2)	152
Multi task	408	P		PIN setting	153
Multi task combination patterns	528	Packet communication	458		

Play		Progressive JPEG-format images	226	Voice memo	424
i-motion (Created on PCs)	532	Protect OFF		Record display set	163
Recorded messages and voice memos	84	Message (Protected)	237, 238	Record message	82
Voice	425	Received mail (Protected)	292, 295	Recording Chara-den	373
Playing the original animation	351	Screen memo (Protected)	225	Redial	64
Playing/Erasing memo	84	Sent mail (Protected)	294, 296	Redial record display setting	163
Playing/Erasing recorded messages and voice memos	84	Protect ON		Refresh skin tone (Edit image)	354
Playing/Erasing voice memo	84	Message	237, 238	Registered trademarks	25
PLMN setting	436	Received mail	292, 295	Registering Chat group	306
Portrait right	25	Screen memo	225	Reject unknown	168
Positioning (Editing image)	348	Sent mail	294, 296	Release	
Power saver mode	136	Q		Phonebook utilities	122
Prefix setting	68	QR code	194	PIM lock	161
Pre-installed alarm	127	Quality alarm	129	PIN lock	154
Pre-installed data		Quick Manual	572	Restrictions	165
Common phrases list	514	Quick message	84	Secret code	114
Deco-mail pictures	265	Quick Search	4	Secret data	159
Frames	184	Quick silent	73	Release All lock	157
i-appli software list	325	Quotation marks	301	Release PIN lock	154
Image list (Standby screen)	134	Quote own number	512	Release restrictions	165
Ring tones and melodies	127	Quote phonebook	512	Release secret	159
Stamp list	355	R		Reload	218
Templates list	268	Re	278	Reload page	218
Pre-installed melodies	127	Reading search (Phonebook)	112	Remote access (Network service)	455
Pre-installed ring tones	127	Rear camera	172	Remote access setting (All lock)	155
Pre-installed stamp list	355	Receive option (Mail)	276	Remote all lock setting	156
Pre-installed templates	268	Receive option setting	300	Remote control	400
Preview	358	Received address list	297	Remote control function	400
Preview (Mail)	255	Received call record display setting	163	Remote observation (Videophone)	102
Preview (SMS)	310	Received calls	74	Renaming groups (Phonebook)	110
Priority		Received mail		Reply to mail (Mail)	278
Alarm	411	Delete	292, 296	Reply with quote (Mail)	279
Chara-den settings	108	Move	291, 295	Reply with ref (Mail)	279
Dialing speed	122	Move to trash box	292, 296	Rerecord sound (Edit movie)	366
Display setting	134	Protect ON/OFF	292, 295	Resend (Mail)	296
Displayed image	122	Receiving a call	71	Reset	
Incoming call lamp	121	Receiving a call (Earphone/microphone with switch)	434	All reset all cost	427
Nuisance call barring function	170	Receiving a call (Hands-free calls)	70	Clear learning record	517
Ring tone	121	Receiving chat mail	305	Initialize	441
Vibrator	128	Receiving display setting (Mail)	299	Reset call duration	427
Priority of Chara-den settings	108	Receiving mail from selected domains	247	Reset desktop	144
Priority of dialing speed	122	Receiving/Rejecting mail from selected address	247	Reset i-mode settings	231
Priority of display setting	134	Receiving/Rejecting only i-mode mail	247	Reset last URL	231
Priority of displayed image	122	Reception level (Signal strength)	54	Reset mail address	247
Priority of incoming call lamp	121	Reconnect control	69	Reset mail setting	302
Priority of nuisance call barring function	170	Record		Reset original menu	140
Priority of ring tone	121	Chara-den	373	Reset own data	422
Priority of vibrator	128	Voice	425	Reset settings	436

Reset call duration (Total call time/charges)	427	Saving attached data (Image)	281	Sending melody mail	269
Reset i-mode settings	231	Saving attached data (i-motion)	282	Sending messages to QUICKCAST	67
Reset last URL	231	Saving attached data (Melody)	281	Sending movie mail	269
Reset mail address	247	Scanning function	551	Sending push signals	67
Reset mail setting	302	Schedule	414	Sent address list	297
Reset settings	436	Adding holidays and anniversaries	417	Sent mail	
Restrict dialing (Restrictions)	165	Changing the display mode (Monthly/weekly)	415	Delete	295, 297
Restriction		Check	418	Move	294, 296
All lock	155	Release secret	159	Protect ON/OFF	294, 296
Camera	161	Secret mode	157	Service dialing number	453
i-motion	161	Secret only mode	158	Services available for the FOMA terminal	529
Keypad	163	Store	415	Session number (Infrared data, USB cable)	398
Mail	161	User icon setting	417	Set connection timeout (i-mode)	232
Phonebook	161	Schedule (ToDo list)	419	Set date	55
Restrict dialing	165	Screen memo	224	Set the clock	55
Schedule	161	Scroll (Mail)	299	Set time	55
Self mode	169	Scroll function (i-mode)	216	Setting change mode (T9 input)	504
Side keys	162	Scroll setting (i-mode)	231	Setting Chara-den	92
Restrictions (Phonebook)	165	SD-PIM	385	Setting the dictionaries (Download dictionary)	517
Result codes	494	Search (Phonebook)	111	Setting T9 change mode (Kanji/Hiragana)	504
Retouch (Edit image)	353	Search mail	291, 294	Shooting	
Ring tone		Secret code registration (Your secret code)	247	Compose message	185
Adjusting volume	77	Secret code setting (Other party)	114	Continuous image	181
Ring time (Mail/message)	130	Secret data	157	Movie	186
Silent	77	Secret folder	159	Still image	178
Step tones	77	Secret folder functions	160	Shooting interval and number of shots (Continuous mode)	182
Ring tone (Chat mail)		Secret mode	157	Shooting menu	176
Adjusting volume	77	Secret only mode	158	Shooting settings	191
Ring time	130	Security code	152	Short Message → SMS	
Select	126	Security codes used on the FOMA terminal	152	Signal strength (Reception level)	54
Ring tone (Mail)		Select icons setting	146	Silent	
Adjusting volume	77	Select image size	177	Ring tone	77
Ring time	130	Select language	54	Smiley face symbols list	523
Select	126	Select ring tone	126	SMS	
Ring tone (Message)		Select tone (Ring tone)	126	Compose/Send	309
Ring time	130	Selecting an icon		Preview	310
Select	126	Neupointer	146	Receiving	311
Ring tone (Phone call)		Selecting an icon with the neupointer	146	SMS center setting	313
Adjusting volume	77	Selecting image in the Picture list screen	41	SMS input character setting	300
Select	126	Selecting multiple items	41	SMS rejection setting	247, 314
Ring tone (Videophone call)		Selecting the menu	38	SMS report	310
Adjusting volume	77	Self mode	169	SMS report request setting	300
Select	126	Send DTMF tone	91	SMS validity period setting	300
Ringtone time	168	Sending a mail message (from site page/mail message)	230	Software keys	32
Rotate (Edit image)	353	Sending broadcast mail	251	Software update	547
S		Sending image mail	269	Sort	
Safety precautions	12	Sending i-motion mail	269	Image	344
SAR (Specific Absorption Rate)	553	Sending manufacturer numbers (i-mode)	216	Mail	292, 294

Melody	378	Convert	506	URL history	221
Message	237	Copy	514	USB cable connection	394
Movie/i-motion	359	Cut	514	USB mode setting	390
Phonebook	113	Delete	510	Use saved data settings (i-mode)	233
Templates	267	Enter	506	User details setting (Chat mail)	308
ToDo	420	Entering face symbols	509	Using menu number to display functions	39
Sort → Sort, Filter		Entering Kuten codes	515	Using SSL certificates	238
Sound		Entering pictographs	509	Using templates to create Deco-mail	266
Charge	129	Entering symbols and pictographs continuously	509	Using the dial key to select items	40
Keypad	129	Full pitch/half pitch	500, 501	V	
Sound effect setting (i-mode)	231	Insert mode/overwrite mode	507	Vibrator (Vibration)	128
Special characters list	522	Inserting a line feed	508	Videophone	88
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)	553	Inserting a space (Blank)	508	Changing a videophone call to a voice call	95
Specifying the destination folder (miniSD)	393	Inserting symbols	508	Changing a videophone call to a voice call (Caller)	93
Speed photo mail	258	Lower case/upper case	507	Changing voice call to videophone call	72
Speed photo mail auto display setting	300	Paste	514	Changing voice call to videophone call (Caller)	60
SRS_WOW setting	128	Quoting data	512	Chara-den	92, 96
SSL communication	209	Type • thickness	142	Decoration	100
Standard lens	172	Text entry screen	498	If a videophone call is not connected	92
Standby screen setting	134	Text memo	430	Making a videophone call	89
Still image		Title name list (Image)	340	Petit message	101
Display	339	Title list (Movie)	358	Receiving a videophone call	94
Edit	352	To stop the alarm tone	411	Remote observation	102
Number of images	173	ToDo list	419	Selecting the sent image	97
Shooting	178	Trademarks	25	Viewing the videophone screen	88
Store common phrases	513	Transferring all (Infrared data, USB cable)	398	Visual check	99
Storing bookmark	221	Transferring one data at a time (Infrared data, USB cable)	397	Videophone call dialing/calling display setting	133
Storing mail member	271	Trim away (Edit image)	356	Videophone display setting	100
Storing sender's address (Mail address)	280	Trim for image (Edit movie)	366	Videophone indication	101
Storing/displaying personal data	422	Trim for mail (Edit movie)	369	Viewer settings	342
Streaming type i-motion	241	Turning on the light	192	Viewing i-motion details	243
Style mode	147	Turning the FOMA terminal on/off	54	Viewing sites	213
Sub-address	69	TV remote control	400	Bookmark	222
Super silent	131	Two-touch dialing	123	i-channel	334
Suspend mail	247	T9 change mode (Kanji/Kana)	504	Last URL	217
Switching active screen	518	T9 input		My Menu	219
Switching functions (Multi task)	409	Character assignments	502	Screen memo	224
Switching screen (Entering text)	518	Conversion candidates	503	URL history	221
Switching tasks (Function)	409	Entering text	502	URL on site pages/mail messages	230
Switching the application mode (i-appli standby screen)	328	Fix mode	504	Visual check (Videophone)	99
Symbols list	522	U		Voice announce	425
T		UIM → FOMA card		Voice mail (Restrictions)	165
Templates		UIM operation	116	Voice mail service	445
Download	228	UIM operation (SMS)	315	Voice memo	424
Memory info	267	Unsolicited Ad. Mail	247	Voice memo (During a call)	424
Text		Update pattern data	551	Voice memo (In standby)	424
Common phrases	512	Upgrade (i-appli)	330	Voice mode	190
Conversion range	506	Upper case	507	Voice phone call → Phone call	

W		List screen	514	Categories screen	386
Wake-up display setting	133	Continuous mode		Data detail screen	387
Warranty and after-sales service	545	Checking screen	182	Data list screen	387
Web To function	230	Continuous shooting screen	179	File list screen	386
Websites	220	Detail checking screen	183	Folder list screen	392
White balance	178	Country code setting screen	64	Movie	
Word prediction	505	Data box		Checking screen	188
WORLD CALL	61	Folder list screen	391	Edit movie screen	366
WORLD WING	48	Multiple-choice screen	392	List screen	358
		Deco-mail		Movie mode screen	187
		Template screen	267	My picture	
		Templates preview screen	268	Image list screen	343
		Desktop		My picture screen	345
		Desktop screen	144	Network service	
		Icon screen	144	Additional guidance screen	456
		Dialed calls screen	65	Additional service screen	456
		Dictionary screen	432	New SMS (Short message) screen	310
		Download dictionary screen	517	Original animation	
		Draft mail screen	271	List screen	350
		Edit image screen	353	Playback screen	351
		Emotion/keyword screen	302	Original menu screen	140
		Enter URL screen	221	Original theme screen	139
		FOMA card (UIM) operation		Own dictionary screen	516
		UIM operation (Copy) screen	117	Own number screen	422
		UIM operation (Delete) screen	118	Pause dial screen	67
		i-appli		Phone	
		Security error history screen	324	In-call screen	59
		Software list screen	322	Phone number input screen	59
		IDD prefix setting screen	63	Ringing screen	71
		i-motion		Phonebook	
		Data acquisition screen	242	Detail screen	113
		Playlist folder	364	Group setting screen	111
		Stopped (pause) screen	362	List screen	113
		Mail		Phonebook utilities screen	122
		Address/subject screen	256	Picture voice recording start screen	190
		Message screen	257	Play/Erase memo screen	85
		New mail screen	255	Play/Erase recorded message screen	85
		Mail member		Play/Erase voice memo screen	85
		Detail screen	272	Prefix setting screen	68
		List screen	272	Receive Ir data screen	400
		Melody		Received address list screen	298
		List screen	377	Received calls screen	76
		Melody screen	379	Received mail	
		Playlist folder	379	Detail screen	295
		Message		Folder list screen	288
		Detail screen	238	List screen	291
		List screen	237	Redial screen	65
		miniSD		Reference history screen	432
Numerical					
186(Provide)/184(Withhold)	66				
2-touch input character assignments	501				
5-touch input character assignments	500				
64K data communication	458				
Kana					
みんなNらんど	213				
Function menu					
Access reader					
Access reader screen	201				
Reading data details screen	203				
Reading data list screen	202				
Scanning screen	201				
Alarm clock screen	413				
Bar code reader					
Bar code reader screen	196				
Reading data details screen	197				
Reading data list screen	197				
Bookmark					
Folder list screen	222				
List screen	223				
Channel list screen	334				
Chara-den					
Chara-den player screen	372				
List screen	371				
Rec. Chara-den screen	374				
Chat					
Chat screen	304				
Group member list screen	307				
Member screen	303				
Chat group list screen	307				
Common phrase					
Folder list screen	513				

Reference result	
Details screen	433
List screen	432
Restrictions screen	166
Schedule	
List screen	418
Schedule screen	414
Screen memo	
Detail screen	225
List screen	224
Sent address list screen	298
Sent mail	
Detail screen	296
Folder list screen	288
List screen	294
Sites screen	214
Speed photo mail image screen	259
Still image	
Image checking screen	180
Photo mode screen	179
Store accept phone No. screen	156
Style mode	
My favorite screen	149
Text entry (edit) screen	511
Text memo screen	430
ToDo	
Detail checking screen	420
ToDo screen	420
UIM operation	
UIM operation (Copy) screen	117
UIM operation (Delete) screen	118
Videophone	
Other ID screen	103
Videophone call reception screen	95
Videophone in-call screen	90
Videophone number input screen	90
Voice mail setting screen	446

[Memo]

[Memo]

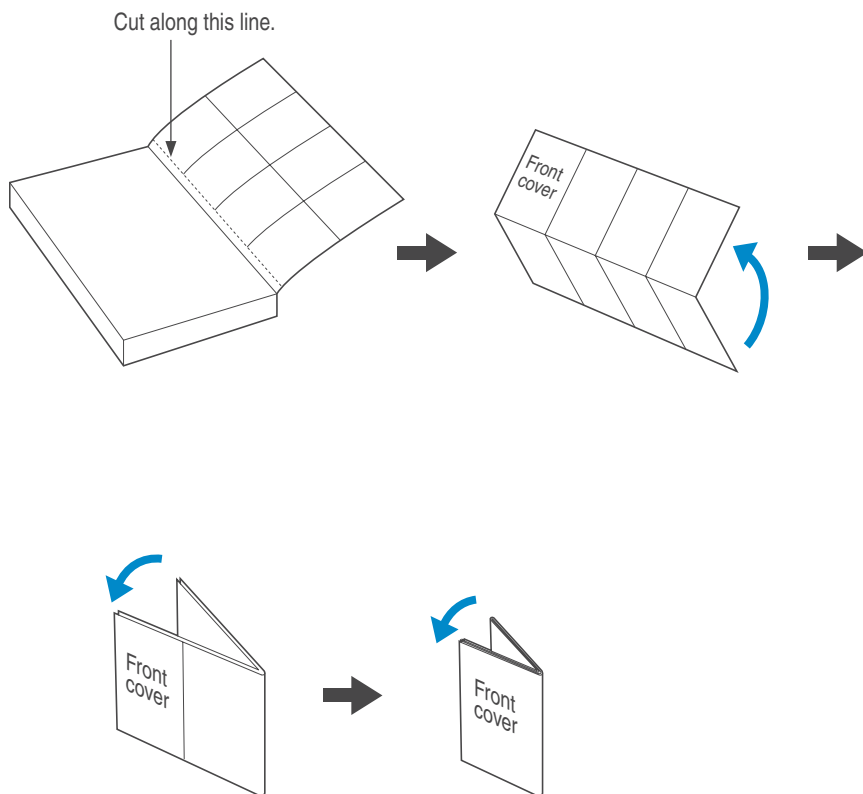
[Memo]

[Memo]

[Memo]

■ How to use the Quick Manual

- The Quick Manual describes the basic operations and displays of the FOMA terminal.
- You can tear it out of this manual and fold it for ease of use.
- Detach one page at a time so that you do not tear other pages. Take care not to hurt yourself.



* Fold the second piece of the Quick Manual so that the "Menu list" (P.16) comes to be the front cover.



FOMA® N701i

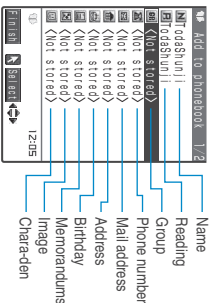
Quick Manual

- For inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>
For DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:
(No prefix) **151** (toll free) (in Japanese only)
※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.
- From an ordinary (landline) phone:
0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)
※ Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS.
- For malfunctions
For DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:
(No prefix) **113** (toll free) (in Japanese only)
※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.
From an ordinary (landline) phone:
0120-800-000 (toll free) (in Japanese only)
※ Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS.
※ Check the phone number carefully before calling.

Edit/delete phonebook data

- **Edit the phonebook data**
1. Display the phonebook data → (Edit) → Edit the items if necessary → (Finish)
- 2. For the FOMA terminal (Phone) → YES
For the FOMA card (UM) → Overwrite or "Add"
- **Delete phonebook data**
Display the phonebook data → (FUNC) → Delete data → "This phonebook"

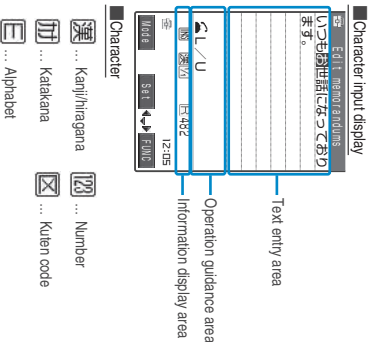
Add to phonebook



- Standby screen appears → (Add to phonebook)
● To add data from the received call record
Standby screen appears → (Add to phonebook)
● To add data from the radial
Standby screen appears → (Add to phonebook)
● To add data from the received call record
Standby screen appears → (Add to phonebook)

1

Input method and mode



5

2. Select "Phone" or "UM" → Enter name → Check the reading → (Set)

3. Select items and enter them
● Group (00 to 19)
● <Not stored> → Select group

- <Not stored> → Select group

- Phone number (up to 4)
● <Not stored> → Enter phone number → Selection icon

- Mail address (up to 3)
● <Not stored> → Enter mail address → Select icon

- Address
● <Not stored> → Enter postal code → Enter address

- Birthday
● <Not stored> → Enter birthday

- <Not stored> → Enter birthday

- <Not stored> → Enter birthday

2

- Select input method
● Input mode → Input mode

- Select (Checkbox) of Mode 1 (5-touch)
● Select (Checkbox) of Mode 2 (2-touch)
● Select (Checkbox) of Mode 3 (9 input)

- <Finish> → Select the mode used frequently

- Enter dakuten, han-dakuten, comma, dot

- (one time or more)

- Switch to kanji/hiragana, katakana, alphabet or number mode

- (Mode) (one time or more)

- Enter pictograph

- (FUNC) → Pictograph → Select pictographs

- Memorandums

- <Not stored> → Enter memorandums

- Image

- <Not stored> → Select image

- Chara-den

- <Not stored> → Select Chara-den

- Memory number (000 to 699)
● 000 ~ 699 → Enter memory number

- (Finish)

- Only name, reading, phone number, group and mail address can be stored to the FOMA card (UM).

3

- Enter symbol

- (FUNC) → Symbols → Select symbol

- Enter pictograph and symbol continuously

- (FUNC) → P1-SB input mode → Select pictograph or symbol → Select after entering

- Clear character

- Use → to move the cursor to the character to clear
→ Clear

- Enter space

- (FUNC) → Space

- Lower case/Upper case

- (FUNC) → Lower case or "Upper case"

4

Cutting Line

6

7

Menu list

Menu	Sub item	Screen item
Main item		
Settings	Index	
	Outbox	
	Dial	
	Compos message	
	Outbox SMS	
	Outbox MMS	
	Recent action	
	Check email SMS	
	Template	
	Mail settings	
	Menu	
	Bookmark	
	Screen memo	
	Last URL	
	Go to location	
	Location	
	Change location	
	Check my message	
	Chart certificate	
	h-mode settings	
	Software list	
	Auto start set	
	h-vgp1 info	

16

Menu	Sub item	Screen item
Settings	Incoming call	
	Ring volume	
	Selecting tone	
	SPS MON	
	Vibrator	
	Illuminator	
	Memory mode set	
	Disp. Playback menu	
	Answer setting	
	Fast setting	
	Waiting ring tone	
	Playing time	
	h10 notice setting	
	Noise reduction	
	Quality alarm	
	Recommended content	
	Illumination in talk	
	Talk	
	Auto dial setting	
	Visual preference	
	Videoophone	
	Camera image sending	
	Screen image	

17

Menu	Sub item	Screen item
Main item		
Settings	Video-ophone	
	Voice call auto switch	
	Remote observation	
	Dial setting v.p	
	Indicate volume	
	Display	
	Display setting	
	Display light	
	Display display	
	Keyboard display	
	Font	
	Desktop icon	
	Screen image	
	Original menu	
	Menu display set	
	Viewer settings	
	Automatic display	
	Call time/Charge	
	Call data	
	h10ly cool limit	
	Repeat call duration	
	Auto reset at cost	
	Call time display	

18

Menu	Sub item	Screen item
Main item		
Settings	Clock	
	Set time	
	Clock display	
	Alarm setting	
	At lock	
	Pin lock	
	Screen mode	
	Keypad lock	
	Repeat unknown	
	Call setting w/o ID	
	Outgoing security code	
	Pin lock setting	
	Secure mode	
	Secure only mode	
	Scanning function	
	Remove at lock	
	Set connection timeout	
	Set check/view message	
	Heat selection	
	SMS center selection	
	Certificate	
	Certificate host	

19

Menu	Sub item	Screen item
Main item		
Settings	h-vgp1 settings	
	h-vgp1 settings info	
	External connection	
	USB mode setting	
	ErP mode	
	Automatic answer	
	Other settings	
	Site mode	
	Keypad sound	
	Change sound	
	Battery level	
	Site vps panel	
	Character input method	
	Record display set	
	Phone dial	
	Site-address	
	Prefix setting	
	h10 dial setting	
	Neurocontrol	
	Select icons setting	
	Reset	
	h10info	
	Software update	

20

Menu	Sub item	Screen item
Main item		
Settings	Data box	
	Mail picture	
	h10action	
	Video mail	
	Media	
	Character	
	Tool	
	Camera	
	Schedule	
	Alarm clock	
	Text memo	
	ToDo	
	Calculator	
	Play/Flash msg.	
	Record message	
	Voice memo (in standby)	
	Voice memo (during call)	
	Receive r data	
	UIM operation	
	Forwarding image	
	Select icons reader	
	Bar code reader	
	SD-PAN	
	Dictionary	

21

Menu	Sub item	Screen item
Main item		
Settings	Network service	
	Check messages	
	Call ID collection	
	Video mail	
	Call meeting	
	Call forwarding	
	Missed call barring	
	Caller ID request	
	Answer call set	
	Send email set	
	Remote access	
	English assistance	
	Additional service	
	Service dialing number	
	Multi number	
	Phonebook	
	Add to phonebook	
	Search phonebook	
	No. of phonebook	
	Utilities	
	Restrictions	
	Group setting	

22

Menu	Sub item	Screen item
Main item		
Settings	Own data	
	Own number	
	Received calls	
	Dialled calls	
	Mail member	
	Call group	
	Common phrase	
	Own dictionary	
	D1 dictionary	

<Other features>
 ● Manner mode
 ● Driving mode
 (For one second or longer)
 (Set each time the key is pressed)
 (For one second or longer)
 (Set each time the key is pressed)

23

Network Services

Voice mail service

- Activate

→Voice mail*→Activate*→YES*→YES*

→Enter Ringing time (seconds)*
- Deactivate

→Voice mail*→Deactivate*→YES*
- Play messages

→Voice mail*→Play messages*→YES*→Follow the voice guidance

24



Icon display area

- : Battery level
- : All lock
- (Blue): Unread message
- (Green): Unread Message Request

28

Call waiting

- Activate

→Call waiting*→Activate*→YES*
- Deactivate

→Call waiting*→Deactivate*→YES*
- Receive another incoming call

Press to switch to incoming call.

To switch the calls, press .

25

- (Purple): Unread Message Free
- (Blue): i-mode mail stored in i-mode Center
- : Signal strength
- : Using i-mode
- : Displaying SST page
- : Connection mode, USB cable-unconnected, hands-free compatible device unconnected
- : Exchanging infrared data
- : miniSD memory card inserted
- : During voice call
- : Multi-tasking

29

Call forwarding service

- Activate

→Call forwarding*→Activate*→Select the operation from the menu
- Deactivate

→Call forwarding*→Deactivate*→YES*

Caller ID request service

- Caller ID request*→Select the operation from the menu

26

- : Vibrator set
- : Ring volume is set to "Silent"
- : Manner mode set
- : Driving mode set
- : Alarm function set
- : Record message set
- : Voice mail message
- : Display light is "OFF"
- : Side keys unavailable

30

Service available on FOMA Terminal

Collect call (calls charged to receiver)	(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones	(No area code) 104
and DoCoMo mobile phones (charged) ¹⁾	
Telegram (charged) 8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (charged)	Area code + 117
Weather forecast (charged)	
Emergency call to police ²⁾	(No area code) 119
Emergency call for fire engine or ambulance ²⁾	
Emergency call for help on the sea	(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (charged)	(No area code) 171

- The phone number cannot be provided if the number is not listed in the directory.
- An emergency call to the local fire station or police station may not be connected in some areas. In that case, call again from a public phone or land line.

27

○For Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

For DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) **151** (toll free) (in Japanese only)

* You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

* Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

○For malfunctions

For DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) **113** (toll free) (in Japanese only)

* You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-800-000 (toll free) (in Japanese only)

* Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

31

Using your FOMA Terminal Politely

When using your FOMA terminal in public, do not forget to consider the feelings of people around you.

Turn off your FOMA terminal when you are:

- In a place where it is prohibited to use a mobile phone
It is prohibited to use a mobile phone in some places. Turn off your FOMA terminal in:
 - An airplane · A hospital

* Turn off your FOMA terminal in a lobby or waiting room as well as in a hospital ward in case that the electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- Driving
Using the FOMA terminal prevents you from driving safely.

* Stop the car in a safe place before using the phone, or use the driving mode.
- In a crowded place such as rush-hour train, where somebody nearby may be using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator
Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators if used in close proximity.
- In a public place such as theater, cinema, or museum
Using the FOMA terminal in a public place, where you need to be quiet, annoys people around you.

Mind where you use your FOMA terminal and how loud your voice or the ring tone is

- If you use your FOMA terminal in a quiet place such as restaurant or hotel lobby, mind how loud your voice is, etc.
- Take care not to disturb other people when you use your FOMA terminal in a public place.

Respect privacy

- ! Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

These functions enable you to be well-mannered

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with useful functions not to answer an incoming call or to mute all the sounds of the FOMA terminal.

[Manner mode/Original manner mode]

Manner mode mutes the sounds of the FOMA terminal such as the keypad sounds and the ring tone. You can customize Manner mode by changing the settings of the Record message function, vibrator or ring tone (Original manner mode). However, neither Manner mode nor Original manner mode can mute the shutter sound of the camera.

[Driving mode]

The FOMA terminal announces to the caller that you are driving and cannot answer the phone, and then terminates the call. The ring tone does not sound, which means that you can drive safely.

[Vibrator]

The FOMA terminal vibrates to notify you of an incoming call.

[Record message function]

When you cannot answer a call, the caller leaves a message.

You can also use optional services such as the Voice mail service (P.445) and Call forwarding service (P.448).



You can subscribe to “Voice Mail Service”, “Call Waiting”, “Call Forwarding Service”, “Nuisance Call Barring Service”, “WORLD CALL” and “WORLD WING” via the DoCoMo e-site.

●For i-mode: iMenu ▶ 料金&お申込 ▶ ドコモeサイト **no packet communication charge**

- ※ e-site can be used on the NTT DoCoMo website from PCs etc. In this case, “User ID” and “Password” are required.
- ※ To access e-site via i-mode, your “Network security code” applied to NTT DoCoMo is required.
- ※ The packet communication fee for e-site via i-mode is free. However, you may be charged for some contents. Accessing from overseas will be charged.
- ※ If you lose or forget your “Network security code”, “User ID” and “Password”, please contact inquiries shown below.
- ※ Depending on contracts, you may not be able to access e-site.
- ※ You may not be able to access e-site due to system maintenance, etc.
- ※ Some plans may not be available.

For inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

■From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:



(No prefix) **151** (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■From an ordinary (landline) phone:



0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

For technical inquiries

■From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:



(No prefix) **113** (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※ You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

■From an ordinary (landline) phone:



0120-800-000 (toll free) (in Japanese only)

Can be called from DoCoMo mobile phones or PHSs

- Check the phone number carefully before dialing.
- For details, check the “Service station list” provided with a FOMA terminal.



Don't forget your cellular phone ... or your manners!

○When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration to others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation



Li-ion

To protect the environment, return used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, any NTT DoCoMo retailers, or a recycling agency.



This manual is made of 100% recycled paper.



This manual is printed with soy based ink.

'05.8 (1st Edition)
MDT-000060-EAA0